







**THE MODERN  
WORD-FINDER**





# THE MODERN WORD-FINDER

---

*Originally published under the title*  
**MORROW'S WORD-FINDER**

---

**A LIVING GUIDE TO MODERN USAGE, SPELLING, SYNO-  
NYMS, PRONUNCIATION, GRAMMAR, WORD ORIGINS,  
& AUTHORSHIP, ALL IN ONE ALPHABETICAL ORDER**

*BY*  
**PAUL D. HUGON**

*NEW REVISED EDITION*

**GROSSET & DUNLAP**  
**PUBLISHERS** **NEW YORK**

COPYRIGHT, 1927, 1934, BY  
WILLIAM MORROW AND COMPANY, INC.

## THE WORD-FINDER:

### WHAT IT IS AND HOW TO USE IT

THE Word-Finder is the direct outcome of tabulations showing the mistakes most commonly made, and the questions most commonly asked, by more than ten thousand adult students from every walk of life who were taking correspondence courses in various subjects. Of that number, some two thousand expressed in almost identical terms their greatest difficulty as "finding the right word." It was shown that the dictionary was of little help, because the average person does not know how to use it: the type is usually much too small; the presentation is too mechanical—over-complete in some respects and woefully inadequate in matters of phrasing and usage; there are too many abbreviations and not enough examples; there is nothing to indicate when a word which looks quite normal is to be pronounced in some peculiar way, except at the entry corresponding to that word itself; finally the dictionary is useless if one is looking for words which one cannot spell, such as rhubarb, mesembryanthemum or chiropractor. The average synonym book was also found inadequate, for it never gives pronunciations, and it is usually limited to synonyms in the same grammatical class.

In one word, the trouble lay with cross-references, the bugbear of the person who has not specialized in research work.

To supply a book of convenient size, printed in clear type and with an absolute minimum of abbreviations or cross-references—a book that will answer the average adult's everyday questions at the place where he is most likely to look for the answer, i.e., at the *thought* place and not at the grammatical or alphabetical place, and without assuming his acceptance of a philosophical system of classification of knowledge (a system which would necessarily be arbitrary if not totally out of date at the outset)—that is the purpose of the Word-Finder.

The Word-Finder is not complete—that would demand too large a book. It is not scientifically accurate where accuracy would conflict with necessary brevity or would be of no interest to the average adult in non-technical work; it is not for children or for those who know nothing of the English language.

The Word-Finder, being an entirely different kind of book, cannot be judged by comparison with other works; it has to be

## THE WORD-FINDER—HOW TO USE IT

used constantly to yield its full harvest. Few men are so highly educated that they cannot learn something from almost every page; few are so ignorant that they cannot avail themselves of most of its contents. The Word-Finder is presented as an entirely practical contribution to the art of using language effectively and intelligently, and it is expected to act as an introduction to the more formal and more complete books now in existence—dictionaries, synonym books, grammars, treatises on rhetoric, psychology, phonetics, authorship, etc.

### HOW TO USE THE WORD-FINDER

1. Always look for the *simplest* word expressing the simplest *idea* connected with what you are seeking. If you do not know how to spell "vegetables," see Plant; if you are curious to discover the scientific name of "fish-lore" (ichthyology), see Fish; if you cannot remember "eradicate," see Out; if you can neither spell nor pronounce the word "Chihuahua," see Dog; if you are not sure whether to use a comma, see Comma, or Punctuation; if you do not know the difference between "prior" and "previous," see Before.

2. Spend a *whole evening* looking over the book when you first get it. Glance at every page. Read the entries under Names, War, Water, Motion Pictures, Theatre, Rhetoric, Alphabet, Syllables, Spelling, Declension, as specimens of the method used. You will learn more about the Word-Finder and what it can do for you in that way than in any other.

3. Read the pronunciation key. Note that the Word-Finder does not use exactly the same key as the dictionary. For example we do NOT use ä (with two dots over the a) for the sound heard in "father," because we know this is very misleading to everybody who knows German and who thinks of that sign only as sounding like "a" in "mate." We use instead the French â, which has no other sound; and for the sound heard in "law" or in "fault" we use "au." Note that we use "dh" for the sound of the "th" in "mother" (different from the sound of "th" in "thief, thin").

4. Read a few pages of the Word-Finder every day, systematically, and use the new words you have studied. This will soon increase your vocabulary considerably.

5. Write down, and pronounce ALOUD, every new word or spelling or pronunciation which you wish to remember. The eye, the ear and the hand, combined, will enable you to memorize better than the eye alone.

THE PUBLISHERS.

## ENGLISH—THE WORLD LANGUAGE

THAT language is best which has evolved most. In that brief statement all the results of linguistic research of the past fifty years might well be summed up, for language is a living reality equaled only by the human mind itself which uses it as its very measure and its most perfect instrument. Just as all forms of life, in the struggle for survival, lose those cumbersome features which would impede the individual in his fight, and assume differentiations which are of more consequence, so all forms of language—sounds, words, grammatical and rhetorical construction—tend to become both simplified and differentiated as they go. Cicero's grammar, never understood in his time outside the little clique of *literati*, would be intolerably burdensome in the broad business relations of the present day. When a mere handful of highly educated men called themselves the world, complications were considered a sign of refinement, even as in our own day the use of highbrow terms in place of honest English words appeals to the more shallow of the newly schooled, as giving supreme proof of superiority over their still rustic brethren. But the spread of culture to include an ever-widening circle implies, as other forms of evolution, more and more simplification. In the end, when a language has imposed itself upon many millions of people, it has of necessity lost those subtle distinctions which are beyond the comprehension of the average person.

It is strictly accurate to say, for example, that a word like "smash" represents the very perfection of linguistic evolution, since its every sound is pregnant with dynamic emotional value—S for impending danger; M for mass; short A for flattening; SH for friction and scattering—while another like "ichthyology" represents the raw product of the theorist's brains. "Ichthyology" will never be a popular word known to the countless millions who would have no difficulty in remembering, spelling and pronouncing "fish-lore." It has not evolved; it has not rolled and cannot roll from tongue to tongue, from country to country, from century to century. It is and will remain a scientific orphan.

English, in this respect, is very peculiarly favored. As the language not only of America and Great Britain, with their 200,000,000 inhabitants, but of the whole world whose second tongue it has already become, and whose first and only language it may be within two generations or less—thanks to the radio, the phonograph, the magazine, the technical book, the steamship, the aeroplane and the wealthy traveler—English has had an opportunity which no other language in the world's history has ever had. It has become the means of expression of every race and creed, of every color and every period. Alone of all the tongues of mankind, English can do equal justice to the white man and the negro, to the Christian and the Buddhist, to the most advanced intellectual and the most backward bushman, to the scientist and the coolie. Alone, having assimilated within its vast organism

## PREFACE

the favored ideas and words of all the peoples of the earth, it can truthfully interpret all sections of mankind to one another. Alone it favors neither the educated nor the ignorant, neither the theorist nor the practical man. Alone it offers within its fold a double language, making it equally possible for the untaught laborer of a downtrodden race to make himself understood with a total vocabulary of some 600 words, and for the voracious scholar to translate the minutest promptings of his brains into terms selected from a vocabulary of some 580,000 words. It is thus the easiest language to learn and yet the one which offers the greatest reward to the student; it contains within itself every transition from the lowest to the highest. It has evolved more in its simpler forms, and it is more potential of evolution in its newer forms, than any speech mankind has ever known.

Precisely because English is so full of life, precisely because its power of growth is unlimited, many timid souls have looked upon the invasion of modernism as a calamity to be resisted at all costs: failing to realize that language is a living reality, they have made rules—and in so doing they have succeeded principally in glorifying the past, in establishing Yesterday as inherently better than Today.

Much of the English taught in the schools and colleges belongs to the fossil era. Unable to draw the line between slang and evolution, the teachers have barred everything which could not be proved by precedent; they have subordinated the living spoken language to the embalmed written language—the reality to the shadow. Not unnaturally, where growth was lustiest the danger was greatest; so we see this tendency to highbrowize and classicize much more strongly at work in the schools of America than in the safer linguistic atmosphere of England, where modernism is less feared because less dynamic. Especially is this true in the field of Grammar, a subject which is taken for granted, perhaps more than any other branch of knowledge, and one in which the unjustified and cumbersome usage of the past is allowed to dominate the needs of the present, merely because hardly anyone has gone to the sources and discovered their very human and purely evolutionary character.

. . . . .

Between the Historicists, who would set up the Past as the only standard of linguistic usage, and the Realists, who wait pencil in hand to jot down as tremendously significant all the youthful slang and the half-baked exuberance of the Present, it is not necessary to make a choice, for both are equally one-sided. The same principles which hold good in all other sciences supply us with the true answer, since Language is subject to the same fundamental laws as all Nature. It is strange, though, how persistently people cling to past usage, or to ultra-modernistic fashion, when in their own line of endeavor they would accept neither the traditions of a bygone generation nor the untried suggestions of novices.

To ascertain what is good language and what is not, we have only to follow the system laid down by Luther Burbank when he set out to develop plant species. That system can be summed up in two words: Fundamental Principles. If we know how language in general came into being, and how particular words, phrases and constructions came to be accepted, we shall know approximately which of various forms is capable of survival, and which is doomed to extinction.

## PREFACE

The first Fundamental Principle of Language is that of Significant Sound.

Speech originated in various ejaculations, expressive of fear, anger, pain, etc. Each of the simple sounds that we still use—whether consonant or vowel—is capable of creating dynamic emotional effects. Compare the modern word “jump” with the older form “leap” (as analyzed in the Word-Finder; see Jump), and it is instantly evident that these two words have entirely different suggestion value. While a full analysis of the English language from the point of view of Significant Sound must be left for another work, many of the otherwise unexplainable differences between words have been traced in the Word-Finder to this fundamental principle.

Significant sounds soon became “frozen” in standard groups. This gives us the next Fundamental Principle—Extension of Meaning. The simple sounds “ab” (“off”) and “duc” (“take”) become the “frozen” word “abduct,” which gradually comes to mean much more than “take off.” To trace the original signification of such complex forms, wherever that knowledge will enable us to express our thoughts with greater force and effectiveness, is one of the objects of the Word-Finder. For example, under “to laugh,” we give the Latin “rideo,” because it explains *risible*, *deride*, *derision*, *ridiculous*. It is true that etymologies are found after such words in dictionaries, but the full force of a word-origin is seldom realized unless several derived forms are studied at the same time and compared as to their subsequent evolution. One of the best examples in the Word-Finder is that of the synonyms of the word Friend. What an entirely new complexion is placed on the meaning of that word when it is known to signify “a loved one,” and when it is also realized that a *comrade* or *chum* (both words derived from camera or chamber) is one who shares one’s room; a *companion*, one who shares one’s bread; a *partner*, another who shares or “partitions” with one; a *consort*, one who shares one’s fate, and so on. Unless we return to origins and understand the process worked by the principle of Extension of Meaning, our language must soon become trite and devitalized.

The third Fundamental Principle of Language is Simplification of Form, or survival of the fittest. Knowing the laws of sound as applied to speech (phonetics), one is able to forecast that some combinations will survive intact, while others will become modified. That “eleemosyna” should end in becoming “alms” is quite natural. If we should try to “freeze” all present forms, including our so-called scientific words, we would be merely preventing the logical and natural evolution of the language. This, incidentally, is the most serious objection to all attempts to invent a language. An invented language is an UN-evolved language. If we try to remember its words entirely by their original signification, we are forced to perform analytical gymnastics far exceeding the mental powers of the average person; if, on the other hand, we try to remember compounded words as wholes, and not as groups of parts, we corrupt them very rapidly and render them unrecognizable. The compound Esperanto word “samideano,” unless analyzed by each successive user, would soon become a “whole word,” pronounced “sam’diano” by one person, “samjano” by the next; and “sanjano” by the third. “Sanjano” would be a naturally evolved word according to phonetic laws; but it is just as difficult to learn “san-



## PREFACE

jano" (and then learn its etymology) as it is to learn any other word in a natural and much-used language like English. Mankind's desire to have a common tongue will probably never transcend the individual's mental laziness and his reluctance to analyze.

The fourth Fundamental Principle of Language is Division of Labor. A highly synthetic language such as Latin (or even French) has enormous advantages for privileged minds capable of saying much in few words; but the average person, who is the user of language and its ultimate judge, prefers his language constructed like his automobile, of standard interchangeable parts. English has both; hence its remarkable elasticity. We may say either "ascend" or "go up," and it would be going counter to the entire evolution of Language to insist on the one-word form in preference to the two-word form. The Latins may have said "evocaverimus" in one word for our modern "we shall have called out" in five words; but all our scholars agree that five words are better used than one word to represent five ideas. Division of Labor, or the system of standardized functions, standardized parts, is just as much a principle of modern language as it is a principle of modern industry. This is not written to decry the advantages of terse speech and especially of terse writing, but to remove the glamour from such terse forms when they are used in ordinary conversation or in writing for the masses.

\* \* \* \* \*

These four principles: Significant Sound, Extension of Meaning, Simplification of Form, Division of Labor, correspond to the four fundamental principles of all life: Desire (the Need which creates the Organ), Adaptation to Surroundings (Struggle for Life), Economy of Structure (Survival of the Fittest), and Economy of Operation (Differentiation of Functions).

The question, then, "What is good English?", is not a riddle to be solved by one person's dictum, or by reference to the more or less accurately observed "usage" on which dictionary compilers rely for their pronouncements. It is a question to be answered in each individual case by reference to some fundamental principles which are similar to those of all other sciences. Neither Historicism nor Realism, but Conscious Evolution, is the keynote of modern language study. With the coming of the radio, and with the adoption of English as the official language of the League of Nations (on a par with French, but fast being adopted all over Europe as well as over the rest of the world), it is no longer a case of choosing between British usage on the one hand and American usage on the other. Both should be noted when they differ; neither should be considered as more than a dialect variation of the great World English which is to be the language of the entire human race at no distant date. And when they do differ, leaving us in doubt as to the "correct" form, we should apply to our language the rule which Luther Burbank applied to plants; we should refer to Fundamental Principles, thereby consciously aligning ourselves behind the great laws of Nature, compliance with which means Liberty.

PAUL D. HUGON.

*Hollywood, California,  
February 1, 1927.*

**THE MODERN  
WORD-FINDER**



# A

**ā.** Sound heard in **aye**, meaning always.

**ai.** This sound is often spelled—**ei**.

Words with **ā** sound spelled—**ei**:—

deign	feint	inveigh	reign	skein	weigh
eight	freight	neigh	rein	sleigh	weight
feign	heinous	neighbor	reindeer	veil	

**â.** Sound heard more or less in **father**, **rather**, **aunt**, **palm**, **calm**, **psalm** (**sâm**), and (in New England and British pronunciations) in **half**, **past**, **last**, and words in—**ass**: **mass**, **class**.

**a** or **an**. Use **an** before a vowel sound, even if the spelling is a consonant: **An** honor; **an** honest opinion; **an** hour. In those words the **h** is silent: they are pronounced **ônor**, **ônest**, **our**.

—Use **a** before a consonant sound: **a** paper, **a** book, even if the consonant sound is not written: **a** union, **a** uniform, **a** eulogy, **such a** one. In those words, the first sound is a consonant: **a** yunion, **a** yuniform, **a** yulogy, **such a** wun.

—However, if the first syllable is unaccented (as in **historian**, **his-to'rian**; **hyena**, **hi-ē'na**), and begins with an **h**, you may use either **an** or **a**. Modern writers prefer **a**: **a** historian, **a** hyena, **a** heroic deed, **a** hotel; but you will find many who write: **an** historian, **an** hyena, **an** heroic deed, **an** hotel, especially in England.

**to abandon**, leave something or somebody that has been the object of previous effort; **relinquish** reluctantly, as "relinquish a command"; **renounce** a pretension; **resign** an office; **abdicate** a throne; **forgo** (or **forego**) an advantage; **forsake** a friendship; **quit**, leave suddenly; **vācāte** premises that had been occupied; **repūdiāte**, disown; **surrender** to a superior force; **retire** from a threatened position; **withdraw** from a point of vantage.

**to abase**, bring to a lower estate; **hūmiliate**, make one resent the implication of superiority; **debase** a character; **degrade** from higher rank; **disgrace**, from dēcent company; **humble**, make one feel repentant.

**to abbreviate** a word in writing or printing; **to abridge** a document by rewriting it more shortly.

**abbreviations**. A few of the more difficult of common abbreviations are given below.

1. Titles, like **General**, **Professor**, **President**, etc., names of states, and words like **street**, **avenue**, **boulevard**, etc., are written out in full when appearing in the body of a sentence. Abbreviations are used in lists, addresses, etc.

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels **ā ē ī ō ū ȳ** as in **mate**, **meet**, **mite**, **mote**, **mute**, **my**; **ä ē ī ō ū ȳ** as in **mat**, **met**, **mitt**, **not**, **nut**, **pit**; **ā** as in **father**; **ēr** as in **merry**; **ēr** as in **mercer**; **ou** as in **loud**; **au** as in **land**. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (**ā** in **senate**). Consonants: **g** always as in **go**; **th** as in **thief**; **dh** as **th** in **mother**; **ng** as in **sing** or in **singer**; **ng-g** as **ng** in **finger**. See Syllables.

2. The symbol & should not be used for and in an ordinary sentence unless it is a part of a firm name.
3. The following abbreviations are in good form:—  
**Mr., Mrs., Dr., A.B., Ph.D.,** etc., when they accompany a name. **Vol., p., ch. or chap., sec.,** and the like when they are followed by a number and occur in a footnote or in a parenthetical reference in the text.
4. In business letters and in technical writing, abbreviations are employed more commonly than in general writing. In business letters, however, the present tendency is toward a less frequent use than was formerly the custom.
5. The official abbreviations of the names of states, territories, and territorial possessions of the United States:—

<b>Ala.</b>	<b>Ind.</b>	<b>N. Dak.</b>	<b>R. I.</b>
<b>Ariz.</b>	<b>Kans.</b>	<b>Nebr.</b>	<b>S. C.</b>
<b>Ark.</b>	<b>Ky.</b>	<b>Nev.</b>	<b>S. Dak.</b>
<b>Calif.</b>	<b>La.</b>	<b>N. H.</b>	<b>Tenn.</b> [tory)
<b>Colo.</b>	<b>Mass.</b>	<b>N. J.</b>	<b>T. H.</b> (Hawaii Terri-
<b>Conn.</b>	<b>Md.</b>	<b>N. Mex.</b>	<b>Tex.</b>
<b>D. C.</b>	<b>Me.</b>	<b>N. Y.</b>	<b>Va.</b>
<b>Del.</b>	<b>Mich.</b>	<b>Okla.</b>	<b>V. I.</b> (Virgin Islands)
<b>Fla.</b>	<b>Minn.</b>	<b>Oreg.</b>	<b>Vt.</b>
<b>Ga.</b>	<b>Miss.</b>	<b>Penna.</b>	<b>Wash.</b>
<b>Ia.</b>	<b>Mo.</b>	<b>P. I.</b> (Philippine	<b>Wis.</b>
<b>Ida.</b>	<b>Mont.</b>	Islands)	<b>W. Va.</b>
<b>Ill.</b>	<b>N. C.</b>	<b>P. R.</b> (Porto Rico)	<b>Wyo.</b>

The following are not abbreviated: **Alaska, Guam, Ohio, Samoa, and Utah.** (Manufacturers abbreviate Ohio: Akron, O.)

(In the list that follows, capital letters are used only where they are constant in all uses. Many of these signs will demand capitals in special positions. Unless specially noted, plurals are formed with s.)

<b>acc.</b>	.....according to. accusative.
<b>A. D.</b>	.....anno Domini (In the year of our Lord).
<b>ad. inf.</b>	.....ad infinitum (To infinity).
<b>adj.</b>	.....adjective.
<b>ad. lib.</b>	.....ad libitum (At pleasure).
<b>adv.</b>	.....adverb.
<b>a. m.</b>	.....ante meridiem (Before noon).
<b>anon.</b>	.....anonymous.
<b>apt.</b>	.....apartment.
<b>A. V.</b>	.....Authorized Version.
<b>B. C.</b>	.....before Christ (after a date).
<b>c.</b>	.....circa or circum (about); cent; Centigrade.
<b>Cantab.</b>	.....Cantabrigiensis (of Cambridge).
<b>cap.</b>	.....capital letter.
<b>cf.</b>	.....compare.
<b>Cie</b>	.....Compagnie (French Company, with a proper name) (no period).
<b>cm.</b>	.....centimeter (for both singular and plural).

---

C.O.D. ....	cash, or collect, on delivery.
colloq. ....	colloquial.
conj. ....	conjunction.
Ctd. ....	Continued.
cwt. ....	hundredweight.
do. ....	ditto (the same).
D. V. ....	Deo volente (God willing).
e.g. ....	exempli gratia (for example).
Esq. ....	Esquire (after a proper name).
etc. ....	et cetera (and the others; and so forth).
F. ....	Fahrenheit.
fem. ....	feminine.
fig. ....	figuratively (See Figure of Speech).
f.o.b. ....	free on board.
G.A.R. ....	Grand Army of the Republic.
G.O.P. ....	Grand Old Party (Republican).
gov. ....	governor.
govt. ....	government.
Heb. ....	Hebrews.
Hon. ....	Honorable (before a proper name).
ibid. ....	ibidem (In the same place or work).
id. ....	idem (the same).
i.e., ....	id est (that is).
inc. ....	incorporated.
incog. ....	incognito (masculine), incognita (feminine), (unknown).
inf. ....	infinitive.
I.O.U. ....	I owe you.
Jas. ....	James.
J.D. ....	Jurum Doctor (Doctor of Laws).
Jos. ....	Joseph.
Jr. ....	Junior (after a proper name).
kg. ....	kilogram (or kilo without a period).
km. ....	kilometer.
kw. ....	kilowatt.
lat. ....	latitude.
LL.B. ....	Bachelor of Laws.
LL.D. ....	Doctor of Laws.
loc. cit. ....	loco citato (in the place cited).
Ltd. ....	limited.
M. ....	Monsieur (French), Mr. (plural, MM.).
masc. ....	masculine.
M.D. ....	Doctor of Medicine.
Messrs. ....	Messieurs, plural of Mr.
Mfd. ....	Manufactured (not Mfgd.).
mfg. ....	manufacturing.
mfr. ....	manufacturer (not Mfgr.).
mgr. ....	manager.
Mlle. ....	Mademoiselle (French; abbreviated only be- fore a proper name); (plural, Mlles.).
mm. ....	millimeter, millimeters.
Mme. ....	Madame (before a proper name); (plural, Mmes.).

M.P.	Member of Parliament; Motion Picture.
Mr.	(never written out); (plural, Messrs.).
Mrs.	Mistress (pronounced Mis-iz).
MS.	manuscript (plural, MSS.).
Mt.	Mount (before a proper name).
N.B.	nota bene (mark well).
N.E.D.	New English (Oxford) Dictionary.
no.	number (to be used only before figures).
O.K.	Okeh; Correct; all right (old Indian word).
op.	opus (work); (used in references).
op. cit.	opere citato (in the work cited).
Oxon.	Oxoniensis (of Oxford).
p.	page (plural, pp.).
part.	participle.
pass.	passive.
pat.	patent (as in pat. applied for).
pd.	paid.
per cent	per centum ("by the hundred"; no period).
pl.	plural.
Pl.	Place (in a proper name).
p. m.	post meridiem (after noon).
P.O.	post office.
pp.	pages.
p.p.	past participle.
pro tem.	pro tempore ("for the time being").
Ps.	Psalms.
PS.	postscript.
Q.E.D.	quod erat demonstrandum (which was to be proved).
q.v.	quod vide ("which see").
R.C.	Roman Catholic.
Rep.	Republican.
Rev.	Reverend (before a proper name).
R.I.P.	May he, she, Rest in Peace.
R.S.V.P.	Répondez, s'il vous plaît (French for "please reply").
R.V.	Revised version.
sc.	scene (in reference to lines in a play).
seq.	sequens, sequentes, sequentia (the following).
Sr.	Señor (with a proper name).
SS.	steamship.
ult.	ultimo (last).
v.	verse (plural vv.).
v.i.	intransitive verb.
viz.	videlicet (namely).
vs.	versus, against.
v.t.	transitive verb.
wd.	word.
Xmas	Christmas (no period).

to **abide** (ă-bid'), literally to "wait." Past tense **abode** or **abided**.  
 We **abide by** a decision (accept it as final), **abide with** a person (stay or dwell with), **abide at** a house (remain there).

**ability**, power to do; **capacity**, power to contain. "A man's ability; the capacity of a vessel."

**-able, -ible**.—Suffixes meaning "which can be."

For list of spellings, see **-ible**.—As a rough guide, use **-able** with a root that forms words in **-ation**: **abominAtion**, **abominAble**; **probAtion**, **probAble**; **tolerAtion**, **tolerAble**. Use **-ible** generally with a root that forms words in **-ission**, **-ition**, or **-tion**, **-sion**, **-xion** without a vowel: **admission**, **admissible**; **conversion**, **convertible**; **vision**, **visible**; **flexion**, **flexible**; **combustion**, **combustible**; **digestion**; **digestible**; **comprehension**, **comprehensible**.

Before the suffix **-able**, if the root ends in a soft **c** (pronounced **s**, as in "trace") or in a soft **g** (pronounced **j**, as in "manage"), the final **e** mute is kept in: **manage**, **manageable**; **service**, **serviceable**. (Note that if the correct form is **-ible**, the **e** is dropped: **invincible**, **dirigible**, because the **e** is no longer necessary to preserve the soft sound of the consonant.)

**abetting**, encouraging to a bad action; **instigating**, giving the first idea; **promoting**, paving the way; **provoking**, causing as a reaction, as by taunts; **inducing**, by making an offer; **inciting** a person, cunningly.

**ablutions** (äblū'shunz), washing one's body, especially in a ceremonial or fussy way.

to **abolish** (abōl'ish) a practice, an institution, do away with it entirely; to **suppress** an evil that was growing; **annul** a decision, make it void; **cancel** a request, an invitation, a check; **quash** a court decision; **rescind** temporarily an order (by the body that made it); **revoke** a license; **repeal** a previous law; **reverse** a decision, by making the opposite decision; **abrogate** a Constitution (by the ruler); **countermand** an order for goods.

**about**. From French *bout*, "end"; literally "at the end of," therefore **near**, **close**, **adjoining**.

(Subject) **of**, concerning, anent, regarding, with regard to, in respect of, a **propos** (äpropō) of.

(Quantity) **approximately**, **nearly**, **roughly**, **almost**.

(Place) **around**, **near**, **beside**.—**Around** is better used when the idea is of circular motion; **about** in all other cases: "About the first of the year. I saw him about two days ago. A man about town. He was hanging about the Court House. She walked about her room. When Christmas comes round (or around) again."

**above** (abūv'). This was originally a combination of the words "on-by-up." Latin **super**; hence **superior**, above others; **superlative**, much above the ordinary, as much above as can be; **superfluous**, above the required number. Greek **meta**; hence **metaphysics**, the science above or beyond physical matter.

**Above** means "higher than, without touching"; when the thing touches, it is **on** or **upon**; when it is in an almost vertical line above, so that if it fell it would drop on it, it is



**over**; when it is past the object, from any height, it is **beyond**: "The aeroplane flew **over** the city (if it had fallen, it would have fallen within the city limits), **above** the clouds (higher and not touching). It looked like a mere speck on the sky (considering the sky as a flat surface) before it disappeared **beyond** the horizon." "Pull your cape **over** your shoulders (so as to cover them)." "Roll up your sleeve **above** the elbow, so that it does not get wet."

**Above** the understanding.....**transcendent** (adjective).

**Note**:—**Above** is properly a preposition or an adverb, but it may be used, like almost every word in English, for any other part of speech, when sense allows. It is therefore not wrong to use it as an adjective: "the **above** address," although some people would rather say: "the address **above** given."

**to abridge** a document by rewriting it more briefly; **to abbreviate** a word or phrase in writing or printing; **curtail** a leave, a speech, one's privileges, by cutting them short; **shorten** something that is already long.

**Nouns**:—an **epítomē**, brief, pithy statement; a **summary** of what has been elsewhere told at length; a **digest**, boiling down for quick consumption; a **compendium**, book covering briefly a large field; an **abstract**, selective summary; an outline of a thing done or to be done; a **synopsis**, one-glance view of a story or plot; an **analysis**, study of the real value of an action or document as judged by the analyst.

**ab'sent**, adjective, accented on first syllable; **to absent'**, verb, accented on second syllable. "He is **ab'sent**; he often **absents'** himself."

**ab'solute** (literally "unbound"), adjective. From Latin *solvere*, *solutum*; hence **solution**, to **solve**, **resolve**, etc.

As everything that has no limit is **absolute**, every word implying absence of limit, or wholeness, may be used as a synonym for **absolute**: **entire**, **whole**, **unlimited**, **perfect**, **complete**, **arbitrary**, **positive**, **final**, **supreme**, **ultimate**, etc.

**an ab'stract**, noun, accented on first syllable.—See **to abridge**.

**to abstract'**, verb, accented on second syllable.—**To take unlawfully and with skill**: "to abstract the pennies from a toy savings bank"; **to purloin**, **steal**, **remove**, **detach**, etc.

**ab'stract**, adjective, accented on first syllable: opposite of **concrete**. A word like **pleasure**, **pain**, **luck**, which is the name of a concept or idea, is called an **abstract** word.

**absurd'** (literally "off-sounding," i.e., which sounds foolish); **foolish**, as propounded by a fool; **prepos'terous**, causing irritation by its excessiveness; **irrā'tional**, contrary to reason; **in'consist'ent**, not agreeing with itself or with something else; **ridic'ulous**, laughable; **pāradox'ical**, appearing self-

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels: *ā ī ū ē ā ū* as in *mate*, *meat*, *mite*, *mote*, *mute*, *my*; *ē ē ī ū ā ū* as in *mat*, *met*, *mitt*, *not*, *nut*, *pity*; *ā* as in *father*; *ēr* as in *merry*; *ēr* as in *mercer*; *ou* as in *loud*; *au* as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ā* in *senate*). Consonants: *g* always as in *go*; *th* as in *thief*; *dh* as *th* in *mother*; *ng* as in *sing* or in *singer*; *ng-g* as *ng* in *finger*. See *Syllables*.

contradictory, but not truly so; opposed to public opinion; **unrea'sonable**, contrary to reason.

**an ac'cent** (ak'sent). (1) The rise of the voice on a certain syllable: The word "simplify" has the accent on the first syllable. (2) The pronunciation of certain sounds: "a Southern accent, a foreign accent, an Irish brogue."—In printing, the accent is indicated thus: ' **AFTER** the accented syllable. (In the International Phonetic Alphabet, the accent mark is placed **BEFORE** the accented syllable.) Accent rules according to terminations are given under -al, -ent, -ous, -ify, -ion, etc. See Pronounce.

**to accent'**; to place the accent on a word or syllable.

**ac'cent, vāriable**. A number of English words of Latin origin, usually beginning with a prefix such as com-, con-, ab-, pro-, etc., have two different accentuations in English. Usually they are accented on the first syllable when they are nouns, and on the second syllable when they are verbs, an **ac'cent**, to **accent'**.

#### List of words with vāriable accent.

Adjectives or nouns	Verbs or adjectives
ab'sent (adjective)	to absent'
an ab'stract	to abstract'
ab'stract (adjective)	
an ac'cent	to accent'
alter'nate (adjective)	to al'ternate
an at'tribute	to attrib'ute
a collect (prayer)	to collect'
a com'bat (kūm'bāt)	to combat' (kūm'bāt')
a com'mune (town)	to commune' (kū-mūn')
a com'pact (agreement)	to compact'
	compact' (adjective: tight)
a com'pound	to compound'
a com'press	to compress'
a con'cert	to concert'
con'crete (material)	to concrete'
the con'fines (of a city)	to confine' (somebody in-doors)
a con'flict	to conflict'
a con'sole (chest)	to console'
a con'sort (husband or wife)	to consort' (associate) with
con'tent, con'tents	to content' (satisfy)
(the thing contained)	
a con'test	content' (adjective: satisfied)
a con'tract	to contest'
a con'trast	to contract'
con'verse (adjective)	to contrast'
a con'vert	to converse' (talk)
a con'vict	to convert'
a con'voy	to convict'
a des'ert (děz'ert)	to convoy'
a dė'tail	to desert' (dī-zert')
	to detail'

a di'gest	to di'gest
an en'trance	to entrance' (charm)
an es'cort	to escort'
an ex'pert	expert' (adjective)
ex'port (of goods)	to export'
an ex'tract	to extract'
a fer'ment	to ferment'
a fore'cast	to forecast'
an im'port	to import'
an im'print	to imprint'
in'cense (perfume)	to incense' (annoy)
an in'cline (slope)	to incline' (bend)
an in'crease	to increase'
an in'sult	to insult'
an ob'ject (thing)	to object' (oppose)
per'fect (adjective)	to perfect' (make good)
a per'fume	to perfume'
a per'mit	to permit'
a per'vert	to pervert'
a prē'fix	to prefix'
a prē'lūde	to prelude'
the prēm'ises (place)	to premise (prē-mīz')
a (logical) prēm'ise	
a pres'age	to presage'
a pres'ent	to present'
the pro'ceeds	to proceed'
prōd'uce (from the farm)	to prōd'uce'
prōg'ress	to prōgress'
a prōj'ect	to prōject'
a prō'test	to prōtest'
pur'port	to purport'
a rēb'el	to rebēl'
a rēc'ord	to record'
rēf'use	to refuse (rī-fūz')
a rē'print	to reprint'
rē'tail	to retail'
a sub'ject	to subject'
a sur'vey	to survey'
a trans'fer	to transfer'

### Two verbs with one spelling.

to conjure (kūn'jer), to summon as if by magic, bring to mind;

to conjure (kun-jūr'), pray, implore, request.

### Double words with one accent.

Most words in English may be used as nouns or verbs without change of accent. The following, however, are often mispronounced owing to their similarity to double accent forms:—

accord' (an accord', to accord'), address', advance', ally' (to rime with ply), burlesque (burlesk'), cap'ture, control', coquet' or coquette' (kō-kēt'), corral' (for horses), cōstūme,

defeat, employ', excuse (both have the accent on the second syllable, but the s is pronounced differently: an eks-kūs', to eks-kūz'), exploit', intrigue (in-träg'), lim'it, par'don, pic'ture, prac'tice (the verb is sometimes spelled practise), pref'ace, proffer, prom'ise, recall', receipt (rī-sēt'), regard', release', repair', resolve', resort', retort', retreat', rev'el, revenge', reverse', rī'val, romance'.

to **accede** to a request, to the throne.—Spelled like **precede**, **recede**; from Latin cedo, cessum, to step or move; hence **accession** of a king to the throne; **accessory**, thing added; **accessible**, easily reached; **access** to a place.

to **accept** (literally "take to"). Do not confuse with **except** (literally "take out of"); these two words are exact opposites.

"Please **accept** my thanks. I regret we cannot **accept** your kind invitation. It is not **accepted** in good society. We shall come, **except** Betty, who is unwell. There is no rule without **exception**. I **except** no one from my good wishes."

**acceptance** of an offer: "I received his acceptance of our invitation yesterday"; **acceptation**, sense of a word: "The word 'sympathetic' is not used in English with the French acceptation, which makes it synonymous with 'lovable.'"

**accessory**, adjective; which is added as a help: an automobile accessory.—An **accessory** after the fact, one who helps a criminal get away or conceal his crime; an **abettor**, one who encourages another to wrong-doing; an **assistant**, one who helps, but has only reflected authority; an **accomplice**, one who is in the plot; an **ally** (ālī'), one in formal league with; a **partner**, one who shares in the work and profit.

an **accident** (ak'sident), something that happens, generally something injurious; a **misfortune** through a series of circumstances; a **mishap**, trifling accident; a **calamity**, serious happening, causing sorrow to many; a **disaster**, very serious happening causing great loss.

to **accommodate**. Note the spelling: two c's, two m's; AC-CoM-Modate, from Ad-cum-modus "to, with, manner," a manner of making things fit.

to **acclimate** or **acclimatize**, make used to a climate. A tree becomes **acclimated**, naturally; an animal brought from a foreign country becomes **acclimatized**, by human agency. (This distinction is not universally accepted.)

to **accompany** (accompanying, accompanied; an **accompaniment**; an **accompanist**). To go with, especially socially; to **escort**, as an honor; **attend**, wait on, respectfully; **convoy**, in force, for safety, as a warship.

to **accomplish** (āk-kūm'plish), to finish thoroughly, fulfill; to **achieve** a difficult result; **attain** a worthy aim; **perform**, from beginning to end; **consummate**, carry past the last stage; **perfect**, in detail.

an **account** (abbreviated acct. or, in business, a/c); a **bill** presented as due; a **statement** (in commerce), a list of debits and credits; an **invoice**, bill payable; a **balance sheet**, firm's com-

plete statement; a **story**, narrative; a **statement** (in narrative), thing said positively; a **description**, in detail; a **history**, authentic.

an **ache** (āk), to **ache** (āk).—There used to be two words: to **ake**, an ache, written and pronounced like "to speak, a speech." Eventually they were confused, and the spelling of the noun "ache" was retained, with the pronunciation of the verb: **āk**. This is a perfect example of the necessity for Spelling Reform.

to **achieve** (achieving, achieved; achievable; an achievement); to "bring to a head" a difficult result, indirectly connected with the word "chief," a head; to **accomplish** or **fulfill**, bring to completion; to **attain** a worthy aim, come to the point of "holding" it; **perform**, from beginning to end; **perfect** in all its details, "do thoroughly"; **consummate**, pass the last stage of.

to **acknowledge** (ak-nōl'ēj) a claim, or the receipt of something; to **admit**, recognize as true, without implication of guilt; **confess** a guilt; **own**, as personal; **avow**, boldly.

an **acquaintance** with somebody or something through personal contact; **intimacy**, close and continued relations; **familiarity**, treating as a member of the family, without special respect; **association**, in business or formal way.

an **acquirement**, acquired charm or ability; an **acquisition**, thing of value acquired; **attainment** of worthy aim; **achievement** of difficult object; **accomplishment**, social grace.

"She is more proud of her accomplishments, which include music and painting, than of her achievements in the field of nursing." "The services of such a famous surgeon were a great acquisition to the hospital." "He is a young man of unusual acquirements."

**acrimony** (from Latin acer, sharp, rasping). Heat and bitterness of language or temper: "Each blaming the other, the rival mothers engaged in an **ācrīmō'nious** discussion."—**Acerbity**, cold bitterness of language or temper, as in sudden reaction to an offensive remark; **asperity**, raspingness of the voice; **bitterness** of mood, including feelings of regret, disgust, loneliness; **tartness** of words, pungency; **sourness** of disposition.

**across**. Latin trans; hence to **transport**, carry across; **transmit**, send across; **transfer**, bear across. Greek dia; hence **diām'eter**, the measure across; **di'ālōgue** or **dialog**, talk from one to another, as in a play or story.

to **act**. Latin ago, actum, "to do"; hence an **agent**, one who acts on behalf of another; to **react**, act in the opposite direction; **agile**, nimble, quick to act; **active**, fond of doing things; to **actuate**, move to action: "actuated by noble motives"; hence also the suffix **-ation**, meaning an act: admiration, veneration, etc. To **work**: "it works"; **function** in the proper sequence; **operate**, get into action, or put in action: "this machine is easy to operate"; **perform** or do from beginning to end a set part: "The play was performed by amateurs"; **represent** a character; **enact** a law: "The legis-

lature enacted a resolution against gambling"; **execute** or carry out something already decided; **pursue** a course of action; **transact** business in a certain way; **practice** an art in which one is growing more skilled; **exercise** a right, a privilege.

In the theatrical sense, see Theater.

Intermittent ways of acting are expressed by such verbs as to **alternate**, **recur**, **discontinue**, **interpose**, **intervene**, **interrupt**; **jolt**, **jar**, **shake**, etc.; and by such adjectives as **desultory**, performed in several "jumpy" efforts; **perfunctory**, done because it is a duty and as badly as one dare; **spontaneous**, done without outside inducement: "a spontaneous outburst of applause"; **simultaneous** (sī- or sīm-), done at the same time, intentionally: "The armies moved on both fronts simultaneously"; **coincident**, done at the same time without previous arrangement; **spasmodic**, done by fits and starts, irregularly.

**an act**, a complete unit of action: "an act of mercy"; (on the stage) a series of scenes forming one unit as to time and generally as to place; (in law) a **decision**, **record**, **document**, **judgment** (Act of Parliament, act of sale, Act of Faith); a **deed**, result of an act; an **action**, the doing of an act, without regard to completion; a feat of strength, of skill; an **exploit**, brilliant.

Full of action.....ac'tive

Pertaining to action.....dŷnām'ic, kinēt'ic

Pertaining to stage acting.....histriōn'ic (ability)

Tending to prevent action.....dīl'atory

One who acts for another.....an āgent, a representative

One who represents at a meeting...a del'egate

Representative of a country.....an ambas'sador (to an independent sovereign state), minister (to minor country), a chargé d'affaires (shar-zhā'dā-fēr') (temporary)

One who acts tactfully.....a diplomāt

One who acts as a machine.....an autom'aton

Skill in action.....dextēr'ity

To lead another to act.....to incite, stīmulate, etc.

To act criminally.....to perpetrate (a crime).

**an action** (See also act), the doing of an act, without regard to completion.—The idea of action or agent is often expressed by a suffix: to **harmonize**, **preparation**, **reckoning**, **applicant**, **impromptor**, **adviser**, etc.

**ac'tive**, adjective; acting quickly or habitually; **energet'ic**, full of energy; **indus'trious**, fond of work; **alart'**, wide awake; **agile** (āj'il), able to move lightly; **busy** (bīzī), doing much;

Pronunciation key. Vowels ā ē ī ō ū ŷ as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ä ē i ō ū ŷ as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; Ä as in father; ēr as in merry; er as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ä in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.

**diligent**, always busy; **nimble**, quick-moving wit, fingers; **spry**, wide awake; **supple**, flexible; **lively**, full of life.

In Grammar, a verb is said to be **active** when the person who performs the action is represented as the subject: I read. A verb is said to be in the **passive** voice when the action is represented as performed upon the subject: it is written. See Verb.

an **ac'tor**, professional player (feminine: **actress**); an **artist**, one appearing in a play; **player**, in a particular production; **performer** of an act; **star**, whose name appears on the bills before the name of the play; a **lead** (lēd) or **featured player**, always mentioned with the name of the play; a **principal**, one playing an important rôle; an **extra**, one playing a small bit or part; a **character**, one who looks a type; a **utility**, one who can play many minor parts; a **comédian**; a **tragédian**; an **ingénue** (eng-zhā-noo), a young girl.

**actual** (**actually**, **actuality**), which is true, or which is taking place now; **real**, **true**, **positive**, **honest**, **absolute**.

to **adapt**, literally "to make apt" or fitting; to change in essential details so as to make fit for a different purpose; to **adjust**, by making small changes; to **arrange**, place together; to **accommodate**, make do.

to **add**. Latin **addo**, "give to"; to put together two or more of the same nature so as to form a whole; to **join**, end to end; **unite**, make one; **unify**, make as one; **attach**, tie one less important to one more important; **append**, as a tail or end, piece; **augment**, make more; **increase**, make larger; **tag on**, tie on; **sum up**, state in a total; **prēfix**, place before; **affix**, place either before or after; **accrue**, become joined, "grow on," become due.

Thing added to complete.....a sup'plement

Thing added for extra use.....an acces'sory

Which keeps on adding itself...cū'mulative

An addition which grows on....an accretion

Added by chance.....adventitious, foreign

A subordinate part.....an appen'dage

Something that belongs to.....an appurtenance

Note to be added in a book.....an adden'dum (plural ad-denda).

an **addict**, one given to certain habits, like drugs.—**Addicted** to drugs, etc.; **devoted** to a good cause, one's family; **accustomed** to something done by someone else; **inclined** to, having a natural preference for; **attached** to something known and cherished; **habituated** to something unpleasant.

an **address**, an informal speech or greeting.—A **salute**, military; a **greeting** by word or gesture; a **plea** for a cause; an **appeal** from a decision or result; a **prayer**, worshipful request.

(In the sense of "skill") **courtesy**, **manners**, **politeness**, **tact**, **diplomacy**. "A man of good address."

**ād'equāte** for; equal to a requirement; **sufficient**, which is enough; **commensurate** with, "of the same measure as"; **suitable** for, of the right nature; **ample**, entirely sufficient.

**ad infinitum**, "until infinity," forever, endlessly, "world without end."

**an adjective** (ad'jĕk-tĭv), literally "thing thrown next to." In Grammar, a word placed near a noun or near a phrase used as a noun, to indicate some change in its value, some qualification of its extent or character. A **qualifying** adjective is one that explains the noun: "A red house, a tall building, a long tunnel"; a **possessive** adjective limits the noun as to ownership: "my purse, your car"; a **numeral** adjective gives definite quantities: "ten soldiers, the fifth man, a threefold reward, a double bottom"; a **determinative** adjective limits the noun as to identity: "the paper" (a, an, the, are often called **articles**), "this paper, each sheet, every line, no ink, all the books."

Comparison of adjectives, see Comparative.

Adverbs are derived from adjectives usually by adding -ly or by changing final -y into -ily: bad, badly; pretty, prettily; entire, entirely. When the adjective already ends in -ly, a roundabout adverbial phrase must be used: "she is lovely" (adjective); "she dresses in a lovely manner" (not: lovelily).

Use an adjective after verbs like feel, look, seem, taste, etc., when the action is stated as of the subject: this rose smells sweet (it IS sweet); he sells fruit cheap (it IS cheap). Use the adverb when the word refers to the manner of the action and not to its subject: he sells fruit cheaply (in a cheap manner, badly presented in a cheap store, etc.); she acted very sweetly (in a sweet manner).

to **adjourn** (ă-jĕrn'). From Latin dies, day; diurnus, daily; French jour, a day; hence journal, a daily paper originally, now a weekly or monthly.—To dismiss a meeting until another set time: "The meeting adjourned till Tuesday"; to **postpone** a decision; **prorogue** (Parliament, at the end of a session); **suspend** an activity, for a short time only; **dissolve** a legislative body, a committee; make it cease to exist.

to **adjust**. See Adapt.

to **admire** (admĭ'ring, ad'mĭră'tion, ăd'mĭrable; an admirer); to look up to a person with wonder and self-effacement; to **respect**, show esteem for one who is considered one's superior; to **regard**, esteem an equal; to **approve** or **approve** of a desirable course of action; to **applaud**, clap the hands in praise of; to **revere** a superior person of high character; to **venerate**, somebody old or considered super-human.

**admissible**, right, proper, permissible, fair, just, reasonable, tolerable.

to **admit**, recognize as true, without implication of guilt; **confess** guilt; **acknowledge** a claim, or the receipt of something; own as personal; **avow** boldly.

**admittance** to a show or public place; **admission** of the truth of a statement, without implying guilt; **confession** of guilt; **acknowledgment** of a claim, or of the receipt of something.



- to **adorn**, add something graceful which will produce beauty, with a sentiment of reverence in the act; to **ornament**, add material details expected to be admired, often as much for their costliness as for their beauty; to **embellish**, add or change details so as to make an appeal to the imagination; to **decorate**, add one or a few individual ornaments; to **deck** in fine clothes; to **garnish**, put on the side as a finishing touch: "to garnish a steak with parsley"; to **illustrate**, by drawings or pictures, as a book; to **beautify**, make beautiful.
- to **advance**, to go forward, push forward; to **go up**, prices; to **rise**; to **proceed** from one place to another; to **progress** appreciably. (To put forth reasons, etc.) to **present** a statement, **adduce** an explanation, **expound** a theory, **explain** a fact, **propound** a new theory.

**advant'geous**. Note that the **e** is preserved before **-ous** to preserve the soft sound of the **g**.

- an **adverb**. In Grammar, a modifying word or phrase (adverbial phrase) applied to a verb, an adjective, or another adverb: "He speaks well" (adverb modifying a verb); "a fully remembered lesson" (adverb modifying an adjective); "it was done very quickly" (adverb modifying another adverb). The words **yes** and **no**, used by themselves, do not fall within the definition of adverbs, since they modify nothing; they are often called "particles," which is equivalent to admitting that they are not parts of speech but truly complete sentences in one word.

**Formation of adverbs**.—Some words are naturally and exclusively adverbs, and remain invariable: much, well, now, here, thus, ill. It is unnecessary and therefore wrong, except for humorous purposes, to say "muchly, welly, nowly, herely, thusly, illy."—Some words are both adjectives and adverbs, like "fast" (originally meaning "steadily"); some have two forms: very, verily; quick or quickly. Most are formed from natural adjectives by adding **-ly** (changing a preceding **-y** to **-i** if necessary, and dropping an **-e** mute): high, highly; haughty, haughtily; true, truly. When the adjective already ends in **-ly**, an adverb cannot be formed from it, and a roundabout phrase or another adverb may have to be used: "lovely" does not form an adverb "lovelily": "Her dress was lovely," "she was dressed beautifully" (not "lovelily").

**Comparison of adverbs**: Simple adverbs which are, by their sense, capable of being compared, are compared in the same manner as adjectives: soon, sooner, soonest; but those ending in **-ly** are compared with **more** and **most**, unlike many adjectives ending in **-ly** that are compared with **-er** and **-est**: (adverbs) likely, more likely, most likely; sweetly, more sweetly, most sweetly; (adjectives) kindly, kindlier, kindest.

**Classification**. Adverbs may be classified arbitrarily according to the relationships they express, such as logical relationships (cause, effect, manner, affirmation, negation, etc.), or spatial relationships (place, direction, origin, etc.). Adverbs of manner: so, thus, well, slowly, etc.

Adverbs of place or direction: here, there, everywhere, nowhere, hither, thither, hence, upward, downward, etc. (see Questions);

Adverbs of time: now, then, sometimes, ever, never, always, today;

Adverbs of quantity: much, little, enough, etc.;

Adverbs of number: once, twice, singly, secondly;

Adverbs of interrogation (which are themselves classifiable under time, place, etc.): when, where, how, why, etc.;

Adverbs of comparison: more, less, etc.;

Adverbs of affirmation, negation, uncertainty: perhaps, surely, certainly, indeed, nay, etc.

**Adverbial phrases:** By and by, not long ago, in a word, in a week, in a month, in a year, a little while, how much, how many, as much, too much, to be sure, etc. (see Transitions).

**ad'verse** to, opposed to; **averse** to, turning away from. "He is **averse** to personal publicity" (he does not like it); "he gave the measure his **adverse** vote" (he voted against it).

**adverti'sing**, an **advert'isement**.—Advertising is paid for; **publicity** is used when speaking of unpaid notices in the press, considered as news.

### Some words used on this subject

A campaign; space, display, classified; lay out, text, illustrations, cuts, borders, design; mats (matrices), stereos, electros; a pull, a proof, galley proof, a revise; outdoor advertising, a painted display; a billboard, poster, 24-sheet, single sheet; a window display, dealer helps, demonstration; broadsides, heralds, throw-outs, hand-outs; to boost, to ballyhoo. **some advice**, "good advice"; to **advise** (ad-vîz'), to counsel; **advisable**, an **adviser**, a counsellor.

-æ (pronounced in Latin î, and in anglicized Latin words ē).—Latin plural nominative termination, used in many English words as a general plural, even in the objective case: larvæ, larvæ, regardless of the fact that a Latin feminine word in -a has several plural forms: formulæ, formulas, formularum, formulis, one of which, the objective case, in -as, would have supplied a regular English plural. If we wish to speak Latin, we should say: The formulæ are here; I have seen the formulas; this is the best of the formularum; it is enclosed with the formulis. It would be no more absurd than choosing the nominative case -ae for all round use. For this reason, whenever a Latin word has both a Latin plural in -ae, and an English plural in -as, the English form should be preferred.

**aer-**. Latin root meaning air. Note the exact pronunciation of words containing this root: â as in mate, er as in her: â'er-ô-plane, â'er-â-ted; but the word â-ê'rial is an exception.

to **affect**, to have some influence on: "The trouble with his throat will not affect his lungs." Do not confuse with **effect**, which means "produce a result completely": "We have succeeded in effecting a reconciliation between them."

**an affectation**, a display of qualities that do not belong to one: "Her talking with an Oxford accent is a pure affectation, as she mispronounces half her words."—Do not confuse with **affection**.

**an affection**, an emotion: "love is a powerful affection"; in medical parlance, a diseased condition; "The affection has reached the patient's knee."

**afraid**, originally "afeared." The three-word form "I am afraid" is identical in meaning with the older two-word form, "I fear." The tendency of the English language is toward analytical forms, in several words, although the one-word forms are to be preferred in formal writing.

**after**. Latin *post*; hence to **postpone**, put off until later; **postscript**, something written after the body of the letter; **post mortem**, examination of a body after death; **postprandial**, occurring after dinner. Greek *epi*; hence an **épilogue**, conclusion, opposite of prologue.

To look after (a young person)....to **chaperon** (shăp'er-ōn)  
Which comes after.....**subsequent** (adjective)

**afternoon**. Abbreviated p.m. after figures only.—It is contrary to good usage to use abbreviations as words, especially in social correspondence. It is therefore wrong to write: "I am coming this p.m."

**again**. Latin *iterum*; hence to **reiterate**, to say again, do again. The idea of **again** is often expressed by the prefix *re-*: rebound, recollect, recharge, etc.

A call for a number to be sung

again .....an **encore** (ang-kor')

A play or piece performed again

and again at different periods..a **repertory** or **repertoire**  
play (rep'er-torĭ, rep'-er-twâr)

**against**. Latin *contra*; hence to **contradict**, talk against; **contrary**; **contravene**. Latin also *ob*, opposite; hence **obstacle**, thing which stands against; **objection**, a reason thrown against; **opposition**, thing placed against; **obloquy**, talk against. Greek *anti*; hence **antidote**, remedy given against a poison; **antagonist**, one fought against.

To talk against something: to **dep'ecate** a plan; **dispar'age** a person's good name; **defame** somebody's reputation.

One who stands against: an **en'emy**, unfriendly; **oppo'nent**, who defends the other side; **ad'versary**, redoubtable opponent; **antag'onist** in formal combat.

**ag-, act-**. Latin root meaning "do." Derived forms: **äg'ile**, **äg'ent**, **active**, **transact**, **exact** ("done thoroughly"). See **Do**.

**an ägent**, who has power to make agreements; a **represen'tative**, general term; **salesman**, for sales only; **broker**, on commission

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels ä ä ĩ ö ü ŷ as in mate, meet, mite, mote, my; ä ä ĩ ö ü ŷ as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; ä as in father; ä as in merry; er as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ä in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.

- and dealing with more than one firm or party; **attorney** (āter'nī), agent at law.
- to **aggravate**, to make more serious: "This aggravates the offense."  
 "Traffic congestion was aggravated by the closing of the old road."—**Aggravate** refers to things, and is not used when referring to a person who is **annoying**, **exasperating**.
- an **āgnōs'tic**, literally "one who does not know" (a **Gnostic** [nōs'tik] being one who claimed to know the Infinite); one who believes that the ultimate Cause of the universe cannot be known by man's limited intellect.
- an **agitation** (ājītā'shun), a commotion, with many people involved; a disturbance of the peace; **excitement**, sudden appeal to the imagination; **perturbation**, unfavorable excitement, mental, etc.; **upheaval**, commotion leading to radical changes, in politics, business, etc.
- to **agree** (**agreeing**, **agreed**, **agreeable**, **an agreement**). To concur with an opinion, share it as a whole; to **coincide**, be measurable by the same tests: "Our views coincide."

Definitely unable to agree.....deadlocked  
 Agreement to feign something for fraud.....collusion  
 Agreeable words exchanged.....amenities

**agriculture**, the art of cultivating the land; **farming**.

### Some words used on this subject

- To plow, till, cultivate, sow, reap, gather, thrash, mow; country, plains, valley, prairie, plateau, woodland, pasture; estate, ranch, farm, section, township; field, furrow, cereals, wheat, corn, rye, barley, oats, hemp, flax; ear, straw, stubble, sheaf, rick, stack; fence, hedge, gate, corral, barn, stable, silo, feed, manure, fertilizer; meadow, alfalfa, clover, cake, grass, hay, fodder, aftermath; the corn belt, the cotton belt, mixed farming, dry farming, cattle raising, corn raising, wheat growing, cotton growing, tobacco growing, a cotton gin, a creamery, an elevator, a packing house, a freight train, a freight car; markets, cooperation, union.
- to **aid**, to second somebody in a particular work; to **abet**, encourage or incite to a crime; **help** in urgent need; **assist**, help somebody who is hurt or powerless; **subsidize**, give money to set somebody on his feet, or to assist some business that would be a failure without it.
- an **aim**, at which one shoots as straight as possible; an **object** to be reached or grasped; an **objective**, to be reached eventually; a **purpose**, an aim with a good reason behind it; an **aspiration**, a noble aim; a **desire**, impulse to get something; an **intention**, general movement of desire; a **goal** (gōl), objective.
- ain't**. This word is no longer accepted in formal English or in educated conversation. Use "isn't" in the singular, "aren't" in the plural.—Note the form **aren't I**, commonly used in England as a survival of **a'n't I**. In America **am I** not is preferred.

**air.** Latin aer; hence **ā'er-ōplane**, **ā'er-o-drome**, **ā-ē'rial**. Greek pneuma; hence **pneumatic** (nū-mat'ik) tires. German Luft, connected with lofty, high and airy.

As light as air (figurative).....airy.

Lighter than air (figurative).....ēthē'rēāl.

Pertaining to air (materially).....ā-ē'rial.

**-al.** Words of three syllables ending in -al have the accent on the first syllable: hos'pital, vir'tual, in'terval; except words in -ial, -sal, -nal (which see); except also revī'val, review'al, pursū'al, renew'al.

**alert'**, wide awake, person, eye; **lively** step, manner; **prompt** response; **ready** wit, etc.; **watchful**, on the lookout.

**ali.** Latin root meaning "other." Derived forms: **ā'lien**, **ā'lias**, **ā'lienate**, **inā'lienable**. See Other.

**ā'lias**, a Latin word meaning "otherwise"; an **ā'lias**, a false name used by criminals and others. Same root as **ā'lien**, **ā'lībi**, etc. See Word-Finder entry under **Other**.

**an ā'lī-bī.** Latin: "elsewhere." In law, a defendant pleads an **alibi** when he claims to have been elsewhere at the time of the offense. Colloquially, an **alibi** is a poor excuse; an **alibi** artist is one who escapes unpleasant duties and finds good reasons for doing so.

**an ā'lien**, from Latin *alius*, other.—A citizen of another country, while he is in the speaker's country; a **foreigner**, one born elsewhere; a **strānger**, one who has no friends or relatives in a place.—An **ā'lienist**, a doctor specializing on mental cases; to **ā'lienate** the affections of a person, turn them away; property, by taking it away from its rightful owner.

**alike**, adjective: with a mistakable resemblance in form or shape; **identical**, which is truly the same as another; **sim'ilar** in one or more ways, but not so as to cause mistakes; **anal'ogous**, in style, purpose; **homoge'neous**, made of the same substance.

"The two cases you are discussing are not anal'ogous.—The handwriting of this anonymous letter is identical with the defendant's writing.—The twins are strongly alike.—You and I have similar tastes."

**all.** Latin *omnis*, all, every; hence **omnīpres'ent**, present everywhere; **omnīpotent**, able to do anything, all-powerful; **omnibus**, a vehicle for everybody. Greek *pan*, *pantos*; hence **pantheism**, the belief that all Nature is God; **pan-American**, concerning every country in North, Central and South America; **pantheon**, a temple dedicated to all the gods, heroes or famous men; **panorama**, a general view round one point; **pantograph**, an instrument for drawing anything.

**All** refers to more than two, or to several pieces: "**All** the biscuits have been eaten. He has eaten **all** the cake" (it was cut in several pieces, or he ate it at different times. But "he has eaten **the whole** cake" if he ate it at one sitting, or if we think of the cake as an uncut unit).

When referring to two only, use **both**: "Both the children are here."

After a superlative, use **all**: "best of all, tallest of all." After a comparative, use **any**: "Better than any, taller than any."

**All**, adverb, can be replaced by one of the adverbs **entirely**, **wholly**, **fully**, **completely**: It is all finished, it is entirely finished.

**All** may be used as a noun: I shared his all. **Plenitude**, **fullness**: I shared in the plenitude of his wealth.

**all**. Words and phrases with **all**: **All right** (always written in two words; there is no such word as "alright"); **always** (in one word, meaning "at all times"); **all ways** (meaning "in all directions" but very seldom used in that sense); **altogether** (in one word, meaning "in one piece, as one unit," entirely: "These shoes are altogether too small," "I cannot altogether agree with you"); **all together** (in two words when it means "everybody in one group": "They were expected at different times, but they arrived all together"); **although** (one word).

See also **every**, **each**, **any**, **either**, **both**, **neither**.

**alliteration** (ălit'era'shūn).—The repetition of a sound for effect. Full fathom five thy father lies.

Daily Dozen.

Round the rugged rocks, the ragged rascal ran.

**all right**. This is always written in two words, and is never correctly written "alright," because it means just what it says: "entirely right." Only the groups which have lost their original meaning, such as **already**, **always**, **also**, **alone**, **altogether**, are written in one word.

**to allow** (ă-lou'), offer no opposition to a course of action: "Allow me to help you"; **to let**, used as an auxiliary, without to: "Let me help you"; **to permit**, positively give a license; **consent** to a course, be willing; **sanction** as desirable; **tolerate**, rather than make a fuss; **grant** a request; **concede** a claim; **acknowledge** receipt or accuracy of something.

**an allowance**, discretionary amount to cover expenses; a **sub'sidy**, help to something that does not pay well enough of itself, or to a loyal supporter; **pension** (pĕn'shun), regular time payments; **annū'ity**, periodical payments continuing for life or for a certain term; **subven'tion**, grant to a philanthropic or noble purpose; **bounty**, aid given as a free and generous gift; **pittance**, inadequate gift; **rā'tion**, apportioned quantity of food; **dole**, small funds carefully handed out.

**to allude** to a thing, mention it casually; **to refer** to a thing, speak of it again, after it has been spoken of, or after it has been under consideration. "I thought he had forgotten it, but he referred to it again yesterday." "His mysterious words alluded to his recent disappointment, on which he is very rĕt'icent."

**an allū'sion**, casual mention: "His veiled allusions to the Government's policies were understood by his hearers and cheered to the echo."

Do not confuse with an **illusion**, a deceptive idea.

an **ally** (ă-lī'), one with whom another is in league (**allying, allied, alliance**). Note the pronunciation, to rhyme with "lie."

**almond** (ă-mŭnd; l is silent, as in salmon, psalm, palm).

**alone** (literally all-one, just as "atone" means to be at-one). Latin solus; hence **solitude**, a lonely place, being alone; **solitary**, by itself; **desolate**, abandoned, neglected; **solitaire**, a game of cards, etc., played by oneself; a single gem as a shirt stud.—**Secluded** (place), shut off from easy access; **sequestered**, confiscated in trust, put away for safekeeping, not to be touched; **per se** (literally, "in itself"): "This argument per se will not convince him: he needs practical proof."

an **alphabet**. Greek "alpha," name of the letter a; "beta," name of the letter b. "The A.B.C." The old Runic alphabet of Scandinavian, Anglo-Saxon and Germanic people (2nd to 11th century A.D.) was called a **futhorc**, from the names of its first six letters, f, u, th, o, r, c.—The English alphabet is on the whole the same as the Roman, with a few improvements already made, and several in process of evolution. The Romans used indiscriminately i and j, now specialized; they used indiscriminately u and v, also now specialized (although we preserve the spelling **ve**, in words like **have, receive, give**, for no better reason than that **ve** was the former spelling **ue** used to distinguish the sound v from the sound u). We still use indiscriminately the letters s and z (advertise, criticize or criticise), which are gradually being separated; we use indiscriminately s and c for the sound s (cistern), and the letters c and k for the sound k: cat, kitten (for kat, kitten). The unique feature of the English alphabet is the multiplicity of sounds ascribed to vowels (see Vowels). Our six written vowels are called to do the work of at least thirteen pure vowel sounds.

Our alphabet is therefore far from phonetic (written according to sound: "one letter, one sound; one sound, one letter"). There is an alphabet, now used extensively in language teaching, which is practically phonetic, and which applies equally to any language, from Zulu to Russian, and from English to French. It is called the International Phonetic Alphabet. It has 87 letters, covering every spoken language; of these, 33 only are necessary to write English phonetically, without the use of accented letters.

### A specimen of English in the International Phonetic Alphabet.

ðe sən sez, mai neim iz sən. ai m vɜre braɪt. ai raɪz ɪn ðe ɪst, ɒn hwen ai raɪz, ɪt s dei. ai lʊk ɪn et ʒɔz wɪndə wɪð mai braɪt, ɡouldn ai, ɒn tɛl ju hwen ɪt s taɪm tə ɡet ʌp; ɛnd ai sei, sləʒəd, ɡet ʌp; ai daʊnt ʃaɪn fɔr ju tə laɪ ɪn bɛd ɒn sli:p, bɛt ai ʃaɪn fɔr ju tə ɡet ʌp ɒn wɔ:k, ɒn ri:d, ɒn wɔ:k ɛbaʊt.

ai m e ɡreɪt trævəlɜ; ai trævəl ɔ:l ɒvəz ðe skai; ai nəvɜr stɒp, ɛnd ai m nəvɜr taɪd. ai hæv e kraʊn ɒn mai hed, e kraʊn ɛv braɪt reɪz, ɛnd ai sɛnd aʊt mai reɪz svɜrehwɜs. ai ʃaɪn ɒn ðe trɪz, ɒn ðe haʊzɜz, ɒn ðe wɔ:tɜ; ɛnd svɜrðɪŋ lʊks spɜrkɪŋ ɒn bju:tɪfl hwen ai ʃaɪn ɒn ɪt.

ai giv ju lait; end ai giv ju hi:t, fər ai meik svreθiŋ wɔrm.  
ai meik ðe fru:t raipn, end ai meik ðe kɔ:m raipn. if ai did nt  
ʃaɪn ɒn ðe fi:ldz ɒn ɡa:dnz, nʌθiŋ wed ɡrou.

(The sun says, "My name is Sun. I'm very bright. I rise in the East, and when I rise it's day. I look in at your window with my bright, golden eye, and tell you when it's time to get up; and I say, 'Sluggard, get up; I don't shine for you to lie in bed and sleep, but I shine for you to get up and work, and read, and walk about.'")

"I'm a great traveler; I travel all over the sky; I never stop, and I'm never tired. I have a crown on my head, a crown of bright rays, and I send out my rays everywhere. I shine on the trees, and the houses, and the water; and everything looks sparkling and beautiful when I shine on it.

"I give you light; and I give you heat, for I make everything warm. I make the fruit ripen, and I make the corn ripen. If I didn't shine on the fields and gardens, nothing would grow.")

See also the articles under Vowels, Spelling, E mute, and particularly the important article under Syllables.

### A specimen of French in the International Phonetic Alphabet.

lə solɛ:j di, ʒə m apɛl solɛ:j. ʒə sɥi trɛ brijɑ̃. ʒə m lɛ:v a  
l ɛst, e kɑ̃ ʒə m lɛ:v, i fe ʒur. ʒə rɡardɛ par ta fɛn:tr avɛk  
mɑ̃n œ:j brijɑ̃ kɔm l ɔ:r, e ʒ tɛ di kɑ̃t il s tɑ̃ d tɛ lve; e ʒ tɛ di,  
parɛsɔ, lɛv twa; ʒə n bri:j pɑ pur kɛ ty rest o li a dormi:r, me ʒə  
bri:j pur kɛ ty t lɛ:v e k ty trava:j, kɛ ty li:z e k ty t prɔmɑ̃.

(Le soleil dit: Je m'appelle Soleil. Je suis très brillant. Je me lève à l'est, et quand je me lève il fait jour; etc.)

### A specimen of German in the International Phonetic Alphabet.

di zone za:kt, 'iç huise di zone. 'iç bin ɡants ɡlɛntsɛnt.  
'iç ɡe:ɐ im 'ɔstɛn 'auf, 'unt vɛn 'iç 'aufɡe:ɐ, virt sɛ ta:k. 'iç gukɛ  
in dain fɛnʃtɛr mit mainɛm kla:rɛn, ɡoldɛnɛn 'aʊɡɛ hinain, 'unt  
'iç za:ɡɛ di:r, vɛn 'ɛs tsait 'ist 'auftʃu:ftɛ:n; 'unt 'iç za:ɡɛ: fte:  
'auf, faulpsɛltɛ; 'iç ʃaine niçt, damit du 'im bɛtɛ blaipt, zɔndɛrn  
'iç ʃaine, damit du 'auftʃtɛ:st 'unt 'arbaɪtɛst 'unt li:st 'unt hɛrum-  
ɡɛ:st.

(Die Sonne sagt, Ich heise die Sonne, usw.)

---

Pronunciation key. Vowels ʌ ɛ i ɔ ʊ ʏ as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ʌ ɛ i ɔ ʊ ʏ as in mat, met, mit, nut, pity; ʌ as in father; ɛr as in merry; ɛr as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in laud. Tonic accent (ˈ) after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ə in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.



# **A specimen of Spanish in the International Phonetic Alphabet.**

el sol diçe: mi nombre es sol: briño mutfo. salgo por el oriente; i kuando salgo es de 'dia. miro adentro de tu bentana kon estos oxos fulxentes i dorados, i te abiso k es ora de leban-tarte, diñiendo: le'bantate, pezeoso; no te alumbro para ke t es'tes en la kama, si'no para ke te lebanes, trabaxes, leas i andes por a'i.

(El sol dice: Mi nombre es Sol; brillo mucho, etc.)

**alter.** Latin word meaning "other." Derived forms: **alter'native**, **alteration**, **adul'tery**, **subaltern**. See Other.

**to alter** (aul'ter), to change. From Latin alter, other; hence **altera-tion**, a change as in a garment; **alternate**, succeeding in turns; **altercation**, calling each other names. To **mōdify**, change slightly; to **falsify**, to change fraudulently, as a document; to **interpolate** a passage in a document.

—Do not confuse with **altar**, a shrine.

**alternate.** Two pronunciations: Adjective, alter'nate: "He comes to see her on alter'nate evenings." Verb, to alternate: "Day and night alternate in the twenty-four-hour period."

—Do not confuse with **alternative**. **Alternate** means "one after the other"; **alternative**, "choice between two."

**an alter'native**, choice between two. "He has the alter'native of three days in jail or a twenty-dollar fine."

**although** (written in one word). It means no more than "though," and is used for euphony (good sound) when it will round out the sentence: "I was late, although I left in ample time." (The sounds "late though" would be harsh.)

**altogether.** Written in one word when it means entirely, wholly, in one piece: "You are altogether too late for it"; "I am altogether satisfied."

—Do not confuse with **all together** in two words, which is used when it means "everybody at the same time": "They were expected one at a time, but they arrived all together."

**always.** Written in one word when it means "ever, perpetually, at all times."

—Adjectives corresponding to the idea of **always**: **perpēt'ual**, continuing ever; **endless**, **everlasting**, **incessant**, **eternal**, **con-tin'uous**, without a stop; **continual**, frequently recurring.

—Verbs: to **perpēt'uate**, cause to last always; to **prolong**, make last longer.

—Do not confuse with **all ways** meaning "every road," as in "All ways are not equally good." It is better not to use this kind of phrase, as it is not clear, and to say, "All the roads . . ."

**am-** (amor, amat-, amic-). Latin root meaning "love." Derived forms: **am'ateur**, **ām'orous**, **enām'ored**, **ām'iable**, **par'amour**; **am'icable**, **am'ity**, **inim'ical**, **en'emy**, **en'mity**. See Love.

**an amateur** (meaning lover; pronounced *ăm'ă-ter'*). An amateur is one who is not a professional, one who does a certain work for the love of it and not for money: "an amateur photographer," "an amateur tennis player." "Amateurs often surpass professionals at their own trade, because they employ greater resources and more freedom."

—Do not confuse with **dilettante**, one who does things in an **amateurish** manner, i.e., casually, incompetently, more to boast than because of a genuine love of the subject. Note that the word **amateurish** has the sense, not of "amateur," but of "dilettante." See **dilettante**. Note also that the popular and incorrect pronunciation "*amachūre*" is often used ironically in the conversation of educated people when referring to a bungling, coarse person who poses as an artist.

**to amaze** (**amazing**, **amazement**), to puzzle as to origin; to **astonish** by its greatness; **astound**, stun to inaction; **surprise**, take unaware.

**amber**, a yellow fossil resin; also its color. Greek *elektron*; hence the name **electricity**, because amber was the first substance in which electricity was produced by rubbing.

**ambul.** Latin root meaning "walk." Derived words: **am'bū-lance**, **peram'būlā'tor**, **preamble**. See **Walk**.

**amē'nable** to reason; the **amē'nities** of life.

**among**. This word is used when an idea of mass, group or crowd action is conveyed. "He stood among the crowd." "A man among men."

Use **between** instead of **among** (even if there are more than two persons concerned) when there is an idea of reciprocal action, in which all the parties are active: "A treaty **between** four Powers" (not among); "to insert a needle **between** the closed petals of a rose" (not among; Oxford English Dictionary); "the choice lies **between** the three candidates"; "they captured the wolf **between** them" (all cooperating). "It is agreed **among** us (all agreeing as a mass) to form two tug-of-war teams **between** us (each member participating)."

**amusement**. See **Fun**.

**-ance**. Two-syllable words ending in **-ance** generally have the tonic accent on the first syllable: *bal'ance*, *nui'sance*, *ven'geance* (except *fin'ance*; except also verbs like *entrance*, *enhance*).—Three-syllable words ending in **-ance** have the accent on the second syllable: *abun'dance*, *compl'i'ance*, *allē'giance* (the spelling *-gi-* is equivalent to *j*), *endu'rance*, *remem'brance* (except *coun'tenance*, *vig'ilance*, *el'e'gance*, *main'tenance*, *tem'perance*).—Four-syllable words ending in **-ance** generally have the accent two syllables before **-ance**: *extrav'agance*; *irrel'e'vance*, *signif'icance* (except *per'se've'rance*).

**and**. When written & or in a similar one-sign abbreviation, the word **and** is called an "**ampersand**."

**an angel** (*ăn'jel*).—Greek; literally "a messenger"; hence an *evăn'gel*, a good messenger; the **Evangel**, the gospel or Good Tidings; an **Evan'gelist**, one who preaches the Gospel;

in: "Anyone will tell you"; better written in two words when it is a double adjective, with emphasis on "one," as in: "The time has gone by when any one man could hope to write an adequate text-book of psychology." (Wm. McDougall, *Outline of Psychology*, Scribner's, 1923.)

**any time** (two words).

**anything** (one word).

**apart**. Latin *se*; hence to **seclude**, shut apart; to **secede**, step apart; to **segregate**, to form into a flock apart; to **select**, choose apart.

**apiece** (one word). One each. "These apples cost five cents apiece (five cents each)."

**apostrophe** (apōs'trōfē, note that the last *e* is pronounced, as in most words of pure Greek origin).

A sign used in Grammar as follows:

(1) to mark the omission of a letter, as in **doesn't** for **does not**, **isn't** for **is not**, **it's** for **it is** (but the possessive adjective **its**, meaning "belonging to it" is always written without an apostrophe).

(2) to mark the omission of several letters, often resulting in an almost new form, as in **won't** for **will not**, **shan't** or **shan't** for **shall not**.

(3) to mark the omission of the letter *e*, formerly used as part of the possessive case: **my father's**, for the former **my fatheres**; the **dog's tail**.

(4) to mark the omission of the first part of a number, as in "Back in '84" for "back in 1884." The boys of '76.

(5) to form the plural of letters and numbers written in figures: Learn your **a,b,c's** (plural of **a,b,c**); mind your **p's and q's** (plural of **p** and **q**, considered as two separate words); Everything is at **6's and 7's**.

(6) to form the plural of words that have no plural form: Don't use so many **don't's**. There are no **if's** or **and's** about it.

(7) to form the plural of signs: The **+**'s and **—**'s of arithmetic.

**apparātus** (pronounced like Parade. Plural **apparātuses**. The often heard mispronunciation **apparātus** is due to confusion with the Latin pronunciation **apparātus**, with an *ā* as in father. The Anglicized pronunciation of the long Latin *ā* is *ā*. See also *dāta*, *stātus*). A complex outfit for a particular purpose: heating **apparātus**. For synonyms, see *Instrument*.

**appār'-ent-ly** (Note the pronunciation -pār-), seemingly.

to **appear**, be noticeable in a certain place or condition; to **look**, have the visible signs of; **seem**, cause one to think in a certain way.

"This man appears to have lost his hat. He looks cold. He seems to be unhappy."

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels *ā ē ī ō ū* as in *mate*, *meet*, *mite*, *mote*, *mute*, *my*; *ă ē ĭ ô ŭ* as in *mat*, *met*, *mitt*, *not*, *nut*, *pity*; *ā* as in *father*; *ēr* as in *merry*; *er* as in *mercer*; *ou* as in *loud*; *au* as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ā* in *senate*). Consonants: *g* always as in *go*; *th* as in *thief*; *dh* as *th* in *mother*; *ng* as in *sing* or in *singer*; *ng-g* as *ng* in *finger*. See *Syllables*.

Which appears.....apparent (adjective)  
 Fact of appearing.....appearance

**appearance**, fact or state of becoming visible or noticeable as being such and such; **look**, outer visible signs; **aspect**, one particular side or phase of a changeable thing.

He is very irascible, under his nonchalant appearance.

I do not like the look of this animal.

This city presents a totally different aspect on Sundays.

**appen'dix**, plural **appendixes** or **appendices**; literally "something hanging on to." A small worm-shaped (vermiform) part which hangs from the intestine. In literature, an **appendix** is a separate chapter or section at the end of a book, more or less complete in itself; a **supplement** is a part which only means something in conjunction with the other part. An appendix is included in the book itself at the time of publication; a supplement may be a separate volume, and it is generally issued some time, even many years, after the original publication. An appendix to the dictionary might be on the subject of Abbreviations. A supplement would be a list of words issued some years later than the main volume, giving new words and new definitions.

an **appl'ance**, a device or thing used for a particular purpose, especially to help along: "foot appliances for the lame," "an appliance that cleans windshields automatically."

For synonyms, see Instrument.

to **apply** (äpli', riming with lie. **Applying**, **applied**, **application**, **ap'plicable**). To fold or lay upon; to **attach**, firmly, so it will not come off; to **assign** a task to somebody; **allot** a portion of something to somebody; **appropriate** funds for a purpose; **devote** time or work to something noble; **employ** time, work, etc., for a useful purpose; to **exercise** one's activity, judgment on a problem; to **use** any means available for a purpose; to **dedicate**, solemnly offer a service to an honored person or memory; to **connect** things that are separate.

to **appoint**, select for a particular purpose or function: "A date was appointed for the hearing. He has been appointed ambassador to China"; to **ordain** as part of the divine plan: Whatever God has ordained; to **prescribe** a method: The doctor prescribed complete rest for a week; to **decree** officially; to **designate** somebody as suitable for something; to **constitute** a body for a purpose: "The convention constituted itself into a committee to study the new law"; to **determine** a fact in question.

One who is appointed.....the appointee.

Act of appointing .....the appointment.

to **appreciate** (aprē'shiāt), to put the proper value on a thing.

In its original meaning, this word refers to **proper** value; it would therefore be wrong to say, "I very much appreciate" since one cannot "much properly" value a thing. Modern usage, however, is fast sanctioning phrases of this kind, by

an extension of the meaning of **appreciate** to that of "be grateful." "I much appreciate: I am very grateful."

**appropriate**, adjective: suitable to the occasion. "An appropriate remark."—**Fēlicitous**, happily expressed, as a compliment; **fortunate**, **happy**, **suitable**, **fitting**, **becoming**, **meet**, **con-dign** (kon-din') (generally used of punishment); **opposite** remark, that fits exactly what has been said before. To **ap-pro-priate**, to take to one's own use (generally wrongfully, i.e., to steal something of which one has sometimes had the use or the loan. In this sense, also to **misappropriate**).

**apt**, adjective. Used when speaking of persons to show they are naturally inclined one way or another: "He is **apt** to turn around and say unpleasant things."

Do not confuse with **liable**, which refers to "being subject to" a punishment or penalty, or, with things, "so constituted that it will behave in this or that way": Anyone walking on the grass is liable to a fine. The wheel is liable to come off at any time.

**Likely** is used when a contingency is fully expected: "He is likely to arrive at any time.—The wheel is more than liable to come off; it is likely to."

**Appropriate** (see this word above) means suitable: an appropriate remark, made at the right moment and on the right subject.

**aqu-**. Latin root meaning "water." Derived forms: **aquāt'ic**, **ā'queous**, **aquā'rium**, **āq'ueduct**. See **Water**.

**Ar'abic**.—Our system of figures having been borrowed from the Arabs is called Arabic numeration: 1, 2, 3, 4, etc., as compared with Roman numerals: I, II, III, IV, V, X, C, etc.

**arch-**. Greek root meaning "first, earliest, chief, ruler, primitive." Pronounced "arch" before a consonant: **archbishop**, **arch-traitor**, etc.; pronounced "arK" before a vowel: **architect**, **monarch**, **archā'ic**, etc. See **Chief**.

an **archaism** (ar'kāiz-m). A word or phrase which was once stand-ard but has ceased to be generally used. Such word or phrase is therefore said to be obsolete (ōb'sō-lēt).

**architecture** (ar'kitek'tūr), the art or science of building. An **architect** is a trained specialist, unlike a **builder** who is a practical worker and works to carry out the architect's plans.

**archives** (ar'kīvz), public records, or the place where such records are kept. This word is connected with the root "arche," government, found in **monarchy**, etc.

to **argue** (ar'gū) something out with somebody, to offer reasons for or against. (**Arguable**, **argument**, **argumentative**.)

An argument with a trick in it.....a captious argument.  
An argument that sounds good but  
is partly unsound.....a plausible reason.

**argument**. In Rhetoric, the art of convincing the reader by stat-ing terms, issues, and conclusions in logical form. Argument may be **inductive**, passing from the particular to the general; or **deductive**, passing from the general to the particular;

passing from effect to cause, or from cause to effect. It often makes use of **analogy**, or the similarity of two cases, and may lead to false **conclusions**, as from hasty generalization, or from examples that are not truly parallel, or from false deductions, or from falsely assuming the converse of a proposition to be true. In Argument, it is also possible to ignore the question, or to beg the question, producing a conviction not based on sound logic. Argument may persuade (i.e., lead to action from insufficient motives) without convincing.

**to arise** (Past tense: Yesterday he **arose**. Present Perfect: New circumstances have **arisen**).

**an army** (See War).

### Some words used on this subject

Regular army, reserves, territorial forces; militia, national guard, infantry, cavalry, artillery, engineers. Army corps, regiment, battalion, company.—General staff, officers, field marshal, general, major general, brigadier general, colonel, major, captain, lieutenant, sergeant, corporal, private.

**around**. This word is a lengthening of the form **round**, which is just as correctly used in any case, and more correctly in many cases. For reasons of euphony (good sound) it is often preferable to use **around** after a consonant ending: "Turn **around**," and **round** after a vowel ending: "Fly **round**." The form **around** is seldom used by British writers, except for reasons of great emphasis. There is no such spelling as 'round, since **round** is no abbreviation but the full word itself. The phrase "all around" is wrong, as "around" means "on round" and does not go with **all**. Use "all round" in every case.

Latin circum; hence **circumnavigation**, sailing round; to **circumscribe**, to write around, place restrictions on; **circumlocution**, beating about the bush in speech. Greek amphi, hence **amphitheater**, a round theater.

Conditions surrounding one.....one's environment.

**to arrange** (arānj'), literally to set in rows or ranks. To **dispose** along certain lines; to **distribute** among certain groups; to **adjust** to fit certain requirements; to **classify**, sort out according to groups; to **array** in imposing numbers or form; to **marshal** one's troops, one's forces; to **group** according to congeniality; to **compose** so as to form a pleasing whole; to **collate**, gather and prepare material, as for publication.

**to arrest**, legally hold a person subject to call under a charge; to **detain**, actually keep somebody for a time; to **restrain**, by either physical or legal prohibitions; to **capture** after a chase; to **apprehend**, lay hands on someone wanted.

**to arrive** (arriving, arrived; the arrival).

**arrogant**, adjective; claiming for himself more than he has a right to, in the way of respect, dignity, etc.; **proud**, having a great deal of self-esteem, sometimes too much; **conceited**, over-full of self-esteem; **haughty**, having a great sense of his superi-

ority; **presumptuous** (note that this word is not written or pronounced -tious, but -tUous), who takes liberties with other people's sense of their own dignity, as by assuming equality; **overbearing**, intending to make others feel small; **self-important**; **supercilious**, looking down with contempt on others, as from under half-closed eyelids, with chin raised; **insolent**, actually intending to give offense in word or manner.

**an art.** From Latin *ars*, *artis* meaning "an ingenious way to an end"; hence **artist**, one engaged in, or fond of, art; **article**, a little device; **artful**, ingenious in getting out of trouble; **artisan**, a skilled worker, craftsman; **artificial**, not natural. Greek *technē*; hence **technical**, pertaining to a skilled craft; the **technique** (tek-nēk') of a profession, of an action, the most effective way of doing a thing; **polytechnic**, pertaining to all the arts and crafts.

The Latin proverb "*ars est celare artem*" (the art is in hiding the art), meaning "Art is the ability to conceal the trick," includes both meanings of the word **art**; (1) the production of ingenious and beautiful things; (2) the skill of mind (artfulness).

One who knows art values.....a connoisseur (kon'es-er)

One who practices art for

enjoyment.....an amateur (ām'ā-ter')

One who trifles with art.....a dilettant'ē

A masterpiece of art.....a chef d'œuvre (shā-dŭv-r)

Artistic, beautiful, full of art...esthetic (es-thēt'ik)

**an article** (ar'tīkl), literally "a little device," an object or thing; "salt is an article of commerce." In Grammar, the name given to the adjectives **a**, **an**, **the**.

**-ary.** Words ending in **-ary** generally have the accent on the syllable that was accented in the original word: sup'plemen'tary, com'plimen'tary. (Exception: propri'etary.)

**as** (āz). The conjunction **as** has three totally different meanings, causing much confusion.

(1) **Time.** **As** he walked upstairs, he saw the door open.

(2) **Cause.** **As** he came this morning, he will not come again.

(3) **Similarity.** **As** he walked, so he talked, a nervous, fidgety type of man.

Because of that confusion, public usage is gradually forcing a distinction, and writers often find it necessary to substitute another word:

(1) **Time:** **While** he walked upstairs.

(2) **Cause:** **Since** he came this morning (Not so clear either, as it may refer to a later event).

(3) **Similarity.** **Like** he walked. (This form is not accepted, on the ground that **like** is only, at present, a preposition. It is, however, frequently used in colloquial American practice, being unmistakably clear. If it ever gains recognition, **like** will simply have to be listed as a conjunction. For a similar instance, see **Than**.)

**As...as** is used in a comparison of equality, when positive: He is as tall as I am. **Not so...as** is used when the comparison is negative: He is not so tall as I. (Do not use: not as...as). Never (negative) have so many autos been seen as now. None so deaf as those who will not hear.

After **as** in a comparison, use the same case (subject or object) as if the sentence were complete: As good as I (= as I am good).

to **ask** somebody for something, to ask somebody a question; to **request** (politely but firmly) somebody to do something; to **require** something of somebody (as a right), to **require** somebody to do something; to **apply** to somebody for something (for a favor, privilege, job, etc.); to **pray** for something (as a favor and with humility); to **appeal** to somebody for something (recognizing him as a superior authority); to **beseech** somebody for something (very earnestly); to **crave** a favor of somebody, a privilege; to **demand** something of somebody, to demand that somebody do something (which one has a right to call for, which may have been previously refused); to **solicit** somebody for something (approach for the purpose of obtaining, as a subscription, a contribution); to **petition** somebody for something (formally make a written plea, generally by several grouped for the purpose); to **entreat** somebody for something (as an insistent request, assuming superior power to grant the request and assuming also his benevolence).

Latin *rogo*, hence **Rogation** Days, days of special prayer; **rogatory**, for the purpose of examining witnesses; to **prô-rôgue**, to put off, to dismiss Parliament; **derogatory**, contrary to one's dignity; to **abrogate**, to call off a privilege.

Nouns: a petition, prayer, request, demand, solicitation, entreaty, plea.

Adjective: insistent, persistent, importune.

an **associate** (äsö'shiät). Noun.—Latin *socius*, companion; hence **society**, **sociable**.—Latin prefix *cum*, *col*, with; hence many forms like **colleague**, one in league with, one of the same working group; **companion**, one who goes along with, originally one who shares the bread of; **confederate**, one bound by a common oath; **consort**, one who shares the same fate, a husband or wife; **coadjutor**, one who helps, as a bishop's assistant; an **accomplice**, one who is "folded in" or involved with another, generally in a crime or misdeed.

A **chum**, originally a "chamber-fellow," abbreviated from the word "chamber," at a University; a **pal**, a gipsy word meaning "brother," connected with the Sanskrit word *bhratr*, whence *frater* and also brother; a **friend** (frënd), literally "a loved one"; a **partner**, one who "partitions" or shares with; a **mate**, **helpmate**, one who shares "meat" or food with; an **ally** (äli'), one in "league."

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels ä ä i ö ü y as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ä ä i ö ü y as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; ä as in father; êr as in merry; er as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ä in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.



- to **astonish** through its greatness; **amaze**, puzzle as to its origin; astound, stun to inaction; **surprise**, take unaware.
- astr.** Greek and Latin root meaning "star." Derived forms: **astron'omy**, **astrol'ogy**, **as'terisk**, **disas'ter**. See **Star**.
- astron'omy**, the scientific study of the stars.—Latin **aster**, star; hence **astrology**, the study of man's fortune as read in the stars; **disastrous**, contrary to the stars, unlucky.
- asunder**.—Latin **Di**, dis; hence to **distract**, draw away; **dispel**, drive away. Latin also **se**; hence to **segregate**, **separate**, **select**, **secede**, **seclude**.
- ate**. Verbs of three syllables ending in **-ate** are accented on the first, with a secondary accent on the last: **el'euate'**, **grad'uate'**, **lu'bricate'**. (Former exceptions, **promul'gate**, **illus'trate**, **incul'cate**, **incul'pate**, are rapidly being brought within the rule by popular usage: **il'lustrate**, **in'culcate**, etc.)
- athlet'ics** (only three syllables **ath-let'-ics**, not four as sometimes pronounced).
- at once** (two words); **immē'diately**, **quickly**, **rapidly**; **extempore**, without preparation, especially a speech.
- to **attach** firmly, so it will not come off; **append** at the end; **fasten** so it is no longer loose; **stick** with paste or glue; **unite**, make one; **annex**, separate but connected; **affix**, place firmly on, as a gummed stamp or a rubber stamp mark; **join** end to end; **secure** safely.
- to **attack'**, start a fight; to **assault**, inflict personal violence, however slight, to hurl oneself or one's army against a fortress, etc.; to **assail**, surprise somebody with words of rebuke, express doubts as to motives.
- to **attain** a worthy aim; to **achieve**, literally "bring to a head" a difficult result; to **accomplish**, fulfill; to **perform** from beginning to end; to **perfect'** in detail; to **consummate**, pass the last stage of; to **gain** after much effort; to **obtain**, succeed in getting, after overcoming obstacles; to **secure**, become safely possessed of; to **earn** money, a reward, etc., by work; to **reach** an objective, a place.
- to **attend'** (**attendance**, **attendant**; **attentive**, **attention**). To turn the mind or the body in a certain direction. **Attendance**: being physically present. "There was a large attendance at church on Sunday." **Attention**: being mentally present: "The audience did not pay much attention to the sermon."—**Attention** is any form of mental turning toward an object; **observation** is concentrated attention; **scrutiny** is close and minute observation; **concentration** is the exclusion of thoughts irrelevant to the subject under consideration; **fōcus** is attention sharpened to a point (figuratively).
- an at'tribute** (noun; accent on first syllable). A quality, a property. An **at'tribute** is what other people think the person or object possesses; a **quality** is what he really possesses; a **property** is one of the observed effects of its qualities. "The attributes of God include omniscience, omnipresence and omnipotence" (We believe God possesses these qualities, but do not pre-

sume to say so definitely). "This man's sterling qualities have been recognized by his fellow citizens." "One of the properties of matter is to be theoretically ponderable or measurable."

to **attrib'ute** (verb; accent on second syllable), to give to a thing a quality or property which we believe it possesses; to **ascribe** something to somebody, to recognize somebody as the author of the thing (He ascribes all kinds of generous motives to everything his mother does); to **impute** something undesirable, as bad intentions; to **assign**, turn to somebody to do: "He was assigned the task of raising the city's population to 100,000 by advertising."

**au.** Sound heard in August, always, awful, auto, or, nor, law, thought, Dreadnaught, fall, paltry.

**audi-**. Latin root meaning "hear." Derived forms: **audience**, **au'dible**, **au'dit**, **audito'rium**. See Hear.

an **audience**, "people who hear." From Latin audio; hence **audible** which can be heard; **auditorium**, a concert hall; an **audit**, a "hearing" or investigation of accounts.

Do not use **audience** for "people who see" as at the movies: they are the **spectators** or the **attendance**; at church, the **congregation**.

**Authorized Version**, or A.V., the King James Bible, A.D. 1611; as opposed to the R.V. or English **Revised Version**, A.D. 1882; and the Am.R.V. or **American Standard Version**, A.D. 1900.

**auto**, Greek for "self": **automobile**; **autobiography**; an **autom'aton**, person who acts without thinking, as if pulled by a string; an **autograph**, document written by the person himself.

**auxiliary verb**, a verb used to form a tense or mode of another, as "have" in the phrase: "I have been," in which I "have" or "possess" only the consciousness of being at some time before. The auxiliaries differ from ordinary verbs in that they are immediately followed by the verb they modify, without the use of "to"; "I can swim" (not: I can to swim), I dare go (not: I dare to go, although **dare** is rapidly becoming an ordinary verb in that sense). **Have** to is an exception, as the "to" is always necessary to give its meaning of "must." The principal auxiliaries are:—

To denote a future action, **shall** or **will**.

To denote an action that is completed, **have**, **has**, **had**.

To denote permission or possibility, **may** and **might**.

To denote necessity, **must**, **have to**, **had to**.

To denote emphasis, **do** and **did**.

To denote power or ability, **can** and **could**.

To denote continuing action or an action performed on the subject, **am**, **is**, **be**, **was**, **were**.

To denote duty, **should** or **ought**.

To denote exigency, **had better**.

To denote a command, **let**.

To denote audacity, **dare** or **dared**.

The use of these auxiliaries to show the mood of the speaker is shown in the following lists of questions and answers that come between a wish and its fulfillment:

**a. THE QUESTION OF**

**NECESSITY**

Must I (thou, he, she, it,  
we, you, they) go?

**ITS ANSWERS**

I, etc., must (have to) go.  
I must not (mustn't) go.

**b. THE QUESTION OF**

**PERMISSION**

May I (he, she, it, we, you,  
they) go? Mayest thou go?

**ITS ANSWERS**

I, etc., may go, I may not  
go, Thou mayest (mayest  
not) go.

**c. THE QUESTION OF DE-  
SIRE OR CHOICE**

Will I (you, he, she, it,  
we, they) go?

**ITS ANSWERS**

I, etc., will go.  
I, etc., will not (won't) go.

**d. THE QUESTION OF DUTY**

Should I (he, she, it, we,  
you, they) go? Shouldst  
thou go?  
Ought I (thou, he, she, it,  
we, you, they) to go?

**ITS ANSWERS**

I, etc., should go, I should  
not (shouldn't) go, Thou  
shouldst (shouldst not) go.  
I, etc., ought to go, I ought  
not (oughtn't) to go.

**e. THE QUESTION OF EX-  
PEDIENCY**

Had I (he, she, it, we,  
you, they) better go?  
Hadst thou better go?

**ITS ANSWERS**

I, etc., had (I'd) better go,  
I had (I'd) better not go.  
Thou hadst better (better  
not) go.

**f. THE QUESTION OF  
ABILITY**

Can I (you, he, she, it, we,  
they) go?

**ITS ANSWERS**

I, etc., can go. I, etc., can  
not (cannot or can't) go.  
Note. Can not is more em-  
phatic than cannot.

**g. THE REQUEST FOR A  
DECISION**

Shall I (he, she, it, they)  
go? Will you go? Wilt  
thou go?

**A DECISION**

You (he, she, it, they) shall  
go, You, etc., shall not  
(shan't) go. Thou shalt, I  
will go, I will not (won't)  
go.

**h. A REQUEST FOR A  
COMMAND**

Shall I go? Shall he (she,  
it, we, they) go?

**A COMMAND**

Let me go! Go! Do not  
(don't) go, Thou shalt go,  
Thou shalt not go, Let him  
go, Do not (don't) let him,  
etc., go.

- to **avenge** (avenging, an avenger), to punish a wrong impartially, whether oneself the victim of it or not; to **revenge** oneself upon another; to do what one considers justice, but from selfish motives, as when one has suffered personally from the act; to **vin'dicate** somebody's assailed reputation or honor, by proving that the aspersions were unjustified; to **retäl'iate** upon somebody by doing him the same kind of wrong.
- an **ävöcätion**, a person's principal interest outside of his vocation or life work; a **pastime**, **hobby**.
- to **awake** (Past tense: I **awaked** or **awoke** him. Past participle: **awaked**: "They have awaked him at last." As most people are in doubt as to the correct form, they often substitute the past tense of the verb "awaken": "They awakened him; they have awakened him").
- aware** of an outside fact; **conscious** (kõn'shus) of a feeling within; **cog'nizant**, conscious of and understanding an occurrence.
- away**. Latin a, ab. See From.—Greek apo; hence **apostle**, one sent away; **apoc'ryphal**, book whose origin is hidden away.
- To turn away one's eyes.....to avert' one's eyes from  
One who runs away.....a fū'gitive
- awkward** situation, unpleasant, embarrassing, difficult; **uncouth** (unkõõth) manners, "as in unfamiliar surroundings"; **un-gainly** movements, lacking in grace; **gawky**, person; **stiff**.
- awry** (Note the pronunciation: ä-rī'; from wry, crooked).
- aye**. Two separate words: one is pronounced ī and means Yes; the other is pronounced ä, and means Ever.

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels ä ē ī ō ū ŷ as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ä ē ī ō ū ŷ as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; ä as in father; ēr as in merry; er as in mercur; ou as in loud; au as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ä in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.

## B

**bā.** Sound heard in: **bale** (of cotton), to **bail out**, **base** (low), **bass** (voice), **baseball**, **Babel**, a **bait** (lure), to **bait** (attract), **bated** breath, **baize** (coarse woolen stuff); **bays** (plural of bay).

to **babble.** This word and all its synonyms are imitative of the sounds produced. To talk like a baby, to say "Ba" and "gloo-gloo"; to **cackle**, to say "Kuk-Kuk-l" like a hen; to **gabble** more aggressively, owing to the sound G, like a goose; to **tattle** more sharply, with more meanness, owing to the sound T, like a village gossip; to **prattle** more innocently, prettily, PR, artlessly, like a child; to **chatter** rapidly, senselessly, without much noise; to **jabber**, same as chatter, but more noisy, like a crowd of "foreigners"; to **blāther** to say Bla, Bla; talk in a conventional way, smoothly, sometimes affectedly; note the softness of the sound **Ther**; to **gossip**, to talk rapidly, G, with a touch of meanness, SS, with thin lips, I, of your neighbors' affairs; to **prate** about something (to be PRoud of speaking about something); to **chat** rapidly, with little noise.

**back.** This word conveys the idea both of a return and of again.—Latin *re*, retro; hence to **return**, go back; to **recur**, happen again; to **rebound**, bounce back; **retroactive**, effective as regards the past also: "The new import regulations are to be retroactive, so that duties paid in the last three months will be refunded to importers"; **retrograde**, stepping backward: "Taxing individual commodities would be a retrograde policy"; a **recess**, a step back from work; **reflex**, bent back, going back to its source: "A hand put into the fire will withdraw itself by a reflex nervous action"; **retrospective**, looking back toward the past: "What is the use of retrospective arguments: the harm is done now."

Adjectives: **prior**, which took place before; **posterior**, which took place after; **anterior**, earlier in date.

The phrase "in back of" is wrongly constructed. Use "behind" or "at the back of"; "The house is at the back of the church," or "behind the church."

**bad.** Latin *malus*; hence **malefactor**, an evil-doer; **malediction**, an evil saying, a curse; **malpractice**, wrongful doing;—Greek *kakos*, hence **cacophony**, mixture of unpleasant sounds, the opposite of harmony or euphony. **Wicked**, person with evil intentions; **poor** in quality (thing); **wretched**; **horrid**; **ex'ecrable**, exceedingly bad, as of taste in art.

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels *ā ē ī ō ū y* as in *mate*, *meet*, *mite*, *mote*, *mute*, *my*; *ā ē ī ō ū y* as in *mat*, *met*, *mitt*, *not*, *nut*, *pit*; *ā* as in *father*; *ēr* as in *merry*; *er* as in *mercer*; *ou* as in *loud*; *au* as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ā* in *senate*). Consonants: *g* always as in *go*; *th* as in *thief*; *ah* as *th* in *mother*; *ng* as in *sing* or in *singer*; *ng-g* as *ng* in *finger*. See Syllables.

## Some words used on this subject

Guilty, vicious, unjust, immoral, impious, wicked, hypocritical, false, lying, deceitful, proud, haughty, vain, intemperate, greedy, idle, cowardly, malicious, mischievous, passionate, scornful, envious, jealous, revengeful, rough, coarse, shameless, insolent, rash, avaricious, covetous, prodigal, selfish, vulgar, low, brutal, cruel, violent, murderous, shameful.

To fail, commit (a crime), addicted to, offend, annoy, vex, plunder, rob, steal, kill, murder, insult, injure, lie, dissemble, deceive, slander, envy, revenge, betray, seduce.

See also list of Faults.

- to **baffle**. This word is imitative: Bah! for mockery; Fl for dispersion of effort: to mock and lead astray. This explanation applies also to the mechanical sense of the word: a baffle plate is one that diverts a flow of oil, gases, etc., in a tank or boiler. To **baffle** an effort; to **disappoint** an expectation; to **thwart** by throwing obstacles in the way; to **balk**, cause to stumble.

**baggage** (America), **luggage** (England), **impedimenta**, classical and "highbrow"; **encumbrances**, not only baggage but sometimes used to mean the family.

- to **balk** (in the active sense), to prevent from achieving by placing a hindrance in the way; to **frustrate** a purpose, render it vain; to **thwart** by throwing an obstacle across; to **foil** by leading nowhere; to **baffle** by leading in the wrong direction. See Frustrate.

To **balk at** a course of action; **hesitate before**, be reluctant to overcome.

- a **ball**. Greek ballein, to throw; hence a **balloon**, big ball; **ballot**, a small stone, used for voting; **ballistics**, the science of missiles; **Páll Máll**, a place where a "ball mallet" game was played.

The Greek word ballizein, to dance, is probably connected with ball; hence a **ball**, dance; **ballet**, a little dance; **ballad**, dancing song.

- to **ballyhoo**, to advertise showily and noisily, as from a wagon in the circus parade or from the front of a booth at a fair. A **ballyhoo wagon**, a circus wagon, a "rubberneck" wagon or tourist excursion char-à-banc.—This word is either imitative (like hullabaloo), or it is an expressive form derived from the rowdy Irish village of Ballyhooly.

- a **banjo**. Plural **banjós**.

- a **banana**. Plural **bananas**. (One n each time.)

- a **banquet** (bang'kwët), literally "a little bench." The two spellings **banquet** and **bouquet**, despite the dissimilar pronunciations, can be remembered together: BANQUET  
BOUQUET.

Banquets are often for the purpose of handing out "bouquets" (or praise, figuratively expressed).

**barbarous** (from "bar-bar," meaning unintelligible talk, the language of people who are not civilized). There are several forms of this root, with sharply differentiated meanings:—

**Bar'barous**, cruel. "Her treatment of the child is barbarous."  
**Barbar'ic**, crudely gorgeous: "A taste for barbaric music."  
**A bar'barism**, a form of speech that is not in good use and which disagrees with precedents, like the word "autoscript."  
 The word "electrocution" was a barbarism in 1901. **A bar-bā'rian**, an uncivilized person.

**bare**. Latin nudus; hence **nude**, a polite word; **nudity**, being nude; to **denude**, to clear a mountain of its trees, a town of its supplies, a treasury of funds, etc. **Nākēd**, entirely bare.

To lay bare (a country).....to devastate  
 To lay bare (one's secrets).....to disclose, unfold  
 Barely (not quite).....hardly, scarcely.

the **bark** of a tree.—Latin cortex, corticis; hence **cortical**, pertaining to the bark or outer covering; **cortex**, the outer layer of the brain.

**barren**, adjective; bearing no fruit or life: "a barren country"; **sterile**, unable to bear fruit; **infertile**, des'ert.

a **bāse**. Greek basis, a step, a foundation.—Greek hedra; hence a **pentahedron**, a solid with five faces.

A material object has a **bāse** or foundation, something on which it rests: the base of the pyramid. An argument or proposition has a **bāsis** or ground on which it rests: "I cannot see any basis for his statement." "His reputation rests on an unstable basis."

In both senses, the adjective is **bāsic**: "There is no basic objection to that course."

**Foundation** suggests greater permanence and stability than **bāsis** or **base**, and is used in either sense: "This building rests on firm foundations." "The allegation has no foundation in truth, although it is based on various rumors."

**Base**, adjective; low; **degraded**; vile; **sordid**, lacking in spirituality; **contemptible**; **despicable**.

**bashful**, adjective; naturally disliking to appear in company, retiring; **shy**, temporarily disliking to do a public act. Both **shy** and **bashful**, containing the hesitating sound SH, convey the same fundamental idea. But **bashful** refers to the disposition, while **shy** refers to the emotion. "He always has been a bashful child" (natural disposition). "He is not bashful at home, but he is shy in the presence of strangers" (temporary emotion).

**Coy**, struggling between shyness and approbateness; coquettish; **diffident**, lacking self-confidence, especially in mental operations.

**bāss** (pronounced like **bāse**).

a **bath** (U. S. bāth; England bāth); to **bathe** (bādh). Note that the verb to **bathe** is used in U. S. of both tub bathing and ocean bathing, while in England two different verbs are used: to **bathe** in the sea (bādh); to **bath** (bāth) in the tub. Therefore the verb in the phrase "She bathed the baby" would be pronounced in U. S. "bādh" and in England "bāthd."

- bē.** Sound heard in the words beer (drink), bier (coffin), beet (beetroot), to beat (strike).
- to be.** What we now call the verb "to be" is a mixture of various verbs such as **is** and **was**.—Present tense: I **am**, thou **art**, he **is**; we **are**, you **are**, they **are**. Past tense: I **was**, thou **wast**, he **was**; we **were**, you **were**, they **were**. Present perfect: I **have been**, thou **hast been**, etc.
- Subjunctive (mode of doubt). When the speaker assumes the thing **IS** so and so: (if) I **be**, thou **be**, he **be**, etc. "If he be a man, let him speak."—When the speaker assumes the thing is **NOT** so and so: (if) I **were**, thou **wert**, he **were**, we **were**, etc. "If I were king"; "if he were half a man." However the simple indicative (if I **am**, positive; if I **was**, doubtful) is now generally used in place of the subjunctive form, which is pedantic and fast becoming obsolete.
- Future: I **shall be**, thou **wilt be**, he **will be**, we **shall be**, you **will be**, they **will be**.—Potential forms: I **may be**, **might be**, **can be**, **could be**, **would be**, **should be**, **dare be**.
- The idea of "being" is often expressed by a suffix: boyhood (being a boy), puerility, childishness, eloquence.
- a bear** (bēr'). Latin *ursus*; hence *ursine*, pertaining to bears. Greek *arktos*; hence *arctic*, pertaining to the North side of the earth, where the Great Bear constellation is seen; *ant-arctic*, opposed to *arctic*; *Arcturus*, "guardian of the Bear," name of a star near the tail of the Great Bear.
- to bear** (bēr'). Past tense: "She **bore** her burden patiently"; poetic and Biblical, *bare*: "She **bare** him two sons." Past Participle: *borne*: "He has **borne** his sorrows with great fortitude." Passive form: to be *born* (Note the difference in spelling: *borne*, active; *born*, passive). To **suffer**, submit reluctantly to pain, illness, etc.; to **endure**, something lasting; to **stand** without wincing; to **brook**, to have use for: "I can brook no gossips."
- to beat** (Past tense: Yesterday he **beat** the rug; Present Perfect: He **has beaten** the rug; Past Participle and adjective: **beaten**: He is **beaten**; colloquially **beat**: "He is **beat**," "It cannot be **beat**"). To **beat** repeatedly and successfully; **strike** once or twice; **hit**, make sudden contact with, often accidentally; **pound** heavily; **pommel** with fist, with handle of a tool or weapon; **cuff** with the flat of the hand; **slap** with a flat surface, as on the hand, face or shoulder; **spank** a naughty child with a flat surface; **knock** with something heavy; **whack**, give a smart blow; **bang** suddenly, once; **cudgel** (kūj'el) with a club; **drub** repeatedly, thoroughly; **thump** with something heavy, causing a dull sound, as with a fist on a table; **thrash**, beat to pieces; **belabor** somebody with many blows; **buffet**, hit in every direction and prevent from reaching its object, as "buffeted by the waves"; **maul**, tear and bruise, as "mauled by a lion"; **lick** (colloquial), punish, defeat; **defeat** permanently; **conquer** a country, a difficulty; **overcome** resistance; **vanquish** an obstacle; **subjugate** a tribe; **suppress** a revolt; **subdue** a tendency.



**a beau** (bō). Masculine; French for "beautiful." Plural **beaux** (pronounced bōz) or **beaus**. Feminine, **a belle** (bēl).

**beauty** (adjective beautiful).—Latin bellus; hence **a belle**; to **embellish**, to add decorations to. Latin pulcher, pretty, hence **pulchritude** (pŭl'krītūd).

To make beautiful.....to beautify (bū'tifi)  
Full of beauty.....beauteous (bū'tēūs)

**becoming**, pleasantly effective, as a dress, hat; **suitable** for the occasion; **proper**, according to established usage; **comely**, pretty; **fitting**, made for the particular form; **decent**, not offending the sense of propriety; **deco'rous**, according to etiquette.

To avoid confusion, avoid the phrase "What is becoming of So-and-So?" (Where is he now? What is he doing?) Use instead the past tense: What has become of So-and-So?

**before**. Latin ante; hence an **anteroom**, room before another. Latin pre; hence to **predict**, foretell or forecast; **prepay**, pay in advance; **pres'age**, indicate by a present sign something which is to come. Greek pro; hence **proboscis**, elephant's or insect's suction organ before the face.

Adjectives: **antecē'dent**, having happened at some time before: "The foundation of Rome was antecedent to the foundation of Paris"; **precē'ding** immediately before: "The preceding day"; **previous**, which existed some time before: "I was unable to come yesterday, owing to a previous engagement"; **prior**, more immediate: "I cannot come tonight, as I have a prior engagement" (note that **previous** tends to refer to the past; **prior** to the present); **foregoing**, which precedes, in a list or enumeration: "I agree with the foregoing statement, with only one exception."

One who held office before.....a prē'dēces'sor.

One who had the same idea before.....a precŭ'ssor.

Which happened before the deluge....antēdilŭvian.

An astrologer's forecast of one's fate...one's horoscope.

An indication of the future.....an augŭry, an ōmen, auspices (plural).

**beforehand** (one word).

**to beg**. Latin, in the sense of request, quero, peto; hence **question**, **petition**, **querulous**, **query**; in the sense of "ask for alms," mendicare; hence **a mendicant**, **beggar**.

**to begin** (Past tense; I began; Present Perfect, I have begun; Past Participle, begun: "The work is begun, it began yesterday").—Latin incipio, inceptum, to "take on"; hence the **inception** of a project, its beginning; an **incipient** desire.—Latin initium, the "in-going"; hence to **initiate** (īnī'shīāt), to introduce; **initial**, the letter that begins a word; **initiative**, the ability to "start things going."

**To begin** is informal; **to commence** is formal.

The idea of beginning is often expressed by the prefix **pre**, before; or by the root **prim-**, first: **a prēamble**, the explanation

that precedes a document or declaration; a **préface**, the statement before a book; **primacy**, the firstness or origin.

Nouns: **beginning** (two n's); a **beginner**.

Adjectives: **initial**: "taking the initial step"; **introductory**.  
**the beginning**, informal; **commencement**, formal; **inception**, first idea; **initiation**, first "going into the secrets"; **introduction**, leading to, presenting; **inauguration**, formal ceremony on assumption of office; literally "taking the omens"; the **opening** of a place, of a contest, of something closed; the **origin** of a race, a belief, a word; the **source** of a river; also figuratively, the place whence something flows; the **spring**; the **start**.

**behā'vior**, what we do, especially in response to outside stimuli; **conduct**, what we decide in our inmost heart and the resultant effects; **demeanor**, self-management; **deportment**, bodily carriage; **manners**, compliance with recognized social standards as to speech, dress and actions; **bearing**, physical way of carrying one's body.

"His behavior at the funeral scandalized all those present.—His conduct toward his mother leaves much to be desired.—Young ladies used to study deportment in the ball room; nowadays it is taught as part of gymnastics or calisthenics.—His military training is reflected in his erect bearing.—Suspensions of his sanity were entertained from the time people began to observe his strange demeanor."

a **belief**, to **believe** (like grief, to grieve; knife, knives; mischief, mischievous). **Believing**, **believed**; a **believer**; **believable**.—Latin *credo*; hence a **creed**, standardized formula of belief; **credible**, which can be believed; **incredible**; **crédence**, a belief without much foundation: "He attaches *crédence* to everything he hears"; **cred'ulous**, over-inclined to believe what he hears; **credul'ity**, disposition to believe too readily; **credit**, "trust" or belief in somebody's honesty; **creditable**, etc.

In Psychology, a **belief** is the tendency to take our desire or our fear for truth; the act of belief (according to McDougall) can only follow doubt, and must be preceded by a yes or no judgment. A child too young to form a judgment, therefore, may have confidence, hope, or anxiety, but not belief.

### Some words used on this subject

A **creed**, brief statement of formal beliefs; a **tēnet**, single item of formal belief; a **dogma**, official tenet of an organization; a **profession**, public declaration of an intention; a **confession**, public acknowledgment of a belief; a **superstition**, ill-founded belief, transmitted from previous times; an **inference**, conclusion drawn concerning something unknown from something known; a **fānāt'ic**, one who would enforce his

---

Pronunciation key. Vowels: ā ē ī ō ū ŷ as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ä ē ī ō ū ŷ as in mat, met, mit, not, nut, pity; & as in father; ēr as in merry; er as in mercer; ou as in loud; su as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ä in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in anger. See Syllables.

beliefs upon others; **Fātāliism**, the creed that everything is governed by Fate.

**bell-**. Latin root meaning "war." Derived forms: **bellicose**, **bellic'ent**, a **rēb'el**, **cāsus belli** (a reason for war). See War.

**below**, opposite of "above": in a lower plane, but not touching: "below the knee"; "the sun sinks below the horizon"; "below the junction of the two rivers"; **under**, in a lower plane, in a vertical line or nearly so, and often touching: "I have it under my foot," "It is on the floor under the table"; **beneath**, generally with an idea of inferiority or contempt: "That is beneath my dignity."

to **bend** (Past tense: **bent**; poetic: **bended**).—Latin *flecto*, *flectum*; hence **inflexible**, that cannot be bent; **reflex**, sent back, as a movement in response to a nerve stimulus; to **deflect**, to bend down; to **reflect**, bend back a ray of light; **circumflex accent**, an accent used over certain vowels in French, which bends over two ways.

Bent back and forth, in even wrinkles . . . corrugated.

For synonyms of **bend** in the sense of **incline**, see **lean**.

a **benefit**, literally "a well doing"; from Latin *benefactum*. The **ben'efac'tor**, one who gives generously; the **benefic'iary**, one who receives the benefit; **beneficial** (**bēn'ē-fi'shal**), which confers a benefit, advantageous; **beneficent**, which is an act of kindness: "a beneficent gift"; **benefic'ence**, act of kindness: "His beneficence extends beyond his field of personal contact"; a **benefac'tion**, a gift.

to **bereave**. Past tense: **bereft** or **bereaved**. (From same origin as the word **rob**.) To deprive of a father, mother, loved one.

A **bereavement**. "Please accept the expression of my sincere condō'lence on the occasion of your sad bereavement."

to **beseech**. Past tense: **besought**.

**beside**, alongside of, near: "Sit beside me and read to me."

Do not confuse with **besides**, which means "in addition to."

"There were several people there besides Jane and me."

Originally, these two words were one and the same, in use and meaning.

to **bet**. Past tense: **betted** or **bet**.

**better**. Latin *melior*; hence to **āmo'liorate**, to make better.

**between**. Latin *inter*; hence **international**. **Between** originally meant "by twins," and indicated a relation as of one opposed to another. From the very earliest days, however, as early as the year 971, it has been used to apply to two or more. It would be wrong to say that we must always use **between** whenever two are concerned, and **among** for more than two, although this ready-made rule is often convenient for people who would use **between** indiscriminately.

**Between** indicates opposition, and the participation of all the parties more definitely than can be done by **among** (Oxford Dictionary). "The Arctic Ocean is enclosed between the northern shores of Asia, Europe, and America." (Here

we have three parties, but they all share equally in forming an opposition.) "The space lying between the three points." "A treaty between four Powers." "The choice lies between the three candidates on the select list." "To insert a needle between the closed petals of a flower." "Between public business, improving studies, and domestic pleasures . . ." (Dr. Samuel Johnson, the great lexicographer). "There were six, who collected between them fifteen shillings" (J. Cowper, 1885). "They had captured a wolf between them (Cooper, Pioneers). "All our lines of separation between the sciences are provisional (McDougall, Outline of Psychology, 1923)."

**Among**, on the other hand, is used to convey the idea of a mass, crowd, group, acting as a whole: "He is standing among men" (they form a mass, they are not necessarily flanking him right and left, or front and back). "I could not choose among so many" (they are a mass to me, they look all alike).

**Among** is also used when distinguishing in kind from the rest of the group (Oxford Dict.):—"Pre-eminent among; she is one among many."

Sometimes **among** and **between** can both be used in the same sentence, and referring to the same crowd; but the relationship will be different. "Ten men went out into the woods. A wolf ran in among them (i.e., in their midst, taking them as a crowd), and they captured it between them (i.e., all participating in the task)." "We have decided among us (i.e., all of us as a group) to supply between us two teams for the tug-of-war (i.e., every member will have to be on one side or the other)."

**beyond**. Latin extra, ultra; hence: extraordinary, ultra-conservative.

**bi**. Sound heard in: to buy (purchase), buyer (purchaser), byre (cow house), to bite (with teeth), a bight (small bay).

**bi**. Latin prefix meaning twice.

**bi**. Sound heard in: busy, business, build, built.

**the Bible**. Greek word, meaning "Book."

Pertaining to the Bible.....Bib'lical.

Pertaining to Christianity as explained

in the Bible .....E'vangel'ical.

A Gospel writer.....an Evan'gelist.

A Christian who accepts the Bible literally...a Fundamentalist.

One who interprets the Bible according

to modern knowledge.....a Mödernist.

### Some words used on this subject

Hebrew, Jewish, Israel, Israelitish; the Old Testament (the Law, the Prophets), Gen'esis (first book of the Bible, describing the origin of things), Ex'odus (the book of the flight from Egypt), the Plagues of Egypt, Möses, the Dec'alogue, the Tables of the Law, the Ten Commandments, the Ark of

the Cov'enant, the Temple, a psalm (sâm), the psaltery (saul'ter-î), major prophets, minor prophets, a proph'ecy, Jerusalem, circumcision.

The Messiah, Gen'tiles (non-Jewish nations), the New Testament, the Gospels, the Sermon on the Mount, the Bê-ât-itûdes (Blessed are they that . . .), the Twelve Apostles, disciples, par'ables, mir'acles, Baptism, Transfiguration, Crucifixion, Resurrection, Ascension, Second Coming; Christian, Apostolic (ăp'os-tol'ik), Church, preaching, healing; the Apoc'alyptse or Revelation; the Epistles.

Orig'inals, translations, copies, manuscript; the Talmud (rabbinical commentary); the Sep'tuagint (the LXX, or Greek translation by "the Seventy"), the Vulgate (Latin, official Roman Catholic version), the Authorized Version (A.V. or King James Bible, A.D. 1611), the Revised Version (R.V., English, A.D. 1882), the American Standard Version (Am.R.V., A.D. 1900), the Douay Bible (Roman Catholic translation of the Vulgate into English); a commentary, a concordance.

to **bid**. Past tense **bade** pronounced bād; Past Participle **bidden**. The form **bid** is also used for all tenses. The old spelling **bad** for the past tense is obsolete, but the change in spelling to **bade** is fast creating a mispronunciation bād.—Latin nuntio; hence to **announce**, **denounce**, **renounce**, **pronounce**, **renunciation**, etc.

To **bid**, to direct somebody to do something, authoritatively; also: to offer a price; to **command** somebody to do something; **order** something done; **instruct** somebody to do something, in detail; **enjoin**, charge solemnly with a duty.

**big** in all dimensions; **large** in width or area; **great**, large and dignified; **bulky**, volūminous.

the **bile**, liver secretion, supposed to produce temper or "humor," especially bad humor.—Greek cholē; hence **chol'era** (kol'era), "running bile," a disease characterized by abundant vom'iting; **choleric** (kol'-), iras'cible; **mel'ancholy** (mel'ankōlī), "black bile," depression due to liver trouble or other cause.

to **bind**. Past tense, all forms: **bound**. Latin stringo, strictum; hence **stringent**, binding: "stringent orders"; to **restrict**, bind away, prevent; **district**, an area bound together for payment of certain taxes; **constriction**, a cramping: "A constriction of the intestines"; **bōā constrictor**, a snake which kills its victim by squeezing it tightly. Latin also ligo; hence **lig'ament**, a membrane that connects movable bones; **lig'ature**, anything used for tying a blood vessel; a linking of sounds, etc.; **ōbligatē**, bind another to oneself through a favor; **allēgiance**, binding of oneself to another, as to a king.

**Binding** (adjective), **oblig'atory**, **compul'sory**, **imper'ative**.

**bio-**. Greek root meaning "life." Derived forms: **biōg'raphy**, **biōl'ogy**, **amphib'ious**. See Life.

a **bird**. Latin avis; hence **ăv'iator**, bird-man; **ăv'iculture**, rearing of birds; an **ă'viary**, bird house.

## Some words used on this subject

Sing, whistle, chirp, sit, alight, peck, decoy, catch, build, hatch, fly away, hop, travel.

Swallow, sparrow, linnet, wren, warbler, robin, chaffinch, bullfinch, goldfinch, canary, nightingale, lark, tomtit, magpie, raven, crow, rook, jay, partridge, snipe, grouse, pheasant, quail, thrush, blackbird, starling, lapwing, *ōrīōle*, *tānager* (-jer), cuckoo, stork, owl.

- a **bishop**. Greek "episkopos," "overseer," a term borrowed from the trade unions and fraternal societies of the first century A.D. Hence: **epis'copal**, pertaining to bishops or to the system of Church management derived from the institution of bishops; the **epis'copate**, the bishops of a certain Church or territory as a whole; **Epis'copalian**, name of an American Protestant denomination, called in England **Anglican** or **Church of England**.

Territory governed by a bishop.....a *dī'ōcēse*.  
A bishop's see.....a **bishopric**.

A bishop is addressed on the envelope as The Rt. Rev. So-and-So; and in the salutation of the letter as "Right Reverend Bishop" or "Right Reverend and dear Bishop," or simply "Sir."

- a **bit**, "thing bitten off"; a **particle**, small part; **morsel** of food; an *īōta*, a **jot**, the smallest letters of the Greek and Hebrew alphabets; a **mite**, very small coin; a **whit**, "tiny creature," tiny thing; an *at'om*, very smallest particle of matter; a **speck**, tiny particle that adheres; a **grain**, tiny particle that grows; a **spark**, tiniest visible light.

- to **bite**. Past tense: I **bit** it; Present Perfect: it **has bitten** me. (**Biting**, **bitten**, a **bite**, a **bīt**.)—Latin *mordeo*, *morsum*; hence **morsel**, a bit of food; **remorse**, the gnawing of one's conscience; a **mor'dant**, acid used in etching to bite off the metal.

To **gnaw** (*nau*, with side teeth); to **nibble**, with front teeth; to **chew**, slowly, in an ugly manner; to **masticate** scientifically, for the purpose of proper assimilation of the food.

**bitterness**, a mood which includes regret, disgust, loneliness; **acer'bity**, cold bitterness of language or temper, as in sudden reaction to an offensive remark; *āc'rīmony*, heated bitterness of language or temper.

- to **blame**. This word is an abbreviation of **blasphēme**, speak ill.—Latin *culpa*; hence to **inculpate** somebody, to lay the blame on somebody; to **exculpate**, to free from blame; **culpable**, blameworthy; **culpability**, blameworthiness.

To **blame** is to find fault with, for doing a wrong or neglecting a duty; to **censure** (*sen'shūr*), to express an unfavorable opinion as to a moral wrong; to **condemn** (*kondem'*), to pass an unfavorable judgment, often legally; to **reprove**, to express blame, but with kindly feelings; to **rebuke** sharply; to

**rępręmand**, for lack of duty, as an inferior; to **reproach**, rebuke somebody while grieving; to **chide**, poetic or literary word; to **upbraid** somebody with something (bring up against somebody, without animosity); to **scold**, with sharp words and with a feeling of superiority; to **berate**, with loss of temper, and abusive words; to **admonish**, warn, as one who is partly responsible, solemnly.

to **bleed**. Past tense: **bled**.

a **blęmish**, whatever mars the surface; a **defect**, shortage, real or imagined, of something desirable; a **flaw**, fault in structure, often not seen; a **fault**, absence of something which should be there; an **imperfection**, something which prevents the object from being perfect; a **deformity**, permanent misshapement; a **blot** or **stain** on one's reputation, one's character, the blot being what covers, the stain what mixes impurity with purity; a **stigma** applied by society, etc.; a **brand**, permanent mark of infamy; a **speck**, small piece of matter attached to the surface; a **spot**, small mark made by a staining substance; a **taint**, a permanent stream of impurity, as in the blood; a **smirch**, impression left by something dirty.

to **blend**. Past tense usually **blended**, sometimes **blent**.

To unite different tones, colors, tastes, etc., into a pleasing whole, as in dresses, coffee, tea, tobacco.

to **bless**. Past tense **blessed** (pronounced **blest**); poetic: **blest**. Past participle: **blessed**, pronounced **blest** after an auxiliary: He is blessed (**blest**) with many children; pronounced **blessęd** when used as an adjective: **Blessęd** are the merciful.—Latin **benedicere**, hence a **benediction**. French **bęnir**, hence a **benison** (ben'ison), blessing.

**blood** (blęd). Latin **sanguis**, hence **san'guęne**, full of blood, hopeful; **san'guęnary**, bloody. Greek **haima**; hence **hem'orrhage**, a bursting of blood; **hem'orrhoids**, a flow of blood, piles.

to **blow**. Past tense **blew** (blęd); past participle **blown** (blęn).  
"The wind has **blown** the clothes away."

a **blow** (blę). See **Strike**.

**bę**. Sound heard in bow and arrow; a **beau** (masher).

to **boast** of one's natural gifts, one's strength, wealth, etc.; **brag** about one's deeds, exaggerating their importance; **vaunt**, poetically, one's good looks, deeds, etc.

a **boat**. See **Ship**.

a **będy** (plural **będęs**; adjective **będęly**). Latin **corpus**, **corporis**; hence a **corpse**, dead body; an army **corps** (kor), body of troops; to **incorporate**, make into a legal body; a **corporation**, a legal body; **corpo'real**, pertaining to the body; **corporate**, of a corporation: "corporate property"; **corpulent**, having too much body, fat. Greek **soma**; hence **somatic**, pertaining to the body.

---

Pronunciation key. Vowels **ę** **ę** **ę** **ę** **ę** as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; **ę** **ę** **ę** **ę** **ę** as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; **ę** as in father; **ę** as in merry; **ę** as in mercer; **ou** as in loud; **au** as in land. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (**ę** in senate). Consonants: **g** always as in go; **th** as in thief; **dh** as **th** in mother; **ng** as in sing or in singer; **ng-g** as **ng** in finger. See Syllables.

Words formed with "body" meaning person are written as one: everybody, somebody, nobody, anybody, busybody.

**bon-**. Latin root meaning "good." Derived forms: **bō'nus**, bounty, **bōnan'za**, bonbon, **bōna fidē**, bon mot. See Good.

**bōō**. Sound heard in **boor**, peasant; **Boer**, South African Dutch farmer.

- a book**. Latin **liber**; hence **li'brary**, a book house; **librā'rian**, library official. Greek **biblion**; hence **Bible**, the Holy Book; **bibliōgraphy**, a list of books, with descriptions.

### Some words used on this subject

**Formāt**, the general size and shape of a book; a **brōchūre**, paper-covered book; **grāphic arts**, illustrating, etc.; see Drawing; **binding**, see Leather; **writing**, **editing**, **publishing**; an **introduction**, a **preface**, a **table of contents**, an **appendix** (at the end), a **supplement** (separate), **errata list**.

- a border**, area or design along and inside the edge; **edge**, sharp terminal line; **boundary** of a property or territory; **frontier** of a country; **skirt**, **skirts**, **outskirts**, **surroundings**, ill-defined neighborhood adjoining another; **environs**, easily reached outlying neighborhood; **margin**, well-defined space alongside; **verge**, extreme limit, before a place is reached: of poverty, of despair; **brink** of a precipice; **eve**, day before an event.

to be **born** (note the spelling, different from that in "she has borne a child"). Latin **nascor**, **natus**; hence a **nā'tive**, one born in a certain country; **nā'tiv'ity**, birth; **renascence**, a rebirth; the **Renaissance** (or **Ren'aissance**), the rebirth of art and learning from the 14th to the 16th centuries; **cog'nate**, related by blood; **innāte**, "born in": an innate curiosity; **nascent**, just appearing, "a nascent mustache."

- a boss**, colloquial, one who gives orders; **master**, **chief**; **employer** of free labor; **dictator**, political; **superintendent**, **supervisor** of a particular plant or system; the **head** of a firm; the **principal** of a school.

**both**, "the two." It is not right to say "the both"; it is unnecessary to say "both of them"; it is wrong to say "both alike" which means no more than merely "alike."

- a bouquet** (note the pronunciation **bōō-kā'**, not **bō-**. Remember the spelling by **banquet**).

to **bow** (**bou**) to somebody, incline the head; to **curtsey** (note the spelling, different from the word **courtesy**, politeness), ceremoniously as a girl; a **bow** (**bou**) of the head.

To avoid confusion in writing between the two words spelled **bow** (**bou** and **bō**), it is always desirable to supplement them with another word or phrase: He bowed gracefully; a bow of the head; a **bōw** and arrow; a ribbon tied up in a **bōw**.

- a boy**. Latin **puer**; hence **pū'er'ile**, boyish, childish.

to **brag** (**bragging**, **bragged**); a **braggart**, one who brags; **brag'gado'-cio** (-shīō), a braggart or the fact of bragging.—A man brags about or of what he has done, exaggerating its importance; he



**boasts** of his natural gifts, his strength, wealth; he **vaunts**, poetically, the beauty of the sky, the skill with which he does certain things.

to **braid**. Latin plecto; hence to **plait** (pronounced plăt when it refers to hair: **plaited hair**, plăt'ed); **perplexity**, doubt, being "braided in" or involved mentally; **complexion**, the "woven in" elements of health supposed to produce the color of the skin.

**brains**, generally used in the plural when referring to "intelligence." Latin cerebrum; hence **cer'ebral**, pertaining to the brain, or to the marrow of the spine, which is a continuation of the brain.

**brave**, adjective; who faces danger calmly and determinedly; **cour'ageous**, who habitually faces perils without flinching; **dāring**, who goes to meet danger halfway; **vāl'ant**, who dares and wins; **intrep'id**, who does not shake with fear; **bold**, who goes forward to meet danger; **dauntless**, who neither fears peril nor accepts defeat; **adventurous**, willing to take a risk; **venturesome**, too fond of taking risks; **chivalrous** (shĭv'al-rus), who defends the weak and the oppressed; **gallant** (gal'ant), splendidly or nobly brave (Do not confuse with gallant, accent on second syllable, gǎ-lǎnt', "very courteous to the ladies").

to **break**. Past tense: I **broke** it; present perfect: I **have broken** it; past participle: It is **broken**.—Latin rumpo, ruptum; hence **rup'ture**, a break; to **disrupt**, break asunder a meeting or some arrangements; **erup'tion**, sudden breaking out of a volcano; to **corrupt**, break down the honesty of somebody; to **interrupt**, break in the middle, a conversation, etc.

To **batter** with repeated blows; **burst**, open suddenly and jaggedly; **crack**, open in a thin, straight line; **crush**, fall or knock down in a soft mass; **frac'ture**, break mendably; **rend**, poetic, to tear asunder; to **sev'er**, separate, poetic; also medical: to sever an ar'tery, a tendon; to **smash**, break to a pulp; to **shatter**, break into particles; to **shiver**, break into long particles, as a piece of glass; to **sunder**, separate; to **demol'ish** a building; to **crumple**, fall or press into folds; to **crunch**, something crisp, as a biscuit.

A general break-up (ice, politics, etc.) . . . . . a **débâcle**.

Easily broken . . . . . fragile (frāj'ĭl).

A break in a bone . . . . . a **frac'ture**.

Unbreakable (argument), unanswerable . . . . **irréf'ragable**.

a **breast** (brĕst). Latin pectus, pectoris; hence **pec'toral**, pertaining to the breast or the lungs: "a pectoral fin," "a pectoral syrup." Greek stethos; hence **stĕthoscope**, an instrument for listening to sounds within the chest.

to **breathe** (brĕdh) (**brĕathing**, **brĕathed**; a **brĕath**). Latin spiro; hence to **aspire**, "breathe up to" or hope for; **perspire**, breathe through the skin, sweat; **transpire**, breathe across, i.e., become known; **conspĭr'acy**, a secret "breathing to-

gether" or plotting. Latin *flatus*, a breath; hence the divine *afflatus*, inspiration.

To die or nearly die for want of breath....to be asphyxiated (*äs-fik'-sī-ätéd*).

to **breed** (Past tense: *bred*), to bring into the world; "Rabbits breed much offspring"; "Great countries breed great men"; to engender hatred, friendship; to rear children, poultry; to raise vegetables; to train a soldier, an apprentice up to a standard of achievement.

**brev-**. Latin root meaning "short." Derived forms: *brév'ity*, *brē'viary*, *abbreviation*, *brief*, *abridge*. See *Short*.

**bridal**, adjective; pertaining to a bride; **bridle**, noun, headgear for a horse.

**bright**, adjective; producing visible light vibrations, whether by emitted or by reflected light: "The sun shines brightly," "A bright surface"; **brilliant**, vibrating more highly, noticeable for its peculiar brightness: "Jupiter shines brilliantly in the night sky," "He achieved a brilliant success"; **shining**, visible amid duller surroundings; **glaring** aggressively, so that it hurts the eyes; **gleaming**, sending flashes which cut the surrounding darkness; **glowing**, sending a weak light, warm and still; **glittering**, sending an intermittent, aggressive, fascinating light: "All is not gold that glitters"; **glistening**, reflecting light in sheets, as a wet or icy surface; **flaring**, appearing suddenly; **flashing**, appearing and disappearing suddenly; **flickering**, intermittently appearing and dying; **effulgent**, penetrating, impressive; **dazzling**, suddenly hurting the eyes; **sparkling**, seeming to give light from several sources at once, as a diamond; **luminous**, giving off light, opposed to dark; **lustrous**, reflecting a soft light, as a texture, furniture, etc.; **illuminated**, containing or bearing lights, as streets, rooms, etc.; **splendid**, brilliant and rich, suggesting achievement or luxury; **resplendent**, shining brilliantly, mostly figurative: "Resplendent in a new suit."

to **bring** (*bringing*, *brought*), to carry toward; **fetch**, go, get and bring; **retrieve**, get and bring something that might be lost: "When you come, bring me that book" (not a special trip); "Please fetch me a pencil" (special trip); to import goods into a country; to conjure a vision.—A messenger, person sent with a statement; the bearer of a note; a forerunner, one who brings signs of; a harbinger (*har'bin-ger*), bearer of news: "The lark is the harbinger of spring."

the **brink** of a precipice; **edge**, sharp line; **verge** of disaster; **rim** of something round; **brim**, top edge of a hollow vessel; **margin**, clearly marked space alongside.

**Brit'ain** (*brī'ten*; shorter name for Great Britain, meaning England, Scotland and Wales); a **Brit'on**, a native of Great Britain or one of the British colonies, often in the latter sense called a **Brit'isher**; **British**, adjective; **Brī'tānnia**, classical and allegorical name of the country; **Britan'nic**, officially of Britain: His Britannic Majesty; **Britannica**, Latin adjective,

name of Encyclopedia. All abbreviated **Brit.**—Do not confuse with the province of France called **Brittany** (brit'āni, spelled with two t's, unlike Britain with one t), whose people are called the **Bretons**.

- a **brother** (brūdh'er). Latin *frater*; hence **fraternal**; to **frat'ernize** with somebody, treat somebody as a brother; **frater'nity**, a brotherhood; **frat'ricide**, a brother-killer.—Abbreviated commercially, as part of a firm's name, plural: **Bros**.

**Brotherly** is more properly applied to the tenderness (note the softness of the sounds ūdh); **fraternal** to the sternness and the duties (note the hardness of the sound T, and the negativeness of the N): "brotherly love, a fraternal organization." The same remark applies to **motherly** and **maternal**, **fatherly** and **paternal**.

- a **brougham** (brōō'ūm), a closed carriage or automobile.  
 bū. Sound heard in the words: beauty, beautiful, butte (isolated hill).  
 a **bud**, undeveloped shoot, with special reference to its newness, its incompleteness; a **sprout**, growth, with special reference to its height; a **burgeon**, poetic.  
 a **buffalo** or American bison; plural: -oes or -os.  
 a **bug**. (This word is not admitted in polite society in England, where it is never used in the American sense of **insect**.)

An insect that preys upon other creatures..... a **par'asite**.

"Bug's-eye view," an artist's humorous coinage, to describe the point of view opposed to "bird's-eye view."

- to **build** (bīld). Past tenses: **built** (bīlt). Latin *struo*, *structum*; hence **structure**, the essential material parts; **construction**, putting together; **destruction**, tearing down; to **obstruct**, to build against, set up difficulties in the way of.  
 a **building**. Abbreviated, in names only, **Bldg**.  
 a **buoy**, life-saver or float. Pronounced "boy" in nautical English all over the earth, also generally in England. The word comes indirectly from Latin *boia*, a fetter, a buoy being a fettered float. Under the influence of Dutch *boei* (pronounced bōō'ē) and French *bouée* (pronounced bōō-ā), the present spelling became accepted, as also various pronunciations such as bwoy, bōō-ā, bwē. These are not standard, and might profitably be abandoned in favor of the more general "boy."  
**buoyant**, adjective (bōy'ant).  
 a **burglar**. Note the spelling with -ar.  
**burlesque** (bur-lesk'), adjective; tending to create laughter by the incongruousness of its imitation; (noun), a comedy imitation of a serious subject.  
 to **burn**. Past tenses: **burned** (burnd) or **burnt**.—Same origin as the word **brown**. Greek *kaustos*, burnt; hence **caustic**, burning; to **canterize**, heal a wound by burning; a **holocaust**, burning sacrifice. To **sear**, dry the surface by cooking almost to burning point: "In roasting meat, it is always desirable to sear the roast first, to prevent the juices from coming out in the

slower cooking"; to **scorch**, burn the outer surface: "to scorch a towel in ironing"; to **singe** (sɪŋj), burn the hair, down, nap, etc.; to **cremate** a dead body; to **incin'erate**, reduce to ashes, rubbish, etc. See Cook.

to **burst**. Past tenses: **burst**. "The balloon has burst from its moorings."

Do not confuse with the colloquial form "to bust," more expressive because it conveys more rapid movement. "To bust" has a regular past tense: **busted**.

**business** (biz'nes), the work that keeps one habitually busy, usually for gain: "He is in the coal business"; often referring to serious work without idea of gain: "Mind your own business," "I shall make it my business to find out"; **commerce**, distribution, exchange and barter, narrower than **business**: "The coal business includes both industry and commerce"; **occupation**, on which time is spent, often for pleasure only; **vocation**, life work; **avocation**, serious pastime or hobby; **employment**, working for somebody else; **profession**, implying higher education, as a lawyer's, doctor's; **trade**, manual occupation; also skilled business; **craft**, skilled manual occupation; **calling**, one's chosen line of work in life; **job**, temporary piece of work; a **deal**, a particular exchange of values; **transaction**, deal, with no necessary idea of profit; an **affair**, series of deals; sometimes used slightly to mean something of no importance.

**but** is both a preposition and a conjunction. As a preposition, it is followed by the objective case: "There was nobody **but** me," "All **but** me had left," "All **but** him had fled." If in doubt, try substituting "except": All except me had left, all except him had fled. As the word **but** is one of the shortest in the language, it implies a trifling objection: "It's nothing **but** a scare." **Except** implies a stronger restriction: "All will come, except those who have been ill."

As a conjunction, **but** links clauses or sentences: "I wanted to come, **but** I could not." With any idea of importance, use **however** (generally placed between commas after the first word or two): "I agree with your main contention. These questions, **however**, have to be considered. First . . ." With an idea of contradiction, use **nevertheless** (either at the beginning of the sentence, followed by a comma; or between words, with two commas): "I agree with you. **Nevertheless**, I can see you will have difficulty in convincing others," or: "I agree with you; I can see, **nevertheless**, that you will have difficulty . . ." Other shades of the same thought: **besides**, **moreover**, **though**. See Transitions.

Combined with a negative in any form, **but** is best avoided, as it creates "highbrow" constructions misused by most, and misunderstood by nearly all, unless abundantly clear, as "It has done **nothing but** rain for a month." Examples: "None

---

Pronunciation key. Vowels: æ ī ō ū ʏ as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ē ē ī ō ū ʏ as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; ā as in father; ēr as in merry; er as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ə in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in anger. See Syllables.

but the wise" (meaning "only the wise"); "It never rains but it pours" (unless it pours); "I doubt but he will come" (better: I doubt **that** he will come).

Avoid the phrase "but what." It is only right when it means "only that which," as in: "I offer but what I have." (I offer only that which I have.) It is wrong as connecting two verbs. Wrong: "I cannot believe but what he was lying." Right: "I cannot believe **but that** he was lying."

Better: "I cannot help believing that he was lying."

to **buy** (bī). Past tense **bought** (pronounced baut).

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels *ā ē ī ō ū y* as in *mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my*; *ä ö i o u y* as in *mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity*; *ā* as in *father*; *ēr* as in *merry*; *er* as in *mercer*; *ou* as in *loud*; *au* as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ā* in *senate*). Consonants: *g* always as in *go*; *th* as in *thief*; *dh* as *th* in *mother*; *ng* as in *sing* or in *singer*; *ng-g* as *ng* in *finger*. See *Syllables*.

---

# C

**c.** The written letter **c** represents several sounds, which it is very important to differentiate, as many spellings depend upon it.

(1) soft **c** (sound of **s**) **before vowels e, i, y**: trace, invincible, citizen, cycle.

(2) hard **c** (sound of **k**) **before vowels a, o, u**: cat, cot, cut.

(3) in combination with **i** the sound **sh**; vicious (vī-shus), acacia (a-kā-sha).

(4) in words of Italian origin, the sound **ch**: cello (chello), cicerone (chīcheronē); or, after **s**, the sound **sh**: crescendo (krā-shēn-dō).

Therefore, if a syllable ends in **-ce** (as trace, face, convince) and a suffix is added which begins with a vowel, the **e** will be kept if the suffix begins with **a, o, or u**: traceable, serviceable; but it will be dropped if the suffix begins with **e, i, or y**: convincing (not convinceing).

Normal pronunciation of **C** syllables:

ca.....kā in cat	co.....kō as in cot
ce.....sē as in cent	cu.....kū as in cut
ci.....sī as in cinch	cy.....sī as in cycle

Cat, cent, cinch, cot, cut, cycle.

**cactus.** Plural, **cactuses** or **cacti**.

**cad-, casu-.** Latin root meaning "fall." Derived forms: **cā'dence, decā'dence, case, cās'ual.** See **Fall**.

**cafeteria,** a public dining room where the patrons serve themselves or are served as they pass along counters on which the food is displayed, taking their food on trays to tables in another part of the establishment. Pronounced either the Americanized way: **kāf-ē-tē'riă**, or (rarely) the Spanish way: **kă-fē-tē-rē'ă**.

**cāl'cimine,** from Latin **calcis**, chalk; whence also **calcareous**, chalky; to **calcine**, cure by heat; **calcium chloride**, from which acetylene is made; **calculate**, because people used to count by means of small limestone pebbles. The spelling **Kalsomine** would make this word meaningless.

**a cal'endar,** book of dates.—Do not confuse with the word **calender**, an ironing device; or with **colander** (kŭl'ander), a vegetable sieve.

**to call.** Latin **voco**, vocatum; hence **vocation**, the life call; to **pro-voke**, call to action; **invoke**, call as an authority; **revoke**, call back, cancel; **vocabulary**, list of names by which things are "called."

To **shout** very loudly; **cry** spontaneously, often in fear or pain; **scream**, piercingly and in a loud voice; **shriek**, more piercingly than scream, as in great fear, anger or pain; **yell**, very loudly, as in excitement or fun; **bellow** in a deep voice,

as with the complete emptying of the lungs; said of animals and of people we dislike for their brutality; **bawl**, cry like a child; **roar**, like a lion, or in great fury; **clāmor** for attention, repeatedly, in high-pitched voice; **vocif'erate**, make much noise with idle recriminations.

A prearranged call.....a signal  
To call to a meeting.....to convēne

a **calliope** (ka-lī'ōpē), a musical instrument consisting of steam whistles. Note the pronunciation.

**calm** (kām); l silent before m as in psalm, salmon, almond. Originally "a rest during the noonday heat"; now "free from agitation, internal or external," as "a calm sea." **Still**, adjective, motionless; **quiet**, resting; **tranquil**, habitually calm; **peaceful** place or thought; **plācid** disposition, of one who is not subject to anger; **serene** countenance, disposition, with a feeling of strength and confidence, acquired by experience; originally "as the evening sky"; **composed** person; having overcome a tendency to agitation; **unruffled** temper, despite difficulties encountered; **phlegmatic** temperament; habitually slow to anger.

Habitual calm in presence of Fate.....stoicism.

Calm acceptance of events.....ēquanim'ity.

I **can**, thou canst, he can; we can, you can, they can; past tense **could**; the present infinitive form is "to be able to," as the preposition **to** is not use with **can**. Latin possum, potest; hence **possible**, which can be done; **potential**, having in it the power to do; **pōtent**, powerful. **Can** refers to physical ability; **may** to permission: "You can telephone from here, but you may not, as this is a private phone." (This usage is rapidly falling into disuse; in many other languages, one word is used in both senses.)

**Can but** and **cannot but** both mean "have to": "I can but think him guilty" (I can only think him guilty). "I cannot but think him guilty" (I can do nothing but think him guilty); (**cannot but** is an elliptical form for "I cannot do anything except," while in **can but** the word **but** means "only." The difference is due to the two meanings of **but**).

The phrases "cannot seem" and "cannot hardly" are both wrong, always. Use "does not seem," "can hardly." "It does not seem right." "I can hardly wait."

to **cancel** (canceling, canceled, cancellation); literally "to cross out"; to **nullify**, the effect of an act; to **void** a privilege, a permission; to **efface**, rub off, permanently; to **erase** an inscription, temporarily; to **annul** a decision, as by a superior authority; to **abrogate** a law; to **expunge** an entry from a record; to **quash** a decision, arbitrarily; to **rescind** a previous decision by the same body, temporarily; to **revoke** a permit; to **abolish** an institution.

**can'did**, adjective; speaking of a person or a statement free from disguise or bias, in intention at least; **frank**, expressing the

truth at the risk of incurring displeasure; **impartial**, without regard for friendship or otherwise; **honest**, prompted by a regard for truth; **artless**, lacking in trickery or finesse; **naïve** (nā-ēv'), showing a certain ignorance of conventions; **unsophisticated**, pure and whole, natural; **sincere**, without mask, and prompted by the heart; **fair**, recognized as truthful; **ingén'uous**, lacking in knowledge of life, "young."

**cant**. Latin root meaning "sing." Derived forms: **can'ticle**, **can'tor**, **canta'ta**, **recant**, **chant**, **incantation**, **chan'ticleer**, **ac-cent** (ak'sent). See Sing.

**a canvas**, cloth or painting. Plural **canvases**.

**a canvass**, a survey or review. Plural **canvasses**.

**capacity** means "possible contents"; **ability** means "power to do": The capacity of this jar is one quart. He is a man of great executive ability.

**capit**. Latin root meaning "head." Derived forms: **cap'ital**, **cap'itol**, **captain**, **decap'itate**; **chapter**, **chief**, **achieve**, **handkerchief** ("head-cover"), **cape**. See Head.

**capt** (in compounds: **-cipi-**, **-cept-**). Latin root meaning "take." Derived forms: **cap'ture**, **cap'tive**, **cap'tion**, **incip'ient**, **accept**, **except**, **precept**, **concept**, **deceptive**, **deceive**, **receive**, etc. See Take.

**capital letters**. Generally speaking, there are only two principal uses for capital letters: (1) to indicate a **name** or something we use in place of a name; (2) to indicate a **new start** in speech.

### CAPITALS FOR NAMES

**John and James met Mary** (ordinary names).

**The United States of America, Canada, France, Peru, Paris, Los Angeles County, the City of London, the Elks' Club, the Lusitania, the Little Village of Heart's Desire, the Wolverines** (names and nicknames of countries, cities, places, clubs, ships).

**An Arab, a Russian, a Chinaman, the Latin races, Red Indians, the Hebrew language, Sanskrit** (names of races, people, languages, and adjectives derived from such proper names; but we speak and write of a **negro**, a **gypsy**, as common words).

**The Mississippi River, Lake Michigan, Mount Hood** (names of rivers, lakes, mountains, when the word **river**, **lake**, etc., forms part of the name).

**The Baptist Church, the Catholic Church, the Thirty-nine Articles, the Apostles' Creed** (names of churches, creeds, etc.).

**God, Jehovah, the Messiah, the Son of Man, the Buddha, the Virgin Mary, the Beloved Disciple** (names of the Deity and holy persons).

**The Middle Ages, the French Revolution, the Battle of Bunker Hill, the Renaissance** (names of historical events or periods, but not the small words like **of** between more important words).



**Monday, September** (names of days and months; but not names of seasons: **summer, autumn, winter, spring**, unless we treat them as persons, as poets often do).

**In Him we trust** (pronouns that are substitutes for the name of the Deity, when the name itself has not been mentioned).

**The Red, White and Blue; the Union Jack; the Tricolor** (flag names).

**The North has had a heat wave, the South is prosperous** (the words **north, south, east, west**, when they mean definite geographical divisions; but not when used as mere points of the compass. We do not capitalize the words **northern, southern, etc.**, unless they form part of a name: **the Canadian Northern Railway**).

**General Mitchell, Colonel Richards, Professor Henry, Doctors Brown & Smith, Aunt Mary, Uncle John** (titles used as part of the name).

**The President, the King, the Secretary of the Interior, Her Majesty, Your Lordship, His Holiness, Your Honor** (titles of important personages, when the title is used in place of the name; but with ordinary people we write **the colonel, the doctor, the professor** without capitals; we also write without capitals **the secretary of our club, the king of England is a figurehead, the late president of the United States**).

**Shredded Wheat, Grape Nuts, Dublin Stout** (ordinary words used as trade names).

**I told Sister to fetch Brother** (family titles, when used in place of names).

### IMPORTANT NOTE

DO NOT capitalize small words (prepositions, conjunctions, relative pronouns) that come between longer words as in titles of books, plays, articles: **How to Live on Twenty-four Hours a Day, A Bill for the Simplification of English Spelling**.

DO NOT capitalize common words that go with a name, if they do not form part of the name itself: **the college at Hanover, the universities of Oxford and Cambridge, the ex-King**.

DO NOT capitalize names of things that used to be proper names but have become common: **india rubber, china white, japan (paint), manilla paper, pasteurized milk, quixotic, platonian, a kodak, vaseline, navy beans, india ink**. If, however, the name is still felt as a proper name, capitalize it: **Edison phonographs, French dry cleaning, French dressing, Greek art, Japanese prints**.

DO NOT *capitalize the words a or the* before the name of a play or book, unless it forms part of the official title: **the Leatherstocking Tales; the First Book of Kings** (but **A Tale of Two Cities**).

DO NOT capitalize **a or the** before the name of a newspaper or magazine: **the New York Times, the Boston Transcript; the Outlook; the Saturday Evening Post; the Atlantic**

**Monthly.** (However, a newspaper writing about itself may capitalize its name for the purpose of self-advertising: The New York American.)

### CAPITALS FOR NEW START

1. Capitalize the first word of a sentence:—

**He did not know what to write.**

DO NOT capitalize the second and successive sentences in a series of short questions:

**Where did he go? what for? when? how?**

2. Capitalize the first word of a sentence enclosed in parentheses, if it is a complete sentence, in no way dependent upon another:—

**She hesitated. (This is true, and I can vouch for it.)**

DO NOT capitalize the first word of a sentence in parentheses, if that sentence is part of another:—

**He claimed (as might be expected) that he was right.**

3. Capitalize the first word in a direct quotation (between quotation marks [“...”]):—

**After we had finished, he said, “Friends, this will be our last meeting.”**

**She called, “Mother, mother!”**

**He asked, “Who said that?”**

DO NOT capitalize the first word of an indirect quotation:—

**He asked who had said that.**

DO NOT capitalize the first word of an incomplete quotation or phrase:

**They contend that the organization “lives and moves and has its being” in its secretary.**

DO NOT capitalize the second part of an interrupted quotation if it is still the same quotation:—

**“This and no other reason,” he said, “prompted me to act as I did.”**

4. Capitalize the first word of every line of poetry:—

**Willows white, aspens quiver,**

**Little breezes dusk and shiver,**

**Through the wave that runs forever.**

5. Capitalize the first word of a formal statement, even if it follows a colon (:) or no punctuation at all:—

**In regard to speech, I wish to say this: Unless we learn to pronounce, we shall never know how to spell.**

**The question is, Will the President veto the bill or will he sign it?**

A formal statement is often preceded by words that arrest the attention, like **as follows, thus, namely, to wit, as.** These words, therefore, are generally followed by a colon (:) and a capital letter:—

**The results of the test are as follows: First place goes to . . .**

**There are several possible answers, to wit: It is possible . . .**

6. Capitalize the first word in a formal itemization:—

**Expression may be said to consist of several elements:—**

**1. A recognition of our own worth.**

**2. An acceptance of other people's right to . . .**

**3. Sufficient preparation for . . .**

**7. Write in capitals the whole word WHEREAS in a formal resolution, place a comma after it (,), and capitalize the first word following it; capitalize the word Resolved, and the first word after it; capitalize the word Greeting in a formal document:—**

**WHEREAS, It has been the custom . . .**

**Resolved, That this meeting . . .**

**To all who may read these presents, Greetings: Know all men . . .**

**8. Capitalize words and phrases used by themselves as equivalent to complete statements:—**

**Certainly! Of course! Why not? All right! Indeed, no! Never!**

**9. Capitalize the first and last words in a letter opening:—**

**My dear Sir: Dear Friend:**

**10. Capitalize the first word in the salutation at the end:—**

**Yours very truly.**

**Cordially yours.**

**11. Capitalize the word Esq., the word I, and the invocational O (not the exclamation oh!):—**

**John Tregarth, Esq.,**

**You do not realize, O my friend, what you have done!**

**12. The words junior, senior, when abbreviated, may be capitalized or not as desired (better not):—**

**Henry Brown, jr.**

**13. The abbreviations a.m. (before noon) and p.m. (after noon) may be capitalized, but the present tendency is to use small letters:—**

**At 8 a.m., after 6 p.m.**

**14. The abbreviations A.D. (in the year of our Lord), and B.C. (before Christ) are always capitalized.**

**15. In foreign proper names there is sometimes a "particle" which in the country of its origin does not take a capital letter when between two names, or after a title: von, de, du, de la, des, del, della. These, however, are capitalized at the beginning of a sentence, or after an ordinary word:**

**Erich von Stroheim.**

**Von Stroheim's new production.**

**Count de Brissac.**

**De Brissac was there.**

**16. Capitalize the Dutch prefix van, and the French prefixes le, la, les, in a name, except where otherwise preferred by the individual:—**

**Hendrick Van Loon.**

**Henry van Dyke (personal preference). Joseph La Croix.**

**capital**, city, principal, head, "capital punishment."

**capitol**, a building, named after the Capitol at Rome, Italy.

a **caprice** (kāprēs'). A sudden change of mood causing a change of decision; a **whim**, fantastic; a **vagāry**, occurring habitually; a **fancy**, sudden desire.

a **card**, a piece of cardboard of handy size, used for writing or printing information. A **post-card** or **postal card**, a picture **post-card**; a **show-card** to be placed in windows or hung on walls, containing announcements of a business nature; a **visiting card**, bearing a name and often an address. For **playing cards**, see **Cards**.

**cards**. Playing cards, a deck (pack) of cards; ace, king, queen, jack or knave, joker; spades, hearts, clubs, diamonds.—**Pinochle** (pēnok-l), **eucher** (ū'ker), **whist**, **auction bridge**, **poker**, **cribbage**, **fārō**, **cassino**, **snap**, **patience**, **solitaire**, **baccarat**, **écarté**.

**care**. Latin *cura*; hence **sinecure** (sī or sīn-), a position without any worries attached; **cūrate**, one who takes care of the detail work of a church; **curātor**, scientist who has charge of the collections in a museum; **manicure**, one who takes care of the hands.

Do not confuse "to take care of" a thing we are responsible for, and "to care for" a thing we like. "This boy does not take good care of his bicycle." "She does not care for oranges."

**Caution**, avoidance of danger by means of prudence; **cautiousness**, disposition of one inclined to caution; **circumspection**, "looking around," avoidance of hidden perils; **anxiety**, uneasiness concerning something feared or expected; **solicitude**, preparation of the desired good for somebody in one's charge, as a child; **concern**, serious interest, mixed with slight fear; **worry**, serious doubt of the future; **bother**, slight inconvenience.

Careless of his duties.....remiss (in his duties).

Careless way of doing things.....perfunctory (manner).

A country cared for by another.....a protectorate.

Care of (abbreviated on letters).....c/o.

Careless laziness.....nonchalance.

careful of what he has or has to do; **cautious**, disinclined to take risks; **prudent**, taking legitimate habitual care; **wary**, suspecting something; **circumspect**, looking around; **canny**, naturally holding back; **solicitous** of somebody's welfare; **mindful** of instructions received; **painstaking**, habitually.

to **carry** (carrying, carried; a carriage, a carrier). Latin *porto*; hence a **report**, sound carried back; **porter**, one who carries; **portable**, easily carried; to **comport** oneself, bear oneself with dignity; the **purport**, the carrying out of aim or object. To

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels *ā ē ī ō ū ŷ* as in *mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my*; *ä ö ī ō ū ŷ* as in *mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity*; *ā* as in *father*; *ēr* as in *merry*; *er* as in *mercer*; *ou* as in *loud*; *au* as in *land*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ā* in *senate*). Consonants: *g* always as in *go*; *th* as in *thief*; *dh* as *th* in *mother*; *ng* as in *sing* or in *singer*; *ng-g* as *ng* in *finger*. See **Syllables**.

**convey** a message or an idea; **transmit**, as an intermediary between two others; **transport** across a space, across the sea.

- a case.** In grammar, the relation of a noun or pronoun to other words. When the noun or pronoun is subject, i.e., performs the action, it is in the **nominative** case: I, thou, we, they, are always nominatives; "the door opens" (door is nominative because it is the subject of the sentence). When the noun or pronoun receives the action, it is in the **objective** or **accusative** case: me, him, her, them, are always objectives: "I open the door" (the door is objective, because it receives the action). When the noun is the possessor of an object or an action, it is in the **possessive** case, the only case in English always indicated by an inflexion of the noun: "the composer's opera" (composer is in the possessive case, indicated by 's in the singular). Pronouns do not take the possessive case, possessive adjectives being used instead: "my dog" (not: me's dog).

The noun takes the possessive even when the thing possessed is expressed in a full sentence: "This was the cause of my father's **going away until summer**" (my father possesses "going away until summer"). In the same way we say, with a possessive adjective: "It was the reason for my **going**" (not: for me going, despite popular ignorance of this point). See Possessive, Declension.

- to cast.** Past tense: **cast**.—For synonyms, see Throw.  
**casu-.** Latin root meaning "fall" (see **cad-** above). Derived forms: **cās'ual**, **cāsuistry**, **cāsualty**.  
**a cat.** Latin felis; hence **fēline**, adjective; catlike, stealthy.  
**a catas'trophē** (kā-tās'trō-fē, note that the final e is pronounced, as in most words of Greek origin: calliopē, hyperbolē, etc.).

For synonyms, see Accident.

- to catch.** Past tense **caught** (kaut). To lay hands quickly on something which is not permanently there; **take** something already found; **seize**, take eagerly; **nab** (colloquial) while it is available; **grab**, quickly, defiantly, often unlawfully; **grip** tightly in one's hand; **clutch** with tightly closing fingers; **snatch** with rapid motion, away from somebody; **apprehend** one wanted for an offense; **arrest**, formally declare under a criminal charge; **secure** from escape.

- a catechism** (kat'ē-kiz-m), a method of teaching by questions and answers. To **catechize** (kat'e-kiz); a **cat'echūmen**, one receiving elementary instruction.

**catholic**, adjective: written with small c, "universal"; written with a capital letter, **Catholic**: professing the creed of the Western Christian Church or specifically of the Roman Church; **catholicity**, the orthodoxy or universality of an idea; **Catholicism**, the Cath'olic religion. (Always use a capital letter in the religious sense, a small letter in the literary sense.)

### Some words used on this subject

The Pā'pacy, the Vatican, Rome. The Pope (Sovereign Pontiff), His Holiness, infallibility, Pāpal (adjective), the

hī'er-ar'chy (hī'er-ar'kī), the College of Cardinals, the Sacred College, a car'dinal, His Grace, an arch'bishop, a bish'op, a priest, a deacon. A Council, a creed, a decree, a dogma, anāthema, excommunication. Saints, canonization, beatification; sākraments; the sign of the Cross; gēnuflexion; a confessional; the stations of the Cross; a monk, a nun.

to **cause** (causing, caused; causation). To make things be; prodūce, bring forth into visibility; crēāte out of nothing or next to nothing; gēn'erate out of a different kind of substance; orīg'inate, be the first to produce; ascribe a result to a known cause; attrib'ute a result, rightly or wrongly, to a certain cause; impūte' bad motives to a person, etc.; fōment, a revolt; effect, succeed in causing: "effect a reconciliation between the two enemies"; occā'sion, afford an opportunity for: "His remarks occasioned an uproar"; stim'ulate, give new strength to; provoke maliciously; necessitate, render necessary.

**ceaseless**. Which never stops at all; incessant, which recurs constantly. "The ceaseless stream of traffic."—"Incessant interruptions."

**-cede, -ceed, -sede**.

Different spellings of the final sound sēd:

accede	precede	exceed	supersede
cede	recede	proceed	
concede	retrocede	succeed	procedure
intercede	secede		

**cent**. Latin root meaning "hundred." Derived forms: cen'ti-grade, cen'timē'ter, cen'tury, centū'rion, cen'tenary. See Hundred.

**ceremonious manners; ceremonial**, done with ceremonies, like a dedication; **formal, official act, rigid, stiff, set; perfunctory**, done without interest; **affected, unnatural; bombastic, exaggerated**.

**certain**, thing: known beyond doubt; person: basing his opinion on proved facts; **sure**, thing: expected without fail; person: basing his opinion on a feeling of utmost confidence; **confident**, person: placing his entire faith in.

(Note the forms: uncertain and incertitude.)

a **cēsū'ra** or **cāsura** (sē-sū'rā). In prosody, or verse-making, the natural break in a verse, usually somewhere near the middle. The cesura is a break in the sense, not in the rhythm:

Beneath those rugged elms / that yew tree's shade

Where heaves the turf / in many a mold'ring heap.

The cesura need not be at the end of a foot.

**chalk**.—Latin calcis, hence calcimine, a chalk wash for walls; **calculus**, a chalk pebble; to **calculate**, to count, as with pebbles, the former way of counting; **calculation; incalculable**.

Pronunciation key. Vowels: ā ē ī ō ū y as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ä ä ī ō ū y as in mat, met, mit, not, nut, pity; & as in father; ēr as in merry; er as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in loud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ä in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.

to **challenge** is to express doubts about a statement, or about a person's ability to do a certain thing, often in competition with the challenger, and generally in a sporting spirit; to **defy** is to call upon a person to make good at something considered beyond his ability or daring; a **defy** is usually issued in a sneering spirit.

For examples, see Defiance.

to **change** (**changing, changed, changeable**). Latin *muto*; hence a **mutation**, change in character between parent and offspring; to **commute**, exchange daily ticket for a monthly one; to **transmute**, change one substance into another, as an alchemist; **immutable**, unchangeable; to **moult**, change feathers. To **alter** partially, as a garment, an attitude; to **modify** slightly; to **falsify** fraudulently, as a document; to **interpolate** a passage in a document; to **transform** completely but gradually; to **substitute** one thing for another, put it in its place; to **replace** a broken or lost object by buying a new one; to **convert** a thing to one's own use, i.e., steal; a person to a cause, i.e., win him over; to **exchange** one article for another of equal value: "Exchange is no robbery."

Series of changes to which one is subject in the

course of life.....*vīcīs'situdes*

**character** (*kar'akter*), a person's real value. **Disposition**, the sum total of a person's instinctive tendencies (McDougall), as a cheerful, happy, whining, aggressive, loving disposition; **temper**, the temporary expression of the impulses or desires, as "He is in a bad temper now, but he will soon feel better." **Temperament**, the nervous habits due to natural causes such as secretions. "A sanguine, nervous, bilious, choleric temperament." **Personality**, the way a person's disposition strikes others. "A cheerful, happy, sanguine, aggressive personality." **Constitution**, another name for "temperament," implying that these habits are "built in" the system, also used for physical resistance. "A man with a powerful constitution can stand any climate." **Reputation**, the character of a person, as supposed by others to be.

to **characterize** (*char'ac-teris'tic, char'acteriza'tion*). In writing, acting, etc.: to indicate the way in which a person would speak or behave so clearly that the person portrayed seems real to the reader or the audience.

to **chat** in friendly fashion, often of serious subjects; to **chatter** foolishly.

For full list of synonyms, see Babble or Gossip.

**chē**. Sound heard in to cheat, a chief.

**chě**. Sound heard in Czech-Slovakia (*chěk'ō-slō-vā'kī-ā*).

to **cheat** at a game; to **defraud** somebody of his due; to **swindle** somebody by taking his property under false pretenses.

**chemistry** (*kēm'is-trī*), literally "the hidden science," because its early form, **alchemy** (*āl'kēmī*) was surrounded with mystery. The science which deals with the properties of substances and their action upon one another, as distinguished from **physics**

(fiz'iks, a singular noun in plural form), which deals with various forms of energy. "Water and milk form a physical mixture," as they do not change their properties; "iron and water may form a chemical compound," as rust is neither iron nor water but a new substance.

### Some words used on this subject

Chem'ical nōmenclāture, substance, chem'icals, at'oms, mol'ecules, elements, mixture, combination, solution, analysis, laboratory, solid, fluid, liquid, gas, oxygen, hydrogen, nitrogen, acid, alkali, salt, blow-pipe, retort, formula.

**chief** (chēf). From French chef, hence a **chef** or chief of a kitchen; from Latin caput, capitis, the head; hence **capital**, a chief city or one's chief supply of money; **capital punishment**, inflicting loss of "head" or life; **handkerchief**, "hand cover for the head"; to **decapitate**, to cut off the head. Greek archos; hence **archaic** (ar-kā'ik), pertaining to head or beginning times, ancient, out of date; **monarch** (mon'erk), a sole chief; **anarchy** (an'arkī), absence of a chief or ruler.

The idea of head and that of **beginning** or **source** are often used interchangeably: **principal**, belonging to the "principle" or beginning, means the same as **capital**, belonging to the head.

**child** (plural **children**; possessive plural: **children's**).—Latin puer, boy; hence **pūerile**, childish; infans, child too small to speak; hence **in'fantile**, pertaining to children; an **in'fant**, a minor, one who in law is not a man, i.e., any person under 21 in most States. Greek paidos, hence **pedagogue**, a child-leader.

Idea of youth: Latin juvenis, hence **jūvenile** (act, court, etc.).

**chir-**. Anglicized form of **cheir** (kīr), Greek word meaning "hand." Derived forms: **chiropody** (kī-rōp'o-dī), **chiropractor**, **chirōg'raphy** (handwriting); **surgeon**, **surgery**. See Hand.

- a choice**, a definite judgment following hesitation due to possibly equal desire; a **selection**, choice of several at the same time: "She made a selection of the prettiest waists and bought them all"; an **option**, guaranteed possibility of choice: "He has an option on the adjoining property," i.e., He has a contract guaranteeing that he may choose to buy it or not; a **dilemma**, a situation in which it is necessary but almost impossible to choose; "on the horns of a dilemma"; a **preference**, greater inclination to one than to another.

Which may be selected at will.....op'tional

**choir** (pronounced kwīr; formerly spelled quire), church singers; **chorus** (kor'us), any group of singers in unison, especially in the theater.

- to choose** (chōōz). Past tense **chose**: "Yesterday I **chose** (chōz) new curtains for my room." Present Perfect, **chosen**: "I have never **chosen** (chōz'n) curtains before."—Latin eligo, electum, "to pick out"; hence an **election**, choice of candidates;



elect, the one chosen; the **élite** (ě-lět'), the ones selected or self-selected as leaders.

**Christ** (kríst, long í; but all derived forms are pronounced with a short í sound). Literally "The Anointed" or "The Holy One." From the same root comes **chrism** (krízm), consecrated oil. In Greek **ch** is one letter, somewhat like an elongated **x**, which also looks not unlike a very simple diagram of a fish. Hence the initials of Jesus Christ: **I-CH**, which are also the first two letters of the Greek word "ichthys," fish, gave rise to the symbolic design of a fish, used by early Christians in the catacombs to represent Jesus Christ.—A **Christian** (krís'tián), professed follower of Jesus Christ; **Christianity** (kris-tí-an'ítí), the religion of Christians; **Christendom** (kris'n-dum; no t sound), the Christian world; to **christen** (kris'n) or **baptize**. See **Church** (with a capital C); also **church** (with a small c).

**chrom-**. Greek root meaning "color" (pronounced Krom-). Derived forms: **chrômō**, **chrômátic**, **panchrômatic**, **pôlychrôme**. See **Color**.

**chron-**. Greek root meaning "time" (pronounced Kron-). Derived forms: **chrôn'ic**, **ănăch'ronism**, **chrôn'icle**, **chrônôl'ogy**, **syn'chronize** (sing'krō-níz), **chrônôm'eter**. See **Time**.

- a **Church** (written with a capital C when it refers to the organized body of worshippers; with a small c when it refers to the place of worship. See next entry for the latter meaning). Greek **kyrios**, Lord; **kyriakos**, "house of the Lord"; hence the Scottish and Flemish word **kirk**; hence also **Dunkirk**, "the church on the dunes"; **Kyrie Eleison**, "Lord, have mercy," an invocation sung in Greek in the Roman Catholic ritual. Latin *ecclesia*, an assembly, brotherhood, or craftsmen's meeting (in modern parlance, a "trade union"), a name borrowed by the early Christian communities; hence **ecclesiast'ic**, pertaining to the Church.

### Names of some of the principal Christian Churches

Roman Catholic (for full entry, see **Catholic**), Eastern Orthodox (Greek Church, Russian Church), Prötestant (see **Protestant**); **Episcopālian** (Anglican; in England, "Church of England"); **Evangel'ical**, **Prës'býtērian**, **Baptist**, **Méth'odist**, **Wes'leyan Methodist**, **Con'gregā'tionalist**, **Lú'theran**; **Friends** (Quakers), **Ad'ventists** (Seventh-day Ad'ventists), **Latter-day Saints** (Mormons), **Christian Science** (Mrs. Eddy, founder).

For non-Christian religions, see **Religion**. See also the entries under **Bible**, **Catholic**, **Sacrament**, **Sin**; and the next entry.

- a **church** (written with a small c when it refers to the building. See above, **Church**, with a capital C).—A **cathē'dral**, bishop's church; a **basil'ica**, rectangular church; a **baptistry**, of circular design; a **minster**, former monastery church; an **abbey**, abbott's church; a **temple**, used of any house of worship, whether Christian or pagan, especially a Greek, Roman,

or Jewish place of worship; a **chăp'el**, separate place of worship; either the church edifice of a body of worshipers separated from a regular body, or a smaller building, or a small place of worship in an institution, or a church within a church, as "one of the chapels in Westminster Abbey"; a Jewish temple or **synagogue**; a Moslem (Mohammedan) **mosque** (mōsk); a **meeting-house** (Quakers'); an **or'atory**, private place of worship, as in a private home; a **shrine**, sacred to some holy person; a **fane** (poetic).

### Some words used on this subject

The nave (central part of the church), the transepts (the lateral parts which give the church the form of a cross, in that type of architecture), the choir (kwir, portion reserved for the singers), the chancel (space reserved for the clergy), the altar, the vestry or sacristy (where vestments and sacred vessels are kept, in charge of the sexton or sacristan), the organ loft, the rood screen (ornamental architectural piece separating the chancel and choir from the nave, in some ancient churches), the reredos (rēr'dos, called in Spanish church architecture the "retablo"; a large ornamental screen behind the altar); the clergy (bishop, priest, minister, pastor, clergyman, parson, preacher, evangelist), the congregation (the worshipers, the faithful); a service, divine service, divine worship; the mass (Roman Catholic; often written by R.C.s with a capital M); the liturgy (prescribed form of worship in ceremonial Churches), the sacred rites, the ritual, a ceremony; morning prayer, evening prayer, prayer meeting, vespers (evening service); a sermon, the pulpit, the text, a quotation, the Bible, the Gospel; the Epistle, a lecturer; a reader; the choir (singers), a chor'ister (kor'ister), a cantor, to sing, to intone, chant; a hymn, a chant, a dirge, a psalm (sām), the psalter (saul'teri; book of psalms), the responses. To baptize (baptism, christening), to confirm (confirmation); to ordain a priest; to consecrate a bishop. **Adjectives:** ecclesiastical (pertaining to the church), lay (pertaining to the laity or unordained people).

See also Bible, Sacrament, Sin, Catholic, Protestant, Hours.

a **cit'izen**. Latin *civis*; hence **civ'ic**, pertaining to the duties of citizenship. See **City**.

**city**. Latin *urbs*, a town; hence **urban**, pertaining to the town; **interurban**, between towns; **urbanity**, city manners, politeness; **urbane**, with city manners, courteous, polite. See also **Citizen**. Greek *polis*; hence **policy**, the management; **metrop'olis**, the ruling city; **metropol'itan**, pertaining to the big city, important.

**civ-**. Latin root meaning "city." Derived forms: **civ'ic**, **civ'ilized**, **civ'iliza'tion**.

**clam-**. Latin root meaning "shout, call." Derived forms: **clām'or**, **dēclāmā'tion**; **claim**, **acclaim**, **proclaim**, **claimant**. See **Shout**.

to **clap** (clapping, clapped). Latin *plaudo*, *plausum*; hence to **applaud**, **applause**; to **explode**, burst out with a clapping noise;

**plausible**, which can be applauded, used of an argument that sounds better than it really is.

- a class.** A group of things or people which have some features in common.

In the natural sciences, the cat'egories are, in the order of decreasing importance, the **phylum** (fī'lum), **class**, **order**, **fam'ily**, **gē'nus**, **species** (spē'shēz), **vari'ety**, **individual**.

Popularly, most of those words are used as synonyms, also: **division**, **group**, **denomination**, religious, currency; **sort**, **group**, **rank**, army, etc.; **grade** in quality, size, school progress; **quality**.

People who hang together closely... a coterie, a clique (klēk)

**clean**, adjective; **cleanly** (klēnli), adjective, having clean habits; **cleanliness** (klēn'līnēs); **cleanly** (klēnli), adverb, in a clean manner.—Latin purus, hence **pure**, **purity**, **Puritan** in religion; **purist** in style.

**Immac'ulate**, spotless, unsoiled, undefiled, unblemished. To **clean** from physical impurities; to **cleans** (klēnz) from sin, blame; also of the higher kind of cleaning.

**clear**, adjective. Latin clarus, bright; hence **clar'ity**.—French clair, hence a **clairvoyant**, literally "one who sees clearly," one who reads the future.—Latin lux, lucis, light; hence **lūcid**, "a lucid explanation," **lucidity**, to **elū'cidate**.—Latin lumen, light; hence **lūminous**, which enlightens, "a luminous idea."

**Bright** sky; **fair** weather; **fresh** breeze; **sunny** day; **coherent**, that holds together, statement; **intelligible**, easy to understand; **ob'vious**, which needs no proof; **lōgical**, well deduced; **explicit**, fully stated.

Opposites of **clear**: **abstruse**, involved; **recondite**, containing hidden meaning; **obscure**, not well lighted; **turbid** water; **dull** weather.

**clēv'er.** In English usage, this word refers only to native ingēnū'ty and intelligence of a particular kind. "He is clever at cards but a fool in business"; "He played us a clever trick." In America the word is principally used in the dialect sense of "quick-witted."

**Ver'sātile**, able to turn his ability in many directions; **adroit**, inventive and intelligent; **smart**, intelligent and somewhat unscrupulous.

**climac'tic**, pertaining to a climax or highest point of interest in a story: "The climactic situation of the play."

**climāt'ic**, pertaining to climāte: "The climatic conditions in Arizona are favorable for tubercular patients."

- a climax.** In Rhetoric or the Drama, the point of highest interest toward which all situations have been tending throughout the narrative or the presentation; the point where the tension is greatest, where all the attention concentrates. The climax is enhanced by **opposition** or contrast, giving magnitude to the

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels ā ē ī ō ū ŷ as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ä ē ī ō ū ŷ as in mat, met, mit, not, pity; ä as in father; ēr as in merry; er as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in land. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ä in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer: ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.

conflict, and by **suspense**, which prevents monotony and keeps up the intensity of the reader's or spectator's interest.

- to close** (klōz), **closing**, **closed**. (Note that these are pronounced with a z sound, whereas the adjective **close** is pronounced with an s sound: "The air is close (klōs) in this room.") Latin claudō, clausum; hence **to conclude**, close a series; a **recluse**, person shut away from the world; a **cloister**, place of seclusion; a **sluice**, gate that closes a canal.
- a cloth** (with short ō and voiceless th: klōth). Plural, in the sense of "pieces of material"; **cloths** (klōdhz); in the sense of clothing: **clothes** (klōdhz).
- to clothe** (klōdh). Past tense, **clad** or **clothed** (klōdh'd); **clothing** (klōdhing), a **clothier** (klōdh'yer).—To cover with a garment; to **dress** for effect; **attire**, literary; **deck**; **gown**.
- clōthing**. See Garment.
- a cloud**. Latin nebula; hence **neb'ulous**, foggy, not clear; a **neb'ula**, a cluster of stars.
- coffee** (kōf'ī, not kau'fē); French **café** (both the drink and the place where it is served); **café-au-lait** (kāfā-ō-lā'), half milk; **café noir** (kāfā-n-war'), without cream; **mocha** (mō'ka), Java; **demi-tasse**; a **percōlā'tor** (not -cū-); a **cafeteria** (q.v.).
- coherence** (ko-hē'rens), or "holding together." In Rhetoric, the quality which makes similar events or arguments appear to eling together.
- a coincidence** (kō-in'sid-ens), the unexpected happening of two unrelated events simultaneously; **occurrence**, a single happening; **concurrence**, the meeting of two sets of action or thought that have been moving in the same direction.
- cōld**, adjective. Latin frigidus; hence **frīgid**, very cold. Ice melts at 32° Fahrenheit (0° Centigrade); **stone cold**, about 35-50° F. (2-10° C.); **cold**, about 40-60° F. (5-10° C.); **cool**, about 50-75° F. (10-24° C.); **lukewarm** or **tēpid**, about 75-90° F. (24-32° C.); **warm**, about 85-125° F. (30-52° C.). See Warm.
- a cōld**; a **chill**, all over; a **cold in the head**; a **cold on the chest**; **catarrh** (kā-tār'), inflammation causing a flow of mucous matter; a **cough** (kōf); **fēver** and **agūe**.—To **sneeze**, to **cough** (kōf), to **perspire**; a **handkerchief**; a **hot water bottle**; a **warming pad**; **eu'calyp'tus oil**; **menthol**; **camphor**; a **dis'in'fec'tant**; an **an'tiseptic**.
- to collect** selectively; **gather** indiscriminately; **amass** in order to have much; **accūmulate**, in the course of time; **hoard**, be afraid of parting with; **pile up**; **store up**.
- a collective noun**. In Grammar, a noun is called collective when it represents, in singular form, a plural idea: crowd, mob, committee, army. Collective nouns are followed by the singular or the plural verb, according entirely to the dominant idea in the speaker's consciousness: "The committee are disagreed" (i.e., its members are disagreed); "the committee is agreed" (it is now considered as a unit).
- a cōlon**, sign of punctuation (:) representing a pause after the voice has been raised in expectation of a further statement.

The colon originated in a 13th century musical form called the *podatus*, indicating a pause at the end of two ascending musical notes. See *Punctuation*.

The colon is used: (1) before the actual working of a quotation of some length. "He said to me: 'Friends, this is our last meeting.'" (If the quotation is short or incomplete, use a comma: "He said, 'Come,' but I did not go.") (2) Between two coordinate (i.e., equally important) statements when the second explains the first: He is interested in the progress of his students: he watches closely all their work. (3) In quotations and time, when the normal order is reversed:—Cor. IV: 3 (in the third verse of the fourth chapter of Corinthians); 3: 20 (twenty minutes after three).

**collō'quial**, adjective. A word or phrase is said to be colloquial when it is used by the majority of people in informal conversation, but not standardized for use in formal speech or writing.

- a color** (kūl'ēr). Greek *chroma*; hence **chromatic** (krō-mat'ik), pertaining to colors; **āchromat'ic lens**, one that does not produce color distortions; **pan'chromāt'ic film**, one sensitive to all colors.—**Tint, shade, blend**.—Colors of the rainbow: vī'ōlet, in'digo, blue, green, yellow, orange, red.—Color names in heraldry: or (gold or yellow), argent (silver or white), sable (black), gules (red), āzure (blue), vert (green), purple (purple).

**Local color**, in writing or art: the details of scene or action which make the reader see vividly the individuality of the place described. These details may not include color proper.

- a column** (kōl'ūm, to rime with "doll 'em." The pronunciation kol'yūm is a rank provincialism.) A cylindrical supporting piece in a building, usually of symmetrical and beautiful design, unlike a **pillar**, which may be any kind of support of a vertical nature. Also a body of troops drawn up in depth; or printing type, figures, etc., in vertical arrangement.
- a collection**. For synonyms, see *Gather, Crowd, Many*.
- to combine**, put together several elements, each keeping its identity; to **ūnite**, make one; **ūnify**, make as one in manner of operation; **associate**, become friends in work; **consolidate**, join strength; **amal'gamate**, each losing its separate identity; **concat'enate**, make a chain of; **confed'erate**, swear mutual assistance; **join** end to end.
- to come** (kūm); **coming**; Past tense: **come**.—Latin *venio, ventum*; hence to **intervene**, come between; **convene**, come together; **a convent**, religious community house; **advent**, the coming; **adventure**, "coming to" something.

- a comma**, a sign of punctuation (,) used to indicate a brief pause in speech, or to separate words in writing which do not form a continuous idea. The comma is used principally:

(1) To set off connecting words in the middle of a clause: This, however, is the fact. At the same time, we may be going too fast. Such conduct, I think, deserves high praise.

(2) To set off a clause with an **ING** word which indicates

separate action: **Being tired**, I sat down. It is strange , **conditions being so hard**, that they should waste so much money.

(3) To set off the name of a person addressed: I thank you , **John**.

(4) To set off an additional description or explanation: This is Los Angeles , **the largest city in Southern California**.

(5) To set off a clause that could be left out without destroying the sense: Alaska , **which was purchased from Russia in 1867**, has an area of nearly 600,000 miles.

(6) To set off a short, direct quotation within a sentence: He answered , **"I will."**

(7) To set off a clause appearing before the principal subject: **If you go** , don't forget the tickets.

(8) To set off a clause beginning with a coordinate conjunction (and, but, or, nor, neither, for): He was killed , **and his brother was hurt**. (But before **so, thus, therefore**, use a semi-colon.)

(9) Between two modifying words of equal rank: A weak , **scrawny** , disgusting individual.

(10) To indicate a slight pause in speech in a continuous narrative: We started early , traveled slowly , rested for a while in the afternoon , and came back in good time for dinner.

to **commence** (commencing, commenced, commencement) is formal; to **begin** is informal.

**common**, adjective: shared by many: "a common friend"; **joint**, equally shared by two or more; **usual**, "the usual way," "a common expression"; **regular**, according to rule; **general**, accepted by most.

**Common** is not properly used to mean **pleasant, friendly, nice, intimate**.—In England **common** is synonymous with **vulgar**.

a **comparative**. In grammar, a form used for making a comparison. The comparative is formed in short adjectives with -er: longer, taller, handsomer (the final -e, if there is one, is dropped before -er: simple, simpler; a final -y is changed into -i-: handy, handier, except shy, shyer; a single final consonant is doubled: red, redder). In longer adjectives and more unusual ones, the comparative is formed with **more**: more doubtful, more probable, more anxious, more learned.—For comparison of adverbs, see Adverb.

Consult the dictionary in every case of doubt.

to **compare** (comparing, compared with, com'parable with or to, compar'ative, a compar'ison).—To **collate**, gather and verify facts for a definite purpose; to **liken** one thing to another.

In footnotes, "compare" is written **cf.** (abbreviation of the Latin word "confer" meaning "compare").

to **compète** (compêting, compet'itive, a compet'itor, compet'ition). A **rival** for an honor; an **opponent** in an election; an **antag'onist** in debate; an **entrant** in a race.

**complā'cent**, adjective. Latin placere, to please.—**Satisfied, self-satisfied.**—**Complācency**, self-satisfaction; **com'plaisance**, desire to please.

- to **complain** of a grievance; to **grumble** (imitative word: sound GR for active discontent; M for closed mouth, muttering; BL for blowing and "hot air"); to **murmur** under one's breath, angrily (M for closed mouth, R for anger).
- a **complex**. In psychology, a group of associated desires hidden in the subconscious mind, but ready to spring into action on being "tapped" by a suitable stim'ulus. "The art of tapping complexes is the art of making sales." "He has always suffered from an inferiority complex: he rebels against authority, but ends in submitting to it."
- a **com'plément**, the part that complEtes. Do not confuse with **compliment**, a speech that complies with the requirements of politeness.
- a **complexion** (adjective **complexioned**, not complected: "fair complexioned").—Fresh, blooming, ruddy, pale, sallow, dark, swarthy (very dark), light (U. S.= fair, England).
- a **compō'nent** part, one that helps "compose" or make up the whole; a **constit'uent**, a thing that belongs to the very essence; an **ingrē'dient**, something that goes in the formula: "Chocolate is an ingredient of many brands of cigarettes"; **int'egral**, adjective, not sep'arable without disintegration, essential, vital.
- a **composition** (kōm-pō-zish'ūn), an orderly way of presenting facts. A composition implies the **selection** of a subject; its **limitation** to a particular aspect that will be fully developed; the choice of a **viewpoint**, which may be subjective (the writer's) or objective (scientific); the use of **narration, description, exposition, argument, dialogue, conflict, suspense, climax**, or a suitable mixture of those.

See entries under those various words; also Rhetoric.

### compound words.

#### Write the following as separate words

all right	every day	per cent (but percentage)
any day	every time	
any time	ex officio	pro tempore
by and by	in fact	some day
by the bye	in order	some way
by the way	in spite	no one
each other	near by	
en route	(on the) other hand	

#### Write the following as single words

myself	somebody	likewise
himself	nobody	although
herself	upward	altogether
itself	downward	throughout
yourself	upright	somewhat
ourselves	downright	sometimes

yourselves	beforehand	somehow
themselves	nowadays	moreover
oneself	twofold	thereupon
whatever	steadfast	furthermore
whichever	extraordinary	indoors
whoever	overcome	upstairs
anything	together	beforehand
something	without	overhead
nothing	whenever	whereas
anybody	nevertheless	notwithstanding
everybody	inasmuch	anyone (meaning anybody)
everyone (meaning everybody)	someone (meaning somebody)	

**comprehensible**, that can be understood.

**comprehensive**, that includes much: "a comprehensive statement of assets and liabilities."

a **comrade**, literally "a room mate." For synonyms, see Friend.

to **conceive** (conceiving, conceived, conceivable, a concept, conception, conceit). Latin *concipio*, "to take in together."

A **concept** is a mental image: "Animals are incapable of holding the concept of Eternity"; a **conception** is an original idea or view: "I had no conception of the magnitude of this task"; **conceit** is good opinion of oneself: "He is too conceited to admit that he is ever wrong."

to **conclude**, literally "close together," **concluding**, **conclusion**, **conclusive**. To come deliberately to the end: "This concludes our entertainment." "After hearing both sides, I conclude there is much to think about."

**concrete**, adjective.—A word is called **concrete** when it is the name of a thing: chair, table, door. It is right to use concrete words to describe ideas, in order to bring them more vividly to mind: a cutthroat (assassin), a sail (ship), no hands wanted (labor), under my roof, Wall street, Washington, Downing street (the British Government).

to **condemn** (kon-dēm'), pass unfavorable judgment on; **convict**, pass legal sentence on; **blame** somebody, lay upon him responsibility for a wrong; **censure**, express unfavorable opinion as to a moral wrong; **reprove**, express blame, but with kindly feelings; **denounce**, state publicly one's objections to a course.

See Blame.

to **condense**, reduce to lesser density: "Steam condenses into water on cooling"; to **compress**, by pressure: "compressed air, compressed hay"; **concentrate**, by taking away unessential parts: concentrated food, concentrated perfume (by removing the alcohol and preserving the essential oils); **contract**, shrink together: "Wood contracts and expands according to moisture and temperature."

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels *ā ē ī ō ū y* as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; *ă â ĩ ă ū ȳ* as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; *ā* as in father; *ēr* as in merry; *er* as in mercer; *ou* as in loud; *au* as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ā* in senate). Consonants: *g* always as in go; *th* as in thief; *dh* as *th* in mother; *ng* as in sing or in singer; *ng-g* as *ng* in finger. See Syllables.



to **condone** an offense, by shutting one's eyes to it; **tol'erate**, find no fault with; **excuse**, find good reasons for; **overlook**, pay no attention to; **forgive**, blot out one's desire for the other's punishment.

a **conflict**. In Rhetoric or the Drama, the element of opposition which provides the necessary contrast, giving magnitude to the task to be accomplished or to the character under trial.

**congé'nial**, suited to one another; **gē'nial**, pleasant.

**conjugation**, a word meaning "yoking together"; the various forms assumed by a verb to express different shades of thought. A verb has **modes** or **moods** which denote the mood or thought of the speaker: **indicative** mode, for statements of facts; "I go"; **imperative** for commands: "Go!"; **subjunctive** or dependent mode: "lest he be offended"; **infinitive** or undefined mode: "to go." Modes have various **tenses** or time forms. **Present** tense: "I go, I do go, I am going"; **Past** tense: "I went, I did go, I have gone, I had gone"; **Future** tense: "I shall or will go." These combine in various ways: **Present perfect** (unfinished time, action still going on): "I have seen"; **Past perfect**: "I had seen"; **Future perfect**: "I shall have seen." Verbs also have forms that are combined adjectives and verbs (**participles**): seeing, going, finished, painted; and forms that are combined verbs and nouns (**gerunds**, which are similar in form to the present participle): "The going is good," "tired of doing nothing."

The principal variations in the form of English verbs, apart from the use of auxiliaries (see Auxiliary), are as follows:—

Present participle and gerund end in -ing, which is added to the root: end, ending. If the root ends in -e, it drops the -e: take, taking; except when it is necessary to distinguish the word so formed from another of similar spelling: singe, singeing (with an e, to distinguish from singing, from sing); dye, dyeing (with an e, to distinguish it from dying, from to die). If it ends in a single consonant which is part of an accented syllable, it doubles the consonant: compel, compelling.

Past participle and past tense end in -ed, pronounced **ěd** after the sounds **t** or **d**: completed (kom-plě'těd), deeděd; pronounced **d** after the sounds **g, b, m, n, l, r, z, v**: logged (lōgd), crabbed (krăbd), wormed, mined, thrilled, blurred, raised, shelved; also pronounced **d** after vowel sounds: dismayed, freed, defied, bestowed, glued; pronounced **t** after the sounds **k, p, sh, ch, s, f**: packed, rapped, wished, ditched, missed, sniffed.

Present indicative, in the third person singular only (after he, she, it) ends in -s or -es: he goes, it looks. After the old-style "thou" the verb generally ends in -t or -est: thou sayest, thou wast, thou speakest (note the form: thou art).

**Conjugation of a model regular verb.** (For use of each tense, see Tenses.)

## ACTIVE VOICE INDICATIVE MODE

### Present tense (habitual)

#### Singular

- 1-st person: I love
2. thou lovest
3. he loves

#### Plural

- 1-st person: we love
2. you love
3. they love

### Present tense (emphatic)

I do love, thou dost love, he does love; we do love, you do love, they do love.

### Present tense (progressive)

I am loving, thou art loving, he is loving; we are loving, you are loving, they are loving.

### Past tense (preterit, past definite, perfect)

I loved, thou lovedst, he loved; we loved, you loved, they loved.

### Present Perfect (past indefinite)

I have loved, thou hast loved, he has loved; we have loved, you have loved, they have loved.

### Past Perfect (Pluperfect)

I had loved, thou hadst loved, he had loved; we had loved, you had loved, they had loved.

### Future tense

I shall love, thou wilt love, he will love; we shall love, you will love, they will love. (See Shall and Will for correct use.)

### Future Perfect

I shall have loved, thou wilt have loved, he will have loved; we shall have loved, you will have loved, they will have loved.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

### Present tense

If I love, if thou love, if he love; if we love, if you love, if they love.

### Past tense

If I loved, etc. (all forms invariable).

## IMPERATIVE MODE

1. Let me love.
2. Love thou!
3. Let him love.

1. Let us love.
2. Love ye! or Love!
3. Let them love.

## INFINITIVE

Present: To love. Past: To have loved. Future: To be about to love.

## PARTICIPLE

Present: loving. Past: loved.

## PASSIVE VOICE INDICATIVE MODE

### Present tense (habitual)

I am loved, thou art loved, he is loved ; we are loved, you are loved, they are loved.

### Present tense (progressive)

I am being loved, thou art being loved, he is being loved ; we are being loved, you are being loved, they are being loved.

### Past tense (Pr  terit, past d  fin  te, perfect)

I was loved, thou wast loved, he was loved ; we were loved, you were loved, they were loved.

### Present Perfect (Past ind  fin  te)

I have been loved, thou hast been loved, he has been loved ; we have been loved, you have been loved, they have been loved.

### Past Perfect (Pluperfect)

I had been loved, thou hadst been loved, he had been loved ; we had been loved, you had been loved, they had been loved.

### Future tense

I shall be loved, thou wilt be loved, he will be loved ; we shall be loved, you will be loved, they will be loved.

### Future Perfect

I shall have been loved, thou wilt have been loved, he will have been loved ; we shall have been loved, you will have been loved, they will have been loved.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

### Present tense

If I be loved, if thou be loved, if he be loved, etc. (invariable).

### Past tense

If I were loved, if thou wert loved, if he were loved, etc.

## IMPERATIVE

- |                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Let me be loved.            | 1. Let us be loved.          |
| 2. Be loved or Be thou loved ! | 2. Be loved or Be ye loved ! |
| 3. Let him be loved.           | 3. Let them be loved.        |

## INFINITIVE

Present: To be loved. Past: To have been loved. Future: To be about to be loved.

## PARTICIPLE

Present: Being loved. Past: Having been loved.

(The so-called **Potential Mode** or **Optative**: "If I may love, if I might love" is considered as a simple formation with an auxiliary, like the forms with **can**, **could**, **must**, **ought**, **dare**. See Auxiliary.)

# **CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARIES TO HAVE AND TO BE**

<b>INFINITIVE</b>	<b>PRESENT PARTICIPLE AND GERUND</b>	<b>PAST PARTICIPLE</b>
To have or to be	Having or being	Had or been
<b>PAST INFINITIVE</b>	<b>COMPOUND GERUND</b>	
To have had or been	Having had or been	

## **INDICATIVE MODE**

<b>Present Tense</b>	<b>Past Tense</b>
I have or am	I had or was
thou hast or art	thou hadst or wast
he (she, it) has or is	he (she, it) had or was
we (you, they) have or are	we (you, they) had or were

**Future Tense**

I shall (will) have or be  
 thou wilt (shalt) have or be  
 he (she, it) will (shall) have or be  
 we shall (will) have or be  
 you (ye, they) will (shall) have or be

**Present Perfect Tense**

I have had or been  
 thou hast had or been  
 he (she, it) has had or been  
 we (you, they) have had or been

**Past Perfect Tense**

I had had or been  
 thou hadst had or been  
 he (she, it) had had or been  
 we (you, they) had had or been

**Future Perfect Tense**

I shall (will) have had or been  
 thou wilt (shalt) have had or been  
 he (she, it, we, you, they) will (shall) have had or been

## **MODES OF UNCERTAINTY**

<b>Present Tense</b>	<b>Past Tense</b>
If I (we, you, thou, he, she, it, they) have or be	If I (we, you, thou, he, she, it, they) had or were

**Future Tense**

If I (we, you, thou, he, she, it, they) have or be

**Present Perfect Tense**

If I (we, you, thou, he, she, it, they) have had or been

**Past Perfect Tense**

If I (we, you, thou, he, she, it, they) had had or been

**Future Perfect Tense**

If I (we, you, he, etc.) shall (will) have had or been

**CONTRACTIONS WITH "TO HAVE"****Present Tense**

I've, I've not, I haven't, for I have, I have not.

**Past Tense**

I'd, I hadn't, for I had, I had not.

**CONTRACTED NEGATIVE QUESTIONS WITH  
"TO HAVE"****Present Tense**

Haven't I (we, you, they)?  
Hasn't he (she, it)?

**Past Tense**

Hadn't I (he, she, it, we, you,  
they)?

**CONTRACTIONS WITH "TO BE"****Present Tense**

I'm, he's, she's, for I am, he is, she is.  
I'm not, he's not, she's not, for I am not, he is not, she is not.  
We (you, they) aren't for we (you, they) are not.

**Past Tense**

I, he, she, etc. wasn't, for I, he, she, etc. was not.  
We (you, they) weren't for we (you, they) were not.

**CONTRACTED NEGATIVE QUESTIONS WITH "TO BE"****Present Tense**

Am I not? Aren't we (you,  
they)? ["Aren't I" is  
a misspelling for "a'n't  
I."]

**Past Tense**

Wasn't I (he, she, it)?  
Weren't we (you, they)?

Isn't he (she, it)?

**CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY TO DO**

<b>INFINITIVE</b>	<b>PRESENT PARTICIPLE AND GERUND</b>	<b>PAST PARTICIPLE</b>
To do	Doing	Done

<b>PAST INFINITIVE</b>	<b>COMPOUND GERUND</b>
To have done	Having done

**INDICATIVE MODE****Present Tense**

I (we, you, they) do  
thou dost (different from  
"thou doest")  
he (she, it) does

**Past Tense**

I (we, you, he, she, it, they)  
did  
thou didst

**CONTRACTIONS WITH "TO DO"**

I (we, you, they) don't, didn't  
he (she, it) doesn't, didn't

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels: æ as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ä as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; ä as in father; ä as in merry; er as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ä in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; ah as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.

**CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY SHALL****PRESENT TENSE  
INDICATIVE**

I (we, you, he, she, it, they)  
shall  
thou shalt

**PAST TENSE AND MODES  
OF UNCERTAINTY**

I (we, you, he, she, it, they)  
should  
thou shouldst

**CONTRACTIONS WITH "SHALL"**

Shan't

Shouldn't

**CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY WILL****PRESENT TENSE  
INDICATIVE**

I (we, you, he, she, it, they)  
will  
thou wilt

**PAST TENSE AND MODES  
OF UNCERTAINTY**

I (we, you, he, she, it, they)  
would  
thou wouldst

**CONTRACTIONS WITH "WILL"**

'll (will); 'd (would); won't (will not); wouldn't (would not)

**CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY MAY****PRESENT TENSE  
INDICATIVE**

I (we, you, he, she, it, they)  
may  
thou mayest

**PAST TENSE AND MODES  
OF UNCERTAINTY**

I (we, you, he, she, it, they)  
might  
thou mightest

**CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY CAN****PRESENT TENSE  
INDICATIVE**

I (we, you, he, she, it, they)  
can  
Thou canst

**PAST TENSE AND MODES  
OF UNCERTAINTY**

I (we, you, he, she, it, we, you,  
they) could  
thou couldst

**CONTRACTIONS WITH "CAN"**

Can't

Couldn't

**CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY MUST**

I (we, you, thou, he, she, it, they) must

**CONTRACTION WITH "MUST"**

Mustn't

**THE AUXILIARIES LET AND OUGHT  
ARE NOT INFLECTED****CONTRACTION WITH "OUGHT"**

Oughtn't

See Shall and Will.

- a **conjunction**, or link-word, in Grammar is a word or phrase that unites clauses or sentences, or that unites words when these words stand alone but represent clauses or sentences: "He is

as tall as I" ("as" is a conjunction, because it unites the two clauses: "he is tall," and "I am tall," part of the second clause being "understood" and not expressed in full). "You and I are agreed" ("and" is a conjunction, joining the two clauses: "you are agreed" and "I am agreed").

Conjunctions are called **coordinate** when they unite two ideas of equal importance in a "compound sentence": "He came and saw" ("he came," "he saw," are of equal importance; the two clauses are coordinate; the sentence is a compound sentence, and "and" is a coordinate conjunction). They are called **subordinate** when they unite two ideas, one of which is considered less important, in a "complex sentence": "He arrived late, although he had started early" ("He was late," "he had started early," are clauses of unequal importance; the important part of the statement is "he was late," the other part being the explanation of it; the sentence therefore is a complex sentence, and "although" is a subordinate conjunction). Conjunctions may appear in pairs: either . . . or; neither . . . nor; both . . . and; not only . . . but also. In that case they are called **correlatives**.

Do not use a preposition for a conjunction; a preposition is followed by the objective case: "you are **like** him"; a conjunction may be followed by the subject or nominative case, since it merely links one sentence to another: "Do the same as I" (i.e., the same as I do). It is not grammatically correct to use **like** in joining clauses, because "like" is not yet recognized as a conjunction (but if popular usage of phrases such as "do like I do" persists and gains recognition, "like" will be classed as a conjunction, and its use will then be correct).

**Classification of conjunctions.** Conjunctions may be classified according to any of the usual logical relations of ideas.

### COORDINATES

Conjunctions of addition: and, again, besides, furthermore, moreover, finally, etc.;

Conjunctions of contrast: but, however, yet, still, nevertheless, notwithstanding, whereas, on the contrary, on the other hand, etc.;

Conjunctions of alternation: either . . . or; neither . . . nor; whether . . . or;

Conjunctions of consequence: hence, consequently, thus, therefore, accordingly, wherefore, so;

Conjunction of evidence: for (meaning "because");

Conjunctions of repetition: indeed, in fact, in other words, that is, for example.

### SUBORDINATES

Conjunctions of time: when, whenever, while, as, since, before, after, until, etc.;

Conjunctions of place: where, whence, whither (these are habitually adverbs);

Conjunctions of degree: as, then, more than, rather than;

Conjunctions of manner: as, as if, as though, etc.;

Conjunctions of cause or reason: because, for, since, as, inasmuch as;

Conjunctions of condition: if, provided that, supposing, unless, on condition that;

Conjunctions of purpose: that, so that, in order that, etc.;

Conjunctions of concession: though, although, even if, etc.

See Transitions.

**a** **connoisseur** (kōn'ē-ser'), one who knows what is good; **am'ateur**, one who practices an art for the love of it; **dilettan'tē**, one who trifles with art.

**to** **conquer** (kong'ker), **conquering**, **conquered** (kong'kerd), a **conqueror** (kong'ker-er). Latin vinco, victum; hence **invincible**, **undefeatable**; **victory**, **victorious**.

For synonyms, see Beat, Defeat.

**conscious** (kon'shūs), adjective. Aware of the inside working of an emotion or desire; aware of his being involved in an outside fact. "He is conscious of his strength, but too lazy to use it."

Do not confuse **conscious**, **consciousness**, which refer to awareness, with **conscience**, **conscientious**, which refer to obedience to the "still, small voice" inside. "He is too conscientious to neglect his duties, even though nobody is watching him." (Note the spelling conscientious, with a T.)

**considerable**. This is an adjective, and cannot be properly used without a noun. Instead of "He has considerable," say: "He has a great deal."

**to** **consist of**. A thing consists of elements, parts, constituents, but not of factors.

**a** **con'sonant**, a letter that "sounds with" another, i.e., one of the sounds which it is supposedly impossible to utter by itself, but wrongly so called. Consonants may be classified according to the part of the organs of speech concerned in their production, or the part where the organs come to an obstacle, as **guttural** (from the throat), **h**; **vēlar** (from the vēlum or soft palate), **ng** as in **sing**, **k**, **g**; **pālatal** (from the palate or roof of the mouth), **y** as in **yes**; **lingual** (made by the tongue), **t**, **d**, **n**, **l**, **r**, **th**, **dh**, **sh**, **zh**, **s**, **z**; or **lābial** (made by the lips), **p**, **b**, **m**, **f**, **v**, **w**. Or they may be classified according to the nature of the sound or the place where it appears to come from, as **explosives**, **k**, **g**, **t**, **d**, **p**, **b**; **nasals**, **ng** of **sing**, **n**, **m**; **lāterals**, **l**; **trilled** certain forms of **r**; **fricatives** (produced with friction), **h**, **y** in **yes**, **th**, **dh**, **sh**, **zh**, **s**, **z**, **w**. Or again they may be classified as **voiced**: **g**, **d**, **b**, **m**, **r**, **zh**, **j**, **v**, **dh**; or **voiceless**: **k**, **t**, **p**, **n**, **l**, **sh**, **ch**, **f**, **th**. These and all classifications whatever are arbitrary.

See Syllable.

**constant**, **unchānging** (temperature, flow, devotion, etc.); **steadfast** (England often **stedfast**) **adherence**; **firm** belief; **unswerving** loyalty; **staunch** support; **fixed** rule; **settled** habit; **diligent** effort; **tenā'cious** hold; **steady** trend; **assid'uous** attendance, study; **contīnuous** performance; **per'manent** res'idence; **perpēt'ual** quarreling; **persis'tent** misfortune.



- a **con'sul**, a Government's commercial representative abroad: "The American Consul at Munich, Germany." Consuls are not necessarily part of the diplomatic service, as they deal only with business relations and with individuals, unlike **ambassadors** or **ministers**.

Do not confuse a **consul** with a **counsel**, adviser, or with a city **council** and the city **councillors**.

**contempt**, see **Scorn**.

- the **con'tent** or **con'tents** of a receptacle (accent on first syllable).

**content'**, adjective (accent on 2nd syllable): feeling that one has had as much as one should strive for; **sât'isfied**, feeling that one has had enough, all one wants.

**contin'ual**, occurring frequently, with intervals: "They live in a state of continual warfare"; **contin'uous**, occurring without interruption: "continuous performance."

**contrast**. In Art and Rhetoric, the element of opposition which provides the necessary conflict between various elements striving for attention. Contrast enhances the "high lights" or the dark spots and gives magnitude to the task to be accomplished or to the character undergoing trial.

- a **control'ler**, a person who inspects; a **comptroller**, who inspects the accounts. (The latter spelling is due to a misunderstanding. The word has nothing to do with the French *compte*, account. It comes from the Latin *contra-rotulator*, and should always have been spelled **controller**.)
- to **converse'** (accent on 2nd syllable), **con'versant** with (accent on 1st syllable), a **con'versa'tion**.—A **dialog'ue**, on the stage or in a story; a **discourse**, learned and formal; a **collo'quy**, informal; a **talk** by one person; **intercourse** of any kind, such as glances, meetings, words, etc.
- to **convict'** (accent on 2nd syllable), to find legally guilty. Do not confuse with **convince**, bring sufficient arguments to produce a belief.—A **con'vict**, one found guilty of crime.
- to **convince** by serious arguments; to **persuade**, influence to action. Do not confuse with **convict**, find guilty.
- to **cook**. Latin *coquo*; hence a **decoction**, leaves, etc., boiled in the preparation of an extract; **precô'cious**, "forecooked," ripened too soon.—Latin *culina*, a kitchen; hence **cû'linary**, of the kitchen.

To **boil**, **steam**, in water; **roast** meat before a fire or in an oven; **bake** bread in an oven; **toast** bread by drying its surface before a fire; **grill** meat on a gridiron; **broil** a steak (same as grill, more used in U. S.); **barbecue** a whole quarter of an animal in a pit; **fry** in much fat; **sauté** (*sô-tâ')* quickly, in little fat; **poach** eggs by breaking them open in boiling water; **scramble** eggs in butter; make an **om'elet** in the frying pan; **put up** or **preserve** fruit in jars or cans; **pickle** olives in brine, gherkins, etc., in vinegar; **stew** food by boiling it slowly for a long time; **distill** a concentrated extract from a liquid, as alcohol from wine.

The head cook.....the chef (shĕf).  
 Not cooked very much (meat).....rare (U. S.), underdone  
 (England).

Cooked for a longer time (meat)....well done.

- a **cōpy** (plural cōpies). Either the thing to be imitated, or the imitation itself.—**Printer's copy**: the manuscript (MS.) from which the compositor sets the type.—A **rēp'lica**, exact copy of a work of art, etc.; a **dūplicate**, the same thing done again.

In typewriting, much confusion is avoided by referring to **originals and carbons**: "Make me two carbons of this letter" (i.e., make three copies in all). "Here is the original to be copied."

**cord-**. Latin root meaning "heart." Derived forms: **cordial**, **discord**, **core**, **encourage**. See Heart.

**corp-**. Latin root meaning "body." Derived forms: **cor'poral**, **corporation**, **incor'porate**, **corps** (pronounced kor), **corpse**. See Body.

- a **corps** (kor), a squad, group, body. **Esprit de corps** (ĕs-prĕ-d-kor), school spirit, group spirit, class spirit, etc.

Do not confuse with **corpse** (korps), a dead body.

**correct**, adjective; conforming to recognized standards; **exact** in all details; **accurate**, done with great care; **precise**, scrupulously right. "Correct pronunciation, the exact time, accurate measurements, precise directions."

- to **correct**, to change so as to make it agree with standards; to **rec'tify**, change something that was wrong and make it right; as in: to correct a proof, to rectify an error.

Certified or declared correct.....O. K. (Okeh, Indian word).

- the **cost**; to **cost** (Past tense: **cost**).

Of high value.....costly (adjective).

Excessive in price.....dear.

Beyond one's means.....expensive.

Costing much money.....high-priced.

- a **council**, a deliberative body of men (the City Council).—Do not confuse with **counsel**, an adviser, advice; or with **consul**, a commercial representative abroad.

- to **count**. Latin computare; hence to **compute**, estimate or make statistics concerning (costs, numbers, etc.); to **reckon**, anticipate (more often used with events than with figures); **enumerate**, name in a certain order; **estimate**, establish expected cost or number; **value**, compare with known standards of cost; **price**, ascertain the price of.

- a **country** (kŭn'trĭ). Plural: **countries** (kŭn'trĭz).—An independent sovereign state; a neutral country; a neutralized country; a federation, a republic, a commonwealth, a monarchy; the mother country, a col'ony, a domin'ion, a protec'-

Pronunciation key. Vowels *ā ē ī ō ū ŷ* as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; *ă ă ĭ ă ŭ ŷ* as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; *ā* as in father; *ēr* as in merry; *er* as in mercer; *ou* as in loud; *au* as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ă* in senate). Consonants: *g* always as in go; *th* as in thief; *dh* as *th* in mother; *ng* as in sing or in singer; *ng-g* as *ng* in anger. See Syllables.

torate, a manda'ted territory (of the League of Nations), a settlement; extra-territoriality (foreigners' special privileges in China); government, politics, Parliament, Congress (see Parliament).—A prov'ince, department (France), canton (Switzerland), county, commune, city, town, township, village, section, subdivision.—A citizen (of a republic), subject (of a monarchy); an ā'lien (foreign citizen resident in the speaker's country), a foreigner (foreign born), a compā'triot (fellow citizen abroad).—The elec'torate; laws, statutes, constitution, charter.—Frontiers, passports, customs, custom-house, duties, taxes.

- a **coupé** (koo-pā'). This is the past tense of the French verb couper, to cut: a four-passenger vehicle cut in two, making a two-passenger vehicle. It becomes meaningless if pronounced kōop.
- a **courtesy** (kur'tě-sī), politeness. Do not confuse with **curtsey** (kurt'sī, two syllables), a ceremonial bow (bou).
- a **covey** (kūv'ī), brood or hatch of partridges, etc.; a **brace** of pheasant; a **flock** of birds; **bevy** of quail, of girls; **swarm** of bees, ants, etc.; **shoal** or **school** of fish.
- cred-**. Latin root meaning "believe." Derived forms: **créd'it**, **créd'ible**, **créditable**, **cré'dence**, **creed**. See Belief.
- a **cré'dence** or **creden'za**, a side table or plate cabinet for the dining room, or a piece of furniture of similar design to accommodate a radio or phonograph outfit.
- cred'ible**, that can be believed; **cred'ulous**, over-ready to believe; **cred'itable**, honorable.
- to **creep**. Past tense: **crept**.
- cresc-**. Latin root meaning "grow." Derived forms: **cres'cent**, **crescendo** (krā-shen'do), **concrete**, **increase**. See Grow.
- a **crěv'ice** (KREV'is), a small hole in a wall; a **crevāsse** (krě-VAS'), big hole in a glācier.
- a **crime**, serious lēgal offense; a **misdemea'nor**, minor offense; **offense**, any legal wrongdoing; **delinquency**, failure to perform a legal duty; **tort**, a civil wrong other than breach of contract; a **fel'ony**, a crime of the gravest kind.  
See Faults.
- a **crisis**, plural **crisēs**.
- to **crit'icize**, to judge (not necessarily unfavorably, although any true judgment is liable to be taken as fault-finding).
- a **cross**. Latin *crux*, *crucis*; hence to **crucify**, hang on the cross; the **crux** of an argument, the point where one line of thought crosses another.
- to **cross** a street, a river, the ocean; to **traverse** a great distance.
- a **crowd**, many people close together. Latin *turba*; hence **turbulent**, restless; to **disturb**, throw into disorder.—A **multitude**, great many, but not necessarily in one place; a **mass**, compact; a **group**, smaller and for a purpose; an **aggregation** of things or people finding themselves put together, as a flock of sheep; a **congregation** in church; a **club**, organized; a **society**,

for a serious purpose; an **association**, of people in the same trade, etc.; an **audience**, of listeners; the **spectators** at a show; the **attendance** at a meeting.—A **herd** of wild animals; **pack** of hounds, wolves; **drove** of oxen; **school** of fish; **swarm** of bees, ants; **bevy** of girls, of quail; **covey** (kūv'ī) of partridges; **flock** of birds.

**cruc-**. Latin root meaning "cross." Derived forms: **crū'cial**, to **crucify**, **crucifix**, **excruciating**, **cross**.

See Cross.

**cruel**, adjective; who likes to cause suffering; **brutal**, who handles roughly; **fierce**, naturally unrestrained; **savage**, uncivilized; **barbarous**, cruel and uncivilized; **ferocious**, wild and dangerous; **merciless**; **pitiless**.

to **cry** (**crying**, **cried**), to make a noise: often to shed tears noisily; to **weep**, tears only; to **sob**, tears and hiccough; to **snivel**, drip at the nose; to **bawl**, colloquial, "say Boo-hoo"; to **whimper** unconvincedly, at intervals; to **wail**, long vocal cries.

**crypt-**. Greek root meaning "to hide." Derived forms: **crypt'to-gram**, **cryptōg'amous**. See Hide.

**cunning**, adjective; literally "knowing"; **deceitful**; **sly**.—The colloquial American use of this word in the sense of "pretty" is now fast going out of fashion, as it contradicts both the original signification of "knowing" and the derived signification of "knowing too much."

a **cup** (a **cupful**, two **cupfuls**); a **chal'ice**, poetic or ecclesiastical; a **mug**, cylindrical; a **gōb'let**, with foot or stem but without handle; a **bumper**, a glass or cup filled to the brim; a **tankard**, a cylindrical vessel, of pewter or earthenware, usually with a cover, often holding as much as a quart; a **demi-tasse** ("half-cup"), a small cupful of black coffee.

**cur-** (followed by a vowel). Latin root meaning "care." Derived forms: **cū'rate**, **sinecure** (sīn- or sī-), **incū'nable**. See Care.

to **cure** (**curing**, **curable**, **curative**), to cause to recover from sickness: "The ocean trip cured me of my nervous condition"; to **heal**, a sore, a wound; now returning to its original signification of "making well": "Heal the sick"; to **restore** a patient to health.

**curr-, curs-**. Latin root meaning "run." Derived forms: **current**, **cursive**, **occur**, **concur**, **incursion**, **excursion**, **course**, **discourse**, **concourse**. See Run.

to **curse** (**cursing**, **cursed** or seldom **curst**). Latin *maledico*, to say evil; hence a **malediction**; an **imprecation**, prayer against; an **anath'ema**, official Church curse; **swearing**, whether at a person or at Fate; **blas'phemy**, disrespectful use of the names of holy things; **profan'ity**, use of low or blasphemous language.

a **custom** (**customer**, who buys; **customary**, usual; **customhouse**, where import taxes are paid): the usual thing, generally of a group of people: "Marriage customs"; a **habit**, personal; a **practice**, intentionally established: "They make it a practice to keep people waiting"; a **rite**, religious ceremony; a

**procédure**, way of doing one detail after another; an **institution**, recognized usage: "Afternoon tea is more than a custom in England; it is an institution."

**to cut** (Past tense **cut**). Latin **seco**, **sectum**; hence **section**, part of a whole; to **dissect**, cut asunder; a **sect**, small group separated from a whole; **sectarian**, etc. French **couper**; hence a **coupé**, carriage for four cut in two; a **coupon**, interest-bearing paper clipped from a stock certificate.—To **shear** sheep, hair; **scar** a surface; **scärify** a road; **score** a writing; **carve** meat; **cleave** in two; **hack** with blunt edge; **notch**, cut an angular piece; **slash**, cut right and left; **gash**, make a big hole in; **split**, divide; **chop** into small pieces; **hew** a log; **lop** branches; **prune** a fruit tree; **amputate** a human limb; **clip** wool; **reap** a harvest; **mow** hay; **trim** for neatness; **shave** hair off; **dock**, cut off pay; **whittle** chips from a stick; **slice** equally; **lance** an abscess; **bisect**, cut in two equal parts.

**a cut**. Name used by the public for an **engraving** or **plate** (in England a **block**) used by printers for the reproduction of pictures.—A **half-tone** from a photograph; a **line cut**, from a pen and ink sketch; a **zinc etching**, a **zinc**, line cut or reproduction of print; an **electro**, exact reproduction of another engraving, from a wax or **lead** impression; a **stëreo**, exact reproduction of another engraving, from a paper impression (called a **mat** or **matrix**: wet mat, dry mat, boiler plate); a **Ben Day**, shaded printing surface on a line cut.

**cutting** (adjective), **sarcastic** remarks; **caustic** (i.e., burning) comments; **stinging** criticism.

**cute** (adjective). An American colloquialism, abbreviated from **acute**, sharp. **Pretty**, **attractive**, **picturesque**.—Do not use **cunning** in this sense. See **Cunning**.

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels **ä** **ë** **î** **ô** **û** **ÿ** as in **mate**, **meet**, **mite**, **mote**, **mute**, **my**; **ä** **ë** **î** **ô** **û** **ÿ** as in **mat**, **met**, **mitt**, **not**, **nut**, **pity**; **ä** as in **father**; **ër** as in **merry**; **er** as in **mercer**; **ou** as in **loud**; **au** as in **laud**. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (**ä** in **senate**). Consonants: **g** always as in **go**; **th** as in **thief**; **dh** as **th** in **mother**; **ng** as in **sing** or in **singer**; **ng-g** as **ng** in **finger**. See **Syllables**.

# D

- a** **dānger**, possibility of harm; a risk voluntarily assumed; a **pěril**, imminent; a **hāzard**, in which luck plays a large part; **jeopardy** (jěp'ardī), a serious risk.

"There is a danger of being misunderstood whenever one speaks, but one has to assume that risk."—"The mountain climbers were in peril of their lives on the glacier."—"A gambler is accustomed to take hazards."—"The rebellion of the Russian people during the war placed the Allies in jeopardy."

To put in peril.....to jeopardize (jěp'ardiz)

- to** **dare** (I dare, he dare, more correct than he dares, because dare is an old past tense form. Past tense: **dared**; older form **durst**).

To dare is generally not followed by "to": He dare not go.

**daring**. See Brave.

**dark**, not receiving or reflecting light; **gloomy**, unpleasant and dark; **obscure**, not very light, but lighter than "dark"; **opaque**, which cannot be seen through; **vague**, figurative: not well-defined, not clear; **dim**, not brilliant; **nebulous**, foggy, cloudy; **murky**, very cloudy sky; **somber**, figurative: very shady.

- a** **dash**. A sign (—) used in writing and printing to indicate letters or words left out: D—n (Damn); May—July (May to July); "Why did you—?" The dash is also used extensively to take the place of any sign of punctuation, especially the comma and the parentheses: "English—I know whereof I speak—is the most democratic of languages." The dash, in these cases, suggests more of a pause than the regular sign.

**dat-**. Latin root meaning "give." Derived forms: **dātā**, **dā'tive**. See Give.

**dātā**. Plural form of the Latin word **dātum**, a given fact; should always be followed by a plural verb: "The **dātā** have (plural) been gathered."—The pronunciation **dāta** (with short first a), often heard, is due to a misunderstanding of the correct Latin form, which is **dāta** (with long, open ā). All Latin words, when adopted into English, take the purely English vowels: stā'tus, apparā'tus, ter'minus, etc.

- a** **date**, an exact statement of historical time.—The assumption by a writer or speaker of the existence of a thing before its time is called an **anāch'ronism** (ānāk'roniz-m): "George Washington pulled his revolver" (revolvers were not invented at that time; the word dates only from 1835).

Out of date.....antīquāted

- a** **day**. Latin dies; hence a **diary**, a daily notebook; **dial**, the face of a day piece or timepiece; **diurnal**, pertaining to daylight,

as against nocturnal; *sīnē dīē*, without a date being set for reconvening, "to adjourn *sīnē dīē*." French *jour*, a corruption of diurn-; hence *journal*, originally a daily paper, now in U.S. a weekly or monthly. Greek *hemera*; hence *ephem'eral*, living but a day, short lived; *mesembryanthemum*, midday flower, a beautiful plant forming oceanside carpets on the California sandstone.

**dead** (*dēd*), adjective, equivalent to the past participle **died**: "He has died, he is dead."—Never use "quite" before "dead": there are no degrees in death.

### Some words used on this subject

Corpse, casket, coffin, hearse, funeral, burial, grave, cemetery, mausoleum, cremation, mourning, *rēquiem* service. See also **Funeral**.

**death**. Latin *mors*, *mortis*; hence **mortal**, liable to die or to cause death; to **mortify**, cause death to one's pride.—**End**; **decease**, legal; **demise**, passing away.—See **Funeral**.

**deceased**, dead, who has "ceased" to be; not to be confused with **diseased**, sick, dis-eased.

to **deceive** (**deceiving**, **deceived**, **deception**, **deceit**, a **deceiver**) intentionally; to **mislead**, lead astray, intentionally or not; **cheat** in order to obtain something; **delude** by means of a trick; **outwit** a pursuer, etc.; **fool**, **dupe**.—A **deception** is the act of one who practices **deceit**.

to **decide** upon a course of action; **determine** a cause or effect; **conclude** as the result of an inquiry; **settle** finally something that has been in dispute; **decree** that something shall henceforth be done, by authority.—**Decided**, important, definite: a **decided** improvement; **decisive**, which brings about the end: a **decisive** victory.

a **declen'sion**, all the various forms taken by a noun or pronoun for grammatical reasons. (The forms taken by a verb are called **conjugation**.) The declension in English presents no difficulty except in the possessive case.

### A Model Declension Applied to Various Nouns.

	My	mother	reads the book.
	It is my	mother's	book.
	It is a book of my	mother's.	
	It is my	mother's.	
	It belongs to my	mother.	
	My	sisters	read the book.
	It is my	sisters'	book.
	It is a book of my	sisters'.	
	It is my	sisters'.	
	It belongs to my	sisters.	

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels: *ā* *ē* *ī* *ō* *ū* as in *mate*, *meet*, *mite*, *mote*, *mute*, *my*; *ă* *ĕ* *ĭ* *ŏ* *ŭ* as in *mat*, *met*, *mitt*, *not*, *nut*, *pity*; *ā* as in *father*; *ēr* as in *merry*; *ēr* as in *mercer*; *ou* as in *loud*; *au* as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ā* in *senate*). Consonants: *g* always as in *go*; *th* as in *thief*; *dh* as *th* in *mother*; *ng* as in *sing* or in *singer*; *ng-g* as *ng* in *finger*. See **Syllables**.

Mr.	<b>Jones</b>	has a book.
It is Mr.	<b>Jones's</b>	book.
It is	<b>Mr. Jones's.</b>	
It belongs to	<b>Mr. Jones.</b>	
The	<b>Joneses</b>	have a horse.
It is the	<b>Joneses'</b>	horse.
It is the	<b>Joneses'.</b>	
It belongs to the	<b>Joneses.</b>	
My	<b>wife</b>	has a book.
It is my	<b>wife's</b>	book.
It is my	<b>wife's.</b>	
It belongs to my	<b>wife.</b>	
Our	<b>wives</b>	have books.
They are our	<b>wives'</b>	books.
They are our	<b>wives'.</b>	
They belong to our	<b>wives.</b>	
The	<b>man</b>	has a book.
It is the	<b>man's</b>	book.
It is the	<b>man's.</b>	
It belongs to the	<b>man.</b>	
The	<b>men</b>	have books.
They are the	<b>men's</b>	books.
They are the	<b>men's.</b>	
They belong to the	<b>men.</b>	

#### A Model Declension Applied to Various Pronouns.

It is	<b>I</b>	have a book.	
It is	<b>my</b>	book.	
It belongs to	<b>mine.</b>		First person, singular.
	<b>me.</b>		
It is	<b>We</b>	have a book.	
It is	<b>our</b>	book.	
It belongs to	<b>ours.</b>		First person, plural.
	<b>us.</b>		
It is	<b>You</b>	have a book.	
It is	<b>your</b>	book.	
It belongs to	<b>yours.</b>		Second person (both singular and plural)
	<b>you.</b>		
It is	<b>Thou</b>	hast a book.	
It is	<b>thy</b>	book.	
It belongs to	<b>thine.</b>		Biblical, archaic and poetic second person singular.
	<b>thee.</b>		
It is	<b>He</b>	has a book.	
It is	<b>his</b>	book.	
It belongs to	<b>his.</b>		Third person, mascu- line singular.
	<b>him.</b>		



	<b>She</b>	has a book.	
It is	<b>her</b>	book.	Third person
It is	<b>hers.</b>		feminine singular.
It belongs to	<b>her.</b>		
	<b>It</b>	has a cover.	
It is	<b>its</b>	cover.	Third person neuter
It is	<b>its.</b>	(or its own)	singular.
It belongs to	<b>it.</b>		
	<b>They</b>	have a book.	
It is	<b>their</b>	book.	Third person plural.
It is	<b>theirs.</b>		
It belongs to	<b>them.</b>		
	<b>Who</b>	has a book?	
	<b>Whose</b>	book is it?	Interrogative.
	<b>Whose</b>	is it?	
To	<b>whom</b>	does it belong?	
	<b>Everybody</b>	has books.	
They are	<b>everybody's</b>	books.	
They are	<b>everybody's.</b>		
They belong to	<b>everybody.</b>		
	<b>Whoever</b>	has a book?	Same with
	<b>Whoever</b>	book is it?	whosoever, whoso-
	<b>Whoever</b>	is it?	ever, whomsoever.
To	<b>whomever</b>	does it belong?	
	<b>No one</b>	has a book.	
It is	<b>no one's</b>	book.	
It is	<b>no one's.</b>		
It belongs to	<b>no one.</b>		
	<b>Neither</b>	has a book.	
It is	<b>neither's</b>	book.	
It is	<b>neither's.</b>		
It belongs to	<b>neither.</b>		

Both, each, all, some, none, any, what, which, whatever, whichever, whatsoever, are not inflected.

It belongs to **Both** have a book.  
**both.**

One book belongs to **Each** has a book.  
**each.** (each of them)

### THE INTENSIVE AND REFLECTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

#### Singular Number

**I MYSELF** cheated **MYSELF**  
**You YOURSELF** cheated **YOURSELF**

He **HIMSELF** cheated **HIMSELF**  
 She **HERSELF** cheated **HERSELF**  
 It **ITSELF** cheated **ITSELF**  
 One **ONESELF** cheated **ONESELF**

### Plural Number

We **OURSELVES** cheated **OURSELVES**  
 You **YOURSELVES** cheated **YOURSELVES**  
 They **THEMSELVES** cheated **THEMSELVES**

### Old Forms

Thou **THYSELF** cheated **THYSELF**  
 Ye **YOURSELVES** cheated **YOURSELVES**

**deco'rous** or **dec'orous** (from Latin *decor*: beauty, honor), proper according to the most formal ideas: "it is indecorous to raise one's voice in church"; **dignified**, according to one's position; **proper**, according to the particular standards of the time and place; **correct**, according to a particular, definite standard; **demûre**, affecting simplicity or coyness; **sedâte**, calm, composed person or manner; **staid**, rigid, unbending; **conventional**, according to the lead of others, not original.

**deep**. Latin *profundus*; hence **profound**, mostly used in the figurative sense: profound knowledge, a profound truth. **Sêrious**, grave; **abysmal** (ă-bîs'mal, pertaining to the abyss or bottomless pit): **abysmal ignorance**.—Noun; **depth** (note spelling and pronunciation dēp-th).

The difference between **depth** and **height** (hî't) is entirely one of viewpoint, like half-empty, half-full. Looking up from below, we speak of height: the height of a mountain, height above sea level; looking down from above, we speak of depth: the depth of the ocean, the depth of misery. Even if our body is down and we are looking up, we speak of **depth** if the place where we are is generally considered as being down: "Out of the depths have I cried unto Thee."

to **defeat**, literally "to undo" (connected with the words **fact**, **feat**), hence: to defeat your purpose, to undo what you are trying to do; to **nüllify**, make void; **baffle**, lead into a false direction; **frustrate**, render vain; **thwart**, throw an obstacle in the way; **foil**, lead nowhere; **balk**, cause to stumble; **outwit**, through superior cunning; **circumvent**, go round; **vanquish** an enemy; **conquer** by force; **overthrow** a power; **beat**, **lick**, **thrash**.

a **defect**, a shortcoming, physical or moral; a **fault**, absence of something that should be there; **flaw**, fault in structure, often not seen; **deformity**, permanent misshapement; **blēmish**, whatever mars the surface; **taint**, permanent stream of impurity, as in the blood; **blot** or **stain** on one's character or reputation.

Do not confuse with **deficiency**, shortage in expected quantity; or with **deficit**, shortage of income.

**defec'tive**, physically, like the blind, the crippled, the deaf, the epileptic; **mentally defective**, like the insane, mōrons, feeble-minded, imbecîles, crê'tins.

- to **defend**, ward off the blows; to **protect** under one's shield; **guard**, stand ready to defend; **preserve** as it is. One who defends himself from a charge in a law court is the **defendant**; one who defends another is the other's **defender**. The act of defending is the **defense** (written in America with an **s**, as it comes from the Latin *defensio*, through the French *défense*; but written in England *defence*, with a **c**, as also *offence*). An act which deserves condemnation is called **indefensible**.
- to **defer** (**deferring**, **deferred**) until later; **postpone** until a stated or assumed future time; **delay**, keep from starting; **suspend** something that is already on, temporarily; **put off** something one dislikes; **adjourn** a meeting until a set date or *sinē diē*; **stave off** an expected evil; to **procrastinate**, have the habit of putting off action until later (this verb requires no object: he is always procrastinating).

In another sense, **defer** means to bow down before somebody's opinion: defer to somebody's views, accept them as superior.

Do not confuse with **differ**, to be other.

Examples: As the train was late, the speaker was delayed. He wired to have the meeting deferred, and it was consequently postponed until the afternoon. We did not like to put it off any longer, as we had been accused of trying to procrastinate, and of trying to stave off the day of reckoning. When the meeting opened, we suspended the rule calling for the reading of minutes, and proceeded with the business. At six o'clock we adjourned until the next morning.

**deference** to somebody's wishes, because one thinks them of superior value; **regard** for a person or an opinion, formal; **submission** to, with a sense of inferiority; **obédience** to, with inferiority and humility; **reverence** for somebody who receives our respect and awe.

**defiance**, challenging attitude; a **defy** (*defi*), a dare, an open and public challenge to dare attempt something.—To **challenge** a person or a statement is to express public doubt of the statement, or to call upon the person to do a thing, often in competition with the challenger, and in a sporting spirit; to **defy** (*defi*) a person is to call upon him to make good at something considered beyond his ability or daring, often in a sneering spirit. "He was challenged to prove his statement. The allegation had been challenged. They defied him to enter the lion's cage."

- a **deficiency**, shortage of a quantity expected to be found there; **deficit**, shortage of income to balance expenditures; **defect**, shortcoming of any kind, physical or moral. See *Blemish*.

**definite**, adjective; literally "finished off," i.e., limited, known. Do not confuse with **definitive**, which settles or proves: a *definitive* proof.

In Grammar, the name "Past Definite" is sometimes given to that tense which indicates completed action: Yesterday I saw him; it is now generally called the Past Tense or *Præterit*.

- to **deign** (dān), from Latin dignus, worthy; to consider a thing worthy of being done; to **condescend** to perform an action which really excites one's mild contempt. "He did not deign to reply." "He condescended to explain."
- a **delay** which keeps something from starting; a **respite** (res'pīt), temporary suspension, as of a trial; **reprieve** of a sentenced criminal; **moratorium** on national or public debts; **stay** of execution. See Defer.
- Adjectives and phrases: **Held back** for any reason; **in abeyance** (discussion, etc.), until an opportune time arises; **discontinued**, not being done any more; **dormant**, sleeping, as a quarrel; **inactive**, not working; **interrupted** by some unforeseen circumstance, and to be renewed; **suspended**, temporarily; **quiescent**, alive under the surface.
- to **deliver**, Latin liberare, from liber, free; hence **liberty**; to set free, to free; to **release** something held; **save** something in peril; **hand over** a parcel, etc., belonging to the other person.
- a **demand**, peremptory; **request**, polite; **draft**, compulsory; **exaction** of full dues; **extortion** of something not due; **call** for funds.
- demo-** Greek root meaning "people, race, nation." Derived forms: **demōc'racy**, **ep'īdēm'ic**, **endēm'ic**. See People.
- to **demolish** a mass or structure. Latin root moles, a great mass; hence **molecule**, a very tiny mass. To **destroy** totally; **annihilate** to nothingness; **wreck**, destroy so as to cause suffering, particularly a ship.
- a **dēmon**. Greek daimon, a divinity or mysterious power of any kind, whether good or bad.—A **dēvil**, evil power; an **imp**, small and malignant; a **sprite**, goblin or elf.
- a **denial**, rejection of the truth of a statement, or rejection of a temptation; **refusal**, rejection of a request or invitation; **negation**, saying "No"; **contradiction**, saying the opposite; **repudiation**, disowning; **abnegation**, self-denial.
- dent-** Latin root meaning "tooth." Derived forms: **dentist**, **dental**, **indent**, **dented**. See Tooth.
- to **deny**, reject as untrue; **contradict**, say the opposite; **confute**, prove overwhelmingly the wrongness of; **controvert**, dispute, speak against; **contravene**, run against a rule; **repudiate**, disown. "The man denied having been at our house, but he did not controvert my brother's statement that he had been seen in the neighborhood. He contradicted his previous statements on that point, and the police confuted his assertions by showing him his fingerprints."
- to **depend** (**depending**, **dependent**, **dependence**, **dependency**). From a Latin word meaning "hanging down"; therefore better followed by **on**, "dependent **on**," than by **upon**, which would make it mean "hang DOWN UP on something"; to **rely upon** somebody, a service.

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels **ā ē ī ō ū ŷ** as in *mate*, *meet*, *mite*, *mote*, *mute*, *my*; **ă ă ĩ ă ū ă** as in *mat*, *met*, *mitt*, *not*, *nut*, *pit*; **ā** as in *father*; **ēr** as in *merry*; **ēr** as in *mercer*; **ou** as in *loud*; **au** as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ă in *senate*). Consonants: **g** always as in *go*; **th** as in *thief*; **dh** as *th* in *mother*; **ng** as in *sing* or in *singer*; **ng-g** as *ng* in *finger*. See Syllables.

- to **depose**, literally "put down"; therefore to put down from a high office; also to put down in writing, a prisoner's statement, etc. "The witness deposed that he had seen the accident"; hence a **deposition**, statement. Do not confuse with a **deposit** of money for safekeeping.
- to **depos'it** (**depositing**, **deposited**); a **depositor**, person; **depository**, place; **depository**, one who receives a deposit; **depot**, a freight warehouse (also "small town" American for railway station), to put down for safekeeping. Do not confuse with to **depose**. See **Depose**.
- to **depress**, "press down"; to **discourage**, **dishearten**, cause one to lose heart; **deject**, throw down; **prostrate** completely; **demonialize**, cause one to lose one's sense of proportion.
- a **depth** (dĕp-th, note the sounds), the same as **height** (hīt) but from the opposite viewpoint: we look up at a height, down at depth; **profundity**, figurative; **strength**, **intensity**.
- derānged**, mentally; **insane**, totally; **unbalanced**, in varying degrees; **crazy**, temporarily violent; **mad**, as an actual disease; **distracted**, temporarily unable to think, owing to grief, etc.; **morbid**, unnatural tastes and desires; **feeble-minded**, with the mind of a child.—Nouns: a **lū'natic**, harmless; a **mā'nīac**, dangerous; a **mōron**, childish mind; an **im'becile**, with no mental processes beyond physical needs; **klepto-maniac**, impelled to thief without reason.—**Lu'nacy**, **insanity**, **dementia** (dē-men'shĭā).
- Doctor who specializes on mental cases.....ā'lĭēnist
- a **derĭv'ative**, a form derived from another, as a word compounded of a prefix, a root and a suffix. Example: "handsome" is derived from "hand" through the addition of the suffix "some." It has meant successively "handy," then "suitable," then "desirable" ("a handsome fortune"), and it now means "pretty." See **Prefix**, **Suffix**.
- description**. In **Rhetoric**, the art of presenting events in their space relation, so that they help form in the reader's mind an image of the thing described. Description is contrasted with **narration**, which presents events in their time relation. It answers the question: what?
- There are two types of description, often confused: **scientific** or **objective description**, which aims to eliminate the personal factor of biased observation; and **fictional** or **subjective description**, which aims to make the reader feel the same emotions as the writer. Robert Louis Stevenson says: "To tell truth, rightly understood, is not to state the true facts, but to convey a true impression; truth in spirit, not truth to letter, is the true veracity." In fictional or subjective description, the greatest essential is a **viewpoint**.
- See **Exposition**, **Argument**; see also **Rhetoric**.
- to **desert'** (accent on 2nd syllable), to leave somebody to whom one owes allegiance or protection; to **abandon** something after spending some effort to save it.

- a** **des'ert**, a wilderness, solitude, waste.—Do not confuse this word with **dessert** (dī-zert', accent on 2nd syllable: the sweet or fruit course of a meal).

A green spot in the desert.....an ōāsis

- a** **desiderā'tum**, a felt want; plural **desiderāta**.

- a** **desire'**, a movement of the whole personality toward an object. In popular language, desire is a positive pull, while in psychology it may as often be a movement away from an object.—An **emotion**, the consciousness of desire; a **feeling**, reaction to desire; an **impulse**, that which drives one toward a desired object (impulses are assumed to be the driving action of instincts); a **crāving**, desire that grows greater while unsatisfied; a **want**, feeling of lack; a **wish**, preference not backed by strong action; a **longing**, desire for an object, mixed with near-despair of getting it; an **aspiration**, desire for perfection; an **inclination**, desire largely counterbalanced by others; **eagerness**, desire which can hardly wait; **appetite**, desire of a low, material kind; **ambition**, desire for success; **yearning**, desire combined with distress; **covetousness**, desire for what belongs to another; **avarice**, desire for excessive gain; **envy**, desire mixed with hatred of the owner of the desired thing; **jealousy**, desire for the exclusive friendship of a person who is receiving attention from another.

One's desires as a whole.....one's disposition  
One's way of expressing one's desires.....one's temper

The most fundamental human desires or impulses, according to McDougall (Outline of Psychology, 1923) are: Fear, Anger, Repulsion, Love, Reproduction, Distress, Curiosity, Submission, Assertion, Gregariousness, Food-seeking, Acquisition, Construction, Laughter.

**despair**, from Latin desperare, opposite of sperare, to hope; loss of hope. Adjective: **des'perate**; noun: a **des'perādo**.

**des'picable** (note the accent), contemptible.

- to **despise**. See Scorn.

- to **destroy** totally, literally "unbuild"; to **demol'ish** a mass or structure; **annihilate** to nothingness; **wreck**, destroy so as to cause suffering or misery, particularly a ship.

Wilful destruction of working implements.....săbōtāge

One who destroys idols and false ideals.....an Ieōn'ōclast

- a** **dessert** (dī-zert'; note both the spelling and the pronunciation), the last course of a regular meal, sweets or fruit and cheese. (Neither pronounced nor spelled like **desert**. See Desert.)

- to **deter'mine**, bring to a definite conclusion; **decide**, form a judgment as to a course of action; **settle** something that has been in dispute, finally; **conclude**, as the result of an inquiry.

- to **detract from** somebody's reputation; to **injure** his reputation; **disparage** his achievements, by making them look small; **discredit** his motives, by showing them to be selfish.

Do not confuse with to **distract**, take away somebody's attention.

to **devel'op** (note the spelling without a final **e**; **devel'oping**, **devel'oped**, a **devel'oper**, **devel'opment**).

a **device**, any means of achieving an end, whether physical (**tools**, **machine**, **apparātus**) or mental (**system**, **method**, **stunt**, **contrivance**). For synonyms, see **Instrument**.

Do not confuse with to **devise**, which has **s** spelling and **z** sound (**de-vīz'**), like **advice**, **advise**.

a **dēv'il**, an evil spirit; the **Devil** (with capital letter), **Sātan**, the **Ad'versary**, the **Prince of Darkness**, the **Evil One**, the **Temp'ter**, the **Fiend** (**fēnd**), **Old Nick**. See **Dēmon**.

One possessed of an evil spirit.....a **demō'nīac**

**dexter-**. Latin root meaning "right (hand side)." Derived forms: **dextēr'ity**, **am'bidex'trous**. See **Right**.

**dī**. Sound heard in **dīāmond**, to **die** (become dead), to **dye** (clothes); a **dyer** and **cleaner**.

**dīālect**, a form of language peculiar to one section of the country, or to one class of people. When dialect is used in writing, it should be explained, directly or indirectly. "Hill-billy" is Kentucky dialect; "'Tis thirsty I am" is Irish dialect. "Dōve" for "dīved" is American dialect, i.e., not understood in other parts of the English-speaking world.

a **dialogue** (**dī'ā-lōg**), conversation, as in a play or story. "In a short story, the proportion of **dīālōgue** to narrative depends upon the author's method and object."

a **dīāmond**, three syllables. For synonyms, see **Gem**, **Jewel**.

**dict-**. Latin root meaning "speak, talk." Derived forms: **dic-tate**, **dicta'tor**, **abdicate**, **verdict**, **predict**, **contradict**, **bene-diction**. See **Speak**.

**diction** (literally "way of saying"), an author's or orator's choice and use of words in general in regard to their form, sound, articulation, pronunciation. "That preacher's diction is not so good as his sentiments." The word **diction** does not apply to the proper selection of words to express meaning, which is more properly called **expression**; nor to the selection of words in a particular sentence, which is called the **wording**: "The wording of this text is ambiguous and should be altered." **Diction** and **expression** combined give **style**, the sum total of an author's personality as conveyed to his readers: "Style is the man."

a **dictionary** (**dik'shun-a-rī**), a reference book containing words, technical terms or phrases in alphabetical order, with their explanation in other and better-known words or their translation into another language. A **lex'icon**, a dictionary of a foreign language, especially a dead language; also a briefer dictionary of trade or technical terms; a **word book**; an **encȳ'clopē'dia** or **encyclopædia**, a comprehensive work describing various subjects under a limited number of heads arranged in alphabetical order; a **cyclopedīa**, of one subject; a **vocabulary** or word list: "The vocabulary of the latest English dictionaries consists of over half-a-million words"; **glos-sary**, brief list of terms used in a particular book, especially

technical and dialect terms; **thesau'rus**, or classified "treasure house" of terms; a **concordance**, or alphabetical list of words and phrases used in a particular book or in one author's works: "The Bible Concordance," "Concordance to Shakespeare"; a **synonym book**, giving words of somewhat similar meaning grouped in proximity to one another; an **etymological dictionary**, giving alphabetical lists of words with their origins.

A dictionary-writer ..... a **lexicog'rapher**  
Exact explanation of a word in a dictionary..(its) definition

a **dictum**. Plural **dictă**. A pronouncement or authoritative utterance.

to **die**, cease to live. (**Dying**, **died**; adjective **dead**. Do not confuse with to **dye**, color fabrics, and its derived forms dyeing, dyed.) Latin **morior**, **mortuus**; hence **mortuary**, a place for the dead; **mortal**, causing death or liable to die. To **expire**, breathe out; **perish**, without help; **decease**, pass out; **succumb** under an illness, to an injury; **atrophy** (**ătrôfi**), waste for lack of nourishment; **wilt** like a flower; **wither**, shrivel and fade; **suffocate**, choke to death.

Additional synonyms and words used in this connection under **Funeral**.

a **difference**, unlikeness; **discrep'ancy**, failure to agree when it should; **distinction**, a perceived unlikeness, whether real or not; **discrimination**, choice indicating an analytical mind; **variation**, the same thing slightly different; **disagreement**, contradictory; **contrast**, unlike but not contradictory; **disparity**, inequality; **divergence**, starting from the same principle but arriving at a different conclusion; **inconsistency**, lack of logic. "You are making a distinction without a difference" (i.e., you see it as different, but it is not); "They have found several discrepancies between (or: in) his statements at various times" (i.e., they do not all tell exactly the same story).

to **dig**. Past tense **dug**, sometimes **digged**; **digging**.

to **digest'**, verb; first syllable short; accent on 2nd syllable. A **dî'gest**, a summary; accent on first syllable.—**Digestion**; Greek **pepsis**; hence **pep'sin**, a digestive secretion; **dyspepsia**, "hard digestion."

a **dig'nity**, from Latin **dignus**, worthy; hence **condign** punishment, one that is worthy of the offense; a **dignitary**, a "worthy."

**dîlăp'îdăted**, "whose stones fall down." From Latin **lapis**, a stone; hence **lap'idary**, a jeweler; to **lap'itate**, stone to death.

a **dîlettan'tě**, plural **dilettanti** (**dî-let-tân'tě**, with Italian vowels). An Italian word from Latin **delectare**, to enjoy; whence **delight**, **delicious**, **delectable**, etc.—One who "delights" or revels in art, especially a trifle; very different from an **am'ateur**, "lover," one who practices the art for the love of it, and who is often keener than a professional; also different from a **connoisseur** (**kôn'es-er**) or "knower," who seriously ap-



praises art at its true worth.—The adjective corresponding to **dilettante** is **amateurish**, which has a note of contempt in it.

- a diphthong** (dif'thong), a double sound pronounced almost as a single one.—In English the principal diphthongs are: **ou** as in loud (sounds ă-ōō); **oy** as in boy (sounds ō-ē); **i** or **y** as in my (sounds ă-ē); **ū** as in due (sounds i-ōō). The long vowel sounds **ōō** as in boot, **ēē** as in feet, **ō** as in boat (especially as pronounced in Southern England), are considered diphthongs by linguists and by foreigners (ōō-ōō, ēē-ī, ō-ō or ō-ōō).

**dīplō'macy**, the body of "certificated" envoys from a country to another; connected with the word "diploma."—Also, tact, skill in dealing with people.

### Some words and phrases used on this subject

The diplomatic corps (kor); an embassy, an ambassador (from one independent sovereign state to another), an Ambassador Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary (for a special purpose), a minister (to a minor country), a *chargé d'affaires* (shar-zhă' dă-fēr', in the absence of the ambassador or minister), a delegation (for a special purpose), a delegate, the chancellor (with two l's: chief secretary of the embassy), the chancellery (chancellor's office).—Accredited to the court of . . . , *persona grata*, *persona non grata* (proposed candidate who is not acceptable by the other Power).—Exchange of notes; friendly relations, "friendly and allied country," "call your attention," "call your earnest attention," "unable to view with indifference," "view with grave concern," "view with alarm," "may have grave consequences"; satisfaction; ultimatum; declaration of war; suspension of immunities; recall.

- to **direct**. Latin *dirigo*, *directum*; hence **dirigible**; hence also, through French, an **address**, "direction to."—Both the verb **direct** and the adjective **direct** are pronounced dī-rekt', with short i, and with accent on 2nd syllable.—To **point out** a place to somebody; **point** a gun at something; **aim at**; **address** a letter; **manage** a business, **run**, **control**.

**dirt**, **slime**, **mud**, **ooze**, **goo** (colloq.).

**dirty**, **unclean**, generally figurative; **soiled** garment; **filthy**, very dirty; **foul** weather, language; **polluted** water.

**dis-**, a prefix indicating actual separation or even an opposite: to **disclaim**, claim as false; **disengage**, **disfavor**, **disgrace**, **dishonor**. Sometimes equivalent to **mal-**: a **discontented** person, a **malcontent**.

See prefixes **un-** (weaker than **dis-**), **mis-**, **mal-**, **non-**.

- a disaster** (dī-zās'ter), literally "something against the stars," unlucky; a ruinous occurrence; a **mishap**, not very serious; a **misfortune** due to bad luck; an **accident**, with loss of limb

---

Pronunciation key. Vowels ă â ĩ ō ū ŷ as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ă â ĩ ō ŷ ŷ as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; ă as in father; ēr as in merry; er as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ă in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; ǵh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.

or property; a **catastrophe** (kātās'trōfē), something that puts a sudden end to things; a **calam'ity**, that causes public suffering; a shipwreck.

**disastrous**, "contrary to the stars." Same root as astro-nomy, astro-logy, astr-al, etc.

to **discern** (dī-zern', note the z sound); to perceive keenly a detail or difference; to **distinguish**, to make a difference, whether rightly or wrongly; to **differentiate**, state a difference; to **discriminate** between two or more, with nicety of choice; to **discover** something that was hidden.

**discernment** (dī-zern'ment), ability to perceive keenly a detail or difference; **discrim'ination**, ability to make a nice choice; **subtlety** (sūt'l-tī), finesse of mind in discriminating between details; **sāgācity**, great keenness as to causes, ability to "seek" in the right direction; **shrewdness**, keenness as to motives.

to **discrim'inate**, choose judiciously; **differentiate** between things, see their unlikeness; **distinguish**, perceive an unlikeness, whether it appears to others to exist or not; **select**, pick carefully; **choose**, take the one liked best.

a **disease**, specific affection; **illness**, patient's condition; **sickness**, less serious than disease.—See Illness.

### Some words used on this subject

(**Throat, ear, nose**) lārŷngī'tis, tonsillitis, bronchitis (brong-kī'tis), mastoiditis, croup, goiter, catarrh (kā-tār'); (**lungs**) pneumonia (nū-mō'nīa), phthisis (thī'sis), asthma (as'ma), consumption, pleurisy, tuberculosis, a tubercular patient, T.B., a consumptive, a lunger (lung'er, colloquial); (**heart**) high pressure, palpitations, leaky valve; (**digestion, kidneys, etc.**) dyspep'sia, ācido'sis, jaundice, Bright's disease, grāvel, dropsy, dŷs'enterŷ; (**joints, muscles, etc.**) rheumatism, arthrī'tis, gout; (**brains**) parāl'ŷsis, delīrium trēmens (D.T.), ap'oplexy; (**skin**) erysipelas (ērīsip'elas); (**fevers and germ diseases**) influenza, mālāria, measles (mē'zl-z), whooping cough (hōōp'ing kōf), chicken pox, smallpox, mumps, scarlet fever, scarlatina, diphtheria (dif-thē'ria), tŷphōid, tŷphus, cholera (kol'era), infantile paralysis (in'fan-til pā-ra'lī-sis), yellow fever, lep'rosy.

**disgust**, literally "contrary taste," movement in the opposite direction; **loathing** (lō'dhing), disgust and fear combined; **nausea** (nau'shē-ā), desire to vomit; **satī'ety**, feeling of having had enough; **horror**, disgust and intense fear.

Until it disgusts.....ad nausēam.

a **dishabile** (dīs'ābil), a state of undress, from French déshabillé, from **habit**, a dress.

**dīshēv'eled**, with hair unkempt; from Old French deschevelé, from cheveux, hair. Connected with English word **capillary**.

**disinterested**, not acting from selfish motives; **uninterested**, who does not wish to have anything to do with a thing. "I found

him uninterested in our proposition, as he has more work on hand already than he has time for; but he was kind enough to give us a little disinterested advice as to present values in our field."

- a **disposition**. In psychology, man's native impulses, considered as a whole: happy, miserable; self-reliant, dependent; conceited, meek; aggressive, timid; acquisitive, disinterested; irascible, sociable; greedy, temperate; amorous, cold; inquisitive, lackadaisical; fastidious, happy-go-lucky, etc.
- to **dissipate** an accumulation; **squander**, give away thoughtlessly; **lavish**, give freely; **waste** without result; **spoil** for future use; **fritter** away in small installments.
- One who dissipates... a *prōdīgal* (with money), a *debauchee* (loose living), a fast person.
- dissipation**, in the sense of riotous living: **debauchery**, **dissoluteness**.
- a **distinction**, a choice; belief that one thing is unlike another; a **difference**, real unlikeness; **discrimination**, choice of one as superior to another; **separation**, placing or being apart; (an honor) **reward**, **medal**.
- distinctly**, clearly: "I remember it distinctly"; **distinctively**, in a distinguishing manner: "It was distinctively painted in red and green."
- to **distract** somebody, draw away his attention; **confuse**, cause somebody to mix things up together; **derange** the mind permanently.
- to **distrib'ute** (a **distributor**), to divide among several; **apportion** a carefully worked out share to each; **allot**, give each his lucky share; **disburse** with minute accuracy; **parcel out** an estate; **dole out** charitable funds.
- to **disturb** (a **disturber** of the peace, a **disturbance**), throw a thing or a person's mind into disorder; **perturb**, worry seriously; **annoy** slightly; **vex**, cause peevishness at failure to have one's own way; **derange** (**disarrange**), throw out of its assigned place; **interrupt** the proceedings; **confuse**, cause to mix things up.
- to **dive**. Past tense **dived**. (The form *dōve* is American dialect, not understood in other parts of the English-speaking world. If *dōve* were permissible, the past participle would have to be *diven*: "dive, dōve, diven," like "strive, strōve, striven," "rise, rōse, risen." As it is admittedly incorrect to say, "I have diven," it is also incorrect to say, "I dōve").
- to **dīvide** (**division**; **dividing**; the **dīvisor**, thing which divides; **dividend**, thing to be divided; **dīvisible**), to place into several groups; to **sēver**, cut off a limb, cut a tendon; **separate**, cause to be together no more; cut with a sharp instrument; **part** people who want to remain together; **bisect**, cut in two at the middle; **partition off** a room; **mark off**, **set apart** for a special purpose.
- to **do** (Past tense: yesterday I **did**; Present Perfect: I have always **done** it that way; Past Participle and adjective: it is **done**).—

Latin *facio, factum*; hence **fact**, thing done; a **feat**, difficult thing done; **feasible**, which can be done; **facility**, ability to do readily; **confection**, thing put together, done or made into one; to **defeat**, to undo; a **defect**, thing not well done; **perfect**, done thoroughly. Latin *ago, actum*; hence **act**, a thing performed; **agile**, ready in action; **transact**, etc.

To **make**, manufacture; **perform** from beginning to end; **execute** a plan, orders, carry them out; **accomplish**, do to the very end; **achieve** through effort; **effect**, as a result; **attain** something worth while; **practice** an art, a profession; **cause**, make to be.

Who can do things.....able, *cléver*, skilled, competent.

Who cannot do things.....feckless, incompetent, stupid.

Which can be done.....feasible.

Which cannot be done.....impossible.

Thing we do frequently.....a *hábit*.

Order for something to be

done .....a *fiät*.

To do away with.....to nullify, void, destroy, etc.

**doc-, doct-.** Latin root meaning "teach." Derived forms: *dôc'ile*, **doctor**, *dôc'ument*, *doc't'rine*. See Teach.

**a doctor**, qualified healer, generally **M.D.**, Doctor of Medicine.

An all-round doctor.....general practitioner, G.P.

One who operates on the body.....a surgeon (*ser'jün*).

Nerve doctor.....neurologist.

Eye doctor.....oc'ulist, ophthalmologist.

Eye correction doctor.....optom'etrism.

Ear doctor.....aurist.

Nose and throat doctor.....laryngologist.

Skin doctor.....dermatologist.

Specialist on bodily functions.....pathologist.

Gland doctor.....endocrinologist.

Specialist on deformities.....orthopedist.

Tooth doctor.....dentist (general).

Tooth-straightening doctor.....orthodontist.

Germ-fighting doctor.....prophylactist.

Spinal adjustment practitioner....ô's'téopath, chiropractor (*kí-ro-*).

**a dog.** Latin *canis*, hence **canine**, pertaining to dogs; **canine tooth**, the eye tooth or sharp tearing side tooth.—The word dog is properly applied only to varieties which do not hunt big game, the latter being called **hounds**.

**Bird dogs** (an Americanism; see below): spaniel, pointer, setter, retriever. **Sheep, cattle and other large dogs**: collie (Scotch), German police dog, bob-tailed sheep dog, St. Bernard, Newfoundland, mastiff, Samoyed, Alaskan husky (Es-kimo), great Dane. **Lap dogs**: Pomeranian (Spitz), Pekinese, Chihuahua (*shē-wā'wā*), King Charles spaniel, pug dog, Schipperke (*skip'er-ke*). **House and watch dogs**: Boston terrier (often miscalled Boston bull), fox terrier, bull terrier, Irish terrier, Aberdeen (Scotch) terrier, Skye terrier, Dandie

Dinmont, Airedale, chow, bulldog, French poodle, coach dog (Dalmatian).

The Americanisms **bird dog** and **hunting dog** are unnecessary in England, where the word **hound** is used exclusively for a dog used with game (beagle, greyhound, foxhound, etc.), and **dog** is used exclusively for either the varieties used in shooting birds (spaniel, pointer, etc.), or those kept around the house.

See Hound.

- a dogma**, solemnly proclaimed article of belief; **doctrine**, a teaching; a **ten'et**, an item of a creed (this word often used by the opponents of the tenet owing to its suggestion of "tenacity," obstinacy); a **creed**, brief statement of the items of belief.—Adjective: **dogmatic**. "His dogmatic assertions are not supported by facts."

- to dom'inate**, to be higher than, or superior to: His tall figure dominated the assembly. A man of this type always dominates circumstances. Do not confuse with **domineer**, to boss: "His domineering manner has made him many enemies."

**done** (dūn). This word is not to be used as an auxiliary in place of **have**: I have lost (not: I done lost).

**don't** (dōnt, with long ō); used only with **I, we, you, they**. With **he, she, it**, use **does not** or **doesn't** (dūz'nt): "It doesn't matter."

- a door**. Latin *janua*; hence **janitor**, the man at the door (an Americanism; in England **porter**, from the Latin word *porta*, a gate or door).

**dorm-**. Latin root meaning "sleep." Derived forms: **dormant**, **dor'mitory**, **dormouse**. See Sleep.

- a dor'mitory**, a sleeping place for several people. From Latin *dormio*, I sleep; hence **dormant**, asleep; "dormant passions"; a **dormouse**, a sleepy little animal (no connection with mouse). **double**. For synonyms, see Two.

- a doubt** (dout), inhibition of an impulse; **uncertainty**, partly inhibited impulse; **hēsitation**, strong desire partly in conflict with another; **skepticism**, doubt as to someone's motives; **suspicion**, belief in a hidden danger; **incredulity**, attitude unfavorable to the reception of a belief; **perplexity**, being torn between two courses of action; **suspense**, even balance between two conflicting desires.

**down**. Latin *de*, as in descend, go down. Greek *kata*, as in cataclysm (*kāt'a-kliz-m*), a washdown, an upheaval.

To go down.....descend (solemnly), dismount (from a horse).

To go down into something soft or

liquid .....to sink in.

To push down (a lever, etc.).....to depress.

To push down (to secondary place)..to rel'egate.

To go down in quality.....to detēriorate.

Place that slopes down.....a decliv'ity.

Going down after being inflated.....deflation.

Descent into the commonplace.....bathos (in drama, fiction).

**downward** (written in one word).

**downright** (written in one word).

- a drama** (drā'ma), **dram'atist**, **dramat'ic**, to **dram'atize**. A **drama** is a serious conflict of two wills; a **tragedy** (trāj'ēdī) is a struggle against a superior force; a **com'edy** is a fight against one's own mistaken notions, or against a foolish convention; a **farce** is a chain of incongruous and irrelevant effects, produced for the sole purpose of provoking laughter.—See **Theater**.

**drām'atis persō'næ**, the characters in a play.

- to draw** (Past tense I **drew**; Present Perfect: I have **drawn**). Latin *traho, tractum*; hence **extract**, something drawn out; **contract**, drawing together of two minds for one purpose; **subtraction**, drawing under; **protract**, draw forth; **distract**, draw thought away; **abstract**, draw from.—To **pull**, in an attempt to draw, sometimes unsuccessfully; **drag** against resistance, as "drag a sled on the ground"; **lug**, drag something cumbersome, especially figuratively; **tow** a boat, an auto, by means of a tow rope; **inhale**, breathe in air, fumes; **attract** a crowd, cause it to congregate; **allure** by emotional inducements; **entice** by persuasion, flattery, etc., usually in a bad sense.

(In another sense) to **write** a composition, **compose** an essay, **formulate** a plan, **draft** a document, **trace** an outline on paper, **paint** a picture.

**drawing and painting.**

### Some words used on this subject

Painter, artist; subject, outline, sketch, draft, model, perspective, copy, picture, oil painting, wash drawing, portrait, landscape, cartoon, caricature, silhouette, seascape; imitation, likeness; pencil, brush, canvas, frame, color, pal'ette, tube, linseed oil, turpentine, megilp (mēdium), easel; lay figure, dummy; light, shade, tint, foreground, background.

- to dream** (Past tenses: **drēamed** or **drēamt**).—A **dream** during sleep; **nightmare**, torturing dream; **rêverie** (rāv-rē'), day dreaming; **hallūcination**, deception of the senses in waking life; **symbol**, object either in a dream or in waking life, which represents an idea: "The serpent is symbolic of sex"; **chimera** (kī or kī-mē'ra), a delusion, sometimes a fond desire.—Adjectives: **visionary**, **chīmér'ical**; **utō'pian**, **unrealizable**.

**dress**, clothing worn for the sake of appearance; **clothing**, referring to serviceability; a **costume**, fancy outfit; a **garment**, one of the larger draped pieces, like coats and skirts; **apparel**, general "rig out"; **raiment**, poetic; a **vestment**, ceremonial, ecclesiastical; **attire**, the way clothes go together; **garb**, strange clothes; **habit** for riding; a **uniform**, like others; **accoutrement**, military outfit; **habil'iments**, attire in general.

A low-cut evening gown.....a **décolleté** (dā-kol-tā).

In a state of undress.....in a **dishabille** (dis'ābil).

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels: ā ā ī ō ū ŷ as in *mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my*; ä ä ē ī ō ū ŷ as in *mat, met, mite, not, nut, pity*; & as in *father*; &r as in *merry*; &r as in *mercer*; ou as in *loud*; au as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ä in *senate*). Consonants: g always as in *go*; th as in *thief*; dh as th in *mother*; ng as in *sing* or in *singer*; ng-g as ng in *finger*. See **Syllables**.

- to **drink** (Past tense: He **drank**; Present Perfect: he has **drunk**).  
 Latin bibeo; hence to **imbibe**, drink in; **bib'ulous**, addicted to drink.—To **swallow** rapidly; **imbibe** grossly; **quaff** with gusto.  
 Not given to strong drink.....temperate (adjective).  
 One who drinks no alcohol.....an abstainer; a teetotaler (British).  
 Who has not been drinking.....söber.  
 A drink addict.....a drunkard, a sot, a soak (colloquial).  
 State of drunkenness.....inēbriety.
- a **drink**, a bev'rage; liquor, alcoholic; a **liquid**, anything that flows; booze, strong drink.  
 State of not having had drink.....sobriety.  
 Lack of fondness for drink.....sobriety.  
 One who has been drinking heavily.....a drunkard.
- to **drive** (Past tense: he **drove**; Present Perfect: he has **driven**; a **driver**, **driving**). Latin pello, pulsum; hence **propeller**, the driving screw of a steamer or an aeroplane; **compulsion**, driving to action; **repulse**, being driven away; to **dispel**, drive off; an **impulse**, a driving desire.  
 (In the sense of impelling force.) To **incite** a person to a dangerous act; **impel**, cause somebody to wish; **move** to a decision; **drive** irresistibly.—(In the sense of vehicular motion.) To **ride** in a carriage; **drive** in state; **drive** a car, oneself.
- to **drop** (**dropping**, **dropped**), to fall in a straight line: "The pail dropped down the well"; to allow to fall: "I dropped a cup on the floor."  
 Dropping off (from a party, etc.).....a defection.  
 To fall in drops (as a candle).....to drip.
- a **drudge** (from an Anglo-Saxon word meaning to work, labor, suffer); a **slave** (figuratively).
- a **druggist**, in general, especially dealer in the coarser chemicals and in sundries; **phar'macist**, graduate prescription expert; **apoth'ecary**, old-fashioned.
- a **drum**; a **tambourine**, small hand drum with bells; a **big drum**, **bäss drum**; a **kettle drum**; a **tomtom**, savages'.  
 Man who plays all the drums.....the percussionist
- dry** (**drier**, **driest**). Latin siccus; hence to **dēsiccate** (notice the spelling with one s only, and the pronunciation dē- not dēs-), to dry; **dēsiccate** fruit, dried in the sun or in an oven; **dēh'ydrated** milk, fruit or vegetables, dried in special oven to remove all the moisture.  
 Dry (climate, country; parched)..ärid.  
 Long dry period.....a drought (drouth); drouth (U. S. only).
- dūäl**, adjective: two-fold, as in "dual personality." Do not confuse with **düel**, a battle between two.

**duct-** (anglicized **-duce**). Latin root meaning "to lead." Derived forms: **duc'tile**, **deduct**, **deduce**, **educate**, **abduct**, **introduce**, **produce**, **aqueduct**, **vĩaduct**.—See **Lead**.

**due**, adjective; owing to. "The bill falls due today." "Praise is due to the council."—Note that the adjective **due**, unlike most adjectives, cannot be used as an adverb. It is not right to say: "Due to this being Friday"; use instead: **owing to**, or **on account of**.

**a** **dũěl** (two syllables), a battle between two. An ordinary fight is not a duel, because it is not organized according to rules.—Do not confuse with **dual**, two-fold.

**dull** (sky), cloudy, misty, foggy, gray; (color) sober, somber, plain, dirty, muddy; (surface) matt, flat, **õpāque**; (uninteresting) tẽdĩous, heavy, dead, tame, ordinary, commonplace, torpid, numb; (stupid, person) silly, soft.

**dur-**. Latin root meaning "hard, lasting." Derived forms: **dũ'able**, **ob'dũrate**, to **endure**. See **Hard**.

**during**, preposition (used before a noun only): "He came during the service," equivalent to the conjunction **while** (used before a verb): "While it was raining."

**a** **dũty**, feeling that one must do a certain thing, from higher motives; **õbligatĩon**, feeling of being compelled to do a certain thing; **charge**, entrusted to somebody; **task**, specific job; **com-mĩssĩon**, to achieve a result for somebody else.

List of things to be done.....an agenda (**ã-jẽn'dã**).  
Which is a duty.....oblig'atory.  
To take it as one's duty.....to endeavor.

**a** **dwarf**, a small, distorted man or woman, generally with large head, broad shoulders and very short body; a **midget**, a well-proportioned but very small man or woman.

**to** **dwel** (Past tense: **dwelt** or **dwelled**), to stay for some considerable time in a place, or on a subject; to **abide** in a place, by a decision, with relatives; to **reside** permanently; to **be domiciled** legally; to **live** in a house, a city; to **inhabit** a country.—Nouns: a **dweller** in the desert; an **inhabitant** of a settlement; the **occupier** of a house; the **occupant**, one who has taken possession, usually without rights; a **rẽsĩdent** of a section; a **den'izen** of the woods (especially birds, etc.); **lodger** with somebody else.

**to** **dye** clothes (dyeing with an e; **dyed**; a **dyer**; he **dyes** the clothes). Latin **tingo**, **tinctum**; hence a **tincture** or **tint** or **tinge** of a color.

**dynam-**. Greek root meaning "power." Derived forms: **dỹ'nãmĩte**, **dỹ'namo**, **dỹnasty**. See **Power**.



# E

3. The sound *ē* is often spelled *ei* or *ie*.

**Words in IE** ("i before e, except after c," but note exceptions below):

Believe, relieve, belief, relief, brief, chief, grief, thief, mischievous, achieve, grievance, grievous, reprieve, thieving, bier, pier, fierce, pierced, cashier, chandelier, gondolier, financier, field, shield, wield, yield, hygiene, fiend, niece, piece, priest, shriek, liege, siege, besiege, frieze (ornament).

**Words in EI:**

Conceive, deceive, perceive, receive, ceiling, conceit, deceit, receipt, weir, weird, either, neither, leisure, seize, seizure.

3. This sound is spelled *ie* in friend (*frënd*).

**e mute.**—The letter *e* is called "e mute" when it is not pronounced at all, which is often the case in English.

*E* mute is used (1) as the survival of a foreign form which has not been completely anglicized: programme (now often spelled program, but which should nevertheless be pronounced as before).

(2) After the letter *v*, because the letters *u* and *v* were formerly used indiscriminately for one another, and the spelling (in handwriting) *ue* was therefore adopted to represent the sound *v*: *haue* (sounded: *hav*, and now spelled *have* with a totally unnecessary final *e*), receive, perceive, deductive.

(3) After the letter *m*, because this letter in old handwriting looked like many straight strokes of the pen, and was often confused by the Normans with other forms. Therefore they wrote, instead of *um*, the combination *ome*: some (formerly spelled correctly *sum*), handsome, etc.

(4) After a consonant at the end of a syllable, to lengthen the previous vowel: *tale* (a and e together makes *ā* sound; a by itself, *tal*, would make short *ă* sound). It has been proposed to put the *e* with the vowel: *tael*, *muet*; but this leaves out of account the cases where it would clash: poem (two syllables, *po-em*), fuel (*fu-el*).

(5) After the letters *c* and *g* to keep the soft sound (*s*, *j*), as before prefix *-able* or other beginning with *-a*, *-o* or *-u*: George (without the *e* mute, it would sound *Gorg*); manageable, traceable. (According to this fundamental principle, the English spellings judgement, acknowledgement, abridgement and lodgement, used and strongly recommended by the Oxford authorities, are better than judgment, acknowledgment, etc., although these are admittedly of historical misparentage.)

(6) To give the written appearance of a vowel to syllables that have no true vowel: Bi-ble, a-ble, eat-en,

**each.** This word indicates a separateness not found in **both**. **Each** is also used when there are more than two:

**Each** (of them) asked me to write to you. (Two separate requests.)

**Each** man had to provide for himself. I gave **each** of the boys a nickel. (If this sentence read, "I gave **both** the boys a nickel," I would have given only one nickel.)

**Each** man had to do a share of the work. (The work was performed successfully only because individual tasks were allotted.)

**each other.** Reciprocal action between **two** is expressed by the words **each other**; between more than two, by **one another**. They promised **each other** to share equally.

Forbearance of **one another** is essential to human progress.

Forbearance of **each other's** faults is essential in married life.

See also All, Whole, Every, Either, Both.

**early** refers to time reckoned absolutely, in advance: "They arrived early for the party" (in advance of the time set); **soon** refers to time after the time of speaking: "It will soon be time to go" (a short time from now).

**earth** (erth). Latin *terra*; hence **territory**, a definite part of the earth; to **inter**, put into the earth. Greek *ge*; hence **geography**, **geology**, **geometry**, the measurement of the earth.—**Ground**, the firm and solid basis; **soil**, the part in which things grow; **land**, a measurable part of the earth, or the part opposed to water; the **world** in general, usually including other planets and solar system; the **universe**, all that there is, often limited nowadays to all that we know of: "There may be other universes besides ours"; this **planet**, our whole earth; the **sphere**, this planet considered in its form.

Adjectives: **earthen** pottery; **earthly** pleasures, of a material, as against spiritual, nature; **earthy** person, matter of fact, unimaginative; **worldly** life, given to amusements and not to serious pursuits; **terrestrial**, opposed to celestial; **base**, low and degraded.

Earth, as opposed to shipboard.....terra firma.

See Geography.

**an earthquake**, the event itself; a **shock** as felt by people; a **trem'or**, each separate vibration.—The Spanish word **temblor**, which is unnecessary since it merely duplicates the good English word **trem'or**, should at least be pronounced correctly, with accent on the last syllable: tem-blOR'.

Pertaining to earthquakes.....seismic (sis'mik or siz'mik, with long i sound).

Quake recording device.....a seismograph.

**the East**, called the **Orient** when referring to Asia, particularly to Western Asia.—The **Far East**, Japan, etc.

Pertaining to the Orient.....Oriental

**easy.** Latin *facilis*; hence *fac'ile*, operating without great effort: "a *fac'ile* pen"; *facil'ity*, achievement without trouble; *facil'itate*; **difficult**, opposite of easy.—**Convenient** distance; **graceful** manners, **free, natural**; **ready rēp'artee**; **airy** contempt; **in'dolent** disposition.

to **eat** (ēt). Past tense: Yesterday I **ate** (pronounced āt in the U. S., ēt in England). Present Perfect: I have **eaten**.—Latin *edo*; hence **ed'ible**, fit to eat, "edible mushrooms." French **manger**; hence **blanc mange**, a Swiss-French word, "white food"; a **mānger**, feeding trough for cattle.—To **consume** a dish; **devour** rapidly and hungrily.

Without a named object, "to eat" is not "good manners." Use instead "have a meal," "have lunch," etc.

One fond of good food....an ēp'icūre, a gourmet (gōōr-mā').

One over-fond of eating...a gourmand (goor'mand').

One who eats to excess....a gor'mandizer.

First-class cooking.....cuisine (kwē-zēn').

One who eats avidly.....a glutton.

To eat beyond reason....to gormandize.

Meat-eating (animal) .....carniv'orous.

Man who eats no meat....a vēg'ētārian (vej'-).

An eating house.....a restaurant, a café.

**eccentric** (ek-sen'trik, adjective), literally "out of the center"; speaking of a person: **pecūliar**, **odd**, **queer**, **erratic**, doing things by hit-and-miss method; **cranky**, excessively difficult to please.

**ēconom'ic** refers to supply and demand; **ēconom'ical** means **thrifty**. "The inexorable working of economic laws, especially the labor shortage, has caused the population of America, so free and generous in the midst of abundant supplies, to become more economical in its habits."

**Polit'ical Econ'omy** is the name of the science that deals with population, migrations, supply and demand, labor, capital.

**ēc'stās'y**, a feeling of "being beside oneself" with joy or from a believed supernatural cause; **rapture**, feeling of being carried away, as by a speech; **transport**, feeling of being moved bodily to another world; **delight**, great joy; **intoxication** as by drink; **frenzy**, literally "mental disease," a state of excitement bordering on nervous derangement; **ag'ony**, the supreme fight or greatest pain, as before death.

**-ed.** This suffix is used to form the regular past tense in English. It is pronounced **ēd**, after the sounds t, d: complet**ēd**, deed**ēd**; **d** after the sounds g, b, m, n, l, r, z, v: logg**ed** (lōgd), crab**bed** (krābd), worm**ed** (wūrmd), min**ed** (mīnd), thrill**ed** (thrīld), blurr**ed** (blurd); rais**ed** (rāzd), shelv**ed** (shēlvd); **d** also after vowel sounds: dismay**ed** (dis-mād'), freed (frēd), defied (defid), bestow**ed** (bī-stōd'), gluc**ed** (glōōd); **t** after the sounds k, p, sh, s, f: pack**ed** (pākt), rapp**ed** (rāpt), finish**ed** (fin'isht), miss**ed** (mīst), sniff**ed** (snīft).

the **edge** of a cutting instrument, the **blade**; of a sharp object: the **brink** of a precipice; **verge** of poverty, of despair; **rim** of something round; **brim** of a hollow vessel, "full to the brim"; **margin**, clear marked space alongside, "the margins of a book"; **border**, area along and inside the edge; **boundary** of a territory or property; **frontier** of a country; **skirts**, **outskirts** of a city; **environs** of an important place; **confines** of a building or container.

to **effect**, to bring about completely, a result; an **effect**, that which appears as a result, a consequence. "The law of cause and effect." "Owing to the roughness of the sea, they could not effect the transfer of the passengers to the boats."—Do not confuse with **affect**, to influence: "He was not affected by the change." "The change was **Effected** without trouble."

**effective**, adjective, which produces results, successful; **efficient**, done in such a way as to conserve energy; **efficacious**, intended to produce results (this word is not so strong as effective). "Under her efficient management, effective reforms were introduced." "Thanks to his efficacious intervention, our request was effective."

an **effort**, one act of power; **exertion** or **exertions**, steady use of power; **endeavor**, taking it as a duty; **striving** to achieve; a sudden **spurt**; an **attempt**, expecting to be unsuccessful.—See **Challenge**.

**egoism** (ĕg'oizm or ē'goizm), the belief that every man must look out for himself; **egotism**, personal selfishness, thinking only of oneself.

**eight**. In Arabic figures, 8; in Roman, VIII. Latin octo; hence an **octave** in music: a span of eight notes; in Church festivals: the eighth day after a festival, counting the day itself; an **octet**, eight performers; **octuple**, eight fold. Greek okto; hence **octagonal**, eight-sided.—Note the spelling of the derived form **eighth** (not: eight-th but eight-h; pronounced ā-th, with two separate consonant sounds).

**either** . . . or . . . or.—**Either** was originally "one of two, it does not matter which"; "Either man is liable to be called" (i.e., one of them will probably be called, and it may be one or it may be the other). **Either** is now correctly used even in a comparison of more than two: "I shall either go, or phone, or write." Note that the first term of the statement is preceded by **either**, while the second and third (if there is a third) are preceded by **or**: "**Either** the sun, or the moon, or any of the host of heaven" (Deut. 17:3).—Negatively, the same applies to **neither**, which is followed by **nor** . . . **nor**: "Carry **neither** purse, **nor** scrip, **nor** shoes" (Luke 10:4); but **neither** was, in the seventeenth century, used for **nor** almost indiscriminately: "Provide **neither** gold, **nor** silver, **nor** brass in your purses, **nor** scrip for your journey, **neither** two coats, **neither** shoes,

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels: **ā** as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; **ä** as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; **ā** as in father; **ē** as in merry; **er** as in mercer; **ou** as in loud; **au** as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (**ā** in senate). Consonants: **g** always as in go; **th** as in thief; **dh** as in mother; **ng** as in sing or in singer; **ng-g** as in finger. See Syllables.

nor yet staves" (Matt. 10:9-10, King James version).

If **either** . . . or is followed by a combination of the pronouns **I, you, he (she, it)**, the verb is better used in the same person as the nearer pronoun: "Either you or I **am** going." Many people, however, prefer to avoid that pedantic turn, and some use the third person singular: "Either you or I **is** going." Others, on the theory that the so-called plural is often an indefinite singular (as in "They say"; "Tell them to wait," etc.) advocate the use of the plural: "Either you or I **are** going" (**We** are going, taking **us** as a unit, although we shall be represented by **either you or I**).

The first two letters of the word **either** are usually pronounced in America ē, and in England ĩ.

to **eject** (e-jekt'), throw out, a charge from a gun, an interrupter at a meeting; **expel**, send away in disgrace, as a foreign body from the organism, a student from school; to **emit** a sound; **evict** a delinquent tenant; **discharge** a load, also an unsatisfactory employee; **fire** (colloquial) an employee (called in England to **sack**); **squirt** a liquid from a syringe; **void** a container; to **erupt** (used without an object), speaking of a volcano.

**elder**, older of two in the same family, when referring to the person as an individual: "my elder sister." But when speaking of age, it is correct to use **older**: "I have a younger sister and an older sister: my elder sister is called Mary." "I am his elder brother; I am a year older than he is."

**el'egant**, literally "picking out," fastidious, and more properly used of persons only; **well-dressed**. Of things: **dainty**, **refined**: an elegant piece of furniture.—**Elegant** always refers to appearances, never to quality; therefore do not use it to mean **good** as in "an elegant outlet" (vulgarism).

an **el'ement** is a component part: "Punctuality is one of the elements of business success, as Imagination is one of the elements of literary success" (i.e., success consists of . . .). A **factor** is what influences the result: "Rainfall is a serious factor in agriculture" (i.e., Agriculture is largely influenced by rain; but it does not consist of rain). A **phase** is part of an order perceived by the mind: "Every child passes through a phase of hero-worship."

**elemen'tary**, simple, easy; **elemental**, undeveloped, uncultured, pertaining to the raw form of a thing. "His manners are elemental," "an elemental, uncontrolled nature"; **fundamental**, pertaining to the foundations. "A knowledge of the alphabet is elementary, but a knowledge of sounds is fundamental."

**elev'en**. Written in Arabic figures 11; in Roman XI (i.e., one at the right of ten, ten plus one).

to **elic'it** (ē-lis'it), to draw forth as explanation, as when the previous statements have not been complete; to **extract** a confession, with strong pressure, against resistance; to **exact** the full payment of a debt; to **extort** something not due, through fear.

to **elim'inate**, gradually do away with something undesirable or somebody unqualified: "Grade crossings should be eliminated

as rapidly as possible"; to **suppress**, prevent the rise of something dangerous: "suppress a revolt"; **omit**, not include: "Some important facts were omitted from the report"; to **ignore**, take no notice of; to **overlook** by mistake.

an **ellip'sis**, plural **ellip'sēs**, omission of a word, as in "a brother I love" for "a brother **whom** I love." Adjective: **elliptical**. "The construction just mentioned was elliptical."—Do not confuse with the geometrical **ellipse**, the figure which looks like a squashed circle.

**el'o-cu'tion**, the effective use of the voice, of rhythm and gesture in public speaking or reading: "Anyone aspiring to the public platform should practice elocution"; the manner in which the voice is used, the manner of delivery of a speech or reading: "Her elocution was far from perfect." **Diction**, the choice of words in regard to their form, sound, articulation, pronunciation: "Her elocution would be more satisfactory if she were to improve her diction; as it is, she is fluent and convincing, and she has a pleasing voice, but she does not articulate her consonants with sufficient clearness"; **pronunciation**, the choice of the correct sounds for each word; **articulation**, the clear formation of the "jointed" letters or consonants in speech; **expression**, the choice of the words that fit the thought; **style**, the combination of effective expression with proper diction, the sum total of an author's personality as conveyed to his readers.

**else** (adjective and adverb), other, otherwise. **Else** takes the possessive: "This is **somebody else's** hat" (not: somebody's else).

to **elude**, evade by a strätägem or trick: "The fox turned suddenly into a thicket and eluded its pursuers."—**Elude** means literally "play out," **evade** "to go out"; therefore we elude a pursuer and evade a liability.

to **embarrass** (two r's, unlike harass with one r). Something is **embarrassing** which makes one blush or fidget, as being caught in a situation which is likely to be misunderstood; it is **confusing** when it prevents our thinking; it is **disconcerting** when it is the opposite of what we expected.

an **embryo** (em'brīō), the earliest stage of development of a natural growth.

an **em'igrant**, one who goes out of a country; an **immigrant**, one who enters a country to make it his home. The same person is either an emigrant or an immigrant, according to the speaker's point of view. "The port of Naples was crowded with **em'igrants**; on arrival in New York the **immigrants** went to work."

an **emotion**, literally "movement outward," a desire that tends to find expression. An emotion is the consciousness of the desire itself; a feeling is the reaction to that consciousness. An unexpressed emotion subsides into a **mood** (McDougall).—The principal emotions are fear, anger, disgust, love, distress, lust, curiosity, submissiveness, elation, loneliness (due to the

gregarious instinct), taste for food, ownership, creativeness, amusement (McDougall, Outline of Psychology).

**em'phāsīs**, plural **emphasēs**, the strength given to a word or statement: "He put great emphasis on the fact that he was ready."—Adjective: **emphat'ic**: an emphatic denial.

to **employ** (**employing**, **employed**; an **employer**; an **employee**, either sex), to have habitually in one's service; to **engage** or **hire**, to take on as an employee; to **retain** a lawyer, a doctor; to **sign up** an actor, etc.

**empty**, adjective, containing nothing; used of any object considered as a receptacle; **vācant** space, situation; **hollow**, not continuously solid; **blank** paper, not written on; "a blank expression" of the face; **vācūous** smile.—The difference between **half-empty** and **half-full** is one of point of view, the contents being identical.

To empty out.....to void (literary and scientific)

**-en** or **-n**, ancient form of English past tense: spoken, bitten, broken, risen. **-en**, old Saxon plural: oxen; also found in children (a double plural: child-er-en), men, women.

**-ence**, **-ent**; **-ance**, **-ant**.

### WORDS IN ANCE, ENCE (STATE OF BEING); ANT, ENT (BEING; ONE WHO)

#### Words in ANCE, ANT

abundance (ant)	countenance	reliance (ant)
acquaintance	defiance (ant)	reluctance (ant)
allegiance	dependant (noun)	remembrance
allowance	elegance (ant)	repentance (ant)
annoyance	endurance	resemblance
appearance	extravagance (ant)	resistance (ant)
assistance (ant)	ignorance (ant)	riddance
assurance	inheritance	significance (ant)
attendance (ant)	irrelevance (ant)	temperance
balance	maintenance	vengeance
compliance (ant)	nuisance	vigilance (ant)
confidant (noun)	perseverance (ant)	

#### Words in ENCE, ENCY, ENT

absence (ent)	diligence (ent)	occurrence
audience	efficiency (ent)	persistence (ent)
benevolence (ent)	eloquence (ent)	precedence (ent)
circumference	eminence (ent)	prominence (ent)
coherence (ent)	excellence (ent)	reminiscence (ent)
coincidence (ent)	existence (ent)	residence (ent)
conference	impatience (ent)	reverence (ent) (end)
confidence (ent)	independence (ent)	sentence
convenience (ent)	innocence (ent)	sufficiency (ent)
correspondence (ent)	intelligence (ent)	superintendence (ent)
deficiency (ent)	magnificence (ent)	vehemence (ent)
dependence (ent)	negligence (ent)	
difference (ent)		

For accentuation of words ending in **-ent**, **-ence**, see **-ent**.

**an end.** Latin *finis*; hence **final**, which makes an end of it; **finality**; **finally** (Do not confuse with "finely," in a fine manner); the **limit** of a given motion; **tip** of a fine-pointed object; **extremity**, very end; **termination** of a period; **terminal** of a railroad line; **remnant** of a piece of cloth; **remainder** of something that has been partaken of; **peroration** of a formal speech.

**-endous.** Three-syllable words ending in **-endous** have the accent on the syllable **-en-**: **tremendous**.

**endurance**, lasting power; **fortitude**, virtue of passive courage; **strength**, ability to bear; **pätiēce**, ability to suffer; **tolerance**, acceptance of liberty for others; **stäm'ina**, physical endurance.

**an enemy** (ēn'ēmī), one whom we dislike and who is against us in some way; **oppo'nent**, one who disagrees but who may be quite friendly; **ad'versary**, serious opponent; **foe**, poetic; **antag'onist**, in a public combat.

By or of an enemy.....inim'ical

To make an enemy of.....to antag'onize (somebody)

**en'erget'ic**, full of driving power; **active**, less than energetic; **vig'orous**, full of motion; **robust** physique; **efficacious** measures; **forceful** personality; **strénuous** efforts.

to **engage** somebody to do something; **hire** for pay by the period; **retain** a lawyer, a doctor; **book** an advance date; **sign on**, **sign up** an actor, etc.—To **engage** in a legitimate occupation; **indulge** in an act that implies moral weakness: "He indulges in cigarette smoking," as said by one who considers it wrong.

to **enlarge** a room, a photograph; to **increase** one's earnings, make them more; **extend** a permission; **magnify** a trifling event, make it appear big; **amplify** a brief statement by adding details; **augment** the ranks of an army, etc.; **dilate** the pupil of the eye; **expand** one's chest, a growing business; **stretch** by making the same material cover a greater length.

**an enor'mity**, an act of great wickedness; **enormousness**, large size of anything.

**enough** (ī-nūf').—This word may be placed either before or after an ordinary noun: "I have enough bread," or: "I have bread enough." With an adjective, an adverb, or a noun used as an adjective, it is always placed after: "It will be time enough" (noun used as an adverb, "soon enough"). "You will be tired enough." "It is good enough." "He arrived late enough" (adverb).—The adjective **sufficient** cannot be used exactly like **enough**: "The bread I have will be sufficient for my needs." Do not use "sufficient" with "to have," except as an adjective: "I have sufficient bread" is correct, but the phrase "I have sufficient" (without a noun) is a provincialism, an attempt to appear "genteel."—See Adequate.

**en route** (ân-rōöt), two words, "on the way."

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels **ā** **ä** **ī** **ō** **ū** **y** as in *mate*, *meet*, *mite*, *mote*, *mute*, *my*; **ă** **ē** **î** **ô** **û** **ÿ** as in *mat*, *met*, *mit*, *not*, *nut*, *pity*; **ā** as in *father*; **ēr** as in *merry*; **ēr** as in *mercer*; **ou** as in *loud*; **au** as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (**ā** in *senate*). Consonants: **g** always as in *go*; **th** as in *thief*; **dh** as *th* in *mother*; **ng** as in *sing* or in *singer*; **ng-g** as *ng* in *finger*. See Syllables.



**-ent, -ence.** Words of three syllables ending in -ent, -ence, have the accent on the first syllable: det'riment, sac'rament, in'no-cent, vi'olence, em'inence, res'idence, in'dolence, pres'ident.

**Exceptions:** compō'nent, complā'cent, adjā'cent, propō'-nent, expō'nent, inter'ment, intern'ment, circumvent', rep'resent'.

Words of four or five syllables ending in -ent, -ence, have the accent on the second syllable before -ent, -ence: exper-iment, aston'ishment, bellig'erent, benev'olent, impen'tent, acknowl'edgment, circum'fluent, appor'tionment, circum'ference, omnip'otence, malev'olent.—**Exceptions:** om'nipres'ent; intermit'tent, cir'cumam'bient; interfe'rence; circumja'cent, in'terdepend'ent.

an **entertain'ment**, either public or private; a **reception**, more or less private; **party**, informal; **treat** to children; a **fête** (fât).

to **enthuse** (colloquial). This word was coined by humorists and has never been accepted in serious writing, where it jars on the context and is taken to show lack of culture. Unless you are seeking a laugh, it is preferable to use "to be enthusiastic."

**-entous.** Three-syllable words ending in -entous have the accent on the syllable -en'-: porten'tous.

an **entrance** (en'trans), noun, accent on 1st syllable.—A gate, drive-way, porte cochère; terrace, steps, door, aperture (through an obstacle), hallway, vestibule, lobby.—Note that the verb "to entrance" (with accent on second syllable) means "to charm" and has nothing to do with "to enter," go in.

an **envelope**.—Pronunciations vary, none is authoritative. In its present spelling **envelope** is not a French word (the French word having two p's), nor is it a good English word (since it has an unnecessary final e). The best usage is tending toward the pronunciation ěn'vĕl-ōp. The spelling and the pronunciation should be restored to the pure English form envel'op.

**envy** of another, desire for what the other fellow has; **jealousy**, resentment of the other fellow's possessions or joys; **grudge**, unsettled vengeance.

an **ep'isode**, part of a narrative. In motion pictures, one of an interrupted series of films (called a **sĕrial**), shown at weekly intervals.

**ĕ'qual**, of the same size or in the same quantity; **ĕ'quable** climate, with little variation of temperature between summer and winter; **ĕq'uitable** arrangement, according to unwritten justice.—Greek isos; hence an **isotherm**, line indicating regions of equal temperature, as on weather charts; **isochromatic**, which equalizes colors, especially of a photographic plate sensitive to yellow and green.—**Commensurate** with, "of the same measurement as" one's ability, income, etc.; **propor-tional** to something of different size; on a **par** with something of equal worth.—Nouns: **ĕquality**, **ĕquity**, **ĕquableness**, with the same respective meanings as the corresponding adjectives.

**Equality** of arrangement in respect of (or to) a

common center.....sym'metry

**equality** between two is expressed with the words **as . . . as**: "My sister is as tall as my brother." Absence of equality is expressed with **not so . . . as**: "My sister is not so tall as my brother."

**-er, -or, -ar** spellings.—Words of purely English origin generally end in **-er**: sell-er, talk-er, buy-er, fight-er. Words of purely Latin origin generally end in **-or**: vend-or, orat-or, spectat-or. In word division at the end of a line, the spelling **-er** is separated: talk-er; the spelling **-or** is not separated: ven-dor. (See the important article on Syllables in this book.)

**Words in AR****Words in ER****Words in OR**

beggar	adviser	administrator	impostor
burglar	clothier	ambassador	inventor
calendar	colander (cul-	bachelor	legislator
circular	lender)	benefactor	monitor
familiar	collier	competitor	prevaricator
grammar	conquer	conductor	proprietor
particular	consumer	conqueror	prosecutor
peculiar	debater	corridor	separator
pedlar (peddler	embroider	disfavor	spectator
pedler)	engraver	endeavor	supervisor
vinegar	subscriber	governor	ventilator

to **err** in judgment; **make a mistake** in action; **go astray** in a deduction; **blunder** through lack of common sense; **sin** through moral weakness.

an **errā'tum**, plural **errā'ta**. A mistake in a book, as corrected. "A list of errata."

to **escape**, literally "slip out of one's cape" while it is held by another; to **evade** a liability; **elude** a pursuer; **avoid** punishment; **flee from** somebody's anger; **slip away** while others are not watching; **decamp** leaving behind one's baggage.

an **escort** (es'kort, accent on 1st syllable) of several people, though the word is now euphemistically used of one; a **bodyguard**, king's; a **companion**, friend who shares one's fortunes; **cavalier**, gallant companion to a lady; **protector** of one unable to defend himself; **attendant** to safeguard from molestation and wait on one's wishes.—Verb: to **escort** (accent on 2nd syllable).

**especially**, used to single out one of a class: "Shoes are made all over the country, especially in New England and the Middle West." **Specially** is used to indicate the intention of the maker: "These shoes were made specially to order."

**Esquire** (abbreviated after a proper name: Esq., properly applied only to men in the liberal professions). When "Esq." is used (always with a capital letter, and preceded by a comma), "Mr." is not used: "John Blair, Esq." (not Mr. John Blair Esq.).

**essence**, literally "the being," "that which is." In the old scholastic philosophy, everything that exists is supposed to

consist of an **essence**, the very reason for the thing, its abstract "idea"; a **substance** or what it makes come down into matter; and **accidents**, or the details that make it fall under the senses.—**Essence** is generally used to mean "the one indispensable element, the very reason for existence": the essence of the problem.

to **establish**, to set up on a firm foundation, with the intention of making it last long; to **found** an institution; **institute**, set going; **erect** a building; **create** out of next-to-nothing; **organize** a force of people; **raise** an army; **set up** a form of Government.

**esteem**, feeling of friendliness and high opinion; **regard**, high opinion of an equal, more conventional and less friendly; **respect**, high opinion of a superior.

**ethno-**. Greek root meaning "race, nation." Derived forms: **ethnic**, **ethnology**. See Race.

**etiquette** (ët'ikët'), literally "a ticket," both words being of the same origin; the "label" of correctness, stuck on a thing or person; the art of pleasant behavior in company; **manners**. "The rules of etiquette are like the rules of grammar, a feeble attempt to make certain true principles practical."

**etymology** (ët-ĭ-möl'oji), the science of the origin of words. (Weekley's or Skeat's Etymological Dictionaries give the origin of most words in the English language.)

a **euphemism** (ū'fe-miz-m), literally "a word of good omen," a pleasant substitute for an unpleasantly accurate word, like the phrase "stretching the truth" which is a euphemism for "lying."

an **event**, an important happening; an **occurrence**, anything that happens; an **incident** of secondary importance, an interruption of the course of things; a **circumstance**, a detail that may or may not prove important; an **adventure**, taking a chance; a **conjuncture**, several events occurring at the same time, a crisis; a **result** from previous happenings; a **conclusion**, logical ending; a **sēquel**, happening which follows after some interval.

**ev'er**, at any time. **Not ever** = **never**. Note the American spelling **forever** (in one word, spelled in England in two words: **for ever**, which makes good sense in the Bible phrase "for ever and ever," whereas the American "forever and ever" is meaningless).—Adjectives: **perpet'ual**, which continues forever; **endless**, **timeless**, **everlasting**, **eternal**. Opposites: **temporary**, **ephem'eral**, **brief**.

**every** refers to each one of a group, the group idea being dominant: "Every man has to do his share of the work." **Each** refers to the individuality, the thought of the unit being dominant: "I gave each child an apple."—See **All**, **Whole**, **Either**, **Both**.

**everybody**, written in one word.

**every day**, written in two words when used as a noun phrase or as an adverbial phrase: "Every day means something," "It

happens every day." Written in one word when it is an adjective: "It is an everyday occurrence."

**everyone.** Analogy with **everybody** demands that this be written as one word (also someone, anyone), and it is so written in newspapers and by many of the best publishers, especially in England. "Everyone says it was her fault." It is, however, correctly written in two words when used in an enumeration, as a noun phrase generally followed by a number: "Every one of the twenty men present swore it was her fault."—To avoid confusion, the phrase **no one** is written in two words, unlike **nobody** in one word.

**every time**, written in two words.

**everywhere**, written in one word.

**ev'idence**, what tends to cause belief; **proof**, what causes certainty; **testimony**, what is stated by a witness; **attestation**, statement in evidence; **deposition**, official statement by one concerned, especially under oath; **document**, writing or other piece of evidence.

**evil**, adjective: bad in itself; **wickēd** in intentions; **harmful** in results; **injurious** to growth, reputation, etc.; **malev'olent**, "full of ill-will." An evil act done by a wicked person with malevolent intentions has harmful or injurious consequences.

Evil-doing .....malfeasance  
An evil-doer .....a malefactor  
Evil-looking .....ugly

**ěvölütĭon**, gradual improvement due to natural conditions. "Evolution has been described as the principle that a round stone will roll further than a flat one." A change is not always an evolution: it may be a **revolution** (move backward).

**exact** (eg-zakt'), adjective: measured out or finished with precision; **accurate**, done with great care; **precise**, well marked out; **definite**, within set limits; **del icate**, easily damaged.

to **exact** full payment of a debt; **extract** with strong pressure; **ělicĭt** a more complete explanation; **extort** against one's determined will, something not due.

to **exaggerate** (note the spelling with two g's: eg-zaj'er-ăt), literally "to heap up" or "pile on," to cause a report, etc., to appear bigger than it is, in order to produce an effect, secure sympathy, etc.; to **măgnify** a trifling event; **enhance** a reputation, one's prestige; **overdraw** a case; **overrate** a value; **overestimate** a probable number; **overdo** an action; **stretch** the truth; **amplify** a brief statement by adding details.

an **ěxăminătion**, to ascertain whether a thing is or is not so (whether a candidate has or has not acquired certain knowledge or fitness); an **inspection**, official looking into; **scrutiny**, close detailed search; **inquiry**, search for facts that have a definite bearing upon a particular problem; **inquest**, legal inquiry into a death, etc.; **inquisition**, unjust and tyrannical examination of a belief, act, etc.; **search** of a container, house, etc.;

investigation into causes of something regrettable; **research**, learned study.

an **example**, a case or object that explains; also a model; an instance, a fact that explains; a **sample** of quality; a **specimen** of a group or class.—A sample of cloth, of milk; a specimen of one's work; a specimen of a plant family; an instance of cruelty; an example (a model) of generosity.

to **exasperate**, to make one lose one's temper; to **annoy**, cause an unpleasant feeling; **irritate**, rub unpleasantly.

to **exceed** (note the spelling), to pass in quantity; to **transcend** in virtue, in understanding; to **surpass** a record; to **excel** in quality.

**exceedingly**, very much: "I am exceedingly tired"; **excessively**, too much: "I have walked excessively this week-end."

**excellent**, adjective: superior in quality; **admirable**, praiseworthy; **splendid** (a popular misuse of the word, which means "shining"); **first-class**; **prime**, selected as being first in quality; **exquisite** in its dainty perfection, its fragrance.

to **except**, take out; **accept**, take in.

**except**, preposition: but, save, not counting. A pronoun following except takes the objective case: "All except **me** had gone," "All except **him** had fled." Do not use **except** as a conjunction meaning **unless**. This was recognized in old English but is no longer so: "Unless you come, he will die" (not: except you come).

**exceptional**, unusual: "an exceptional opportunity"; **exceptionable**, objectionable: "an exceptionable statement." "He was admired for his exceptional talent, although his conduct was at times exceptionable."

an **excess**, what is too much; **superfluity**, what is over and above the necessary: "There is not a superfluous object in these trunks: we need every single article. Yet they are in excess of the allowed weight." A **superabundance**; a **plethora**, overfullness of the body; **surplus**, especially of money, goods; **overdose** of medicine; **overstock** of goods on the shelves; **glut** of produce in a market.

**excessively**, too much; **exceedingly**, very much. "The taxes are exceedingly high, but as the population is wealthy they are not excessively so."

**excitable** (note that the final e of excite is dropped before adding a suffix like -able), readily excited. (There is no word "exciteful.")

to **excite**, cause a sudden increase of feeling; **rouse**, **arouse** one who is slumbering; **move**, cause to act; **stir** a fluid mass; **stimulate** something dormant; **animate** something lifeless; **kindle** a fire; **inflame** emotions, vindictively; **provoke**, call forth the

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels  $\bar{a}$   $\bar{e}$   $\bar{i}$   $\bar{o}$   $\bar{u}$  as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my;  $\bar{a}$   $\bar{e}$   $\bar{i}$   $\bar{o}$   $\bar{u}$  as in mat, met, mit, not, nut, pity;  $\bar{a}$  as in father;  $\bar{e}$  as in merry;  $\bar{e}$  as in mercer;  $\bar{o}$  as in loud;  $\bar{u}$  as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful ( $\bar{a}$  in senate). Consonants:  $g$  always as in go;  $th$  as in thief;  $dh$  as  $th$  in mother;  $ng$  as in sing or in singer;  $ng-g$  as  $ng$  in finger. See Syllables.

- anger of; **summon** into activity; **inspire** nobly; **prompt** from the side; **impel** irresistibly, as from within.
- an **exclamation mark**, a sign of punctuation (!) familiarly called screamer. It is used (1) to indicate a sharp drop of the voice at the end of a sentence: What a pity!—I will have my own way! (2) to end a direct question, when it is really an order: Johnny! Will you be good! (3) within parentheses, to call attention to a word: John said, "He don't" (!) and he thinks he knows English.
- an **excursion**, a pleasure trip to a new place; a **trip**, going there and back, whether for business or pleasure; a **journey** of some duration; a **voyage** by sea; an **outing** for a day or half-day, especially of a fairly numerous social group; a **tour**, circular; a **ride**, **sail**, **walk**, **hike**, etc.
- to **excuse**, find good reasons for not resenting something; **pardon** formally; **forgive**, out of kindness, whether the other party knows it or not; **overlook** a mistake, a shortcoming; **remit** a penalty; **condone** an offense, by finding good reasons for overlooking it; **extenuate** the circumstances of an offense, or the offense, by finding reasons to make it look small.
- to **execute**, carry out an order; kill a person by court order; to **perform** from end to end; **fill**, **fulfill** a promise; **perpetrate** a crime, a practical joke; **enforce** a law; **effect** a junction, an accord; (in the sense of killing) to **behead**, **guillotine**, **electrocute**, etc.
- to **exercise** for quality, health, etc., spasmodically; to **practice** an art regularly, to acquire skill in it: to practice the piano, to exercise the muscles of the fingers.
- exigency**, choiceless necessity; **urgency**, necessary speed; **need**, general; **distress**, suffering; **difficulty** of accomplishment; **extremity** of the sufferers. "Owing to the exigencies of the market, it is necessary to increase production."
- to **expect**, have good reasons for thinking something will happen; **anticipate**, be ready for something that may happen; **contemplate**, vaguely intend doing something; **await** developments, be all ready for; **look forward to** an event.
- expedient**, adjective: desirable for practical reasons; an **expedient**, a makeshift, trick or device. "A doctor often finds it inexpedient to tell the whole truth."
- to **expel**, drive out an unfaithful servant, an unsuitable student; drive out the air from one's lungs, etc.; **shoot** a gun; **discharge** a load; **remove** a person from a responsible position; **evict** a delinquent tenant; **fire** (U. S.; England **sack**) an employee; **cast out**, poetic; **excommunicate** from a Church; **unfrock** a priest; **exile**, **bánish** a citizen; **deport** an alien; **transport** a convict to a pénal settlement; **ostracize** a member of Society, by refusing to deal with him; **blackball** a candidate for club membership.
- expé'rience**, acquired wisdom, knowledge, skill; **expé'riement**, attempt to find out. "To try many expé'riements is to acquire experience in the art of experimenting, but not necessarily to gain much wisdom or experience of life."

- an **expert**, one who knows after much practice of an art; a **spécialist**, one who limits himself to one branch; an **adept**, one versed in the secrets; a **master**, one who can teach others; a **technician**, one who knows the how and why; a **virtuoso**, on the violin, etc.
- to **explain** (an **explánation**; **explán'atory**), give the reasons that should make something clear, but not necessarily successfully; to **clear** satisfactorily somebody's motives, etc.; **expound** a theory; **account for** an event by knowing its causes; **elucidate**, give additional clearness to; **dem'onstrate**, show the truth or simplicity of; **prove** so as to carry conviction; **interpret** something foreign or mysterious; **elab'orate**, give additional details of; **describe** something seen or felt; **mō'tivate**, give the reasons which will make an act clear; **justifý**, show why an act was right.
- One who explains a theory.....an **expo'nent**  
 One who explains a method.....a **demonstrator**
- to **expose**, show openly; **exhibit** proudly; **disclose** something hidden; **bare** something covered.
- exposition**. In Rhetoric, the art of presenting subject matter in orderly detail, so as to answer the questions, "Why? How?" Exposition explains obscure points, prepares the reader's mind for the understanding of future action, gives emphasis to some detail that would pass unnoticed. Exposition is unemotional and appeals entirely to the intellect (unlike **description**, which may be entirely emotional). See **Description**, **Argument**; see also **Rhetoric**.
- to **express** a thought by means of suitable words; **state** it in words and with a certain emphasis; **assert** against possible contradiction; **represent**, declare as being so and so; **symbolize**, act as a token or reminder.
- ex'quisite** (note accent on first syllable), literally "picked out," perfect, choice; **accurate** reckoning; **fastidious** tastes.
- extempore** (written in one word), adverb; **impromptu**, adverb or adjective. "He was forced to make an impromptu speech." "Many people dislike speaking extempore."
- to **extend** (the **extent**, **extension**, **extensive**, **extended**), to draw to greater length, stretch; **elongate** something already long; **protract** needlessly the proceedings; to **lengthen**, **widen**, **enlarge**, etc. See **Enlarge**.—(In the sense of "become of a certain length," not followed by an object): to **reach** as far as; **run**, **continue**, **proceed**; to **branch out** in a new direction; **protrude** beyond the general outline.
- to **extract** a confession, with strong pressure and against resistance; to **exact** every bit of what is due; to **elicit** a statement from one who had previously been withholding it; **extort** something not strictly due.
- extraordinary** (written as one word; the **a** is not generally pronounced), **unusual**, **uncommon**, **remarkable**, **noteworthy**; **singular**, alone of its kind; **exceptional**, contrary to the rule.

**extrav'agance**, excessive lavishness; **prodigality**, over-free giving out of one's assets; **exuberance** of spirits; **exaggeration**, **excess**.—**Extrav'agant**, lavish, reckless, excessive, exaggerated: "Such an ordinary picture does not deserve the extravagant praise bestowed upon it."

**an eye** (i) (to **eye**, **eyeing**). Latin *oculus*; hence **oc'ular**, pertaining to the eyes: "an ocular witness," one who has seen it with his own eyes; an **oc'ulist**, a doctor who specializes in the care of the eyes; to **ogle**, to eye admiringly.—Greek *ops*, *optis*; hence **optical**, pertaining to vision, and particularly to lenses; an **optom'etr**ist, an eye-glass specialist; an **optician**, one engaged in the lens business, whether for the eye or for photography.

### Some words used on this subject

The **cor'nēā** (clear front part of the eye), **iris** (colored circle), **pūpil** (black center), **ret'ina** (nerve screen at the back of the eye), **eyelid** (which moves up and down), **eyelash** (on the eyelid, often confused with eyebrow), **eyebrow** (over the arch of the eye), **glasses** (in general), **spectacles** (with side pieces), **eye glasses** (generally without side pieces), a **mon'ocle** (one-eye glass), **bifocals** (used for either far or near vision), **far sight**, **near sight**, **astigmatism** (spoon-shaped distortion, causing lines to appear bent), **binoc'ulars** (double eye-piece in tubes, for distant vision), **field glasses** (large binoculars), **telescope** (to see the heavens, etc.), **microscope** (to see small things), **magnifying glass** (small hand device).

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels *ā ē ī ō ū ŷ* as in *mate*, *meet*, *mite*, *mote*, *mute*, *my*; *ă ă ĭ ă ŭ ŷ* as in *mat*, *met*, *mitt*, *not*, *nut*, *pity*; *ā* as in *father*; *ēr* as in *merry*; *ēr* as in *mercer*; *ou* as in *loud*; *au* as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ā* in *senate*). Consonants: *g* always as in *go*; *th* as in *thief*; *dh* as *th* in *mother*; *ng* as in *sing* or in *singer*; *ng-g* as *ng* in *finger*. See *Syllables*.



# F

**f.** Sound heard in phantom, phalanx, phase, and other words of Greek origin where it is spelled **ph** (except in fancy and a few others).

**a fable**, a story with a moral, in which people or animals act in a way that points a lesson; a **story**, told to entertain, not usually with a moral; an **apologue**, a more learned word for "fable"; an **allegory**, story or spectacle describing something without expressly naming it; a **parable**, a short story with a moral; a **narrative**, any kind of continuously told story.—Adjectives: **fabulous**, pertaining to fables, like a fable (in the older sense of the word **fable**, which was simply a fantastic story); **romantic**, as a hero or heroine of fiction; **imaginary**, not having occurred; **fictitious**, invented as for fiction.

**a face**, generally used in the sense of the full face, the side of the head on which the nose is; the **visage**, especially when speaking of the expression reflected there; the **profile** (*prō-fil* or *prōfil*), side face; **physiognomy**, general character of the face; **features**, details of the face; **forehead**, **eyebrows** (above the eye arch), **eyelids** (covering the eyes), the **eye**, nose, nostril, mouth, teeth, lips, chin, cheek, dimple; temple, ear; neck; hair, mustache, beard, whiskers; freckles, mole, scar; contour, shape; prominent, adjective.

Pertaining to the face.....facial (*fā'shul*)

Face to face.....tête-à-tête (*tāt-ā-tāt*)

A distortion of the face.....a grimace (*grī-mās'*)

For various facial expressions, see See, Shake, Hear, Speak, etc.

**fac-, fact- (fict-, -fici-, -fect)**. Latin root meaning "to do, to make." Derived forms: **facile** (*fās'il*), **factory**, **manufacture**, **fiction**, **fictitious**, **efficient**, **sufficient**, **proficient**, **ver'ify**, **affect**, **defect**, perfect. See Do.

**a fact**, literally "something done," from Latin *facio*, *factum*, to do; hence **facile**, able to do; **feasible**, which can be done; **difficult**, uneasy, etc.—An **event**, important fact; **happening**, accidental; **occurrence**, happening of some interest; **circumstance**, a detail that may or may not prove important; **actuality**, really true happening. The **truth**, absolute fact; the **dātā**, all the facts on a particular point; the **dope**, the stuff, colloquial and newspaper.

**a factor**, one of the causes, a thing that influences: "Earthquakes are a factor to be reckoned with in building construction" (i.e., construction is influenced by them); an **element**, a component part: "A Presidential election is an element of business uncertainty" (i.e., uncertainty is caused by many events, one of which is this); a **phase**, part of an order perceived by

the mind: "Revolutions are a phase of the life of every nation."

- a **fad**, temporary liking for a novelty, as described by one who does not agree with such liking; a **craze**, a fad shared by a great many people; a **whim**, single expression of unreasoned, freakish desire; the **rage**, a novelty suddenly followed by everybody; a **hobby**, a person's occupation of an entertaining nature after regular work; a **fancy**, habitual or temporary liking for a certain thing; a **mānia**, unreasonable habit.

**Fahrenheit**, abbreviated, after figures only, F.—For an explanation of the Fahrenheit and Centigrade thermometers, see Thermometer.

- to **fail**, to be unsuccessful; to **lack** something, be short of something; to **go into bankruptcy**, more serious and more official than failure; to **default** on a payment due, by being unable to make it.
- a **failure**, lack of success; **omission** of an act, non-doing, whether intentional or accidental; **negligence** of a duty imposed by law; **neglect** of a duty that should have been self-imposed; **default** on a payment, a note; **fiasco**, collapse of high expectations; **bankruptcy**, legal term; **shortage** of expected amount; **deficiency** in necessary amount, lack of sufficiency; **miscarriage** of justice; **abortion**, failure of birth; **fizzle**, colloquial.
- fair**, adjective; pretty, good-looking, beautiful, shapely, clean; clear (complexion), blonde (hair), golden, flaxen; adequate (sufficient), reasonable, medium (not excessive); mediocre (less than expected), passable (which will only just do); ordinary, poor, indifferent.
- faith**. Latin *fides*; hence **fidēlity**, faithfulness; **in'fidel**, who has not embraced the (Christian) faith or code of beliefs; **con'fident** of a result, having faith in the outcome of an event; **dif'fident**, lacking courage to advance his claims; **perfid'ious**, faith-breaking (person or country); **fidū'ciary**, a trustee; **bōna fidē**, in good faith (used as an adjective: "a bona fide contract," one entered with genuine intentions by both parties).—**Faith** is a feeling of trust which inhibits doubt; it differs from **belief** in that the latter must be preceded by doubt, belief being intellectual while faith is emotional.—Also used of an organized body of religious beliefs accepted from one generation to the next (usually then with a capital F).
- a **faker**. Note the spelling: no connection whatever with the Indian **fakir** (fākēr').
- to **fall** (Past tense, I fell; Present Perfect, I have fallen). Latin *cado*, *casum*; hence **cādence**, the rhythmic fall of the voice; **casual**, which befalls, accidental. To **drop** in a straight line; **sink** to the bottom, through a liquid; **tumble** over an obstacle; **go down** slowly; **descend**, formally and slowly; **collapse**, fall

---

Pronunciation key. Vowels *ā ē ī ō ū y* as in *mate*, *meet*, *mite*, *mote*, *mute*, *my*; *ă â ĩ ẽ ȳ* as in *mat*, *met*, *mīt*, *not*, *nūt*, *ptȳ*; *ā* as in *father*; *ēr* as in *merry*; *er* as in *mercier*; *ou* as in *loud*; *au* as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ā* in *senate*). Consonants: *g* always as in *go*; *th* as in *thief*; *dh* as *th* in *mother*; *ng* as in *sing* or in *singer*; *ng-g* as *ng* in *finger*. See Syllables.

down in a heap; **decay**, gradually wear to pieces or become obsolete.

Fallen to pieces.....disintegrated

Fallen forward with grief.....prostrate

To fall upon one, as a duty.....to devolve upon

- a **fāllacy**, an argument based on unsound prēmises; an **error**, mistake of judgment; **falsehood**, intentional; **sōphism**, subtle and learned fallacy.

**false**, adjective. Greek pseudo; hence **pseudonym**, a writer's assumed name.—**Untrue** allegation; **untruthful**, intentionally; **errōneous**, due to a mistake, whether intentional or not; **spūrious** antiques, not gēnūine; **fallācious**, based on wrong reasoning; **bōgus** nobleman, check; **counterfeit** currency; **fictitious** narrative, invented like fiction; **factitious** excitement, artificial, stimulated for a purpose.

A false appearance (disguise)....camouflage (kām'oo-flāzh)

A false item of news.....a canard (kānâr)

- to **falsify**; to **fake**, colloquial; **doctor** an account; **cook up** a story; **alter** an entry; **change** the color or complexion of a story, of an item of news; **sophisticate** a product; **adulterate** a pure product.

**fame**, deserved and widespread good name; **reputation**, good name, whether justified or not; **renown**, a literary term; **honor**, recognition; **character**, a person's real worth; **prestige** (pres-tēzh or pres'tij), cumulative reputation, especially of an institution.

- a **fam'ly**, one's **kindred**, one's **relatives**, one's **kin** or **kinsfolk**; a **dynasty**, family of reigning monarch.

The family name.....the pat'ronym'ic

Ancestral influence.....āt'avism

Over-fond of one's relatives.....clannish (adjective)

Of the same blood.....consanguin'eous

Of noble family.....patrician (adjective)

Of low caste family.....plēbēian

Family history book.....geneālogy

One's family history.....one's pēdigrēe

Those who have gone before.....one's forbears

**famous**, widely and deservedly enjoying a good name; **renowned**, vaunted far and wide (poetic); **celebrated**; **distinguished**, less well-known than famous; **well-known**, often used in newspapers of people who are totally unknown outside their own immediate sphere, to supply a necessary epithet; **noted** in a good sense; **notorious** in a bad sense; **notable** deeds; **illustrious**, generally referring to famous people of the long past.

**fancy**, a lightly held, spontaneous desire; **imāgination** (imāj'inā-shūn), the ability to create new ideas; a **notion**, particular unexplained idea, especially one that explains something; a **caprice** (kā-prēs'), sudden and unexplained wish, generally contrary to reason and apt to upset existing arrangements; a

**vision**, thing imagined as seen; a **dream** in sleep; a **chimera** (kī-mē'ra or kī-mē'ra), a wild fancy; a **hallucination**, sensation of absolute reality during waking hours; **reverie**, half-doing dream.

**far**, adverb (**farther**, **farthest**). Greek *tele*; hence **telescope**, an instrument for far vision. (See **Farther**.)

**farming**. For words used on this subject, see **Agriculture**.

**farther**, **further**. **Farther** means "more far"; **further** means "more forward." Use **farther** in a comparison of distance: "I went farther than the others." Use **further** when speaking only of efforts: "He went further and further into the investigation." "Come further!" (i.e., come more forward, come forth still more). "Don't go any further."

**fashion**, literally "the way of making," the accepted or popular temporary way of doing anything; the **mode**, French word with an idea of mood, disposition, fancy; **style** as set by those who know. See **Fad**. **Fashionable Society**, the **élite** (ē-lēt'), the **beau monde** (bō-mōngd').

**fast**, adjective and adverb (there is no form "fastly"). Literally "steadily" ("to run fast" meant originally "to run steadily" and therefore get there rapidly). **Quick**, **rapid** motion; **firm**, **strong**, **tight**, **deep** friendship; **constant** friend; **cursor** glance, study; **deep**, **turbulent** stream; **dissipated** person; **prodigal** habits.

**fastid'ious**, disposition of one who has the instinct of repulsion largely developed, and who is readily disgusted; **partic'ular**, **finicky**, **choosy** (colloquial); **dainty** (often in a sneering sense); **priggish**.

**fat**, adjective; **greasy** dish; **burly** man, big and well-fed; **stout** at the waist; **plump**, with well-filled flesh; **obese**, as a disease; **portly**, walking with dignity; **pudgy**, small and round; **corpulent**, with a heavy body, especially at the waist.

a **father**. Latin *pater*; hence **paternal**, **paternity**. A **pārent**, either father or mother; **sire** of pedigreed animals; **dad**, **daddy**, **papa**, name given by children.—Adjectives: **paternal**, **fatherly**. **Paternal** implies more severity: a paternal rebuke; **fatherly** implies more kindness: fatherly care.

Father's inheritance.....the pāt'rímōny.  
Fatherless child.....an orphan.

**fāt'uous**, adjective; silly, foolish, indicating self-satisfaction; applied to ideas, actions, and less properly to persons: "Smith conceived the fātuous notion of pronouncing his name 'Smeet.'" "Unconscious of the blunder she had just made, she smiled fātuously."

a **fault**. For synonyms, see **Defect**.

### Some words used on this subject

Offense, guilt, injustice, dishonesty, immorality, impi'ety, hypoc'risy, dissimulation, double-dealing, cheating, lying, a lie, a falsehood, a liar, deceit; pride, vanity, coquetry, a coquet or coquette, insolence, boasting, bragging, rashness; obstinacy,

stubbornness, opinionativeness, conceit; slovenliness, vulgarity, negligence, laziness; cupidity, envy, jealousy, avarice, a miser, prodigality, a spendthrift, penuriousness, parsimony, selfishness, intemperance, drunkenness, greed, gluttony; cowardice; anger, vengeance, revengefulness, vindictiveness, brutality, violence, cruelty; theft, malice, burglary, robbery, murder, treason, shame, repentance, remorse.

- a **favor**, benefit conferred without return; to **favor** in likeness, to **resemble** a parent; to **pătronize** a store, **support** an institution.
- fē. Sound heard in field, fiend, fierce, etc. See also words beginning with phe-.

**fear**, the oldest and most powerful of the emotions, arising from the instinct of **escape**, and producing, when predominant, a **timid** disposition. Latin *timeo*; hence **tĭmid**; **tĭm'orous**, fearful of danger. A **misgiving**, intuitional fear of a danger; **doubt**, the pondering over a judgment; **hesitation**, a mixture of fear and curiosity. A **scare**, sudden fear without just cause; an **alarm**, notice of danger; **anxiety**, expectation of trouble to come; **fright**, sudden; **dread** of the future; **apprehension**, doubt; **trepidation**, trembling; **dismay**, sudden and profound; **terror**, sharp and intense; **horror** of something repulsive.—Adjectives: **shy**, disliking public appearances; **tĭmid**, habitually; **tĭmorous**, of a particular peril; **pūsillānĭmous**, weak-souled; **crāven**, unmanly; **terrified**, stricken with fear; **aghast**, astonished; **intrēpid**, not shaking with fear.

Thing habitually feared.....one's *bête noire* (bāt-nwar).

Fit to be feared.....for *midable*.

A remedy that works on fear....a *deterrent*.

To cause to act through fear....to *intimidate*.

Working on one's fear of exposure ..... *blackmail*.

- a **feast** (fēst), ecclesiastical; **festival**, musical; **fête**, outdoors; **banquet**, much variety of food.
- a **feature**, prominent part or object; a **featured player**, one whose name appears after the name of the play, unlike a **star**, whose name appears before that of the play; a **feature story**, one giving great prominence to something or somebody.
- feckless**, adjective; "effectless," powerless of accomplishing its purpose. Used with ideas or conduct, also with persons as meaning "all-round incompetent": "I was disgusted with his feckless efforts to get a job."
- a **fee**, literally "cattle" or "property"; from the same root comes **feudal** (fū'dal), the name given to the system under which all property was held on condition of service to a lord. A payment for services: doctor's fee, lawyer's fee; a **payment**, in general; an **allowance**, discretionary; a **retainer**, advance fee. See *Pay*.—To own in fee or in **fee simple**, to own in **freehold**, entirely (as against leasing).
- feeble-minded**, adjective: incapable of serious or continued thought, hardly able to care for himself, and apt to be

morally irresponsible. "Feeble-mindedness is now considered a definite disease, bordering on insanity."

to **feed** (Past tense: **fed**), give something to eat to (somebody); **nourish** (nur'ish) substantially; **gorge**, overfeed; **nurture**, carefully, figurative; **graze** cattle.—In the sense of taking food: to **eat**, to **breakfast**, **lunch**, **dine**, **sup**; fare well or badly; **subsist**, barely, on vegetables, etc.; live on one kind of food or another; **board** at a place.

to **feel** (Past tense: **felt**). Latin *sentio*; hence **sentiment**, a tender or high feeling; **consensus**, the common feeling; **sensible**, in accordance with the common feeling; to **resent**, feel back.—To **feel** with the mind or any of the senses something that may or may not be there; to **perceive** what is there; **notice**, become aware of its being there; **recognize**, identify as what it is; **examine** in detail; **try** how it works; **test** as to particular achievements; **touch**, make contact with the hand or the body; **handle**, pick up and look over.

Ability to feel.....sensibility.

Excessive ability to feel.....sensitiveness.

Emotion felt.....sentiment.

Capable of great feeling.....susceptible.

Feeling of pity.....commiseration.

Easily felt or touched.....palpable, evident.

a **feeling** implies intuitional perception of a fact, which may or may not be there; a **sentiment** is a noble or more intellectual leaning toward a belief: "The meeting has expressed its sentiments on the subject of child labor without giving way to its outraged feelings"; an **emotion** is a desire in action.

-**fect**-. Sound heard in to **affect**, influence; **effect**, bring about completely; **infect**, bring disease germs.

**fem'inine**, pertaining to women. In grammar, the *fem'inine* gender is indicated either by a different word: father, mother; boy, girl; or by one of the old terminations **ess**, **ine**, **ster**: baroness, heroine, spinster; or by the use of a qualifying word: maidservant, female child, she-bear.

**fer'ocious**, cruel as a wild animal; **fierce** by nature or momentarily; **fiery**, excitable, often for good; **violent** person, inclined to sudden use of physical force; **violent** temper, given to sudden excitement; **wild**, uncontrolled; **sav'age**, cruel and uncontrolled; **furious**, very angry; **impet'uous**, acting on the spur of the moment.

**fēverish** person; **fēb'rile** condition.

**few**, not many; **a few**, a small number. See **Many**.

Couched in few words.....lăcōn'ic (message).

Inhabited by few people.....sparsely populated.

Presence of only a few.....paucity of (supplies, etc.).

**fictitious**, invented like fiction; **factitious**, artificial, stimulated. "They provoked a factitious excitement by spreading fictitious news."

**fid.** Latin root meaning "faith." Derived forms: **fidél'ity**, **in'fidel**, **fidú'ciary**, **confide**, **dif'fident**, **perfid'ious**. See Faith.  
**ferce.** See Ferocious.

- to **fight.** Past tense: **fought**. Latin *pugno* (i.e., fight with the fists); hence to **impugn** somebody's motives, attack them as unworthy; **repug'nant**, which one would like to fight, distasteful; **pugnacious**, ever ready to fight; **pugnacity**, love of fight. Greek *agon*; hence **antagonist**, an opponent; **ag'ony**, the final fight for life.—A **quarrel** in words; a **feud**, long-lasting alliance of enemies in groups; an **altercation**, heated words; a **row** (*rou*), noisy (this word should not be used in writing without an epithet, as it reads the same as the word "row," a line up); a **scrap**, short fight or snappy argument; a **brawl**, very rough; a **fray**, an affray between sections of the mob; a **combat** (*kum'bat*) between two or more; a **mêlée**, mix up; a **battle** between organized forces; a **war** between countries; a **conflict**, opposition due to difference of opinion, even leading up to war; an **encounter**, meeting of armed forces; a **duel**, organized battle between two.

Organized for fight..... **mil'itant**.

Warlike, leading to war..... **bellicose**.

Accompanied by bloodshed..... **sanguinary**.

- a **figure of speech**, a way of changing words round so as to make more intimate contact with the reader's mind. A **met'aphor**: the "leg" of a table. A **sim'ile**: "It is with words as with sunbeams: the more they are condensed, the deeper they burn." **Personification**: Nature speaks to the poet. **Antith'esis**, or contrast: "Deeds show what we are; words what we should be." **Meton'y**, or use of a sign for the thing suggested, such as a part for the whole: No hands wanted (i.e., no laborers); the pen (i.e., the writer's art) is mightier than the sword (i.e., than fighting). **Onomatopoeia** (*on'o-mat'o-pē'ya*), or the use of words whose sounds suggest the sense: babble, crackle. **Irony** (*ī'rōnī*), or the use of words to mean the opposite of their apparent meaning: "The prisoner is guilty of poverty." **Hyperbolē** (*hī-per'bo-lē*), or evident exaggeration: "Dressed to kill." **Euphemism**, or making the best of it: "Stretching the truth." **Li'to-tēs**, or use of a double negative to mean an affirmative: "A citizen of no mean city."

- to **fill.** Latin *pleo*, *pletum*; hence **complete**, entirely filled; **replete**, overfull; **expletive** (*eks'pletiv*), a filling word, especially a swear word; to **deplete**, unfill or empty out.—To **fulfill** an obligation.

**final**, intended to close the series; **last**, actually closing the series; **ul'timate**, which will be the end, after something else.—**Fi'nally**, in the end. Do not confuse with "finely," well, in a fine manner.

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels *ā ē ī ō ū* as in *mate*, *meet*, *mite*, *mote*, *mute*, *my*; *ă ă ı ă ū ı* as in *mat*, *met*, *mitt*, *not*, *nut*, *pit*; *ā* as in *father*; *ēr* as in *merry*; *er* as in *mercer*; *ou* as in *loud*; *au* as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ā* in *senate*). Consonants: *g* always as in *go*; *th* as in *thief*; *dh* as *th* in *mother*; *ng* as in *sing* or in *singer*; *ng-g* as *ng* in *finger*. See Syllables.

to **find** (Past tense: **found**). Latin *invenio*, *inventum*; hence to **invent**, find a new thing or a new way of doing things; **inventory**, that which is found to be actually there.—To **discover** what was there all the time, but not seen; to **esp̄y**, catch sight of; **descry**, discover by eye.—A treasure **trōve**.

**fin-**. Latin root meaning "end." Derived forms: **fī'nal**, **infin'ity**, **confine**, **define**, **finish**. See **End**.

**fine**, adjective; **good-looking**, **pretty**, **beautiful**, **handsome**, **nice**; **superior**, **superb**, **splendid**, **magnificent**. In the sense of small: **tiny**, **little**, **delicate**, **slender**. **Accurate** balance; a **sensitive** instrument, **subtle** argument.

**Fine** words (sarcastically).....**grandiloquent** (expressions).

a **finger**. Latin *digitus*; hence a **dīg'it**, animal's finger or toe; **dīg'ital**, pertaining to the fingers or toes. Greek *dactylos*; hence **dactylol'ogy**, deaf-mute's finger talk; **dactyl'ography**, study of fingerprints; a **dactyl'ogram**, a fingerprint; **pterodac'tyl** ("wing-finger"), a prehistoric animal with enormous wings.

to **fin'ish**, come to the normal end; to **end** abruptly or unpleasantly; **conclude** a sēriēs; **achieve** one's object through one's efforts; **accomplish** a difficult object to the end; **attain** a worth-while object; **fulfill** an expectation; **crown** a career; **complete** thoroughly; **consummate** a deed; **execute**, as planned.

a **fire**. Latin *ignis*; hence to **ignite**, set afire; **ig'neous** rocks, of volcanic origin, or showing the action of intense fire. Greek *pyr*; hence **pyrotechnics**, the science of fireworks; **pyrography**, pictures burned into wood; a **pyrom'eter**, high-temperature thermometer.—A **flame**, visible part of the fire; **blaze**, bright flame; **flash**, sudden; **flare**, sudden and very bright; **glow**, redness or whiteness from heat; **spark**, given off; **scintillation**, giving off of sparks; **incandescence**, condition of the burning material; **cinders**, red hot residue of a fire; **ashes**, grey or black residue.—**Arson** or **incen'diarism**, mal'icious fire-setting. Seething hot.....**ebullient** (adjective).

**firm**, adjective, which does not move; **strong**, well-made; **fixed** in one place; **solid**, of one piece; **steady**, not easily moved; **tight**, closely put together; **fast**, held by something; **secure**, out of danger; **stout**, brave and devoted, as a supporter; **staunch** advocate; **constant**, remaining true to the same standard; **tenacious**, holding doggedly; **brave** against perils; **courageous**, who faces peril without flinching; **determined**, not to be moved from his resolution; **obstinate**, who will not listen to reason; **stubborn**, in the habit of going his own way.

a **firm**, a business house, a company (whether incorporated or not), a corporation with limited liability; a **partnership** of individuals sharing in certain proportions both losses and profits; a **trust** for a specific purpose; an **association** for educational purposes; a **society** for common interests; a **concern**.

**first**, adjective. Latin *primus*; hence **prime**, first choice; **primary** election, one before the general election; **primordial**, first to have developed. French *premier*; hence a **première** or **premier**, first performance of a play or show. Greek *protos*;



hence the **prō'tocōl**, rules as to who goes first at court or in officialdom; **protoplasm**, the first substance from which living tissue developed.—**Earliest** in point of time; **primary** in degree; **prime** in quality; **primal** in lack of development; **pristine** (-tīn or tīn) in purity and integrity of original doctrine; **orig'inal**, as compared with later imitations; **prim'itive**, unchanged; **premier**, above all others in quality; **elementary** in difficulty; **embryonic** (em'briōn'ik), which will develop; **primordial**, first to have developed; **prior**, first in time, as compared with a later or posterior event; **preceding**, as compared with successive.

- a **fish**. Plural: **fish**, when speaking in general: "All the fish in the river were killed"; **fishes** when referring to individuals: "I caught three fishes."—Latin *piscis*; hence **pisciculture**, the breeding of fish; **piscatorial**, referring to fishing and especially angling. Greek *ichthys*; hence **ichthyology** (ik'thī-ōl'ōjī), the science of fishes; **ichthyol**, an oil with curative properties prepared from minerals containing fossil fishes.—From the first two letters of the Greek word: **i** and **ch** (one letter in Greek), which were also the initials of the two Greek words *Iesous Christos* (*Jesus Christ*), came the early Christian symbol of the fish as meaning *Jesus Christ*.

#### Some words used on this subject

Scale, bone, fin, gill; salmon, eel, pike, trout, herring, sardine, sole, turbot, brill, mackerel, skate, cod, sea bass, barracuda, whiting, mullet, yellowtail, sturgeon, tuna; shellfish, oyster, mussel, lobster, crayfish or crawfish, crab, shrimp, prawn; cuttlefish, jellyfish.—Angling, casting, fishing rod, line, string, hook, bait, sinker, net, mesh.

**fit**, adjective, like the model; **suitable** for the occasion or the person; **proper** according to other people's standards of right; **correct**, right according to those who know; **appropriate**, in good taste for the particular purpose; **becoming**, which shows the wearer to advantage; **adapted to**, made to fit; **rel'evant**, remarks, fitted to the subject under discussion.

**five**; in order, or as a fraction, **fifth**, plural **fifths**.—Written in Arabic numerals, 5, in Roman, V.—Latin *quinque*; hence **quinquennial**, occurring every five years; **quinquennium**, a five-year period. French *cinq*; hence a **cinqufoil**, a five-flower design. Greek *pente*; hence **pentagon**, a figure with five sides.

Five-fold ..... quintuple.

Five singers ..... a quintet.

Five-year period ..... quinquennium, half-decade, a luster, a lustrum.

First five books of Old Testa-

ment ..... the Pentateuch.

- to **fix**, make rigid; **fasten** so it cannot move; **steady** so it will not roll or fall over; **lock** by means of a key; **cement**; **nail**. (In the colloquial sense of repairing, adjusting, arranging, settling, paying, "to fix" is not used in England.)

**flāgrant**, adjective; literally "flaming," hence "very noticeable," notoriously bad: "a flāgrant breach of etiquette"; **gross**, serious and vulgar; **glaring** mistake, very evident; **atrocious** conduct, cruel; **outrageous**, opposed to decency; **monstrous**, unjust; **grievous** error, very serious; **scandalous**; **shameful**.

**a flame**, see Fire. **Love, ardor**; a person's flame: one's affinity, sweetheart, friend, girl, boy, etc.

**a flank** or side of an animal. Greek pleura; hence **pleurisy**, a pain in the chest, due to the inflammation of the pleura or membrane that enfolds the lungs. Figuratively, the **flank** of an army, of a troop.

**flannel**, a cotton or woolen material with a soft surface; **flannelette**; **Canton flannel** or **cotton flannel**, used for making underwear, pyjamas (pajamas), etc.

**to flap** (**flapping, flapped, flapper**), move to and fro rapidly, as a piece of cloth hung in the breeze; hence a **flap**, the loosely hanging part of a hat, coat, envelope.

**to flare** (**flaring, flared**), to burn with a sudden brilliant light; when the light hurts the eyes, it is called a **glare** (**glaring**); when it appears and disappears suddenly, it is a **flash**. See Bright, Fire.

**to flash**, appear and disappear suddenly: "a flash of lightning." See Flare, Fire, Bright.

**flat**, adjective. Latin platus; hence a **platitude**, a "flat" statement, a trite or hackneyed truth; a **plate**, flat piece of metal or porcelain; a **plateau**, flat land in the mountains; **platform**, flat raised surface.—**Lev'el** country; **plane** figure; **uniform** rates; **monotonous** voice.

**flattery**; **ādūlation**, servile; **soft soap** (slang) to appease anger; **blarney**.

**to flee** (Past tense: **fled**), to run away, leave hurriedly.

**flesh**, juicy; **muscle**, strong; **meat**, eatable; **brawn**, physical strength; (in the sense of love of material pleasures) **worldliness**, **temptation**, **evil**, **sensuousness**, **lust**; (in the sense of family: "his own flesh") **kin**, **kith**, **kindred**.

Flesh-eating .....carniv'orous.

Fleshy, fat .....ad'ipose tissue; stout person.

**flex-**. Latin root meaning "bend." Derived forms: **flexible**, **reflect**, **inflection**, **gēnūflexion**. See Bend.

**flexible**, easily bent; **pli'able**, easily worked; **pli'ant**, which bends itself easily, especially in ideas; **supple**, easy of movement; **limber**, in good shape; **lithe**, graceful; **lissom** or **lithe-some**, poetic.—"The book is bound in flexible morocco." "Leather is more pliable than wood." "I admire his supple grace." "Politicians look for more pliant supporters."

**a flock** of birds; a **covey** (kūv'ī) of partridges; a **brace** of pheasants; a **bev'y** of larks, of quail, of girls; a **swarm** of ants; a **shoal** or school of fish; a **herd** of cattle; a **pack** of hounds, wolves; a **drove** of oxen; a **crowd** of people; a **multitude** of things; a **congeries** (kon-jē'rī-ēz) of particles.

- a **flood** of water over the countryside; a **del'uge**, very heavy down-pour of great duration; a **cloudburst**, sudden and brief down-pour of great abundance; a **tidal wave** from the sea; an **inundation** of the countryside by the waters; a **débâcle**, sudden break up of the ice pack; a **torrent**, onrushing stream; a **cat'aclysm**, sudden washdown.

Pertaining to floods.....diluvial.

Before the Great Flood.....antédiluvian.

Boat used in the Great Flood.....Noah's Ark.

- to **flow** (flowing, flowed) as a liquid, smoothly; **run** rapidly; **pass** a given place; **glide** noiselessly; **pour** down from a height; **trickle** slowly through; **dribble** a few drops at a time; **drip**, one drop at a time; **gush** out in sudden quantities.

- a **flower**. Latin flor; hence **floral**, pertaining to flowers; **fluorescence**, operation of flowering; **floriculture**, flower growing; **florid** complexion. Greek anthos; hence an **anthology**, collection of (literary) flowers; also many names of flowers, as **polyanthus**, the "many-flowered"; **mesembryanthemum**, California's oceanside "midday flower"; **chrysanthemum**, the "golden flower," etc.

A flower grower.....a horticulturist.

### Some words used on this subject

**Viôlet**, primrose, cowslip, periwinkle, tulip, hyacinth, gladiolus, wallflower, lily of the valley, daffodil, forget-me-not, daisy, buttercup, mignonette (min'yo-net'), rose, pansy, cornflower, poppy, carnation, pink, lily, China aster, marguerite, nasturtium, harebell, bluebell, jasmine, honeysuckle, geranium, chrysanthemum, dahlia, rhododendron, fuchsia (fû'sha), poinsettia.

- to **fly** (Past tense: I **flew**; Present Perfect: I have **flown**). See Bird.  
**flu-**. Latin root meaning "flow, run." Derived forms: **fluent**, **fluid**, **affluent**, **flux**. See Run.

- a **fôcus**; Plural **focuses**, familiar; optical: **foci** (fô'si). From Latin word meaning "hearth" (i.e., the place where the burning rays of a lens converge). "A photographic lens of six inches focus is one which takes a sharp picture when the sensitive plate is six inches away from the optical center of the lens."—Adjective: **fôcal**: the focal length, the focal point.—Verb: to **fôcus** an image on the ground glass; to **fôcalize** the attention of the public on a single subject. (Note the spelling: **focuses**, with one s only in the middle.)

**foggy**, adjective: **cloudy**, **misty**, **dark**, **damp**, **dull**.—Do not confuse with "an old fôgy" or "fôgey," an old fossil, a person with antiquated ideas.

- to **fold**. Latin plico; hence a **rep'lica**, "thing bent back," an exact copy, like the image sent back by a mirror; to **reply**, to write back on the same subject; to **im'plicate**, "fold in" or entangle somebody in an accusation: **multiplication**, "many-folding."

to **follow**. Latin *sequor*, *secutus*; hence a **sêquence** of events, several following one another; a **sêquel** to an event, one that follows the other; **consecutive**, which follow one another without a break; to **persecute**, follow without mercy; to **prôsecute**, follow up for a crime; **pursue**, follow through; **subsequent**, coming after.—To **accompany** as a friend; **escort** for protection; **guard** from being carried away; **heel**, as a dog or a detective; **trace**, discover where one is.

One who follows in the same job.....a successor.

One who is followed in the same job.....a prêdêces'sor.

A follower of a cause.....an adhêrent.

"Following your request"....."pursuant to your wishes."

**a food**, anything eaten for sustenance; **nourishment**, utilized food; **nû'triment**, valuable food; **al'iment**, a particular item of good food; **virtuals** (vulgar; pronounced vit'lz), the coarser kinds of food; **grub** (slang); **râtion**, apportioned amount; **fare**, literary; **board**, regular meals at the same place; a **con'diment**, something eaten with food, mostly for flavor, like pepper, pickles, salt; a **rêg'imen**, system of limited food, for curative purposes; a **diet**, system of food, whether curative or habitual. (The word "eats" is a vulgarism.)

A unit of food value.....a câl'orie.

Lean meat and similar foods.....prôtêîn.

Fat foods.....hydrocarbons.

Starches and similar foods.....carbohýdrâtes.

Life-giving elements in food.....vîtâmînes.

One fond of good food.....an ep'icûre.

Science of pleasant food.....gastrôn'omy.

Fit to be eaten as food.....êd'ible, ês'culent.

**foolish**, adjective. Latin *stultus*; hence to **stultify** somebody, to make him appear foolish.—(Person) **silly**, placidly inactive; **soft**, lacking mental power; **awkward**, who does not know how; **ungainly**, not pleasant to look at; **gawky**, angular; **lanky**, too tall; **clumsy**, heavy in movement. (Action) **fât'uous** remark; **inâne**, senseless; **inept**, unsuitable; **lū'dicrous**, laughable, as a mistake; **ridic'ulous**, lacking in sense of proportion.

"Among the people who possess less than normal intelligence are the feeble-minded, or **mō'rons**, whose brain is that of a twelve-year-old child; the **im'beciles**, whose brain is about eight years old, and the **crê'tins**, who are almost incapable of human conduct."

**a foot**. Plural: **feet**.—Latin *pes*, *pedis*; hence a **ped'al**, footpiece as on a bicycle; a **biped**, two-footed animal; a **quadruped**, four-footed animal; a **ped'icel**, little foot or stalk supporting a fruit; **pê'dal**, adjective, pertaining to the foot; a **ped'estal**

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels â ã î ô û ý as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ä ö î ö û ý as in mat, met, mite, nut, pity; â as in father; êr as in merry; er as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (â in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.

for a statue. Greek *pous, podos*; hence **tripod**, a three-legged stand.—**Toes, digits** (animal's), **ankle; paw, soft; hoof, horny; cloven-footed**, with cleft foot, as an ox; **club-footed**, as a bear.

A foot surgeon.....a chirop'odist (*kī-rōp'ō-dist*).  
A footprint.....a trace, a vestige (faint trace).

**force**, exercised; **power**, ability; **vēhēmen**ce, in use; **em'phās**is, in language; **effectiveness**, achieving results.

Which leaves one no choice.....cōgent (adjective).

Which one is forced to do.....compulsory.

Which one feels compelled to do.....impēr'ative.

Making actual use of force.....forcible.

**foreign** (*fōr'īn*), adjective: **strange**, unusual; **ālien**, not assimilated; **exōt'ic** perfume, colors, tastes.

a **forgery** of a document; **counterfeiting** of money.

to **forget** (Past tense: I **forgot**; Present Perfect: I have **forgotten**).  
Latin *oblivio*; hence **obliv'ion**, state of being forgotten: "to fall into oblivion"; **obliv'ious**, apt to forget.

Who forgets easily.....absent-mīnded.

to **forgive** (Past tense: I **forgave**; Present Perfect: I have **forgiven**).  
This verb takes two direct objects without preposition: to forgive somebody something.—To **pardon** somebody for something; **excuse** somebody of something, find a good reason for him; **absolve** somebody of something.

a **form**, the more or less stable outline of a thing. Greek *plasma*; hence **prōtoplasm**, the "early form" from which living tissues are derived.—A **shape**, more or less temporary and artificial; **fig'ure**, appearance of the whole, from an esthetic viewpoint; **contour**, outline; **cast** of countenance; **style** of dress; **build** of manufactured product; **cut** of clothes; **mold**, form or habits acquired through outside pressure.

**formal**, adjective; **ceremonious** manners; **rigid** code; **stiff** rules; **precise** language; **official** act; **ceremonial** dedication; **conventional** attitude; **perfunctory**, done without interest; **set** forms; **prim** dress or hat; **punctilious** speech; **affected** tone; **bombastic** remarks, excessively high-keyed.

a **formula**, English plural: **formulas**; Latin plural: **formulæ**.—List of ingredients and their proportions; **rēcipē** for cookery; **prescription**, mēdical; **mēthod**, complete course of action; **system**, ingēnious course of action; **creed**, statement of beliefs; **confession**, of a Church.

**fort-**. Latin root meaning "strong." Derived forms: **fortress**, **for'tit**ude, **comfort**. See Strong.

a **fort**, individual works; **fortress**, city; **fortification**, the military works; **cit'adel**, stronghold; the **defenses** of a city; **ramparts**, city walls.

**forth**, adverb. Latin *pro*; hence to **proceed**, step forth; to **produce**, lead forth.—Comparative: **further**.

**four.** In Arabic numerals, 4; in Roman, IV.—Latin *quatuor*; Greek *tetra*—

One-fourth.....a quarter.  
 One-fourth of a gallon.....a quart.  
 Four-fold .....a quadruple.  
 Four singers.....a quartet.  
 Four children born together...quadruplets.  
 To do a thing four times over...to quadruplicate.  
 Figure with four equal sides....a square.  
 Four-sided figure in general....a quadrangle, a tetragon.  
 One-fourth of a circle.....the quadrant.  
 Act of squaring (mathem.)....the quadrature.  
 Every four years.....quadrennial (adjective).  
 A four-year period.....a quadrennium.  
 Four lines of poetry.....a quatrain.  
 Dance for four couples, in  
   squares.....a quadrille.  
 Person with one-fourth negro  
   blood.....a quadroon.  
 Four-handed animal (monkeys)..quadrumanous (adjective).  
 Four-footed animal.....a quadruped.  
 Diagonally across within a  
   square.....a cātercorner.  
 One of four rulers.....a tetrarch.

**fract-** (*frang-, fring-, frag-*). Latin root meaning “break.” Derived forms: *fracture*, *fraction*, *refraction*, *frāgile*, *infringe*, *irrefragable*. See *Break*.

**frater.** Latin word meaning “brother.” Derived forms: *fraternal*, *frater'nity*, *frat'ricide*. See *Brother*.

**free**, adjective. Latin *liber*; hence *liberal*, holding free views; *liberty*, political freedom; to *liberate*, free from slavery.—*Independent*, not connected with; *loose*, not fastened; *unconfined*, not kept within limits; *untrammelled*, not hindered; *unrestricted*. (In the sense of “costing nothing”): *gratuitous*.—*Exempt* from obligation; *immune* from disease; *privileged* to disregard common rules.—*Frank*, open-mannered; *outspoken* criticism; *candid* opinion.

To free from an obligation.....to exempt somebody.  
 To free from blame.....to exonerate somebody.  
 To free from an accusation.....to acquit a prisoner.  
 To free from liability.....to exculpate somebody.  
 Free from contāgion.....immune.  
 To free from bondage.....to enfranchise.  
 To free from lordly yoke.....to emancipate.  
 To free from a tangle.....to extricate.  
 To free a prisoner on a promise...to parole.  
 To free from a rule.....to except.  
 To buy somebody's freedom.....to ransom somebody.  
 To free from consequence of a  
   fault.....to redeem.  
 Freedom from punishment.....impū'nity.

Free to make its own laws.....auton´omous (country).

Free from war entanglements....neutral (country).

To free from custody.....to release.

To free from a hold.....to disengage.

To free property of debt.....to disencumber.

To free all prisoners.....to am´nesty.

**fresh**, adjective; **new**, recent; **sweet**, clean, **pure**; **green** vegetables; **new-laid** eggs; **bright** complexion; **rosy** cheeks; **blooming** health; **brilliant** color; **green** grass; **light** breeze; **strong** current. **Fresh**, in the sense of "offensive," is an American colloquialism, invariably misunderstood in other English-speaking countries.

- a **friend** (frënd), literally "a loved one." Latin *amicus*; hence **am´icable**, friendly; **am´ity**, friendship as of two nations. Greek *philos*; hence **philosopher**, a friend of wisdom.—A **chum**, originally "chamber-fellow" at a University; **comrade**, literally "room-fellow," from "camera," room, chamber; a **pal**, gipsy word meaning "brother," connected with Sanskrit *bhratr*, whence *frater* and also brother; a **partner**, who "partitions" or shares with; a **mate**, who shares the "meat" or food; a **companion**, who shares the "bread" or luck; an **ally** (alí), one tied up, or in league with; an **associate**, who keeps company with one, especially in business; a **confed´erate**, bound by the same oath; a **consort**, joined to the same fate by matrimony; an **accomplice**, one "folded in" or involved in the same plot or misdeed; a **colleague**, one "in league with," of the same working group; a **confrère**, one of the same brotherhood or fraternity, as a fellow doctor, etc.; a **coadjutor**, who "helps along," as a bishop's assistant; an **intimate**, one in the "inmost" secrets; an **acquaintance**, one known but less than a friend.

**from**, away. Latin prefixes *ab-*, *de-*, *dis-*: *abscond*, *abstract*, *deplete*, *dismiss*.—Sometimes expressed by the suffixes *-an* or *-ish*: *suburban*, *Jewish*.

- a **fruit** (Plural, when speaking in general, **fruit**, but followed by a singular verb: "The fruit is ripe," meaning that most of the individual fruits are ripe. When speaking of particular varieties, **fruits**: the fruits of labor, the fruits of the earth.)—Latin *fructus*; hence to **fructify**, bear fruit.

A fruit-grower.....an orchardist, a horticulturist.  
One whose diet is all fruit...a fruitarian.

Fruit-eating (animal).....frugiv´orous (adjective).

### Some words used on this subject

An orchard, a vine, plant, bush, tree; strawberry, raspberry, currant, gooseberry, blackberry, loganberry, grape, pear, apple, cherry, plum, apricot, peach, walnut, hazelnut, Brazil nut, filbert, chestnut, orange, lemon, olive, avocado, guava, quince, fig; deciduous, fertilized, crossed, grafted; picking, packing, grading, sorting, drying, dehydrating, canning, preserving; pie, jam, preserve, marmalade, compote, dessert; candied fruit, marrons glacés, peel, raisins.

**fruitful** efforts; **fertile** land; **productive** investment; **prolific** animal; **fecund** ideas.

Tendency to bear much fruit.....fecun'dity.

to **frus'trate**, from Latin frustra, "in vain": to render vain: "His efforts to get free were frustrated by his jailers"; to **thwart**, throw an obstacle in the way of; **foil**, lead nowhere; **balk**, cause to stumble; **outwit** through superior cunning; **circumvent**, go round; **nullify**, render void; **baffle**, lead in a false direction.

**fū**. Sound heard in fuchsia (fū'sha), few, fūtile, fūmigate, etc.

**fug-**, **fugit-**. Latin root meaning "run away, flee." Derived forms: fū'gitive, centrifūgal. See Run.

**full**, adjective, Latin plenus; hence **plen'itude**, fullness; **plenty**, a full number; **plenary**, fully effective; to **replénish**, fill again. —**Full** of, containing as much as it can hold; **repléte** with, containing more than it can reasonably hold; **overflowing** with a liquid, or figuratively; **sātisfied**, thinking he has had enough; **sāted**, knowing he has had all he can hold; **satiated** (sā'shī-ā-tēd), having even lost the desire for more; **gorged** (gorjd), fill to bursting with food; **drunk**, having had too much alcoholic drink; **stuffed**, having overindulged in a good thing, such as candy; **crammed**, filled with something pushed in, as forced knowledge; **surfeited**, feeling disgusted at having had too much; **glutted**, unable to accommodate any more, as a market glutted with fruit; **cloyed**, experiencing a feeling of loathing of what he has had. (All these adjectives, except full, are followed by the preposition with.)

In compounds, **full** is changed to **ful** (with one l) when used as a suffix: spoonful, mouthful. This makes a regular noun of the word, which takes a regular plural: two spoonfuls of cream (not: spoonSful). In American usage, **full** loses one l in fulfill, but not in fullness.

**fun** in action or speech; **humor**, appreciation of fun; **wit**, entertaining saying; **jöcularity**, humorous intention.—Adjectives: merry, amusing, entertaining, jolly, lively, delightful, pleasing, funny, laughable, comical, dull.

**fun'damen'tal**, pertaining to the foundation, or to the most important established part; **essential**, most necessary; **vital**, as important as life; **bāsic**, on which everything rests; **underlying** causes, not seen; **elementary**, which everybody should know; **cardinal** virtues, principles.

a **Fundamentalist**, a Christian who believes that the whole of the Bible is to be taken as literally true, including particularly the personal creation of Man; opposed to **Modernist**.

a **fū'neral** ceremony; **burial** (bēr'al) or **interment**, laying down in the earth; **ob'sequies**, last duties by the mourners; **sep'ulture**, formal.

### Some words used on this subject

Death; the dead person, the defunct, the corpse, the deceased, the departed; to pass on; mortal remains; shroud; coffin, casket, receptacle, bier; undertaker, mortician, hearse,



catafalque (kăt'ă-fălk, scaffolding to hold the casket at a solemn funeral), cinerary urn (sîn'erari, for the ashes after cremation); the grave, tomb (tōöm), a vault; a mon'ument, a memorial, a shrine, a cên'otăph (for a person buried elsewhere); cem'etery, burial (bēr'ial) ground, churchyard (England), memorial park (U. S.), mor'tuary, mau'solē'um, cremato'rium; mourning, the mourners, the pall-bearers; to inter, bury (bēri), lay in, entomb; to embalm (em-bām'); a eulogy (ū'lojĭ, speech in praise of); a panegyric (pan'e-jĭr'ik, public praise).

**fur**, the skin and wool after treatment; **pelt** before treatment; **skin**, often without the wool.—Er'mine (white), squirrel (gray), seal (brown-black), sable (black), kolinsky (red-dish), skunk (dyed black), silver fox (gray-white).

**fūrious**. See Ferocious.

**further**, "more forward," "more forth"; **farther**, more far. "Go farther from here, or come further forward."—**Further** is used as a transition word in an argument: "It has already been shown that the prisoner left home at six. Further, we have evidence of his being seen in the company of B. at 6.15."

**furthermore**, written in one word.

**fus-**. Latin root meaning "to pour." Derived forms: fū'sion, confusion, diffuse, confound.

**fūture** (fū'cher), the time after the present. The simple future tense of a verb is expressed in English by **shall** in the first person, and **will** in the other persons: I shall see, thou wilt see, he will see, she will see, it will see; we shall see, you will see, they will see.

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels ä ē ĭ ō ū ŷ as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ä ē ĭ ō ū ŷ as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; ä as in father; ēr as in merry; er as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ä in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.

# G

**g.** The written letter **g** represents several sounds, which it is very important to differentiate, as many spellings depend upon it.

(1) soft **g** (sound of **j**) **before vowels e, i, y:** gentle, gin, gyrate. (Except in a few old words: get, give, gilt, etc.)

(2) hard **g** (sound of **g**) **before vowels a, o, u:** gap, got, gun.

(3) in the group **-ng**, sometimes a simple sound which we represent by **-ng**, although it is one sound: sing, wrong; sometimes two sounds, which we represent by **-ng-g:** finger (fing-ger), longer (long-ger). (See article in this book on Syllables, Word Division in Writing.)

Therefore, if a syllable ends in **-ge** (manage, change), and a suffix is added which begins with a vowel, the **-e** will be kept if the suffix begins with **a, o, u;** manageable, changeable; but it will be dropped if the suffix begins with **e, i, or y:** changing, managing (not manageing).

Normal pronunciation of **G** syllables:

ga.....ga as in garden

ge.....je as in gem

gi.....ji as in gin

go.....go as in got

gu.....gu as in gun

gy.....ji as in gyroscope

Garden, gem, gin, got, gun, gyroscope.

**to gain** a worth-while end; **earn** a living by labor; **win** against obstacles; **acquire** by gradual purchase or trading; **secure** something uncertain; **procure** for somebody something which necessitates various steps, as a difficult permission; **carry** a point in debate; **score** a victory; **reap** a harvest; **get** by unspecified means; **gather** fruit; **profit** by experience, by something done; **benefit** under an arrangement, a will.

**gait**, step, way of walking; see **Walk**. Do not confuse with a **gate**, opening in a wall, etc.

**gallant**. Two pronunciations with two meanings: **gal'lant**, noble, brave, grand in appearance: "a gal'lant soldier," "With its decorations, the ship presented a gal'lant appearance." **Gallant'** (accent on last syllable, the French way), attentive to the ladies: "He played the gallant' with all the girls and made himself a general favorite at social gatherings."

**gambling**, wagering (two syllables). Do not confuse with **gamboling**, frisking as a child, a horse, a lamb (three syllables).

**a game**, amusement with regular rules in which two or more participate; **sport**, one of the major organized amusements; **pastime**, anything done by a person alone or in company to while away the time; **diversion**, change from routine of work; **hobby**, one's usual favorite work, done outside of work hours; **avocation**, one's second-choice profession, done without other reward than the satisfaction derived from it.

**Some words used on this subject**

Children's games: leap frog, hopscotch, tug-of-war, jacks, marbles, tiddlywinks. Ball games: baseball, football, soccer (sok'er), rugby, cricket, lacrosse (lä-krös'), hockey, polo, tennis, golf, bagatelle, battledore and shuttlecock, billiards, pool, croquet (krō-kā'), bowling (bō'ling), pingpong. Indoor games and card games: pinochle (pē'nok-l), bridge, auction, eucher (ū'ker), poker, cassino (kā-sē'no), snap, patience, baccarat, écarté, whist, cribbage, solitaire (sol'i-tēr), mah jong, dominoes, chess, checkers (England: draughts), roulette (roo-let'). See Sport.

**game, big game, ven'ison** (deer flesh).

**Some words used on this subject**

Hare, rabbit, stag, deer (plural: deer), doe, fawn, roe, fox, wild boar, wolf, squirrel, hedgehog, bear, lion, tiger, moose, lynx, wild cat, caribou, elk, ferret; hunting, huntsman, gamekeeper, poacher, preserve, deer forest, swamps, stalking, track, trail, gunpowder, buckshot, small shot, bullet, cartridge, game bag, horn, French horn.

**gardening, hor'ticulture, flōriculture.**

**Some words used on this subject**

To plant, dig, rake, weed, transplant, cut off, pull up, gather, clean, pick, scrape, shell; a bed, hotbed, bell-glass, spade, shovel, fork, mattock, trowel, rake, fence; a nursery, a hothouse.

- a garment**, any article of clothing, but not applied to hats and shoes; **clothes** (klōdhs) worn for covering; **apparel** worn for effect; **attire**, elegant outer clothing; **garb** of a particular trade or profession, as a surgeon's garb; **costume**, mostly theatrical; **vestment**, ecclesiastical; **suit**, several matching garments worn to complete one another; **coat**, outer garment; **vest** or **waistcoat**, without sleeves; **trousers**, divided leg garment; **pants** (vulgar); **knickerbockers** or **knickers**; **plus-fours** (long, baggy knickerbockers); **shorts**, straight trousers cut above the knee; **breeches**, riding, etc., fastened closely below the knee; **overcoat**, for winter wear; **raincoat**; **sweater**, woolen or silk upper garment with or without sleeves; **dress**, generally used of women's clothes except when speaking of man's "evening dress" or "full dress"; **blouse**, **waist** (Americanism for bodice), **skirt**, **petticoat**; **underwear**, **undergarments**, **shirt** (man's), **chemise** (woman's), **stockings**, **socks**, **golf hose**, **BVD's**, **union suit**, **knickers**, **bloomers**; **envelope chemise**, **teddy bear**, **costume slip**; **nightshirt**, man's; **nightdress**, **nightgown**, **robe**, woman's; **sleepies**, colloquial; **pyjamas** or **pa-jamas** (pī-jā-māz), a **kimōno**, **dressing gown**, **bath robe**, **négligée**; an outfit, a baby's **layette** (complete outfit), a bride's **trousseau** (trōō-sō').

**gas**, plural **gases**; adjective **gās'eous**; **gassing**, **gassed** in the War. **gasoline** (gas'o-lēn). According to chemical nomenclature, a

better spelling would be **gasolene**. Called in England **pet'rol**, in Australia **benzine** (ben-zēn), in U. S. **gas**.

to **gasp**, to open the mouth wide in surprise, and catch the breath; to **pant**, breathe fast, from either fear or quick action; **gāpe** at somebody, with mouth open in wonder, without any element of suddenness.

a **gate**, large doorway or passageway; a **portal** (poetic); **porte cochère**, hanging roof over driveway.—Do not confuse with the **gait** of a person walking, his appearance as he walks.

to **gather** (pronounced with short ā, not like fāther), bring together indiscriminately; **collect** selectively; **amass** in order to have much; **accumulate** in the course of time; **pile up**, colloquial; **store up** against future want; **hoard** through dislike of parting with it; **aggregate**, amount to a large number; **compile**, collect into a book; **collate**, gather and compare facts for a definite purpose.

a **gāthering**, spontaneous; **meeting** by appointment; **assembly** for a purpose; **congregation** in church; **convention** of specialists; **mobilization** of soldiers; **accumulation** of things; **body**, elected; **group**, small gathering for a purpose; **council** in charge; **congress** elected to make laws for a particular trade or country; **parliament**, lawmaking body. See **Crowd**.

**gay**, adjective; **merry**, **jolly**, **lively**, **mirthful**; **festive** event; **sportive** occasion; **convivial** company; **hilarious**, remarks provoking laughter.—Noun: **gayety** or **gaiety** (gā'ēti). Adverb **gayly** or **gaily**.

to **gaze** in wonderment at something; **stare**, look hard; **behold** something worth while; **glare** with hostility.

**gě**. Sound heard in guest, guess.

a **gem** (jěm), precious stone; **jewel**, set and ready to wear; **solitaire**, single stone; **necklace**, round; **lavalliere** (lāv'ā-lī-ēr'), chain with single pendant; **tiara** (tē-ā'rā or tī-ā'rā), headpiece; **dī'adem**, headband; **crown**, king's; **coronet**, nobleman's.

See list of gems under **Stones**.

**gen-, genit-**. Latin root meaning "to beget." Derived forms: **gēn'tive**, **gēn'tal**; (indirectly) **gender**, **engender**, **gēneral** ("of the same class"), **genteel**, **gentle**, **Gentile** (of non-Hebrew race). See **Breed**.

**gender**, the grammatical sex of a word. There are three genders: **masculine**, **fēm'inine**, and **neuter**. "He, man, boy," are masculine; "she, woman, girl" are feminine; "it, table, paper" are neuter. A word that may be used without change for either masculine or feminine is said to be of **common gender**: mouse, fly, cat, child, person.

English is said to have **natural gender**, i.e., every inanimate object is neuter instead of being given a **grammatical gender** as in all other languages. For example, a table in French is feminine; in German, masculine. This constitutes the greatest single advantage of the English language over all others, making it easier to acquire and qualifying it as no other lan-

guage has ever been qualified for the position of the world's universal tongue.

Gender in English, when necessary, is indicated by a modification of the masculine word: hero, heroine; tiger, tigress; or by an entirely different word: man, woman; boy, girl; bull, cow; steer, heifer; or by prefixing a pronoun: a he-goat, a she-goat.

The sun is often personified as **he**; individual engines, ships, automobiles, etc., are personified and referred to as **she**: "She is running well today" (i.e., this, my car, is running well).

**generous**, literally "of high birth," as "genteel" or "gentle" meant "of a good social stratum," from Latin gens, gentis, race; hence noble-minded, unselfish; **māgnan'itous**, great-souled, forgiving; **open-handed**; **kind-hearted**; **bountiful**, giving freely; **benev'olent**, willing to overlook faults; **plentiful** supply, **abundant** resources.

**gē'nial**, favorable, pleasant, acceptable, agreeable: "a genial disposition."

**a gē'nius**, a person of unusual ability, plural **gē'niuses**; when used in the sense of "tutelary spirit," as synonymous with **genie** (jē'nī), the plural is **gē'nī**.—Genius is more than talent. It is superlative, divine, noticeable from early years. Talent is largely acquired and always specific: "A man of genius," "A talent for music." Only a specialist can appreciate talent; genius commands universal admiration and instant recognition. "Genius is one-tenth inspiration and nine-tenths perspiration" (a saying ascribed to Thomas Edison).

**gentle** person, breeze, words; **mild**, lacking in force (this word is not applied by itself to persons, but only to emotions, wind, protests, etc.); **kind**; **easy**; **amē'nable** to reason; **amiable** disposition; **affable** in his way of greeting strangers; **meek**, modest and submissive; "**meek and mild**."

**gen'uine** (jē'nū-in with short i, like mas'culine, fem'inine, vī'tamine); **authentic** report, statement; **bōnā fidē**, made in good faith; **real**, **sincere**, **candid**, **honest**, **frank**.—Opposites: **false**; **apoc'ryphal** writings; **pseudo** (sū'dō), **bōgūs**, **fake**.

**geog'raphy** (jē-ōg'rafi), the study of the earth's surface.

### Some words used on this subject

To discover, explore, determine, adjoin, lie, North Pole, South Pole, equator, merid'ian, tropic, par'allel, longitude, latitude, degree, region, country, frontier, limit, province, county, shire, town, place, population, inhabitants, situation, direction. Map, chart, atlas.—Up North, down South, out West, back East.—World, globe, hemisphere, land, water, sea, ocean, coast, continent, plain, hill, valley, mountain, height, promontory, cape, gulf, bay, straits, channel, isthmus, island, isle, peninsula, top, side, range of mountains, table-land, precipice, rock, glacier, peak, volcano, desert, earthquake, cliff, shore, beach.

**gēōm'etry**, the science of measurements in space.

**Some words used on this subject**

Space, point, line, plane, extent, area, figure, angle, right angle, side, base, height, diagon'al, circle, circum'ference, arc, diam'eter, rā'dius, segment, sector, center, triangle, square, trapē'zium, pol'ygon, the'orem, demonstration, problem, solution, result, proof, cor'ollary, h'ypōth'esis, ax'iom, definition, simple, compound, divisible, indivisible, double, straight, curved, parallel, perpendicular, at right angles, vertical, horizontal, oblique, rectilinear, right-angled, obtuse, acute, round, square, cubic, oblong, regular, irregular, equal, unequal.

**germ**, in general; **bactērium** (plural **bacteria**), vegetable micro-organism; **bacillus**, a special genus of bacteria; **seed** of a plant; **embryo** of an idea; **bug** (popular misnomer).

Germ-destroying .....an'tiseptic, germicidal  
Germ-free .....aseptic  
Not affected by germs.....immune (to disease)

**gest-**. Latin root meaning "carry, bear." Derived forms: **gesture** (jes'tūr), **gesticulate**, **digest**, **congestion**, **belligerent**. See Carry.

**gesture** (jes'tūr), movement of the hand, generally spontaneous; **pantomime**, play carried out in gestures; **dumb show**. "With a threatening gesture, he motioned him to be quiet."

To call somebody by gesture.....to beckon to somebody  
Ready to act at the slightest gesture..at the beck and call of somebody

Deafmutes' gestures .....the sign language

**to get** (Past tense **got**. The form **gotten** is archaic, out of date.) To become possessed of, by unspecified means; **obtain** by indirect means; **procure** for somebody else; **secure** something uncertain; **gain** through effort; **win** against obstacles; **earn** a living, etc., by labor; **acquire** by gradual purchase or trading; **gather** fruit; **score** a victory; **achieve** something worth while; **attain** an end. (In special senses) to **take**, **borrow**, **steal**, **glean**, **learn**, **catch**, **snatch**, **hire**, **rent**, **elicit** an answer, **coax** something out of somebody, **wheedle** something out of somebody.

In addition to its proper meaning, to **get** is used as a kind of auxiliary verb, forming with prepositions a two-word verb equivalent to a one-word form, which takes the sense of the preposition:

To get about.....to walk, ride, drive  
To get across.....to succeed, turn out, cross, traverse  
To get after.....seek, search  
To get along.....prosper, succeed  
To get at.....to reach, find, discover, attain, achieve  
To get away.....to leave, start, depart

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels *ā ē ī ō ū y* as in *mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my*; *ă ă ı ă ū ı* as in *mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity*; *ā* as in *father*; *ēr* as in *merry*; *er* as in *mercer*; *ou* as in *loud*; *au* as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ā* in *senate*). Consonants: *g* always as in *go*; *th* as in *thief*; *dh* as *th* in *mother*; *ng* as in *sing* or in *singer*; *ng-g* as *ng* in *finger*. See Syllables.

To get behind.....to push, drive, endorse, recognize, back  
 To get down.....to fall, drop, slide, dismount, descend  
 To get in.....to enter, penetrate  
 To get off.....to dismount, drop, go, stop, cease  
 To get on.....to succeed, prosper  
 To get out.....to depart, exit, leave, go  
 To get over.....to surmount, overcome, pass, surpass  
 To get near.....to approach  
 To get through.....to penetrate, enter, surmount, overcome,  
 defeat  
 To get up.....to rise, arise, mount, recover, ascend

This two-word form is strictly in accord with the modern analytical tendency of the English language, and acts as a great simplification for plain and direct expression.

Possible to get at.....	attainable
Easy to get at.....	accessible
Which gets results.....	effective
Person who gets something.....	the recipient of

The past tense **got** is used in the sense of "have": I have got, as the verb "have" tends more and more, in English as in all other languages, to lose its sense of possession and to become a simple auxiliary.

**ghost** (gōst). The **h** is not sounded, as it was only added under the impression that such a mysterious word needed the mysterious breathing of an **h** to produce its effect. The same applies to the spelling **aghast**, originally written **agast**; but it does not apply to **ghoul**, a grave robber, in which the **gh** is derived from an Arabic guttural.—An **apparition**, a **phantom** (fan'tom), a **spirit**, a **spook** (colloquial).

**To give up the ghost....to die**  
**The Holy Ghost.....the Holy Spirit, the Comforter, the**  
**Advocate, the Paraclete, the Third**  
**Person of the Trinity**

- a **gi'ant**, feminine **gi-antess**, a person of great stature, as the result of defective working of the thyroid gland; a **colos'sus**, towering among others, broad as well as tall, a term of admiration; a **Goli'ath**, a **Her'cules**.—Adjective: **gigan'tic**.  
Opposite: **dwarf**, with short body and large head; **midget**, well-proportioned but tiny adult.
- a **gift**, a present in a spirit of generosity; a **dōnā'tion** to a fund for a specific purpose; a **prize** awarded in competition; a **bōnus** to an employee, as additional pay; **bounty**, giving out of one's goodness; a **gratu'ity**, a tip; a **sub'sidy**, to assist insufficient funds: "A Government subsidy to help build up a merchant marine"; a **subvention** given by a Government, etc., to a good work; an **offering**; **largesse**, literary; a **rec'ompense**, reward for loyalty, etc.; an **at'tribute**, property of being so and so.
- a **girl**, female person of any age from birth until she is no longer young in the speaker's opinion; a **child**, young only, generally under 14; a **maid**, **maiden**, poetic; a **lass**, Scotch; a

**damsel**, older than a child, with an idea of aloofness; a **young woman**.

In writing, girls are addressed as **Miss** followed by the name: "Miss Jones" or "Miss Mary Jones"; in speech, they are addressed by their equals as **Miss** followed by the name, "Miss Jones," and by servants as **Miss** without the name, or **Miss** followed only by the first name, "Miss Mary."

**to give** (Past tense: Yesterday, I **gave**; Present Perfect: I have always **given**).—Latin *do*, *datum*, hence *dāta*, the facts given or known in a certain case. Greek *dosis*, hence **dose**, the amount of medicine to be given at a certain time; **antidote**, the medicine given against a poison.

The verb "to give" takes two apparent objects, the recipient's name being placed first: "Give the dog his bone," "To give somebody something." The phrase "give me some money" is more correct than "give some money to me," because it places the recipient's name first, and because "me" was originally the dative form, meaning "to me." The other construction, "Give some money to me," would mean "Do not give it to someone else."

To **presēnt** formally; **bequeath** by will; **dōnāte** (U. S.), give to a fund, a charity; **contrib'ute** to a charity; **confer** an honor; **lend** temporarily (the form "to loan" is not good English).

To give away.....to distrib'ute (something among), scatter (haphazard)

To give back.....to restitute (something to somebody), return; to requite (somebody for something)

To give in.....to surrender, to submit

To give off.....to ēmit (a sound)

To give out.....to announce (a policy), promul'gate (a law); to cease

To give up.....to abandon (as hopeless), abdicate (a throne), renounce (a claim), leave (in a place), waive (a privilege), surrender (a fort), relinquish (a command, with regret), forgo (better spelling than forego; something already available); to concede (a right to somebody), to abjure (a heresy), to forswear (something to which one was devoted), retract (a false statement), recant (disavow openly something formerly proudly stated), repūdiāte (disown), resign (a position); sacrifice (for noble motives); to capitulate (before stronger forces); to apostatize (abandon one's religion, as viewed by those who keep theirs)

Given to drink.....addicted to drink

To give a reason.....to ascribe (a motive)

Given off (fumes)....ēm'anating (fumes, ideas, etc.)



**glad** of something having happened; **happy** within himself; **content** with what he has; **joyful** for a particular reason.

**a gland**, an organ of secretion.

Fluid from the glands.....secretions, endocrines

Gland science.....endocrinology

**a glassful** (plural **glassfuls**), about half a pint, or 235 cc.—A wine-glassful equals four tablespoonfuls, or 59 cc.

**to glimmer, glitter**, etc. See **Bright**.

**gloomy**, adjective: **cheerless, dreary, dark, depressing**; **morbid, diseased**; **desolate**, where one feels lonesome; **austere attitude**.

**to glow** as a warm, still, weak light; **to gleam** intermittently; **glitter** strikingly; **glisten** as a wet surface; **glare** so that it hurts the eyes; **flare**, appear suddenly and very brightly; **flicker**, intermittently, like a dying light; **flash** like lightning or powder; **twinkle**, like a star; **shine** brightly.

**gō**. Sound heard in goat, ghost, to goad, goal.

**to go** (Past tense **went**: "Yesterday I **went**"; Past participle **gone**: "He has **gone** away"). See also **Going**. Latin **vado, vasum**; hence to **pervade**, go right through; **invasion**, going into an enemy's country.—Latin **cedo, cessum**; hence **proceed, recede, intercede, accessory, concession**. Latin **eo, itum**; hence **exit**, the way out; **initial**, the first letter of a word.

To go about.....proceed with; walk, ride, travel

To go across.....traverse, cross

To go after.....seek, look for, strive for

To go against.....oppose

To go along with....escort, accompany, support, convoy

To go before.....precede

To go between.....intervene (for peace), interfere (unbidden)

To go down.....fall, drop, fail

To go for.....seek; (colloquial) blame somebody

To go in.....enter, penetrate, pervade

To go near.....approach

To go off.....(person) leave, start, depart; (gun) fire, strike, shoot

To go over.....(event) succeed, please; (person) cross; (go over books, etc.) examine, scrutinize, investigate

To go round.....circumvent an obstacle

To go through.....penetrate; pass

To go to.....reach, arrive at

To go up.....mount (a horse), ascend (a mountain), climb, scale, conquer

To go with.....accompany, escort

To go without.....dispense with

Permission to go.....a leave, congé (kong-zhā')

**God**. Latin **Deus**; hence the **Dēity**. Greek **theos**; hence **theol'ogy**.

The **De'ity**, **Jehovah** or **Jahveh** (Hebrew), **Allah** (Moslem), the **Trinity** (Christian).—Adjective: **divine**.

If God is willing. . . . . D. V. (Deo volente).

**gods and goddesses of Olympus**.—The principal gods and goddesses known to the ancient Mediterranean world were:—**Zeus**, **Jove**, **Jüpiter**. (The name means "Shining One" and is related to L. dies, "day," period of sunshine; to L. deus, divus, modern French Dieu, English divine; Sanskrit Dyaus-Pitar, i.e., "God the father" is the origin of Ju-piter. The Northern Jove was called Thor, god of thunder; hence our Thurs-day, equivalent to the Jove-day or jaudi of the Latins.)

**Juno** (Hera or Here; Mrs. Jupiter), goddess of the atmosphere and of marriage, and noted for her jealousy.

**Minerva** (Pallas or Athene), goddess of wisdom.

**Apollo** (Phœbus or Sol), god of the sun, of medicine, music, poetry and the fine arts.

**Diana** (dī-ān'a) (Cynthia or Phœbe or Selene or Artemis), goddess of the moon and the chase.

**Venus** (Aphrodītē, Cytherea), goddess of beauty, love, marriage and laughter. (The Northern Venus was Frig, hence Friday, corresponding to Venus-day or vendredi of the Latins.)

**Mercury** (Hermes), messenger of the gods; god of eloquence, commerce and travel. (The Northern Woden, whence Wednesday or Woden's-day, corresponding to Mercury's day or mercredi.)

**Mars**, god of war. (The Northern Tiw, hence Tiw's day or Tuesday, equivalent to the Latin Mars-day or mardi.)

**Vulcan**, god of fire and of the forge.

**Neptune** (Poseidon), god of the ocean.

**Pluto** (Hades), god of the infernal regions.

**Bacchus** (Dionysius), god of wine.

**Ceres**, goddess of agriculture.

**Proserpina** or **Proserpine** (-pēn), goddess of vegetation.

**Vesta** or **Hestia**, goddess of fire and of the family hearth.

**going**. This word is used in phrases like "we are going" to mean that one is making ready, intending or expecting to do a thing. "We are going to build a house." In formal writing, drop the word **going**: "Mr. Jones is to build a house."—Do not use **going** with **to go**, even in conversation, as in "We are going to go to the Joneses." Say "We are about to go."

**göld**. Latin aurum; hence **aurif'orous**, gold-bearing; **au'reole**, a golden crown; **auric**, pertaining to gold. Greek chrysos; hence **chrysan'themum**, the golden flower; **Chrysostomē**, the saint with the "golden mouth," a great orator. French or; hence **or'molu**, "ground gold," brass molded in imitation of gold, as in an "ormolu clock."

**göö**. Sound heard in goulash, ghoul.

**gööd** (better, best; adverb: **well, better, best**).—Latin bonus; hence **bounty**, a gift out of one's goodness; **bonny**, good-natured.—Latin bene, well; hence **benev'olent**, full of good will; **benefit**, a "well-doing."—Greek eu; hence **eulogy**, a

"well-speaking," speech in praise of somebody.—(Person) **kind**, in intentions; **merciful** toward his enemies; **compassionate** of the suffering; **charitable** toward all; **gracious**, giving pleasantly; **sympathetic** with those who are in trouble; **noble**, not lowering himself to petty passions; **august** as a king; **ven'erable** in old age. (Thing or act) **ben'efic'ial**, conferring much useful service; **val'id**, which may be used legitimately; **sal'utary**, which has a healthful effect, as a measure; **salu'brious** climate; **standard**, recognized as usual; **plausible** argument, which sounds better than it really is.

### Some words used on this subject

Virtuous, honorable, respectable, moral, worthy, innocent, pious, prudent, discreet, punctual, r'egular, clean, neat, pr'ovident, thoughtful, faithful, constant, honest, trustworthy, upright, straightforward, sinc're, candid, m'odest, humble, truthful, active, persevering, m'oderate, thrifty, gentle, just, grateful, p'olite, kind, obliging, p'atient, t'olerant, ind'ulgent, s'ecretive, cautious.

**good-looking**. A legitimate word, used by good writers and better formed than "nicely appearing," which disregards both grammar and usage.

**Handsome** man; **comely** girl; **fair** maiden; **pretty** damsel; **graceful** young woman; **elegant** lady; **lovely** matron; **smart** fellow; **attractive** child; **fascinating** companion; **charming** hostess.

to **gossip**. (This word and all its synonyms are imitative of the sounds produced.) To talk rapidly, G, with a touch of meanness, SS, with thin lips, i, and quietly, P, of your neighbors' affairs.—To **tattle** sharply, unkindly, TT, like a village gossip; to **blather**, say Bla, Bla, talk in affected politeness, smoothly; note the softness of the sound THer; to **babble** like a baby, Ba, Ba, gloo, gloo; to **cackle** like a hen, kluk, kluk; to **gabble** aggressively, like a Goose, G; to **chat** rapidly, and with little noise; often seriously and intelligently; to **chatter**, rapidly, senselessly, but with little noise; to **jabber** more noisily, like a crowd of "foreigners"; to **prate** about something (talk PRoudly of); to **prattle**, talk with innocent, PRetty PRide, like a child, artlessly.

**grace**, beauty of form and bearing; in Theology, God's influence on the heart; **charm** of personality, ability to keep others interested in one's person through a gentle, pervading influence; **fascination**, strong attraction; **spell**, irresistible attraction; **enchantment**, very great delight; **beauty**, **harmony**.

**graceful**, adjective; pleasing by its beauty of form: "a graceful figure"; **gracious**, kind and bestowing favors: "The King has graciously consented to inaugurate the new museum"; **gratifying**, which causes satisfaction: "a gratifying increase of business."

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels æ ē ī ō ā ū as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ă ē ī ō ā ū as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; ă as in father; ēr as in merry; er as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in laud. Tonic accent (ˈ) after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ă in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.

**grad-** (-gress). Latin root meaning "step." Derived forms: **grádu'al**, **grádu'ate**, **degrade**, **grade**, **prógress**, **congress**.

- a **grade** or "step"; **degree** which a thing has reached in its progress; **grádi'ent**, slope.—Adjective: **grádu'al**, proceeding step by step.

**graft** in office (an Americanism. In England usually: **bribery** and **corruption**). To **graft**; to **pecúlate**, from same root as **pecú'niary**, impecúnious.

**-gram**. A Greek suffix meaning writing, as in: **telegram**, "thing written from afar"; **program** or **programme**, "thing written before," **photogram**, a photograph. To avoid much confusion, it has been proposed to standardize usage as follows: **-gram**, the product: **telegram**, **photogram**, **phonogram** (a phono record), **geogram** (a geography book or map); **-graph**, the instrument: **telegraph**, **phonograph**, **photograph** (this would then mean "the camera"); **-grapher**, the operator: **telegrapher**, **photographer**, **geographer**, etc.; **-graphy**, the art: **telegraphy**, **photography**, **phonography**, **geography**. This would necessitate a few minor changes in daily language, such as chemical nomenclature has enforced in its own field.

- a **gram** or **gramme**, the small weight unit of the metric system, equivalent to about one twenty-eighth part of an ounce avoirdupois. See **Metric**.

**grammar**. The science of understandable speech, including the forms and inflections of words, and the arrangement of words into sentences. The rules of Grammar are not absolute; they merely record observed usage, and are subject to constant change as usage varies from one generation to the next.

Pertaining to Grammar.....grammá'tical  
One versed in correctness of speech.....a grammá'rian

See **Speech**, **Rhetoric**, **Dictionary**, **Alphabet**, **Syllable**, **Noun**, **Pronoun**, **Verb**, **Adjective**, **Adverb**, **Preposition**, **Conjunction**, etc.

**grand**, adjective; **imposing**, **great**, **noble**, **majestic**, **grandiose**.—**Grandeur**, greatness of appearance; a **grandee** of Spain, a nobleman.

- to **grant** a favor in answer to a request; **bestow** a valuable privilege; **concede** a minor point or a favor which will not impair one's own principal object; **accede** to a request; **admit** the truth of a statement, not necessarily implying that it proves what it purports to prove; **bequeath** part of one's estate, by will; **impart** a piece of information; **deliver** something which one has in one's possession; **transfer** property from one owner to another.

- a **grape**, the fruit of the grapevine in general; used in the plural, **grapes**, when speaking of the group of berries on one stalk served on the table. The juice of the **grape**, wine, whether fermented or not.

**graph**. See **Gram**.

**graphol'ogy**, the art of character reading through handwriting.

**grati-**. Latin root meaning "thank." Derived forms: **grāt'itude**, **grāt'ifying**, **congrat'ulate**, **grace**, **disgrace**, **grā'cious**. See **Thank**.

**grāt'is**, free of charge. Pronounced like "grace." The occasionally heard mispronunciation grāt'is is due (like dāta and apparātus) to a misunderstanding of the Latin pronunciation grāt'is, with ā as in father. Anglicized long a from Latin becomes ā in sound.

**great**, adjective; having size and importance. Latin magnus; hence **mag'nitude**, greatness (in extent); **magnan'imous**, great-hearted, forgiving; **magnificent**, producing a great effect; to **mag'nify**, cause to appear larger. Greek megas, megalos; hence **megaphone**, an appliance for carrying the voice farther; **meg'alith'ic**, made with very large stones; **mēg'alōmā'nīā**, a form of insanity in which the patient thinks he is a famous personage; and many scientific words. **Big**, large in size but not necessarily important or dignified; **tall**, in height only; **broad**, in width; **long**, having much extension in a straight line; **enor'mous**, excessively big; **colos'sal**, towering nobly. See **Enlarge**.

**greed**, habitual and active desire to possess; **avid'ity**, eagerness for achievement; **cupid'ity** for ownership; **av'arice** for money; **cov'etousness**, for the possessions of others; **gluttony** for food; **rapacity** for plunder; **lust** for fleshly pleasures.

**Greek prefixes and roots**. See **Prefixes**, also **Roots**.

**green**, adjective. Latin viridis; hence **vī'rid**, an uncommon English adjective; **vī'ridescent**, turning slightly green. French vert; Old French verd; hence **verdigris**, the greenish crystallization which forms on old copper; **verdure**, the greenness of new leaf or of vegetation in general; **verdant**, covered with green vegetation. Greek chloros; hence **chlorine**, the green gas; **chlorophyl**, Nature's leaf-green in plants; **chloroform**, a chlorine compound; **chlorosis**, greenish pallor.—**Olive green**; **emerald**.

**greg-**. Latin root meaning "a flock." Derived forms: **gregā'rious** (fond of being with the flock), to **sēg'regate** (separate from the flock), **āggregation**, **egrē'gious** ("outside the flock"), **congregation**.

a **grief**, serious mental distress, due to loss, bereavement, etc.; **sorrow**, a milder form of grief; **sadness**, a mood resulting from sorrow; **mourning**, an expression of sorrow, as on the loss of a relative; **melancholy** (mel'an-kol'i), a feeling of depression. Do not confuse **grief**, which is a deep feeling, with **grievance**, which is an idea that something ought to be done differently, often without much feeling attached to it.—Adjective: **grievous** (note the spelling and pronunciation: NOT "-vious").

to **grind**. Past tense: **ground**. To **sharpen** a cutting edge: **whet** a blade; **masticate** food in the mouth; **grate** by means of jagged points; **oppress** the poor and defenseless.

a **groove** (This word is related to **grave** and **grub**). A channel for

something to flow; **rut** in the ground; **furrow** for seeds; **fluting** in a stiff piece of cloth; **routine** (rōōtēn') of work.

- a **group**, orderly and well-related assemblage, a "bunch"; **meeting** for a purpose; **crowd**, large number; **gathering**, accidental; **party**, political; **clique** (klēk), small opposition party; **mob**, unruly crowd; **family**, related by birth; **tribe**, many families more or less related; **nation**, political group with common purposes; **race**, group of same origin; **army** for fighting purposes; **force**, organized fighters; **corps** (kor), body of troops; **regiment**, division of an army. (Natural history groups in order of decreasing importance) a **phylum** (fīlum), **class**, **order**, **family**, **genus**, **species** (spē'shēz), **variety**.

- to **grow** (Past tense: It **grew** three inches in a year; Present Perfect: It has never **grown** so much before).—Latin *cresco*; hence a **crescent**, the growing part (of the moon), and anything shaped like the growing moon.—To **develop** in details; **augment** in numbers; **arise** from a certain cause; **thrive**, do well; **germinate** from seed; **increase** in numbers.—Opposite: **decay**, **decā'dence**.

See Plants.

- a **guarantee** (gar'an-tē), same word as **warrant**. The *g* or *gu* found in words of French origin is often equivalent to an English *w*: wage or gage; war, French *guerre*; warren, French *garenne*; ward or guard, French *garde*; warehouse or garage; to warn or garnish, French *garnir*.

- a **guard** on particular duty; **guardian**, in permanent charge; **keeper** of a park or prison; **watch**, **watchman** for a certain place and time period; **sentry**, soldier; **sen'tinel**, poetic; **escort** of several to accompany somebody; **patrol**, to go the rounds; **convoy** for a ship.

- a **guess** (gēs); a **conjec'ture**, idea "thrown together" speculatively; **surmise**, idea based on little evidence.—Verb: to **guess**; to **divine**.—**Divination**; an **or'acle**, one who guesses or prophesies; a **soothsayer**, a **pyth'one**s, feminine.

**guilty**, culpable, at fault, to blame: "He is to blame."

To free from guilt.....exon'erate.

To free from blame.....excul'pate.

To declare guilty.....incrim'inate.

**guttural**, adjective: pertaining to the throat or pronounced from the throat.—The sound *h* is the only true guttural in English, although *k*, *g*, *ng* are often considered such; German has two more: *ch* of *Ich* and *ch* of *noch*. Oriental languages have many guttural sounds.

# H

**h.** The letter **h** is not sounded in the words honor (on'er), honest (on'est), honorable (on'orabl), hour, heir.

- a hab'it**, personal tendency to repeat a form of action; a national custom; general usage; a common practice; a reliable rule; a sound principle.—A wild animal's or plant's **habitat**, its natural locality.—A theater **habitué**, a regular patron.

**hackneyed** (hak'nid), which has been used so often that it has lost its original force. "A sickening thud," "succulent bivalves," "last but not least" are hackneyed phrases.

**hair.** Latin pilus; hence **pile** of velvet; **capillary**, a hair-wide blood vessel; **down** on chicken, duck, swan; to **dépilate**, remove the hair from.

**Filament** of silk or metal; **wool** on a sheep; **fur**, an animal's coat.

Black, red, auburn, chestnut, blonde, fair, light, gray, white.

**half.**—Latin semi; hence: **sémifinal**, the round before last; **sémiannual**, twice a year.—French demi; hence a **démigod**, a much-worshiped man. Greek hemi; hence a **hemisphere**.—A **moiety** (literary or poetic).—When a thing is divided into equal parts, it is cut in **halves** or in **two**, but not "in half."

- a hand.** Latin manus; hence **man'ual**, pertaining to or done by the hand: "manual labor"; a **man'ual**, handbook; **man'uscript**, handwritten book, nowadays the original of something to be printed; **manufacture**, "making by hand." Latin dexter, meaning "the right hand," hence: **dextér'ity**, skill; **ambidex'trous**, able to use either hand. Greek cheir; hence **chiropractor** (kí'rop'rac'tor), one who treats by hand; **chirog'raphy** (kí-rög'rafi), one's handwriting; "The graphol'ogist (handwriting expert) passed upon the prisoner's chirography (handwriting)"; **chí'rōman'cy** (kí'-), fortune telling by the hand.

A factory "hand".....an employee.

- a handful**; plural **handfuls**.

**handwriting**, **chirog'raphy** (kí-rög'rafi); **callig'raphy**, good handwriting in copybook style.

Handwriting as a guide to char-

acter .....graphol'ogy.

Abbreviated handwriting.....stenog'raphy, shorthand.

- to hang.** Latin pendeo; hence: to **depend**, "hang from"; **impending**, "hanging on," about to happen; **suspend**, to "hang under" or cause to hang from (a decision, etc.); **pend'ulum**, the hanging balancer of a clock; **appen'dix**, a part hanging on to another.—Past tense **hanged**, in the sense of punishment:

"The murderer was hanged at dawn"; **hung** in the general sense: "I have hung the picture on the wall."

**Hanging** loosely (flowers, etc.).....pen'dulous  
**to happen**, come to pass without preparation; **occur**, more formal; **take place** by arrangement; **recur**, happen not rarely; **impend**, be about to happen.

Subject to something else happening first...contin'gent upon.  
 Unpleasant situation caused by an event....a (sad) plight.  
 A sêquence of happenings in a story.....an êp'isode.

**happy**, Latin felix; hence **felicitate** (felis'itate); **felicitations** to bride or groom, to new parents, to one starting out on a new venture or position (**congratulations** apply to an accomplishment); **felicitous** words, well chosen; **felicity**, bliss, happiness, good choice.

"His friends felicitated him on the occasion of his appointment. He received their felicitations with much pleasure and thanked them in felicitous words. He has always enjoyed perfect felicity. The felicity of his expression has made him popular at banquets."

**Happy** expectations.....op'timism.

**hard**, adjective. Latin durus; hence **obdurate**, hardened against arguments. Greek skleros; hence **artêriosclerô'sis**, hardening of the arteries; the **sclerot'ica**, the hard membrane popularly called the white of the eye.—**Sol'id**, opposed to liquid or **gâs'eous**; **firm**, opposed to loose; **rigid**, opposed to flexible; **austere** to himself, in disposition; **severe** to others; **strict** to enforce a task; **cruel**, taking pleasure in the suffering of others; **merciless**; **unjust**; **unfeeling**; **stingy** with money; **tight**, not generous; **rig'orous** climate; **inclem'ent** weather; **extreme** temperatures; **violent** storm; **stren'uous** efforts; **stub'-born** resistance; **ob'stinate** person; **ad'aman't** in a decision already made.

**hardly**, scarcely, not quite.

As this word already expresses a negative idea, it should NOT be accompanied by the word not. (Wrong: I cannot hardly wait. Right: I can hardly wait.)

**a harm**, general name for a loss suffered: "No one shall do any harm to his neighbor"; an in'jury to a person; **dam'age**, causing physical or pecuniary loss; **mischief** through thoughtlessness; **misfortune**, unavoidable; **accident** through circumstances; a **tort**, legal name for any kind of civil wrong except breach of contract.

**to harm**, injure; **hurt**, causing pain; **dâmage**, causing loss; **abuse**, taking unfair advantage of; **dês'crate** something sacred; **waste** something valuable; **destroy** entirely; **ruin**, making unusable; **slander** by uttering false reports with evil intent; **cal'umny**, by definite false statements; **dispar'age**, speak

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels â â î ò ô û as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ä ä î ò ô û as in mat, met, mit, not, nut, pity; â as in father; êr as in merry; er as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (â in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.



slightly of; **deprecate**, express disapproval of a course of action, a conduct.

**harmful**, doing no good; **evil**, bad in itself; **injurious**, causing loss of prestige, health or well-being; **damaging**, causing physical loss; **detrimental** to a purpose; **baneful**, regrettable; **deleterious** drugs; **noxious** (nôk'shus) fumes; **pernicious** doctrines; **destructive** criticism; **mischievous** pleasantry; **dire** threats, ill-boding; **insidious** propaganda.

**harsh**, offensive to touch or sensibility; **rough**, unpolished, but not necessarily offensive; **acrid**, pungent taste; **bitter**, as unripe fruit; **sour** as vinegar; **hot** to the taste, as pepper; **acrimonious** remarks, sarcastic; **brutal** treatment; **inharmious** voice; **jarring** on the nerves; **hoarse** throat; **strident**, persistent and shrill.

**haste**, rapid movements; **hurry**, anxiety to do things quickly; **rush**, very rapid movements in a certain direction; **speed**, orderly; **dispatch**, systematic; **bustle** or **fuss**, within circles. "More haste, less speed."

to **hate**, dislike violently; **detest** somebody else's habits; **abhor** something considered pernicious; **loathe**, dislike as repulsive.

**hatred** of; **dislike** of; **hate** of; **detestation** of; **antipathy** to, for, or **against** (natural dislike); **enmity**, open; **hostility**, refusal to be friendly; **rancor**, grudge; **animosity**, angry feeling.

Deserving hatred.....heinous (hâ'nus): a heinous act.

to **have** (Past tense **had**).—Originally a verb meaning "to possess," **have**, in English as in other languages, tends to become exclusively an auxiliary, the past tense of **get** having assumed its verbal function. "I **have got** a book" means "I possess a book" and is explained by the fact that I really did **get** it; just as we say "I **have eaten**," meaning "I did eat, and I am still conscious of it" (Present Perfect tense).

**Have** is also used as meaning "to cause"; "Have him enter" (i.e., cause him to enter). "He had him rewarded" (i.e., he caused him to be rewarded).

The idea of possession, with a noun, is often indicated by the use of the suffix **-ful**: joyful (who has joy), cheerful (who has cheer), beautiful (who has beauty).

a **head**. Latin *caput, capitis*; hence **capital**, which pertains to the head, important, vital, principal, as in "capital punishment," the death penalty; "the capital invested," the principal money; **chapter**, a head or subdivision in a book; a **caption**, headline in a newspaper; to **decapitate**, cut off the head. A variation of *caput* is the French *chef*; hence a **chef** or "head" cook; chiefly or principally; **handkerchief**, "a hand cover for the head." Modern French *tête*; hence a **tête-à-tête** (tât-ă-tât), an intimate meeting of two, not necessarily of a pleasant nature. Greek *kephale*; hence **cephalic**, pertaining to the head.

A bald head (humorously).....a bald pate.

**health**, literally "being whole" or well, now used loosely as "being" anyhow, as in the phrase "in poor health."

### Some words used on this subject

To be well, ill, sick, better, worse, gaining, losing, failing, recovering, convalescent, an invalid, crippled, paralyzed. To suffer, be patient, fall, bear, hurt oneself, be injured, be wounded, catch cold; a disease, a sickness, an epidemic; contagious, catching, dangerous, serious, complications; to die. Doctor, surgeon, osteopath, chiropractor (ki'ro-prak'tor), healer, nurse, interne, patient, sanitarium, hospital, operation, anesthetic, ether, chloroform, X-ray.—See Disease.

**healthful.** In American usage, an article of food is **healthful**, a person is **healthy**. In English usage, the word **healthful** is uncommon. A city or climate is **salu'brious** or **healthful**; a remedy, especially in the moral sense, is **sal'u'tary**; a condition, a bed, is **san'i'tary** (germ-free or dirt-free). Anything **healthy** or **healthful** is, in direct parlance, **wholesome**.

to **hear** (hēr). Past tense and past participle, **heard**, pronounced herd. Latin *audio*; hence **audience**, the people gathered to hear; **audible**, which can be heard; **audition**, a hearing; **auditorium**, a place for musical entertainments; an **audit**, a hearing or investigation of accounts; an **auditor**, examiner of accounts. Greek *akouo*; hence **acoustics** (akōōs'tiks), the science of sound. "The acoustics of this hall are very poor." —French *écouter*; hence a **scout**, one who goes into a "listening post."

That which is heard is a **sound** perceived by the ear. Trying to hear is to **listen** to something, if the sound is known to be there, or **listen** for something, if the sound has not yet been perceived. To call for sudden silence, we say "Hark!", a form of **hearken** (a frequentative of "to hear") just as talk is a frequentative of "to tell"). Sounds are either **noise** or **music** according to the harmony of their vibrations. Sounds are reproduced by the **phonograph**, the **telephone**, the **radio**, all using a magnifying device called the **microphone**.

a **heart** (hârt). Latin *cor*, *cordis*; hence the **core** or inside of a fruit; a **cordial** greeting, prompted by the heart; **cordiality**; to **encourage** or **hearten** somebody; to **record**, keep in the heart or mind.

**heat**, great warmth. (For different degrees of heat see the word **Warm**; see also **Thermometer**).—Latin *calor*; hence a **calorie** (kal'orī), the heat required to raise the temperature of one gram one degree centigrade (the small calorie). The **calorie** is a unit of food values, so many ounces of food producing so many calories. **Calorific**, **calorimeter**. Greek *therme*; hence **thermom'eter** and many derived forms.

to **heave**. Past tense in daily life generally **heaved**: "She heaved a sigh"; in nautical life generally **hove**: "The ship hove to."

**heaven** (hev'n), the **sky** (physical), the **firmament** (literary), **Paradise** (religious). (Written with a capital **h**, **Heaven**, when used to mean "God.")

**hell**, a place or state of suffering. The word "hell" in the Authorized Version of the Bible corresponds to widely different originals: (1) Hebrew **Shēol**, Greek **Hā'des**, the place of

death, the place of the departed, for both good and bad souls; (2) Greek **Gēhen'na**, the garbage dump of Jerusalem, a pit of unpleasantness and fire. They are so translated in the Revised Version.—Latin *infernus*, the lower region, as in the Apostles' Creed, "He descended into hell," meaning Sheol or Hades, not the place of punishment; hence **inferno**. Often confused with **Gēhen'na**.

to **help**, to be effectively useful to somebody; **aid** somebody who is also helping himself; to **assist**, be with, not necessarily with measurable results (**assist** has a touch of voluntariness in it); **serve** as an inferior subject to dismissal; **forbear** (I cannot help it. I cannot forbear it. I cannot prevent it); **condone** somebody else's offense, find excuses for it; **connive** at something, with somebody, shut one's eyes to it; **defend** against an attack already in progress; **protect** from expected attack; **escort**, accompany for protection; **guard** against possible attack; **convoy** a ship.

a **help**. Latin *auxilium*; hence **auxiliary** (thing that helps); an **ad'juvant**, a medicine added in a prescription for its helpful value to the other ingredients; an **an'odyne** (an'ō-dīn), soothing medicine; a **sōl'ace**, thing that brings comfort or relief, as in grief: "After the loss of her husband, she found her chief sōl'ace in her little boy"; **complic'ity**, partnership in guilty act; **admonition**, warning. **Ancillary**, adjective; **auxiliary**: "an auxiliary means of locomotion"; **servile**, adjective, excessively willing to help. (People who help) a **servant**, an **employee**, a **ret'inue**, body of retainers, secretaries, clerks, maids, valets, chauffeurs.

**helpful**, **serviceable**, **beneficial**, **auxiliary**, added, **ancillary**, subordinated; **philanthropic**, person or act devoted to mankind.

a **herd**.—See **Flock**.

**here**, at this place, to this place. Poetically, **hence**, from here; **hither**, to this place.

**hereafter** (hēr-af'ter), **henceforth**, **from now on**.

**heredity** (herēd'ity), the factors inher'ited from one's ancestors. "Many variations between human beings are accounted for by heredity or environment." "His father was a drunkard, his mother was feeble-minded. With such hered'ity, the child was almost doomed to be an im'becile."

a **her'etic**, one who does not believe all the details of a recognized creed; a **dissenter**; (adjective) **unorthodox**.

a **hērō**; plural **hērōes**; feminine, **hēr'oine**; adjective, **hero'ic**.

**herself**, written in one word, and used both as subject and object: "She wrote it herself." "I saw Mrs. Brown herself."

to **hes'itate**, not knowing what to do next; **pause**, generally for effect; **stop** entirely.

**hēsitation**, doubt as to desirability; **uncertainty**; **indecision**, inability to settle.

**hetero-**. Greek root meaning "other." Derived forms: **hēt'ero-dox** (opposite of **orthodox**), **hēt'ērōgē nēous** (of different kinds). See **Other**.

- a **het'erodyne** (from two Greek words meaning "outside force"), a device added to a radio receiving system to increase its power.

**hidden**, not to be seen; **concealed**, purposely; **covered**, by something hanging over; **sēcret**, not to be known; **mysterious**, done for effect; **obscure**, not clearly lighted; **occult**, magical or having mysterious properties; **veiled**; **shrouded**; **screened**; **masked**; **protected**; **blind** precipice, etc.; **unknown**; **cōvert** act, as opposed to **ōvert**.

- to **hide**. Past tense: Yesterday I **hid** it: Present Perfect, I have never **hidden** the truth. Latin, celo; hence **conceal**. Greek **crypto**; hence a **crypt** or vault; **cryptogram**, mysterious writing. To **conceal** purposely; to **secrete** something into something else: "She secreted herself in the loft to avoid interruption and read the whole book through"; to **veil**; **shroud**; **screen**; **cover**; **protect**; **guard**; **mask**.

To run away and hide.....to abscond.

Containing a hidden meaning.....cryptic (krip'tik).

Done so as to make detection difficult....cōvert.

Hidden until brought out (image, finger-

prints) .....lātent.

Hidden because it is "asleep".....quies'cent.

Hidden but capable of sudden power....poten'tial.

A place for hiding supplies from wild

animals .....a cache (kāsh).

A secret, mystery, remedy.....an arcā'num.

To hide one's true feelings.....to dissemble.

- high** (hī), **higher** (hī'er), **highest** (hī'est). Latin, altus; hence **āltitude**, height above sea level; **exalt** (egzolt), to raise to high dignity. Greek, akron, high, extreme; hence an **ac'ro-bat**, one who climbs aloft.

**High** (in American usage only) is often used as referring to sea-level measurement, while **tall** refers to absolute height: a high mountain, a tall building. According to this usage a high building is one situated on a height, though it may itself have only one story.

Note that the noun formed from high is **height** (spelled with an e and without a final h; pronounced hīt).

An outstanding height.....a pin'nacle.

- highbrow** (hī'brou; an American word, but understood elsewhere also). Adjective: indicating a snobbish desire to appear superior in education or birth, or catering to persons with such desires: "a highbrow magazine," "highbrow drama," "highbrow talk." Noun: a **highbrow**, one who does not condescend to be understood by the masses. "The use of longer forms, such as 'until,' 'around,' 'upon,' and the use of longer words, such as 'alimentation,' in ordinary conversation and when shorter and more popular forms will do, such as 'till,' 'round,' 'on,' 'food,' is one of the earmarks of a highbrow."

- a **hill**, an elevation, less than a mountain, generally less rugged and more rounded. In mountainous countries the name hill is

used for heights up to 5,000 or even 10,000 feet. In flat countries a hill over 2,000 or 3,000 feet is often called a mountain.

**himself**, written as one word, and used as either subject or object: "He himself wrote it," "I spoke to the man himself."

**hind** (adjective), rear, posterior.

to **hinder**; to **delay**; **retard**; **embarrass**, cause confusion; **annoy**; to **encumber**, as a heavy parcel; **hamper** one's movements, as a fetter; **check**.

to **hire**, to take somebody on for pay; **engage**; **employ** somebody who has been hired; to pay for temporary use of a thing, as "to hire an auto."

**history**, refers to facts; **story**, often fictional; **account** in detail; **narrative**, at length; **record** of facts; **chronicle** (kron'ikl), sequence of events; **memoirs** (mem'warz), personal recollections; **biography**, life story; **tradition**, belief passed on verbally for successive generations.

### Some words used on this subject

To expound, narrate, happen, take place, sink, decay, decline, master, conquer, destroy, subjugate, pacify, ally (āl'), colonize, im'migrate, em'igrate, to found (establish), reform, advance, deliver.

An era, epoch, period, antiquity, Middle Ages, crusade, crusader, feudality, feudal system, modern times, present times, past, future, event', people, nation, state, situation, document, histo'rian, result', action, exploit, object, end, means, fact, cause, effect, consequence, destiny, fate, bill, act of Parliament, stăt'üte, law, legislator, power, might, greatness, glory, acmë, decline, ruin, war, peace, invasion, uprising, rebellion, civil war, alliance, migration, colony, colonist, ren'aissance, nobility, middle classes, chivalry (shiv'-), Rëformation, diët, council, religious war, rëvolution, restoration, constitution.

Histor'ical, partial, impartial, important, deci'sive, bar'barous, civilized, cultivated, warlike, peaceful, uni'ted, considerable, accidental, fortuitous, servile, free, noble, chivalrous, popular, loyal.

to **hit**. Past tense, **hit**. For full list of synonyms, see Beat.

**hō**. Sound heard in **hole** (in ground), the **whole** (entire); **hoar** (frost); to **hoe** (the ground).

**hoard**. From an Anglo-Saxon word meaning **treasure**. An accumulation of something considered valuable.

**hoarse** (voice); **gruff**; **croaky**; **husky**; **thick**.

a **hoax** (hōks); a **trick**; a **deception**; a **practical joke**.

to **hold**. Past tense **held**.—Latin **teneo**, **tentum**; hence a **tentacle**, a hand that grips; **tënüre** of office; **detention**, being held back;

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels ä ä i ö ü y as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ä ä i ö ü y as in mat, met, mit, not, nut, pity; ä as in father; ér as in merry; er as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ä in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.

**content'**, holding back his desires; **pertain'**, belong, refer (**pertinent**); **retain'**, hold back; **maintain'**, hold in hand, look after; **maintenance**; **continent**, land that holds together; to **retain**, hold back; **tenacious**, holding strongly; a **tenant**, one who is held to the premises by a lease; to **sustain**, hold under. Note the duplicated form -tain and -tent; contain, content; detain, detention.

To hold back a desire.....to inhib'it.  
 To hold to obēdience.....to coerce.  
 To hold within bounds.....to confine.  
 One held as a guarantee.....a hōstake.  
 Capable of holding many facts.....retentive (memory).  
 Hard-holding.....tenacious.

- a** **hole**; a cavity in something as a tooth, a wall; a **pit**, dug out, hollow, between higher places; **burrow**, animal's; **crater** of volcano; **bore**, done by drilling, as a tunnel; **slit**, narrow and long; **rent**, in cloth; **crack**, in a surface or well; **crevice**, from a crack, as in a rock; **crevasse** (krěvās'), big gap in glacier; **cranny**, small hiding place, as between rocks; **gap**, as if the two sides had opened up; **dent**, as a tooth mark in a surface; a **chasm** (kaz'm), terrific opening, as in mountains; **cleft**, as between branches of a tree; **fissure**, narrow slit between rocks; an **opening**, a mouth (figurative); an **or'ifice**, mouth of a tunnel, etc.; **vent**, air hole; **mor'tise** in wood work or engraver's cut; **slot** for coin; an **in'terstice**, a space between; **pore**, breathing hole in the skin.

- a** **hol'iday** and **holy day** were originally the same word, as holy days, feast days, were kept as holidays, workless days.

**holy**.—Latin sanctus; hence to **sanctify**, make holy; **sanctuary**, holy place; **sanctity**, holiness; **sanction**, a solemn confirmation, a punishment; **saint**, a holy one.—Greek hagios; hence **hagiography** (hăg'io or hă'jiō), the lives of the saints.

To proclaim as a saint.....to can'onize.

**hom-**. Latin root meaning "man." (Do not confuse with Greek root below.) Derived forms: **hōm'icide**, **hōmun'culus**; **hūman**. See Man.

- a** **home**; **hearth** (hârth); **dōm'icile**, legal residence; **den**, animal's; **lair**; **burrow**, rabbit's.—**Homely** (in England and often in America), familiar, intimate, friendly, unpretentious; (in America only) ugly, rude, uncouth (unkōōth'), coarse; **homy** (often unnecessarily spelled with an e, homey. The e should be dropped before adding a vowel suffix), comfortable, cozy.

Pertaining to the home.....domestic.  
 See House.

**homo-**. Greek root meaning "same." (Do not confuse with Latin root above.) Derived forms: **hōm'on'ym** (word of same sound); **hōm'ōgēneous**, **hōmēōp'athy** ("treatment by a remedy like the disease"). See Same.

- an** **honor** (the h is silent, also in **honest**, **honorable**; an honor, an honest man). A high excellence of character tending par-

ticularly to respect of the unprotected rights of others; **honesty**, respect for the property rights of others; **integ'ity**, a superior form of self-respect and honesty: "a man of unquestioned integrity," who is above accepting bribes; **virtue**, in reference to the moral code; **rep'utation**, as known to the public; **char'acter**, all the qualities and faults combined in one judgment; a **dig'nity**, honorable position given to somebody; a **distinction**, honor conferred upon somebody; a **dec-oration**, medal of merit.

- a hope**.—Latin spes, speris; hence **despair**, loss of hope; **desperate**, hopeless.

We **expect** something to happen when we have good reason to think it will; we **hope** for something that we wish to happen, often with a feeling that it will not; we **anticipate** a thing by making mentally ready for it.

- a horn**. Latin cornu; hence the **cor'nēā**, the horny transparent membrane in front of the eye; a **cornet**, musical instrument derived from the horn; **cornuco'pia**, a "horn of plenty"; **căp'ricorn**, the "goat-horned" beetle. Greek keras; hence **rhinóceros**, the "nose-horn" animal; hence also **ceratome**, an instrument for cutting the "horny" membrane of the eye, the cor'nea; **keratitis**, inflammation of the cornea.

**horrible**, very ugly to look at or which inspires horror, "a horrible wound, a horrible accident"; **horrid**, which inspires loathing; "horrid remarks"; "a horrid little dog"; **horrific**, **horrify** (literary forms).

**horror**, see Fear.

**horse** (related to Latin curro, "I run," whence corral'). Latin equus; hence **ē'quine**, **ēq'urry**, **eques'trian**. Low Latin cabalus; hence **cav'alcade**, **cav'alier**, **cav'alry**; French cheval (sh-), hence **cheval-glass** (swing mirror), **chēvalier** (shev'), a knight; **chiv'alry** (shiv'-), **chiv'alrous** (shiv'-), Greek hippos; hence **hip'podrome**, horse-run; **hippōpōt'amus**, "river-horse"; **Philip**, "lover of horses." Teutonic hengst; hence **henchman**, one of mounted gang. Feminine **mare**, **stallion** (breeding), **pony** (small), **filly** (fem.), **foal** (young), **palfrey** (saddle horse), **steed**, **charger**, **hunter**, **Pēg'asus** (poet's mount), **hinny**, **jade**, **hack**, **nag**, **cob**, **cayuse**, **mustang** (ownerless), **bronco** (untamed), **pinto** (piebald).

**hos'pitable**, from Latin hospes, a host; hence also **hospital'ity**, being fond of visitors; **hos'pital**, a place of temporary visit, a place for the sick; **hotel**, a place of temporary stay.

**hot**, **tropical** climate; **ardent** passion.—For names of various degrees of heat, see Warm.

**hound**, hunting dog; especially in England, a foxhound; a **beagle**, a **harrier**, for hunting hares; a **dachshund** (daks'hoond), a **basset** for hunting badgers; a **boar hound**; **stag hound**; **greyhound**, for hunting hares; **whippet**, small greyhound; **bloodhound**, for hunting criminals; **borzoi**, a Russian wolf-hound.

As the word "hunting" is not used in England as synonymous with "bird shooting" but is reserved for big game, the word "hound" is not used for what is called in America a bird dog. See Dog.

**an hour** (Silent h; abbreviated "hr.').

Time at sea is indicated by the ringing of the forecandle (fö'k's-l) bell every half hour.

1 bell=12:30, day or night, 4:30, 8:30.

2 bells=1 o'clock, 5 o'clock, 9 o'clock.

4 bells=2 o'clock, 6 o'clock, 10 o'clock.

6 bells=3 o'clock, 7 o'clock, 11 o'clock.

8 bells=4 o'clock, 8 o'clock, noon or midnight.

**Canon'ical hours**, according to the Roman bráviary or prayer book, varying in actual time 3 to 6 hours either way, are: **má'tins** (during the night watches); **lauds** (dawn); **prime** (6 A.M.); **vespers** (6 P.M.); **complin** (nightfall).

**a house**. Latin domus; hence **döm'ic'le**, one's official residence; **dömest'ic**, of the house. Greek oikos; hence **econ'omy**, house management. French maison (mä-zong'), often used by dressmakers before their name: "Maison Pierre." A **building**, may be more than a house or less, and may be used for any purpose; a **shelter**, temporary; a **dwelling**, place where one lives; a **bungalow**, one-story; a **cottage**, one and a half-story (i.e., one or two rooms under the roof); a **two-flat house**, two flats one above the other; a **double bungalow** or **double**, two flats on the same floor, under one roof and with separate entrances; a **duplex house**, two units under one roof, each having a ground floor and an upper floor, with separate entrances; a **bungalow court**, several detached bungalows sharing one common plot of land, often facing the same common grounds; an **apartment house**, several flats on each floor, for two or more floors; a **detached house**, one standing on its own lot; a **semi-detached house** (England), equivalent to U. S. duplex house; a **mansion**, very large house; a **palace**, royal house.

The following words are written in one word, without a hyphen: **household**, **housekeeper**, **housekeeping**, **housemaid**, **housewarming**, **housewife**, **housework**. But the word **house-fly** is written with a hyphen.

Note the difference in the pronunciation of the s: a **house** (hous), to **house** (houz, with a z sound).

**how**, adverb. See Questions.—The following compounds of **how** are written in two words: **how far**, **how many**, **how much**, **how long**, **how soon**; but **however** is written in one word.

**however**, one word. When used before an adjective and modifying it, **however** requires no punctuation: "However learned one may be, one always has some more to learn"; when used as a transition word, to connect the thought between two sentences, it is generally placed a short way into the sentence, and separated by two commas: "That result , however, was not to be secured easily"; "I agree with you. There is , however, one point to consider."

See Transitions.

**to howl**, to utter a prolonged, res'onant cry of pain or anguish (the sounds of the word are imitative of the sound produced, especially by the wolf or the dog); **cry** angrily, bitterly; **wail** plaintively, mournfully. See Cry.



**H.R.H.**—Abbreviation of “His Royal Highness,” the abbreviation itself being often used in England, colloquially, to designate the Prince of Wales.

- a hue** (hū, from an Anglo-Saxon word *hiw*, meaning “form”), the intensity of a particular shade of color. “Flowers of vivid hue.”

**humble** (adjective). Latin *humilis*; hence **humil’ity**.—The Latin word comes from *humus*, “the ground,” a humble person being one who prostrates himself to the ground; the **b** found in the English is the habitual discharge of sound heard when the lips open after pronouncing the sound *m* (heard also in **number**, and found in the spelling, though not in the pronunciation, of **comb**, **lamb**, **dumb**, etc.).—Actuated by an impulse of submission or inferiority, the opposite of the impulse of assertion which is expressed as **pride**. **Mod’est**, who avoids obtruding himself, whether from natural humility or from timidity; **timid**, who obeys the impulse of fear; **meek**, who avoids quarrels and self-assertion at all costs (this word is used nowadays in a deprecatory sense, as indicating lack of the necessary energy); **obscure**, who or which has attracted no attention: “an obscure situation”; **unassuming**, combining a desire to please with natural humility, and therefore doing nice things discreetly, without claiming the credit; **unpretentious**, self-respecting but making no show, having no desire to “boss”: “They live in an unpretentious cottage on a quiet street.”

For opposites, see **Pride**.

**humor**, ability to laugh. See **Laughter**; see also **Sympathetic**.

**hundred**. In Arabic figures, 100; in Roman figures, C; abbreviation of centum; hence **centigrade**.—Greek *hekaton*; hence **hectogram**.

One hundred years.....a century.

100-year anniversary.....a centen’ial.

100-year-old man.....a centenārian.

100-footed insect.....a cen’tipede.

In every hundred.....per cent (or per cent.  
(Thermometer) in 100 degrees be- with a period).

tween frost and steam.....centigrade.

100th part of a French franc.....a centime (sang’tēm’).

**hung** is used with things, **hanged** with people. “The picture is hung.” “The man was hanged.”

**hunger**. Latin *famis*; hence **fam’ished**, very hungry. Adjective: **hungry**; **rāv’enous** (connected with *rāv’age*, *rāv’ine*, but not connected with *rā’ven*, the bird): a *rāv’enous* appetite, one which eats everything in sight; **vorā’cious**, which devours much.

**to hunt**. Properly, to ride after big game; in America, to go shooting; (figuratively) to **chase** something, to **track**, **trail**, **stalk**, **trap**. See **Game**; see also **Hound**.

**to hurl** something heavy at something else with great force; to **thrust** something through; **fling** lightly; **toss** nonchalantly;

**sling** circularly; **heave**, lift; **launch**, on water; **dart** something sharp; **cast**, poetic.

to **hurry**, with disorderly movements; **hasten** in orderly fashion; **expedite**, cause to be done more rapidly: "The new chute system expedites the dispatch of parcels from the packing to the shipping floor."

to **hurt**. Past tense **hurt**. To cause pain: to **injure**; **harm**, do wrong to; **damage**, cause loss to. See Pain.

Easily hurt person (figuratively).....sen'sitive.

Easily hurt place.....vul'nerable (spot).

Which looks as if it would hurt.....a mēn'ace.

Hurtful to morals.....pernicious.

Having hurtful intentions (person).....malev'olent.

a **husband**. **Spouse** (this word is used for either husband or wife, as parent is used for either father or mother); "lord and master," "hubby."

a **hybrid** (hī'brid), offspring of mixed races, etc.; used of animals, plants and, with a sense of contempt, of people. **Half-breed** (Red Indian), **mestizo** (Philippines), **mulatto** (half black), **half-caste** (British India), **half blood**.

**hydr.** Greek root meaning "water." Derived forms: **hȳdrant**, **hȳdraul'ic**, **dēhȳdrated**, **carbohȳdrate**. See Water.

**hygienic** (hī-jī-ēn'ik) is used of one's habits, practices; **sanitary** of things and surroundings; **salu'brious** of climate; **sal'u'tary** of remedies, especially figuratively.

a **hyphen** (hī'fn), to **hyphen** a word. A short dash used (1) at the end of a line to indicate that the whole word could not go in; (2) between words, to indicate a grammatical relationship or a process of change.

**The Hyphen in Word-Division.** See Syllables for correct usage. One-syllable words are not broken: live, laugh; nor should one letter of a word be separated: alone, busy (not a-lone, bus-y).

**The Hyphen in Compound Forms.** There is no absolute rule, except that a hyphen must be used when its absence would cause confusion: pre-war, re-cover (cover again). Prefixes are usually joined without, except in popular works, where rapid reading demands instant recognition (semi-conscious), and when the prefix is emphasized (non-paying, vice-consul). Use a hyphen when a compound is formed with two nouns of equal value: pupil-teacher, actor-manager (but, without hyphen: lawgiver, classroom, taxpayer, because one of these words modifies the other). Use a hyphen in an adjective phrase: a ten-mile walk; and in simple fractions: three-fifths (but: thirty-five hundredths, to keep "35" together).

**hypoc'risy** (hīpōk'rīsī), a **hypocrite** (hīp'o-krīt).

**hysteria** (his-tē'rīā), **hysterics** (his-tēr'iks), **hysterical** (his-tēr'ikal).

# I

- i.** This sound is occasionally spelled **ei**, as in **surfeit** (sur'fit), **counterfeit** (koun'terfit); or **ie** as in **sieve** (siv), **mischief** (mis'chif), **mischievous** (mis'chiv-us); or **i** followed by an **e**, as in **respite** (res'pit).
- i.** Sound heard in **aye** (yes); **eye** (to see with); **eyelet** (metal eye); **isle**, **island**, **islet**.
- I**—Although the pronoun “**I**” is generally described as the only 1st person singular pronoun, kings and writers often express the first person singular in the plural form sometimes called “the editorial **we**”: “**We** are confident that . . .” (meaning “**I** am confident that”). Similarly “**you**” is used (with a plural verb) to mean the singular idea “**thou**,” and “**they**” (with a plural verb) for “**he or she**.” See **They**.
- ia.** Words of three, four, or five syllables ending in **-ia** have the accent before the **-ia**: **hystēria**, **begō'nia**, **ammō'nia**, **Britā'nia**, **Germā'nia**, **encyclopē'dia**, **hygē'ia**, **rāff'ia**. **EXCEPTIONS**: **Mari'a**, and Spanish words like **fantasia** (fant'a-zē'a), **rancheria** (ran'chā-rē'a). **Cafeteria** is pronounced either the American or the Spanish way: **kāf-ē-tē'ria** or **kā-fē-tē-rē'ā**.
- ial.** Three-syllable words ending in **-ial** have the accent on the second syllable: **provin'cial**, **essen'tial**, **colō'nial**.
- ible, -able.** (See **Rough Rule** under **-able**.)

## Words in ABLE

abominable	innumerable
admirable	inseparable
advisable	intolerable
believable	irreparable
changeable	movable
charitable	noticeable
comfortable	peaceable
commendable	perishable
comparable	practicable
conceivable	preferable
creditable	presentable
definable	profitable
deplorable	reasonable
despicable	respectable
detestable	serviceable
eatable	suitable
excusable	tolerable
hospitable	traceable
illimitable	unavoidable
imaginable	unbearable
improbable	unmistakable
incurable	unspeakable
indispensable	venerable
inevitable	vulnerable

## Words in IBLE

accessible	indelible
admissible	indestructible
audible	inexhaustible
combustible	inexpressible
comprehensible	infallible
contemptible	intelligible
convertible	invincible
digestible	invisible
discernible	irresistible
divisible	legible
edible	perceptible
eligible	permissible
feasible	plausible
flexible	possible
forcible	responsible
horrible	sensible
illegible	susceptible
imperceptible	tangible
impossible	terrible
incompatible	visible
incorrigible	
incorruptible	
incredible	
indefensible	

- ic.** Words of three, four, or five syllables ending in **-ic** have the accent on the syllable before **-ic**: fanat'ic, linguist'ic, his-trion'ic, geograph'ic, antipathet'ic, acrost'ic, horri-fic, his-tor'ic, galvan'ic; **EXCEPTIONS**: ar'senic, her'etic, cath'olic, chol'eric, pol'itic, rhet'oric, Ar'abic.
- ical.** Words of four or five syllables ending in **-ical** have the accent on the preceding syllable: the-o-ret'ical, rabbin'ical, satir'ical, poet'ical, geograph'ical, analyt'ical. (Words of three syllable follow the same rule already noted under **-al**: crit'ical, Bibl'ical.)
- ice.** Latin glaciers; hence **glacier** (glā'sher), a large frozen stream moving slowly forward; **glacial** (glā'shal), pertaining to ice, as "the Glacial Period," when most of the Northern Hemisphere was covered with ice; **glacé** (glās'ā), French word meaning "iced," polished, smooth, coated, as of leather, cake, fruit, etc.: "marrons glacés" (mā-rong' glās'ā), candied sweet chestnuts; **glacis** (glās'is), smooth slope of a fort.
- icity** (is'itȳ), the state of being so-and-so; **felicity**, the state of being happy; **duplicity**, the state of being double.
- id-.** Anglicized form of **eid-**, Greek root meaning "to see." Derived forms: **ī'dol**, **idē'a**, **idē'al**, **kaleidoscope** ("beautiful sight view"). See also suffix **-oid**, and the entry under **See**.
- idea** (ī-dē'a). This is a convenient word although recognized as worse than meaningless by modern psychologists. It cannot be satisfactorily defined. Popularly it is used as synonymous with **thought**, **conception**, **opinion**, **concept**, **notion**, **fancy**, **feeling**, **mind-picture**. All these, and all unstandardized terms of psychology, are apt to cause endless misunderstandings when conclusions are loosely drawn from their apparent meaning.

Holding to his own ideas.....opinionated, stubborn

- iden-.** Modified form of **idem**, Latin word meaning "the same." Derived forms **iden'tical**, **iden'tity**, to **iden'tify**; **ibi'dem** ("in the same place"). See **Same**.
- idiom** (īd'iom). A form of language used by the majority of educated people, which may be contrary to logic or to arbitrary rules of grammar. The phrase "I am going to tell you" is idiomatic, because we are not really **going**; the phrase "I have got a book" is also idiomatic. Any phrase which is now objected to as incorrect or colloquial may, if generally used, become recognized as idiomatic.
- idle**, not working, from either choice or necessity; **lazy**, disinclined to work; **sluggish**, slow; **in'dolent**, preferring not to worry over things; **inert**, powerless to move itself; **slōthful**, objectionably lazy; **phlegmatic**, stolid temperament; **torpid**, sleepy, numb.
- iety** (ī'ētī). Words ending in **-iety** have the accent on the **i**, pronounced **ī**: sobri'ety, vari'ety, sati'ety, soci'ety. Note the pronunciations: **moiety** (mōy'ētī, a half); **gaiety** or **gayety** (gā'ētī).

**-ify** (îfi). Words ending in **-ify** (or **-efy**) have the accent on the preceding syllable: solid'ify, acid'ify.

an **ignoramus** (ig-no-rā'mus), an illit'erate, simpleton, fool, boob.  
**ignorance**. (Remember the spelling -ance by the word igno-rāmus.)

to **ignore** (ig-nor'), to disregard deliberately. (Note that this originally meant, and means in foreign languages, "to be unknowing of"; in which sense we still use the words **ignorant**, **ignorance**, **ignoramus**, the element of willfulness being absent from these terms.)

"Ignorance of the law excuses no one." "The engine driver, in his hurry to make up for lost time, ignored the signals and wrecked his train."

**il-**, prefix, often found as a form of the prefix **in-** (meaning "not") before a word beginning with an **l**: illiterate (for in-literate); illogical, illegitimate, illegible, illimitable. Note that the prefix **in-** or **il-** is used only with a word of Latin origin, while **un-** is used with purely English words or forms: illiterate, unlettered; incredible, unbeliever.

**ill**. This is an adjective, a noun, and an adverb. The form "illy" is unnecessary, and is not recognized as desirable, although it has been occasionally used by good authors. "It is an ill wind that blows nobody good" (adjective). "An ill that flesh is heir to" (noun). "An ill-dressed man" (adverb).

As an adjective **ill** takes its comparative from the word **bad**: worse, worst (not iller, illest). **Sick**, suffering; **ailing**, not well; **indisposed**, feeling badly; **diseased** organ; **wicked**, having bad intentions.

The idea of "ill" is often expressed by the prefixes **mal-** (meaning unpleasant) or **mis-** (meaning improperly):

**Ill-doing** .....mālefac'tion (wrong doing), misdeed  
 (not so serious)

**Ill-doing** .....a misfit (not properly fitting)

**Ill-smelling** .....malo'dorous (unpleasant)

**Ill-placing** .....malposition, misplacing, mislaying

**Erroneous printing**....a misprint (improperly printed)

**illness**, not being well; **sickness**, with pain; **disease**, affected function; **ailment**, light illness; **affection**, of part of body; **complaint**, cause of illness; **disorder**, bad working; **māladý**, formal word.—See list of diseases under Disease.

### Some words used on this subject

**Chrōnic** (krōn'ik, occurring once in a while); **acūte** (sudden); **contāgious** (catching); **epidem'ic** (spreading rapidly); **dangerous**, **fātal**, **cūrable**, **incūrable**; a cold, cough (**kóf**), headache (**hēd'āk**), toothache (**tōōth'āk**), sore throat, **fēver**, fainting fit, ap'oplectic stroke, paralýsis (**pa-rāl'isis**), inflammation, injection; doctor, physician (**fī-zī'shun**), nurse, surgeon (**ser'jun**), patient, chemist (**kem'ist**), druggist; am-bulance, hos'pital, operā'tion, in'struments, an'esthet'ic, complications, convalescence, recovery.

- Names of acute affections often end in **-itis**: neuritis, bronchitis; names of chronic affections often end in **-osis**: neurosis.
- an **illusion**, an idea without foundation; a **belief**, something held as true; a **deception**, something wrongly held as true; an **apparition**, something seen; a **dream**, in the night (or figuratively); a **hallucination**, sense deception.
- “Illusions are often taken for reality.”
- to **illus'trate**, to picture, to show. “An example will illustrate the way this system works.”
- an **illustration**, a drawing or example to be used in making something clearer. “Newspaper illustrations are used by political cartoonists, advertisers and news editors.” “The condition of that country is a vivid illustration of the truth of economic laws.”
- to **imagine** (imăj'in), to make a picture or image in one's mind; to **visuālizē**, see as if it were before one's eyes, in all details; to **devise**, create from its elements; **conceive** by putting thoughts together; to **suppose**, assume as true; to **pretend**, knowing it is not true; to **figure**, calculate, reckon; to **feign**, pretend to have.—**Imagination** (imăj'ină'shun), creative ability, constructiveness, skill.
- imăginable**; **imăginary**, not real; **imaginative**, full of imagination.
- to **im'itate**, follow the general appearance or style, intelligently; **copy**, follow without originality; **em'ulate**, strive to equal; **ape**, copy without understanding, like a monkey; **reproduce**, make one exactly like; **duplicate**, make a second one of; **mim'ic** (mimicking, with a k), imitate with the object of ridiculing, like mimicking somebody's gait or voice; **mock**, ridicule with less idea of copying than the word mimic; **counterfeit** (koun'terfit) especially coinage, criminally; **forge** a document, a signature.
- immē'diately**, directly (dī- or dī-); **at once**, **instantly**, **forthwith**, **presto**, **right away** (Americanism).
- immense**; literally “too large to be measurable.” From Latin *mensurare*, to measure; hence **mensuration**. **Enor'mous**, out of the ordinary; **tremen'dous**, which causes a shudder; **huge**, bulky; **vast**, expansive; **prodigious**, very uncommon; **gigantic** (jī-gan'tik), like a giant; **stupen'dous**, which makes one gape; **colos'sal**, towering.
- to **immerse** or **immerge**, plunge into a liquid.
- Although these two words “immerse” and “immerge” are of identical origin and are used interchangeably, there is a vague idea of lightness in “immerse” (due to the sound of s) and of heaviness in “immerge” (due to the sound of j). Therefore **immerge** would indicate a more permanent action than **immerse**:
- “He was immersed in the baptismal water” (for a very short while). “The piles of the huge building were immersed in the marshy sand” (for good).
- an **immigrant**, one who enters a country to make it his home. See **Emigrant**.

**immor'al**; **wickēd**, intentionally; **wrong**, action, thing; **vicious**; **licen'tious** conduct; **loose**, abandoned, inde'cent.

**imper'ative**, compulsory, obligatory.

The imperative mode or mood in grammar is the form of a verb in which it is used to give orders: Go! Let me go! Let us go! Let them go!

**impe'tuous**, unable to restrain his eagerness; **ar'dent**, burning desire; **hāsty**, **rash**, lacking judgment; **vē'hement**, v'olent feeling; **hot-headed**, **precip'itate**; **headlong** flight, etc.

**im'pious** (im'pūs, not like pī'ous).

**implā'cable**, who or which cannot be placated or pleased after being made angry; **relentless**, **inex'orable**, **inflexible**.

an **imple'ment** (im'pl-ment), a device or tool, in general, but particularly of the larger kind: farming implements, all the tools and implements of a garage. For synonyms, see Instrument.

**importance**, having weight, leading to consequences; **moment**, used especially with an adjective "great moment"; **consequence** that follows an action; **account**, especially in the phrase "of no account."

A person of no importance.....a nōnen'tity

**important**; **weighty** circumstance, argument; **signif'icant**, because it reveals something little known; **interest'ing**; **momen'tous**, deci'sive; **crucial** (kroo'shal), which marks the crux or vital point; **nōtable**, worthy of attention.

**im'pudence** (literally "shamelessness," from pudere, to be ashamed), failure to realize one's relative position; **imper'tinence**, use of words or actions that do not "pertain" to the situation; **in'solence** (literally "contrariness to custom"), use of words or actions that are contrary to well-bred usage; **brāzenness**, resistance to the known sensibilities of others; **nerve**; **cheek** (slang).

to **impose** something on somebody; to **inflict** something unpleasant on somebody; to **lay** a burden, a task, the hands; to **subject** somebody to a penalty; to **saddle** a burden upon; to **pass off** an inferior article; to **impose upon** somebody; to **take advantage** of somebody's weakness, kindness; to **deceive** somebody.

an **impulse** (mental), a desire to act in a certain way, toward or away from. A man's impulses taken as a whole are called his "cōnātion" or desires, as opposed to his "cognition" or knowledge. The impulses are expressed in the form of **temper**. According to McDougall (Outline of Psychology, Scribner's, 1923), man's impulses are "anger, curiosity, fear, reproduction, food-seeking, self-assertion, submission, gregariousness, repulsion, acquisition, laughter, distress."

**in, into**. As a prefix, this often becomes **il, im**: immanent, dwell-in; illuminate, to enlighten. (Do not confuse with the

---

Pronunciation key. Vowels ā ē ī ō ū ŷ as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ä ē ī ō ū ŷ as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; Ä as in father; ēr as in merry; er as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in loud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ä in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.

prefix of same form: in-, il-, im-, meaning "not," as in: infinite, illogical, immature.) Adjectives expressing the idea of "in": **intērior**, situated inside; **inner**, more remote; **internal**, used inside; **inward**, turned away from outside. See Interior.

To go in.....to enter, penetrate (deeply)

To walk forcibly into.....to invade

One who lives in.....an inmate, interne (resident doctor in hospital)

To pour slowly in.....to instill (knowledge)

To put in.....(See Insert)

To shut in.....(See Intern)

**inasmuch** (one word).

**an incen'tive**, a good reason which incites to action like the promise of a reward. A **mo'tive**, the desire which "moves" one to action, often explained after the event as a "reason"; a **stīm'ulus**, that which rouses to action; a **spur** (figurative); an **inducement**, a reward or promise held out for departing from a negative frame of mind. "There is no greater incentive to work than the hope of success."

**an in'cident** is a happening of secondary importance; an **instance** is an example; an **event** is an important happening. See Event.

**to incite**, to goad or encourage somebody, generally to violence, like rebellion, revenge, against somebody else; to **provoke**, do something which calls for action against the one who provoked; to **instigate** a rebellion, etc., be the one who gives the idea of it. "Provoked by the court's rejection of his plea, the prisoner rushed forward, as if to kill the judge." "The agitator has been inciting the people to rebellion." "The man who instigated this scheme won many recruits from the ranks of habitual criminals."

**to include**, to have as one of its parts; to **enclose**, have as an addition. "A circular is enclosed in the letter," it is additional to the letter; "A paragraph is included in the letter," it is part of the letter.

**inclu'sive** (abbreviated, after a number, "incl."), up to and comprising that member: "to 12 incl." means that 12 is in.

**in-cōg'nīt-o** (literally "unknown"), speaking of a man who travels under an assumed or less known name, as the Prince of Wales known in his unofficial travels as "The Earl of Chester" or "Lord Renfrew."

**incomp'arable** (note the accent).

**in'compāt'ible** (literally "unable to agree"), adjective; "Perfect manners and a bad English accent are incompatible in one born of an English-speaking family." "People who have incompatible tempers find each other's company **uncongenial**." "That statement is inconsistent with his previous assertion." "These two women are unsympathetic toward each other."

**incongruous** (in-kong'grō-ūs), adjective; unsuited to the occasion, jarring, laughable; **grotesque** (gro-tesk'). "There is



something incongruous in the appearance of a Hindoo gentleman wearing an Oriental turban with a European frock-coat (a Prince Albert)."

**inconsis'tent**, adjective; which logically misfits. "Your belief in mankind's honesty is inconsistent with the extraordinary distrust you show of every individual." See Incompatible.

an **in'crease** (noun; accent on 1st syllable); an addition, something more of the same kind; **growth**, natural; **multiplication**, repetition of the same thing; **rise**, sudden; **inflation** of prices, etc.

to **increase'** (verb; accent on 2nd syllable), to grow, naturally; to multiply, become many; to **extend**, stretch out; to **develop**, become uncovered; to **enhance**, raise, as "to enhance the prestige of a firm."

an **indention**, or "tooth-mark." In Printing, a small white space left at the beginning of a line to call attention to the beginning of a new paragraph. An entire passage may be indented, as a quotation used without quotation marks, or something much emphasized. If the first line is flush with the margin and the subsequent lines are indented, the arrangement is called a "hang indent."

an **index**, plural **indexes**, lists at the end of books; scientific plural **indices**, signs or marks.

**indifference** to a thing, coldness, lukewarmness; **nonchalance**, personal lack of enthusiasm; **carelessness**.

**in'direct**; **dévious** ways; **circuitous** (ser-kū'itus) route, round about; **oblique** (o-blēk'), not at right angles.

**indoors** (adverb): "Let us stay indoors while it rains." The adjective form is **indoor**. "Card games are an indoor pastime."

an **indūcement**, a promise held out, or consideration offered, to secure a changed attitude of mind, especially a change from a negative attitude. "Neither the large salary offered nor the promise of a house and an auto were sufficient inducement for him to break up his home and move to the mine." An **incentive**, good reason, strong reminder of an expectation or a promise: "The promise of a bonus to the first gang that broke through acted as an incentive to the men to renew their efforts." A **stimulus**, that which rouses to action: "Competition always acts as a stimulus in creating new methods." A **stimulant** is a strong drink or drug, alcohol, tea, coffee, cocaine.

to **indulge**, or **indulge in**, a habit, a pleasure, drink, etc. (i.e., enjoy it freely); to **indulge** a person (i.e., allow him to do as he pleases). "The fond mother indulges her child and gives him all he wants." "He indulges his liking for strong liquor."

**in fact** (two words).

**infallible**, adjective; incapable of error; **unerring**, who does not actually err; **certain**, bound to happen (event); **sure** (person), having no doubt about it; **cocksure**, arrogantly sure of his ground.

**infat'uated** with somebody, madly and foolishly in love with; cap-tivated by.

to **infer**, assume from something stated; to **deduce** a conclusion logi-cally; to **conclude** that a thing is so and so, after examination; to **imply**, suggest something not stated. A person **suggests**; his words **imply**; his hearers **infer** from his words.

**in'finite**, endless, boundless, limitless (opposite: fi'nite, note the pronunciation).—**Infin'ites'imal**, exceedingly small.

**infin'itive**, the form of the verb which expresses action without a subject; "to see," "to look."

The infin'itive in English is usually expressed by the simple present form with "to": to go, to see; except after can, may, might, could, would, shall, should, dare, etc., when the "to" is dropped: "I dare speak," "He might go," "We can see" (not: I dare to speak, He might to go, etc.).

The split infinitive is very often permissible. See Split.

to **inform** somebody of something; to **apprise** somebody of some-thing; **acquaint** somebody with a fact; **tell** somebody of some-thing; **teach** somebody something; **instruct** somebody in an art; **enlighten** somebody concerning something.

**informant**, one who gives a particular piece of information; **in-former**, a police or professional informant, a spy.

**-ing**. A suffix of action, meaning "which does." Example: pleas-ing = which pleases. The form **-ing** must not be used when there is no action: "He looked at his clothes disgustedly" (he was disgusted; no action: "He looked at his clothes disgust-ingly," would mean that he did disgust someone else).

The form **-ing** is often called a gerund (jër'und) (participial action-noun or action name-word) when it has the force of a verb in the infinitive. "I came to see you" (to see, infinitive), "I came before seeing you" (seeing, gerund). In English the gerund is used after all prepositions except "to": By being there, through seeing, in writing, etc.

Before adding **-ing** drop a final -e: write, writing; unless it leads to confusion; **dying**, one about to be dead; **dyeing**, changing the color of; **singing**, one who sings; **singeing** (sin'jing), one who singes or burns.

The implied subject of a form in **-ing** used in an adjectival clause must be the same as the expressed subject of the main clause: "Arriving (i.e., as he arrived) at the station, he was met by his brother" (not: "Arriving . . . , his brother met him").

**ingē'nious**, showing cleverness; **ingē'nuous**, not sophisticated, simple. "He invented an ingē'nious device to shine shoes." "It is a shame to take advantage of such an ingē'nuous person.—**Ingenuousness** (in-jēn'ū-ūs-nes), or simplicity, is not the same thing as in'gēnū'ity, skill. "I admire the in'gēnū'ity of the pātent, but I do not consider it practical." "Her look of ingē'nuousness won her every heart."

to **inject** (literally "throw in"); to **introduce** one thing into another, but without force; to **transfuse** blood from one person to an-other.

A device for making injections.....a syringe (sîr'inj)

an **in'jury**, a harm; wrong; damage; loss; hurt (suffering). "Adding insult to injury," hurting one's feelings after causing him a physical loss.

**inquiry** (in-kwî'ri, like inquire; often in U. S. only, in'kwîri, to comply with the usual rule of accentuation of words ending in -y).—Search for facts; **inquest**, legal inquiry after a death, etc.; **inquisition**, unjust or tyrannical examination of beliefs, acts, etc.; **investigation** into causes of something regrettable; **examination**, test in general; **search** of a container; **scrutiny**, close detailed search; **research**, learned study.

an **insect** (literally "a divided one").

### Some words used on this subject

To flit, flutter about, sting, hum, buzz, hiss. A beetle, June bug, cockchafer, glow-worm, wasp, hornet, bee; honey, wax, hive, caterpillar, chrysalis, lady-bird, butterfly, moth, silk-worm, fly, spider, spider's web, ant, ant-hill, grasshopper, cricket, cicada, flea, bug, head, thorax (body rēgion), abdomen (posterior region).

One interested in the study of insects.....an entomologist

For classification of insects, see any Zoology or Entomology book.

to **insert** (literally "to join closely in"); to **insert** a missing letter in a word; **interpolate**, insert to make it appear as if it were the original: "Several verses in the Bible are the work of interpolators"; **intercalate**, insert as alternate sheets in a book, etc.; **inset** a smaller thing within a larger one, as a small photograph in the middle of a picture page, or a small advertising sheet in a whole newspaper; **intrude** irrelevant remarks in someone else's conversation, etc.

**inspection**, official looking into; **examination**, general testing; **scrutiny**, close detailed search; **inquiry**, search of facts; **inquest**, legal inquiry into a death, etc.; **inquisition**, unjust or tyrannical examination of beliefs, acts, etc.; **investigation** into causes of something regrettable; **search** of a container, house, etc.; **research**, learned study.

in **spite of**, three words (no idea of "spite"); **despite**, one word; **notwithstanding**.

**instincts**.—Primitive and inherited groups of tendencies to behavior. There is no absolutely recognized list of instincts. The following, by Dr. McDougall of Harvard (Outline of Psychology), is as good as any: Instinct of escape, combat, repulsion; parental instinct; appeal, mating, curiosity, submission, assertion, gregariousness, food-seeking, acquisition, construction, laughter.

an **instrument**, a fine tool, surgical, optical, etc.; an **implement**, generally large, as agricultural implements, plows, and harvesters; a (or an) **utensil**, strictly useful and coarse, as "kitchen utensils"; a tool of a trade, carpenter's, mason's, and generally small; an **apparatus**, a complete outfit for a

particular purpose; a **machine** (ma-shēn'), a more or less automatic tool with many moving parts; a **device**, any means of achieving an end; this applies not only to the tools, but to the way they are used; a **contrivance**, a cleverly devised arrangement; an **appliance**, a device for a particular purpose: "appliances for the lame"; a **collection** of instruments; a **kit** of tools; an **outfit** for a particular purpose; a **canteen**, military utensils; a **contraption** (humorous), home-made.

**intellect**, the part that "knows"; **cognition**; different from **intelligence** or general ability to understand.

"Plato was one of the world's greatest intellects."  
 "Animals have no intellect, as they cannot deal with abstractions, but they have been demonstrated to possess intelligence of a primitive kind." "To find one's way home when the landmarks have been changed requires intelligence; to appreciate mathematics is a mark of intellect."

**intellectual**, **brainy**, **thinking** (person, process).

**intelligence**, see also **intellect**; **understanding**; **comprehension**; **brains**; **sense**; **sagacity** to perform a specific act; **keenness**; **sharpness**; **smartness**; **cleverness**.

**intelligible**, which can be understood. "A Chinaman's sing-song, even when he speaks English, is hardly intelligible to the average American."

to **intercede** on behalf of somebody; **plead** for somebody, somebody's cause; to **interpose** an obstacle in somebody's way, an objection to a cause.

**interest**; **concern**: "it is a matter of great public interest or concern"; **feeling**: "I experience no interest in it; I have no feelings in the matter"; **advantage**: "It is to everybody's interest or advantage or benefit."

Lack of interest.....ap'athy

**in'teresting**, note accent on 1st syllable, not on -est' as often mispronounced.

**interfe'rence**, "butting in"; **intercession**, plea; **intervention**, stepping in. "John's intervention in the quarrel, also his intercession on behalf of the boy, was considered by Henry an unwarranted interference with his right to deal with his son in his own way."

**intē'rior** (adjective), which is situated inside: an interior passage; an interior chamber; **inner**, more remote: an inner thought; the inner significance; **internal**, working or applied inside: an internal complaint; an internal regulation; Internal Revenue; **inward**, turned from the outside: the Inward Passage; an inward movement.

an **interjection**. In Grammar, a part of speech expressing a sudden emotion, such as pain, joy, curiosity, anger, etc. Interjections

---

Pronunciation key. Vowels: æ ī ō ū ŷ as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ă ē ī ō ū ŷ as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; ă as in father; ēr æ in merry; er as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in laud. Tonic accent (ˈ) after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ă in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.

do not modify other words; they are used by themselves and constitute the most primitive form of the sentence. They are written with a **note of exclamation**: "Oh!" (do not confuse with "O," without an h, used before the name of a person: O king); Alas! Shame! Whoa! Why! Encore! Bravo! Oo! (in pain).—As interjections are spontaneous outbursts, the interjections of each generation are closely akin to slang: "Wow! Gee! Gosh!"; while the interjections of a previous period sound artificial and bookish: "I' faith! Gadzooks! Ods-bodikins!" Interjections are usually a mild form of swearing, and they are consequently borrowed either from a perverted appeal to the Deity and holy things ("Gosh!", "Gee!", "Holy Smokes!"), "For the love of Pete!"), or from the lowest depth of unpleasant realism.

**intermēdiate** (adjective), in the middle of a sequence of two or more: "Neither of these is just right; I want an intermediate size"; **medium**, not excessive(ly): a cord of medium length; **middle**, equidistant: keeping a middle course.

to **intern**, to shut in, as a lunatic, a prisoner in war time; an **interne**, a resident hospital physician; **internment**.

**interrogation**, question. **Note of interrogation**, see Question Mark.

an **interval**, time or space; a **space**, distance; **spell**, time; **pause**, short stoppage; a lapse of time; an **intermission**, between acts of a play; **interruption** of work; **interlude**, play between.

In the interval.....meantime (one word), meanwhile

to **intimate** is merely to state or hint; to **insinuate** is to hint something unpleasant; an **innuendo** is a veiled insinuation.

**into** (one word).—Verbs: To **enter**, go into; **penetrate**, go deeply into; **dip**, put into a liquid, leaving part out; **plunge**, entirely under; **immerse**, put into water; **douse**, quickly; **sink**, fall to bottom; **dive**, deliberately jump in.

to **introduce** gently; **insert** a small missing part; **inset** a small additional thing in a larger one; **interpolate**, spuriously; **intercalate** leaves or sheets.

to **intrude** (in-trood'), come in upon a private affair; to **interfere** ("butt in") on behalf of somebody; **intervene** with a plea.

**invalid**, note two meanings and two pronunciations; an **in'valid**, sick person; **inval'id**, adjective, not valid, not good, void, null.

to **invent** something new; to **create** out of nothing; **discover** a law or principle that was unknown; **frame**; **contrive**; **devise**.

to **invite**, an **invitation**. The long syllable with the i of invite becomes short when a suffix is added as **mine**, **mīneral**; **finite**, **infinite**.

**-ion**. Words of 3, 4, or 5 syllables ending in **-ian**, **-ion**, **-tion**, **-sion** are accented on the preceding syllable: **mus'cian**, **phys'cian**, **barbā'rian**, **histo'rian**, **arithmet'cian**, **Armē'nian**, **humanitā'rian**, **adaptā'tion**, **adop'tion**, **decep'tion**, **exclū'sion**, **felicītā'tion**, **imitā'tion**, **junct'ion**, **inten'tion**, **erup'tion**. The longer words generally have an earlier accent also; **hu-man'it-a'rian**; **fe-lic'it-a'tion**.

**Iris**, Pl. **Irísēs**. (Iris, the goddess of the rainbow) the colored circle around the pupil or eye; also a flower.

Many-colored effect.....**Irídes'ence** (only one R)

**irreg'ular verbs**. See list under Verb.

**irreligious**, opposed to religion; **non-religious**, having nothing to do with religion; **sec'ular**; lay.

to **ir'ritate**, to make one angry, rub one the wrong way: "This shoe is too tight, it irritates me"; to **annoy**, cause a slightly unpleasant feeling; **exasperate**, cause one to lose his temper; **aggravate**, used only in the sense of "making more serious": "His denial only aggravates the offense."

**-ise**. This spelling, a survival of out-of-date forms, is still used in a few words which should be written **-ize**.

### Words in **ISE**

advertise  
chastise  
comprise  
compromise  
disfranchise  
enfranchise  
enterprise  
exercise  
franchise  
improvise  
merchandise  
surmise  
surprise

analyze  
apologize  
authorize  
baptize  
centralize  
characterize  
civilize  
colonize  
crystallize  
demoralize  
economize  
emphasize  
extemporize  
fertilize  
generalize

### Words in **IZE**

harmonize  
minimize  
modernize  
monopolize  
moralize  
organize  
ostracize  
patronize  
philosophize  
plagiarize  
realize  
recognize  
reorganize  
revolutionize  
satirize

socialize  
soliloquize  
specialize  
standardize  
subsidize  
summarize  
symbolize  
sympathize  
tyrannize  
utilize  
visualize  
vitalize  
vulcanize

**-ish** (-like), a suffix used (1) to form adjectives from nouns, meaning "like," with an idea of disparagement: bookish, childish; (2) to form adjectives from adjectives, meaning an inferior form: reddish, tallish; (3) to form names of nationality, etc., without any idea of inferiority: Polish, Jewish, Turkish.

**Island** (the **s** is a mistake, now part of the language; used to be spelled rightly **iland**, from an Anglo-Saxon word that has no connection with the Latin *Insula*, from which *Isle* is derived).

**-ism**. Words of three syllables ending in **-ism**, have the accent on the first syllable of the word: al'truism, ar'chaism, bar'barism, cat'aclysm, crit'icism, egoism (ê or ē), egotism, hēr'oism, mys'ticism, op'timism, or'ganism, Ju'daism, He'braism, Gal'licism, Ger'manism.

Words of more than three syllables ending in **-ism** are not subject to any rule, and have to be known individually: dil'ettant'ism, Amēr'icanism, Cathol'icism, Prot'estantism, anach'ronism (an-ak'ro-niz-m).

**iso-**. Greek root meaning "equal," used as a prefix: **Isōtherm**, **Isōsceles**.

**issue** (ish'ū), way out; **exit**, way of escape; **outcome** of an argument; **event**; **result**; **outflow**, liquid; **discharge**, abscess; **utterance**, voice; **delivery**, speech; **offspring**, family; **edition**, book.

**-itis**, a suffix used in medicine to indicate an acute affection: bronchitis, laryngitis, arthritis, appendicitis, as distinguished from a chronic or more enduring condition, indicated by the suffix **-osis**: tuberculosis, acidosis, arterio-sclerosis. (The pronunciation ē'tis, instead of i'tis, is a highbrowism and contrary to general rules of pronunciation, which demand the anglicizing of long vowels in words of Latin and Greek origin.)

**its**. Belonging to it. Do not use the apostrophe in this sense. **Its** is one word, like **his**, **her**, **my**, **their**. The word **it's** is different from **its**. **It's** is an abbreviation of **it is** or **it has**: **It's** early (**It is**). If you could use **his** or **her**, the word is **its**: "Whatever **its** (**his**, **her**) merits." "**Its** (**his**, **her**) bark is worse than **its** (**his**, **her**) bite." In the phrase **its own**, the word **its** is the possessive adjective and therefore written without the apostrophe.

**itself** (one word); notice that it takes only one s. But it may be written in two words with a different meaning, giving emphasis to the ownership of a consciousness called the "Self." Compare **Oneself**.

Appearing of itself.....spontaneous

**-ize**. Words of three syllables ending in **-ize** or **-ise** have the accent on the first syllable: sym'pathize, ad'vertise, scan'dalize, stab'ilize, fo'calize, fer'tilize.

Words of four or five syllables ending in **-ize** or **-ise** have the accent on the same syllable as the word from which they are derived: sec'ularize, partic'ularize, par'allelize, nat'uralize, apol'ogize, char'acterize.

A few words that should be spelled **-ize** are still, by a survival of an older form, usually spelled **-ise**.

For list of **-ise** and **-ize** spelling, see under **-ise**.

**izzard**, the old name of the last letter of the alphabet, now called **zed** (or, in the U. S. only, **zee**). "He knows his subject from **A** to **Izzard**," or "from **Alfalfa** to **Zinc**."

# J

**j.** This sound is a very rapid and practically inseparable combination of the sounds **d** and **zh**. It is the voiced consonant corresponding to the voiceless **ch**. It is usually written **j** or **g**. When spelled **g** (as in **gin**, **gem**) it is called "g soft." Before the vowels **e** and **i**, **g** is soft (pronounced **j**), except in pure Anglo-Saxon words such as **get**, **giddy**, **geese**, **gift**, **gig**, **gill**, **gild**, **gimlet**, **girl**, **girdle**, **give**; but before **a**, **o**, **u**, a **g** has to be followed by an **e** mute or an **i** to retain its **j** sound: **George** (**jorj**), **allegiance** (**alē'jans**; the **i** is mute). Hence words ending in **-ge** drop the final **e** when adding **-ing** (**manage**, **manag-ing**), but they retain the **e** when adding **-able** (**manageable**).

As a sound, **j** represents an idea of hesitation, of sudden stoppage: **jolt**, **jar**, **jerk**. Hence we notice more hesitation in the modern form "jump" than in the older form "leap."

**a jaw**, a man'dible. Greek **gnathos**; hence **prōg'nāthous**, having the jaws projecting forward. "Negroes are **prog'nathous**; Europeans are usually **orthog'nathous**."

**a jewel**, ready to wear; a **gem**, precious stone, unset; **sōlitaire**, single stone; **necklace**; **lavalliere** (**lā'vā-līēr**), chain with a single pendant; **tiara** (**tē-ā'rā** or **tī-ā'rā**), headpiece; **dī'ādēm**, headband; **crown**, king's; **coronet**, nobleman's.—**Jewelry** (three syllables: **jū'ēl-rī**), spelled in England, under French influence, **jewellery**.

See list of gems under **Stones**.

**ji.** Sound heard in **giant** (tall man), **gibe** or **jibe** (mockery).

**ji.** Sound heard in **giraffe**, **gymnasium**, **gymnastics**, **gypsy**.

**a job** (colloquial), a specific piece of work to be done; by extension, an **office**, a **position**, **situation**. **Work**, anything done seriously which implies a resistance; **craft**, a skilled trade; **pursuit**, line of endeavor, either as work or play; **calling**, chosen life-work, especially a noble one; **vocation**, life work, especially one indicated by native ability; **āvocation**, sideline of work, done because it interests; **occupation**, anything done to pass the time, seriously or otherwise; **trade**, work of exchange and barter, often used also for a craft; **profession**, "white collar" job, often requiring a liberal training, as a doctor's, lawyer's; **employment**, being occupied in paid work for somebody; **business**, occupation of a speculative nature.

A person's position or office is sometimes indicated by a suffix: **apprenticeship**, **priesthood**, **presidency**.

**to join**, put end to end or very closely together; **to unite** by making one; **ū'nify**, by making like one; **combine**, put together, each element keeping its identity; **associate** for work together in friendly fashion; **consol'idate** for greater strength; **amal'gamate**, each losing its identity; **concāt'enate**, make a chain



of; **coalesce** (kō-ă-lēs'), become solidly one, as if nourished from the same root; **confed'erate**, swear mutual assistance.

**journalese** (colloquial). The nickname given to the far-fetched written English of newspapers. Examples of journalese: a tot (child), star (actress), slayer (murderer), probe (investigation), quiz (examination), solon (senator).

a **journalist**. In America, a writer for journals (i.e., weekly and monthly publications); in England, a newspaper writer, called in U. S. a **newspaper man**.

a **journey**. See Travel.

**joy**, emotion of satisfaction; **gladness**, occasioned by a particular event; **pleasure**, satisfaction of a desire; **happiness**, state of continued joy; **ec'stasy**, heavenly transports.—Adjectives: **glad**, **happy**, **cheerful**, **mirthful**, **blithe**, **merry**, **jolly** (person); **jovial** (attitude); **jocose** (mood); **beatific** (exalted mysticism).—Noun: a **bon vivant** (bōng' vē-vâng'); an **epicure** (good eater); a **wit** (one who says humorous things), an **op'timist** (who sees the good side of things).

**jū**. Sound heard in Jew (Hebrew), jewel, jewelry, jubilee.

to **judge**, to find that a proposition is true or false; to **decide**, arrive at a conclusion; to **adjudicate** a case, settle it; to **decree** authoritatively; to **arbitrate** by previous consent of the parties.—Noun: **judgment**, an old irregular spelling, now being discarded in England for the more regular form with an -e: **judgement**.—Adjectives: **judi'cial**, done by a judge or pertaining to the courts of law, legal, juridical: "according to judicial precedents"; **judi'cious**, wise, sensible: "a judicious move."

**judic-**. Latin root meaning "judge." Derived forms: **judi'cious**, **adjudicate**, **prēj'udice** ("judgment in advance"). See Judge.

to **jump**. The sound **J** indicates slowness, deliberation; **Ū** is for movement in height; **MP** is the sound of a mass, **M**, coming to a sudden stop, **P**. This word is of recent origin—16th century—and purely imitative. It is used to describe the feelings of the person who does it: "I was afraid to jump." To **leap**, idea of speed, **L**, depth over which one leaps, **EA**, stop, **P**; therefore "leap" is used when we think more of the height or depth of the obstacle than of the sensation: "to leap over a fence, across a ditch."

**jur-**. Latin root meaning "law" and "swear." Derived forms (in the sense of "law"): **jūrist**, **jūrisdiction**, **jūrisprudence**; (in the sense of "swear"): **per'jūry**, **jury**, **abjure** ("swear off"). See Law.

**just**; **impartial**, favoring neither party; **right**, true, square; **eq'uitable**, dealing equally with all; **lēgal**, according to law; **legit'imate**, according to custom; **condign**, deserved, adequate: "condign punishment"; **righteous** person.

Pronunciation key. Vowels **ā ē ī ō ū** as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; **ă ɛ ɪ ɔ ʌ** as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; **ā** as in father; **ēr** as in merry; **er** as in mercer; **on** as in loud; **au** as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (**ā** in senate). Consonants: **g** always as in go; **th** as in thief; **dh** as **th** in mother; **ng** as in sing or in singer; **ng-g** as **ng** in finger. See Syllables.

A course of action may be just without being **expédient**, desirable. Strict justice is tempered by **mercy**, dislike of inflicting hardships, or regard for the feelings of the culprit. A state's ideas of **justice** are expressed in its **laws**, or **statutes**, grouped in its **codes** (lég<sup>al</sup>, juridical, jurisprudence); an individual's sense of right and wrong is determined by his **conscience**, his honesty, honor. An organization's sense of justice and expediency guides its **policies** and methods.

**to justify** a course of action, show that it was just; **to excuse** an act, believe that the person was right or that the act was unavoidable; **condone** an offense, refuse to find fault with the evil-doer; **support** a person or a course of action, think it is right and say so; **vin'dicate** a réputation, prove that a course of action which has been attacked was right.

**juven-**. Latin root meaning "young." Derived forms: **jū'venile**, **rejū'venate**. See Young.

# K

**kā**, sound heard in **calf**, the young of the cow; **calm**, quiet.

**kē**, sound heard in **chemical**, **chemist**, **chemistry**.

**kē**, sound heard in **quay**, shipping dock; **key** to open a door; **Keys**, Florida; **keel** of a ship; **Khēdive** of Egypt; **Chianti** (kē-an'tē), wine.

**keen** (originally meant "brave, fierce"); **sharp** (originally meant "scraping"); **intense** (literally "stretched toward"); **deep**, **profound**; **eager**, **ardent**; **intelligent**, who understands.

to **keep** (Past tense **kept**).—Latin **custos**, a keeper; hence a **custō-dian**, **custody**. To hold; retain, hold back.

a **keeper**, of park; **guardian** of a person; **custodian** of a public building; **cūrā'tor** of the collections in a museum (the curator is a scientist); **warden** of a prison; **con'stable**, policeman.

a **key**.—Latin **clavis**; hence **clav'icule**, the key-bone or collar-bone; **clavier**, keyboard of a piano.—French **clef**; hence **clef**, musical symbol.

**kī**. Sound heard in **chimera** (kī-mē'ra), **kind**, **kine** (cows), **kīte** (bird, toy), **chiropody**, **chiropractor**.

to **kill**.—Latin **cædo**, **cæsum**; hence **sūlcide**, self-killing; **hōmicide**, man-killing; **pātricide**, father-killing; **incision**, a cut in.—To put to death rapidly; **destroy** vermin; **murder** brutally; **assassinate** criminally; **slay**, poetic and newspaper; **slaughter** like cattle; **massacre** in large numbers; **butcher** awkwardly; **execute** legally; **lynch** by mob rule; **guillotine**, with head-cutting machine; **hang** from noose; **electrocute** in electric chair; **dispatch** a chicken or something of little value; **decimate** (dēs'imāt) a population, kill one in ten; **delēte**, mark out a sign or word in printer's proof.

a **kind** of, a sort of. Do not say "these kind of things"; say "such things" or "this kind of thing."

**kind** (adjective); **unselfish**; **generous**; **loving**; **attentive**; **good-natured**; **friendly**; **compassionate**, who takes pity on others.

**kindly** (adjective), **kindlier**, **kindest**; **benēv'olent**; **gē'nial**. Adverb: "in a kindly way."

a **king**.—Latin **rex**, **regis**; hence **rēgal** pomp; **rēgent**, substitute for king in infancy or insanity. Old French **roy**; hence **royal**, pertaining to kings; **royalist**, one who believes in kingly government.

King's representative .....viceroy  
King's son .....prince  
King's outfit .....regalia

See also **Royalty**.

**kir-**, sound of the Greek word *cheir*, meaning "hand," heard in **chiromancy**, palmistry; **chiropodist**, foot doctor; **chiropractor**, spine doctor.

**kitty corner**, misspelling of **cātercorner**, meaning "four-cornered," from French "quatre coins"; diagonally across. "Our house is cātercorner to the drug store."

to **know** (Past tense: I **knew**; Present Perfect: I have **known**).—Latin *nosco*, *notum*, to be acquainted with; hence **nōtātion**, a way of making known. Latin *scio*, to know a thing learnt; hence **science**, classified knowledge.—Greek *gignosco*; hence **agnos'tic**, one who considers the ultimate facts of life unknowable; to **cog'nize** (a learned word), be aware of; **rec'og-nize**, know again; **recognition**, act of knowing again, act of knowing officially.

Knowing a subject or person slightly...acquainted with

Knowing a subject intimately.....con'versant with

Knowing a fact.....cog'nizant of

One who announces future events.....a prōphet

One who knows and tells one's fate....an or'acle

One who knows and enjoys an art....a connoisseur (kon'-es-er)

One who is well-known.....a celeb'ity

Who knows too much to enjoy.....sōphis'ticated (adjective)

One who knows too much and believes

too little.....a cynic (sīn'ik)

To travel unknown.....to travel incog'nito

One who does not know how to read....an illit'erate

Knowledge based on instinct.....intūition

Known to everybody who cares to

look .....pātent (adjective)

**knowledge** (nōl'ēj); **cognition**, a word used in psychology, opposed to character or cōnātion, knowledge being considered as stātic and character as dynam'ic; **cog'nizance**: "to have cognizance of the facts; **ken** (Scotch): "within my ken": "as far as I know"; **information** as to facts; **acquaintance** with people; **familiarity** with facts or people; **dātā**, the given facts in a case; **erudition**, profound knowledge of a learned subject.

#### Some useful words on this subject

Ēr'udite (learnēd', scholarly person); didac'tic (used in teaching: "The newspaper cartoonist often uses didactic methods"); in'tellect (the group of reasoning powers); intel'ligence (ability to understand); acu'men (keenness of perception); misapprehension (faulty understanding: "to labor under a misapprehension of the other person's motives").

**kri**. Sound heard in crying, Christ, Chrysler, Crichton (the Admirable).

**kri**. Sound heard in Christian, Christmas.

**ks**, a sound written **cc** in **accept**, **cks** in **socks**, **chs** in **aurechs**, **cs** in **ecstasy**, **ques** in **cheques** (European spelling), **ks** in **breaks**, **x** in **extend**.

- ksep.** Sound heard in accept (receive); except (take out).
- kū.** Sound heard in cue (billiard, indication); queue (a pigtail, or a line of people or carriages); Kew (city); Cuba (island); cube, cubic (geometry); cuirass (armor, better pronounced kwē-rās'); Ku Klux Klan (society); (ac)cumulate (gather); cute (smart).
- kū.** See dictionary under co or cu; sound heard in colonel (officer); kernel (of nut); color (shade); cover (hide).
- kw.** A sound generally written qu.
- kwau.** Sound heard in quadrangle (yard); quadruped (four-footed animal); quality (ability); quantity (number); quarantine (for sickness); quarrel (argue); quarry (excavation); quart (two pints); quarter (one-fourth); quorum (sufficient number).
- kwē.** Sound heard in cuirass (armor); queer (strange); queen (ruler); query (question).
- kwō.** Sound heard in quote (mention); quotient (result of division).

# L

**lady**; plural **ladies**; possessive singular **lady's**: "a lady's maid"; plural **ladies'**: "ladies' hats"; "a ladies' man."

**land**. Latin *terra* or *terra firma*; see **Earth**. **Continent**, large extent of continuous land; **country**, political division; **island**, land entirely surrounded by water; **peninsula**, land partly surrounded by water; **isthmus** (is'mus), narrow neck of land like the Isthmus of Panama.

(From an ownership standpoint) **real estate**; a **domain**, large inherited estate; **property**; **farm**; **acreage** (ā'krāj); a tract undivided; a **subdivision**, cut up into streets ready for the building of houses; the **premises**, land, etc., occupied.

**language**. From Latin *lingua*, "the tongue"; the spoken language is the reality, written language being merely an attempt to fix speech.

The language of a country.....the vernacular, formerly called also the vulgar tongue

The language of a trade.....the parlance ("in movie parlance")

The language of a section.....a dialect

An irregular but accepted form of language.....an idiom  
See **Speech**.

**large** in every dimension; **great** in importance and length or height; **tall** in height only; **big** in bulk chiefly; **volu'minous**, bulky; **immense**, "too large to be measured"; **colos'sal**, towering; **con'summate**, accomplished, thorough; **ample**, of fully sufficient proportions.

**last**, one that comes after all the others; **latest**, one that comes most recently, but may be followed by others.

**late** (adjective and adverb), opposite of **early**: "He arrived late" (adverb: at the end of the time limit); "a late delivery" (adjective: one that takes place near the time limit). **Tardy** (adjective, U. S. only): "He is often tardy at school." **Later**, which comes after another: "He came by a later train" (i.e., a train after the one he had expected to take); **postē'rior**, which happened after another: a postē'rior event, statement; **sub'sequent**, which happened when the main thing was over: "a subsequent effect of the measure"; **latest**, **newest**: "The latest bulletins hold out some hope of recovery."

Do not confuse **later** with **latter**: "a later model, a later invention" (one that comes after). "Los Angeles and San

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels: æ as in *mate*, *meet*, *mite*, *mote*, *mute*, *my*; ā as in *mat*, *met*, *mitt*, *not*, *nut*, *pit*; ē as in *father*; ēr as in *mercy*; er as in *mercer*; ou as in *loud*; au as in *laud*. Tonic accent (ˈ) after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ā in *senate*). Consonants: g always as in *go*; th as in *thief*; dh as in *mother*; ng as in *sing* or in *singer*; ng-g as in *finger*. See **Syllables**.

Francisco are the two largest cities of California; the **latter** (meaning San Francisco, the one last mentioned) is in the northern part of the State, the former (meaning Los Angeles, the one first mentioned) in the southern part."

To cause to be late.....to delay

To put off until later.....to defer, postpone, adjourn

One who is always behind.....a procrastinator

See Defer.

**later-**. Latin root meaning "side." Derived forms: **lăt'eral**, **collăt'eral**, **êquillăt'eral**. See Side.

**Latin** prefixes and roots.

See lists under Prefixes and Roots.

**to laugh** (lâf), **laughing**, **laughed** (lâft), **laughter** (lâf'ter). Latin *rideo*, *risum*; hence **risible**, able to laugh, or causing laughter; to **deride**, **derision**, "laughing down" an idea or a person; **ridic'ulous**, laughable.—To **giggle**, laugh in a restrained manner, with catches of the breath, often in a silly manner; **snicker**, laugh with a suppressed sneer; **snigger**, a little more openly than snicker; **mock** somebody, laugh at him openly; **chuckle** to oneself, under one's breath, over a small triumph; **titter**, laugh with suppressed mirth, as in church, in the wrong place; **cackle** with catches of the breath, loudly; **guffaw** boisterously, in a vulgar manner; **burst out laughing** after trying to keep a serious face; **roar with laughter** as a spontaneously amusing exhibition; **shake one's sides** in unrestrained mirth; **grin** with a malicious look; **crow** over a defeated enemy, with a smile and much talk; **gloat** over a new toy, with delight and much ardor; **jübilate**, rejoice over good news.

**Laughing** and **smiling** are now claimed to be of entirely different origins. "Laughter is the antidote to sympathy" (McDougall), "Man alone suffers so deeply that he had to invent laughter" (Nietzsche).

See Smile, Sneer.

**a law**. Latin *lex*, *legis*, a law or statute; hence **lêgal**, according to law; **legit'imate**, according to the law of custom; **priv'ilege**, a private law. Latin *jus*, *juris*, law as a science; hence **jurisprudence**, the science of law; a **jurist**, a legal technician; **jurisdiction**, the limits within which a judge's power is effective. Latin *judex*, a judge; hence **judic'ial**, pertaining to the magistrature; **judi'cious**, indicating good judgment. Greek *nomos*; hence **êcôn'omy**, the laws of good housekeeping.

### Some words used on this subject

A **stăt'ute** (enacted law), the common law (the unwritten law of England and the U. S.), a code (arrangement of statutes in one order), a **căn'on** (rule); **êquity** (justice based on right and wrong as independent of statute law; equity rules are now usually embodied in the statutes); **pēnal** (providing penalties, as the penal code, which states what must not be done); **crim'inal** (pertaining to the punishment of crimes); a **provi'so** (a clause introducing a condition); a

**contract** (an agreement between parties); a **tort** (violation of private right, except in a matter of breach of contract); an **offense** (violation of public right); a **remedy** (legal means of redress), a **suit** (process of law), an **injunction** (order by the court forbidding the doing of a threatened wrong), an **affidavit** (written testimony under oath), **procedure** (the method recognized for securing redress of a wrong), a **trial** (the entire presentation of a case before a competent court; in criminal procedure, the actual presentation of the facts and examination of the witnesses before the jury); a **plea** (a statement for or against).

**lay** (Past tense of **to lie**); "After lunch yesterday, I lay down (= I did lie down) for a few minutes." See other verb **Lay**.

**to lay** (Past tense **laid**), to put down.

The hen lays an egg a day. Lay your hats down on the couch before you enter. I laid my hat on the couch and went in. He has mislaid my letter. I do not remember where I have laid my hat. She laid a dollar bill on the counter. The rain has laid the dust.

**lē**. Sound heard in **lien** (attachment on property), **lean** (not fat), **liege** (vassal), **least** (smallest), **leased** (rented).

**to lead** (pronounced **lēd**). Past tense **lēd**. Latin **duco**; hence to **traduce**, expose in public disgrace: "He was traduced as an impostor, although no man was ever more sincere": **induce**, lead into; **produce**, lead forth; **deduction**, leading from one point to another in argument; to **abduct**, lead away; **conduct**, lead one's endeavors together to form a whole. To **marshal** one's forces for a purpose; to **direct** in a certain line, without oneself moving; **guide**, by going alongside; **precede**, go before; **proceed**, go on with what was started.

**lead** (pronounced **lēd**), the name of a mineral.—Latin **plumbus**; hence a **plumber** (**plūm'er**), lead-pipe expert; **plumb**, a vertical line indicated by a lead on a string.

**a leader**. Latin **dux**, same root as **duco**, **ductum**; hence **conductor**, **producer**.—Greek **agogos**; hence a **demagogue**, leader of the people; **pedagogue**, teacher; **synagogue**, place where Jews meet.

**a leaf** (**lēf**), plural **leaves**.—Latin **folium**; hence **fōliage**, all the leaves of a tree; **fōliated**, leaf-like; **fōllyō**, a leaf of a ledger, or a full-size sheet of paper; **trēfoil**, three-leaf clover.—A **blade** of grass; a **sheet** of paper; a **page** of a book.

For names of trees as indicated by their leaves, and for names of different kinds of leaf formation, see any High School Botany.

**to lean** on one side (Past tense **leant**, pronounced **lēnt**, or **leaned**, pronounced **lēnd**). From the Anglo-Saxon word **hlinian**, connected with the Greek root **clinein**, whence the Latin forms from which we derive **incline**, lean forward; **decline**, lean downward; **inclination**, a leaning toward. To **lean** on something for support; **lean to** or **toward** an opinion; **incline** (figuratively) to or toward; **tip** at the top; **tilt** unsteadily; **dip** a



flag; **slant**, firmly and permanently, as a stroke in handwriting.

**to leap**. (Past tense **leaped** or **leapt**, pronounced **lēpt** or **lēpt**.) Latin *salio*, saltum; hence **sāliēnt**, which leaps to the eye; a **sāll**y, a leap forward; **sāltatory**, pertaining to leaping or dancing; **saltigrade**, animal whose feet are constructed for leaping.—To **leap** over or across is to clear an obstacle freely, especially a high obstacle; to **jump** is to think more of the difficulty, as the sounds of the imitative word **jump**, more recent than **leap**, are a combination of hesitation (J), and weight (MP). **Leap** is therefore more objective: "The athlete leaps over the bar"; **jump** is more subjective: "I hesitate to jump."

**to learn** (*lern*´). Past tense **learnt** (English usage) or **learned** (American usage). The adjective **learned**, often written **learnèd** with an accent to distinguish it from the verb, is pronounced *ler'nèd*: "a **learnèd** man."—Latin *doceo*, to teach; hence **dōcile**, easily taught; *doctus*, one who has been taught; hence **doctor**. To **master** a subject; **acquire** a habit or skill; **mem'orize** a passage by rote; to **habit'uate** oneself to a condition. Adjectives: **di-dac'tic**, pertaining to teaching methods; **academ'ic**, of no practical use, literally "as taught in colleges"; **theoret'ical**, referring to principles apart from their application.

**learnèd** (*ler'nèd*), adjective. See the note on this word under **learn**, above.—**Ed'ucā'ted**; **able**; **competent**; **intelligent**, who understands; **ēr'udite** on a highly specialized subject; **accom'plished** in a practical art: "She is an accomplished violinist"; **wise** (often used sarcastically); **bookish**, lacking contact with real life; **scholarly**, having studied much.

**learning**, noun: **lore**, poetic; **knowledge** (*nōl'ēj*); **education**, literally "drawing out" (note that we use this word to refer both to teaching and to learning); **scholarship**, possession of much profound knowledge of one subject and all its connections; **erudition**, great knowledge, often used ironically to refer to a great show of superficial knowledge.

**leather** (*lēdh'er*), tanned skin.

### Some kinds of leather

(As used in shoes) **kid**, **lambskin**, **calf**, **pigskin**, **cowhide**, **porpoise**, **buckskin**, **cordo'van**, **kangaroo**, **Russia leather**, **elkskin**, **suède**; (as used in cleaning) **chamois** (pronounced and often spelled "shammy"); (as used in bookbinding) **morocco**, **calf**, **shagreen** or **chagrin**.

**to leave** (Past tense **left**).—Latin *linquo*; hence to **relinquish**, abandon something one has used; **delin'quent**, one who has "left off" trying to do right.—To **permit**, **allow**; to **depart**, go away; to **quit** a place; **abandon** after making an effort to keep; **desert'** a friend; **evac'uate** a threatened area; **maroon** somebody on a desert island.

Note: **Leave** is not to be used for **let**: "Let him alone" (not: "leave him alone" unless it means actually that he is

to be left by himself while the others go away). "Leave it here" (and go away).

**lect-**. Latin root meaning "to pick out, choose, read." Derived forms: **lecture**, **lectern**, **dialect**, **select**, **élégant**. See **Choose**, **Read**.

**leg-**. Latin root meaning "law" (Do not confuse with the form **leg-** which makes **lect-**, as above). Derived forms: **lég'gal**, **legal'ity**, **legislate** (lěj'-), **priv'ilege** ("private law"), **légit'imate**. See **Law**.

**a leg.** Latin *crus, cruris*; hence **crural**, pertaining to the leg. Vulgar Latin *camba* or *gamba*; hence to **gambol**, skip about. French *jambe*; hence a door **jamb**, the leg of a door; **gammon** of bacon or **ham**.

**lég'gal**, according to law; **legit'imate**, rightful according to custom. "Sunday is a legal holiday" (the law says so). "He has no legit'imate ground for complaint" (his complaint is not just).

**leisure** (in America lě'zher; in England, according to Old French pronunciation, lězh'er), time in which to do as one pleases.—The adjective form **leisurely** cannot be used as an adverb: "He did it in **leisurely fashion**" (not: He did it **leisurely**).

**to lend** (Past tense **lent**). The form "to loan," derived from "a loan" is superfluous and therefore to be avoided.

**a length** (note the spelling); **to lengthen**; **lengthwise**, in the long way; a **lengthy** discussion, one that drags for a long time, a **prolix** or complicated one.

**a lens** (no final -e). Plural: **lenses**.—Adjective: **lentic'ular**, lens-shaped. A lens the middle of which curves out on both sides is called a **bi-convex**; such are the lenses of magnifying glasses. One that curves in at the middle on both sides is a **bi-concave**; such a lens acts as a reducing glass. If one side is flat and the other curved, the lens is **plāno-convex** or **plano-concave**. A lens shaped like the crescent of the moon is a **menis'cus**. A lens used on a camera of ordinary extension to secure enlarged pictures of distant objects is a **telephoto** lens; one that secures larger pictures when a greater bellows extension is used is a **long focus lens**.

**-less**. The idea conveyed by the English suffix -less is sometimes expressed by the Greek prefix **a-** or **an-**: **achromatic**, colorless; **anonymous**, nameless; **anhȳdrous**, waterless; **atheism**, godlessness.

**to lessen**, make less. Do not confuse with **lesson**, a "lection," or reading, or thing learned.

**to let** (Past tense **let**), allow to be: "Let him alone." This is not synonymous with **leave**, which implies going away: "Leave it here" (and go away yourself).—**Let** is used to form the first and third persons of the impē'rative mode: Let me come, let him come, let us come, let them come. In the second person, the verb is used without an auxiliary: "Come!"—**To permit** formally; **tol'erate** something annoying; **suffer** temporarily.—**To rent** a house, etc.

**To let go**: **absolve**, set free from consequences of sin;

**acquit** one formally accused; **exculpate** one involved; **exonerate** a suspect; **forgive** through kindness of heart; **forget** from the memory; **pardon**, forgive formally.

- a **letter**, literally one of the signs used in the alphabet to represent sounds. Nowadays, a writing from one person to another (formerly called "letters"): in this sense, an **epistle**, formal and admonitory; a **missive** (a far-fetched word); your **favor**, in old-fashioned commercial style.—In the original sense: "One letter, one sound, is the principle of phonetic writing."

First letter of a word or name.....the initial.

Large letter at beginning of a section, in print..an initial.

Slanting letters in print.....italics.

Heavy-faced letters.....bold face type.

Large letters, as compared with small.....capitals, caps.

Small letters, as compared with large.....lower case.

Ordinary letters, as compared with italics....roman.

See Type; see also Alphabet.

- a **lever** (lē'ver, often in U. S. lēv'er). A lever is used to raise a weight at one end by force applied at the other end; it turns on a fixed point called the **fulcrum**. "Give me a lever long enough and a prop (fulcrum) strong enough, and I can single-handed move the world." (Archimedes.)

**Liable** to a punishment, a penalty; so constructed that it will behave in a certain way: "The wheel is liable to come off at any time."—When speaking of a person, do not say "liable to come" but "**expected** to come."—A statement is **liable** to be misunderstood if it is not clear; a person is **apt** to succeed if he has ability and will power.

**libr-** Latin root meaning "book." Derived forms: **li'brary**, **libel** ("little book against somebody"). See Book.

- a **license**, official permission, involving a money consideration, to engage in something permanent: "a trading license," "a wedding license"; **permit**, more temporary than license and often issued without cost: "Before entering the grounds, visitors have to obtain a permit from the owner"; a **charter**, solemn and official definition of rights, granted by a superior authority: "The new company has applied to the state for a charter of incorporation."
- a **lie**; a falsehood, serious; an **untruth**, mild; a **fib**, child's; a **calumny**, malicious falsehood; an **aspersion**, "sprinkling muddy water" on somebody; an **innuendo**, veiled hint; **slander**, malicious tale; **libel** in writing.
- to **lie**, **lying**, a liar; to tell lies; to **prevaricate**, absolutely, without an object; to **slander** somebody by malicious tales; to **libel** somebody by publishing unjust and hateful statements; to **defame** somebody by spreading evil rumors. See Lying.
- to **lie** (**lie down**, **recline**). Past tense, I **lay**; Present Perfect, I have

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels: **ā** **ā** **ī** **ō** **ū** **y** as in *mate*, *meet*, *mite*, *mote*, *mute*, *my*; **ă** **ă** **ĭ** **ĭ** **ŭ** **ŭ** as in *mat*, *met*, *mit*, *not*, *nut*, *pity*; **ā** as in *father*; **ēr** as in *merry*; **ēr** as in *mercer*; **ou** as in *loud*; **au** as in *land*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (**ă** in *senate*). Consonants: **g** always as in *go*; **th** as in *thief*; **dh** as *th* in *mother*; **ng** as in *sing* or in *singer*; **ng-g** as *ng* in *finger*. See Syllables.

**lain**; Present Participle, **lying**.—"Today, I **lie** in bed. Yesterday, I **lay** in bed. Many a time I **have lain** in bed until nine o'clock."

**Lie, lay, lain**, is a complete verb, an intransitive verb, requiring no object:—"She **lies** on the couch all day. The dog is **lying** on the door mat. The cat **lay** there all yesterday. That old rusty knife **has lain** on the sidewalk for a week. As you make your bed, so you **lie**. As he had made his bed, so he **lay** (past tense). As people have made their beds, so they have **lain**."

**lieutenant** (American generally lōō-tēn'ant; English always lēf-tēn'ant) "place-holder." In England, the expression **in lieu of** is very generally used to mean **in place of, instead of**.

**life**. Latin *vita, anima*; hence **vī'tal**, as important as life; **vital'ity**; **animāted**, having motion; Greek *bios*; hence **biōg'raphy**, a life story; **biol'ogy**, the study of life; **amphīb'ious**, able to live both in air and in water (frogs, etc.).

Having life.....**alive**.  
Strength of life.....**vital'ity**.  
Having life and motion.....**an'imāl**.  
Moving as if alive.....**ānimated**.  
To cause to come to life.....**ānimate, revive**.  
Important to life.....**vital**.  
Life history of oneself.....**autobiōgraphy**.

**lig-**. Latin root meaning "bind." Derived forms: **lig'ament**, **lig'ature**, **ōbligatē**, **allēgiance**. See **Bind**.

**a light**. Latin *lumen, luminis*; hence **luminous** (loom'ī-nūs), full of light; a **lunary**, a bright light; also **lux, lucis**; hence **Lucifer**, the light-bearer; **lūcid**, clear as light; **translūcent**, through which the light can pass; **pellūcid**, limpid, transparent. Greek *phos, photos*; hence **photography**, "light-writing." Idea of "ray": Latin *radium*; hence **rādiānt**, emitting rays; **irradiation**, "covering with rays," a spreading out.—**Light**, adjective; see **Bright**.

Showing lights of many colors.....**īrīdes'cent**.  
Glowing with self-furnished lights.....**phos'phōres'cent**.  
Through which the light can be seen.....**translūcent**.  
Through which one can see other things...**transpārent**.

**like** (preposition); **similar to**; **resembling**: "He is **like** his brother." With an action-word use the conjunction **as**: "Do it as I do" (not "like I do"). "Paint this portrait as I do" (in the same way); "Paint this portrait **like** me" (to resemble me).

The idea of likeness is often expressed by a suffix; **homely**, **rainy**, **oaken**, **wooden**, **familiar**, **kingly**.

**to like** (to be fond of). The difference between **to like** and **to love** is as the difference between **receiving** and **giving**. We **like** that from which we **receive** pleasure; we **love** that or those to whom we **enjoy giving** of our best.

Opposites: **aversion** to a person, **dissent** from an idea, **misanthropy** (i.e., dislike of all mankind).

**likely** is used with either people or things, when the contingency is fully expected: "He is **likely** to arrive at any time (not he is 'liable')"; "The wheel is more than liable to come off; it is **likely** to."

**Likely** is not used as an adverb. Use **probably** instead: "He will **probably** come tonight."

**likewise** (one word); **similarly**.

- a **lim'it**; a **boundary**, more physical than "limit"; to go to the limit, do one's utmost (to achieve an object).—A **limit** is the end itself; a **limitation**, that which prevents or holds back: "We have not reached the limit of knowledge; so far we have discovered mostly our own limitations."

- a **line**, "the shortest distance between two points."

A line of poetry.....a verse (see verse).

Two successive riming lines of poetry...a couplet.

Lines converging owing to sight illu-

sion .....the perspec'tive.

Lines that travel forever alongside...par'allel (adjective).

Round lines of a figure.....contour (kon-tōōr').

To draw lines around.....to cir'cumscribe.

Lines that set off.....demarcation.

Line round a circle.....the circumference.

Line from center to circumference of a circle .....the rā'diūs.

Imāg'inary line from pole to pole.....a merid'ian.

(line of longitude).

Imāg'inary line around the middle of

the earth.....the ēquātor.

(line of lātitude).

Lines of equal temperature.....Isotherms.

Lines of equal pressure.....Isobars.

**lingu-**. Latin root meaning "tongue." Derived forms: **linguist**, **linguistics**. See Language, Tongue.

- a **lip**. Latin labium; hence **lāb'ial**, "pronounced with the lips," like the consonants p, b, m, f, v, w.

- a **liquid**, anything that flows; **liquor** (lik'er), drink, generally alcoholic, such as whisky, brandy, rum, gin; not usually applied to wines and beer except by Prohibitionists; **liqueur** (lik-ūr'), sweet, aromatic, alcoholic drink, taken in small glasses, like **aniset'te** (aniseed liqueur), **chartreuse** (shar-trüz', made by Carthusian monks), **benedic'tine** (made by Benedictine monks), **cherry-brandy**, **curaçoa** (kūrā-sō, bitter oranges).

A **liquid** is neither sōlid nor gāseous; a **fluid** is either a liquid or a gas.

To make liquid.....to liq'uefi.

Apt to liquefy.....dēliques'cent.

- a **list**, items in succession; a catalogue or catalog (kat'a-lōg), arranged list, often alphabetical; an **in'ventory**, list of goods on hand; a **rōll** of members; a **schedule** (sked'ul), list of de-

terminated arrangements; a **cal'endar** of dates; a **nō'menclāture**, list of names used in a trade or science, particularly chemical; a **tariff**, list of rates, particularly customs duties; a **pānel** of jurors; a **roster** of officers, etc.; a **register**, in a book; **manifest**, ship's list of freight; **waybill** (R.R.'s).

**liter-** Anglicized form of **litter-**, Latin root meaning "letter." Derived forms: **lit'erature**, **lit'erary**, **lit'eral** ("according to the letter and not to the spirit"), **ōblit'erate** ("cover up the letters"), **illiterate**. See **Letter**.

**literary** (lit'er-a-ri), pertaining to letters or **literature**. (Note that the Latin word *littera* had two t's, as still found in **Litt. D.**, **Litterarum Doctor**, or Doctor of Letters; while **lītal**, **literary**, **literate**, **literature** have only one t. The French word *littérateur*, a writer on literary subjects, or writer of literature, has two t's). "The literary art largely consists in so combining the words and phrases of popular psychology as to convey such meaning more effectively than the common man can do. . . . When we speak of a cultivated man, we generally mean one who has learnt to appreciate and to make use of this more subtle and effective literary psychology." (McDougall, *Outline of Psychology*, 1923.)

#### Some words used on this subject

Classic, classical, prosaic, pōëtic, poetical, lyric, lyrical, epic, dramatic, tragic, comic, didactic (teaching), humorous, tēdious, in'teresting, attrac'tive, captivating, amusing, instructive, concise, diffuse, confused, bombastic. Work, subject, description, narrative, fiction, essay, prose, poetry, poem, poet, lyrics, song, ballad, ode, hymn, heroic, canto, fable, drama, dram'atist, tragedy, comedy, plot, action, character, unity, satire, epistle (letter), ēpigram (satire), blank verse, rhyme or rime, stanza, novel, volume, chapter, pamphlet, writer, orator, speech, eloquence, elocution, exposition, author, translator, publisher, printer, bookseller, newspaper, editor, journalist, review.—See also **Writing**.

**litho-** Greek root meaning "stone." Derived forms: **lith'ograph**, **mon'olith**. See **Stone**.

**little** (adjective); less than; least of; the least; small; tiny, very small.

A little picture. . . . a mīn'ī-āture.  
See **Many**.

**a little**; a trifle, of no value; a **mōdicum**, moderate quantity, as of a drug; a bit, one bite; a **dash** of liquid added to a dish, etc.; a **touch**; a pinch of salt; a drop of water.

**to live** (līv). Latin *vivo*; hence **vīvā'cious**, full of life; to **vīv'isect**, cut up alive; **qui vive** (kē vēv'), "Who goes there?"; **vivat**, long live.—To **exist** barely; to **survive** others who have died; to **fare** well or badly; to **grow**, etc.; to **inhabit**, **dwell** in, **occupy**, **reside** at.

**to load** (lōd). Past tense **loaded**. As an adjective, **lāden** is often used in place of **loaded**: "She was lāden with parcels." A **load** is anything carried, taken collectively; a **burden** is a

load, whether heavy or not, felt as cumbersome: "A sacred burden is this life ye bear."

**loc-.** Latin root meaning "place." Derived forms: **lōcal**, **lōcation**, **dislōcate**. See Place.

**locu-.** Latin root, same as **loqu-**, below, meaning "speak." Derived forms: **lōcūtion**, **ēlōcūtion**. See Speak.

**log-.** Greek root meaning "word, science." Derived forms: **logic** (lōj'ik), **catalog**, **prōlogue**. See Word.

**logic**, the science of reasoning.—An argument in logical form is called a **syllogism**:—

(Mājor prēm'ise) All men are mortal;

(Minor prem'ise) John is a man;

(Conclusion) Therefore John is mortal.

**long**, from end to end; **tall**, from below to above; **high**, above sea level; **lengthy**, which lasts a long time.

to **long** for something; **yearn** for; **hunger** for; to **crave** stimulants or narcotics; **hanker** after (this word is a recent formation combining hang and hunger); to **pant** after: "As the hart panteth after the water brooks, so panteth my soul after thee, O God." (Psalm 42.)

**longitude** (lōn'jītūd), a division of the earth.—Degrees of longitude are calculated West or East of the meridian of Greenwich, England.

**lōō**. Sound heard in to lose (lōōz, opposite of "find"), loose (lōōs, not tied), to loosen (lōōs'n, untie).

to **look**. Latin specio, spectrum; hence the **aspect** or looks of a place; a **suspect** or one who is "looked under" as guilty; a **prospect**, "looked forth" to; to **inspect**, or look into; **retrospect**, or look backward; **respect**, or look again; **conspicuous**, or easy to look at; **perspicacity**, or ability to see through; **des'p'icable**, looked down upon; a **spectator**, one who looks on.

To **look** at a thing; to **envisage** (en'viz-āj) a prospect; **confront** (kon-frūnt') somebody with an unpleasant fact; **face** a disagreeable necessity; **examine** in detail; **study** deliberately.

For other synonyms, see the word See.

Something everybody is looking at....cynosure (sī'nō-shūr).

**loose** (adjective; pronounced lōōs); do not confuse with to **lose** (verb; pronounced lōōz).

to **loosen** (lōōs'n). To let go, set free.—Latin solvo, solutum; hence a solvent, that which loosens the particles; to **dissolve**; **dissolute** (adjective); **insol'uble**; **solu'tion**.

**loqu-.** Latin root, same as **locu-** above, meaning "speak." Derived forms: **lōquā'cious**, **ēl'ōquent**, **sōlil'oquy**. See Speak.

**lord**. Latin dom'inus; hence **domin'ion**, lordship; to **dōm'inate**, be superior to; to **dōm'ineer** over, treat with condescension. Greek kyrios; hence **kirk** or **church**, the Lord's building.

to **lose** (lōōz). Past tense lost. Latin perdeo, perditum; hence **perdition**, loss of soul. To **forfeit** (for'fit), lose one's rights; to **miss** a train; **sacrifice** as an offering.

**lots** of people; a **crowd**, many; a **mob**, unruly; a **cortège**, solemn

escort. Drawing of **lots**; a **lottery** for several prizes; a **raffle** for one prize. See **Many**.

**loud**, voice; **high** pitch; **big** volume; **stentōrian**, tremendous; **vociferous**, i.e., voiceful, as a protest, a claim; **crescendo** (krā-shen'do), rising.

**love**. Latin *amo*, *amor*, *amatus*; hence **amatory**, pertaining to love-making; an **amateur**, one who is fond of an art; **amorous**, inclined to love. Greek *Eros*, the God of love; hence **erōtic**, pertaining to sexual love. Greek *philos*, friend; hence **philanthropy**, love of mankind; **philosophy**, love of wisdom.—**Love** is the tender emotion that wants to give the best of itself to the loved object; it differs from **fondness** or **liking** in that we like that from which we receive pleasure.—**Love of**; **devotion to**, solemn attachment; **affection for**, tendency to react the same way; **sympathy with** or **toward**, common feeling; **attachment to** somebody one has been much with; **fondness of**, mild emotion; **infatuation for** (to be infatuated with) somebody who is not worth it; **predilection for**, choice of; **adoration of**, almost religious worship.

### Some words used on this subject

Esteem, trust, confidence, mistrust, distrust, doubt, antipathy, dislike, pity, compassion, favor, friendship, acquaintance, comrade (or -rade), enemy, reconciliation, intimate, amiable, obliging, affable, friendly, cordial, hostile, conciliatory, irrecconcilable, surly, rough.

**low**, vulgar. Latin *bassus*, stumpy, hence **base**, **debased**, to **abase**. **Short**, not tall; **little**, not big; **vulgar**, not refined; **common**, not distinguished; **ignoble**, not noble; **menial** service, etc., as by a servant; **plebeian**, of the plebs or common people, not aristocratic; **dirty**, "a low, dirty trick."

**luc-**. Latin root meaning "light" (opposite of darkness). Derived forms: **lucid**, **elucidate**. See **Light**.

**luck**, either good or bad; **chance**; **good fortune**, **bad fortune**; a **risk** which one assumes; a **hazard**; one's lot or station in life; one's fate; an **omen**, sign of good or bad luck (a good omen, an evil omen); a prophetic sign; a **foreboding** or forecast; a good or evil **augury**; one's horoscope or forecast of one's future according to astrology; a **prognostication** or foretelling by present symptoms; a **diagnosis** or statement of belief in a certain cause: "the doctor's diagnosis."

**lucky**, adjective: (1) done by luck without prearrangement: a **random** shot; a **fortunate** occurrence; a **fortuitous** encounter; an **accidental** happening; a **casual** occurrence; (2) having luck: **prosperous** person, **successful**, **rich**, etc.

**lum**, **lumin-**. Latin root meaning "light, brightness." Derived forms: **luminous**, **luminary**, **illuminate**. See **Light**.

**a lung**. Latin *pulmo(n)*; hence **pulmonary**, pertaining to the lungs. **Pneumonia** (nū-mō'nia), inflammation of the lungs;

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels *a* *i* *o* *u* *ē* *ū* as in *mate*, *meet*, *mite*, *mote*, *mute*, *my*; *ā* *ī* *ō* *ū* *ū* as in *mat*, *met*, *mit*, *not*, *nūt*, *pity*; *ē* as in *father*; *ēr* as in *merry*; *ē* as in *merc*; *ou* as in *loud*; *au* as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ā* in *senate*). Consonants: *g* always as in *go*; *th* as in *thief*; *dh* as *th* in *mother*; *ng* as in *sing* or in *singer*; *ng-g* as *ng* in *finger*. See **Syllables**.



**phthisis** (thĩ'sis), consumption of the lungs; **tuberculosis**, a wasting disease; **pleurisy** (plöō'rĩsĩ), inflammation of the membranes that cover the lungs. A **consumptive**, a **T.B.**, a **lunger** (lung'er, colloquial).

**luxury** (lũk'shōōrĩ) is more than comfort; it involves an idea of **excess** (Latin *luxus*, excess.)—**Luxuriant**, flourishing, abundant vegetation, foliage, imagination, etc.; **luxurious**, full of luxury, as a house, entertainment, etc.; **el'egant**, well-chosen to match; **rich**, costing money; **sump'tuous** (note spelling and pronunciation; often mispronounced "sumptious"), very costly.

**-ly**, a suffix meaning "like," added to adjectives to form adverbs: charming, charmingly; beautiful, beautifully.

After the suffixes **-able**, **-ible**, the suffix **-ly** becomes simply **"-y"**: ably, irresistibly, simply, credibly, probably (not: able-ly, simple-ly, etc.).

accidental ly	fine ly	personal ly
actual ly	foul ly	practical ly
continual ly	general ly	rascal ly
cool ly	incidental ly	real ly
critical ly	intentional ly	successful ly
cruel ly	literal ly	universal ly
emphatical ly	logical ly	usual ly
especial ly	natural ly	virtual ly
final ly	occasional ly	

Note the spelling "wholly" pronounced "hole-ly."

Do not add **-ly** to any word except an adjective; **much**, **over**, **thus**, **ill**, **well** are already adverbs. There is no need for such words as **muchly**, **overly**, **thusly**, **illy**, **welly**.

If the adjective already ends in **-ly**, use a roundabout phrase. "She has a lovely voice and she sang very sweetly" (not "lovelily").

Adverbs ending in **-ly** take the same accent as the parent word: **Sure'ly**, **finan'cially**, **indu'bitably**.

Adverbs that are formed by adding **ly** to adjectives are compared by the use of **more** and **most**; others are usually compared by means of the extra syllable:—

beautifully	more beautifully	most beautifully
happily	more happily	most happily
soon	sooner	soonest
strongly	more strongly	most strongly

**lying**, the telling of lies; **prevāricātion**, presentation of the truth in such a way that it will deceive, quibbling; **double-dealing**; **double play**; **ēvāsion** of an unpleasant issue by turning the attention in another direction; **equiv'oca'tion**, using words which have a double meaning to conceal one's true thought; **smoothness** (colloquial), glossing over unpleasant details; **deceit** (dē-sēt'), deliberate attempt to mislead.

**lying**, remaining in a horizontal position. Note that the two verbs to **lie** (meaning respectively "to tell untruths" and "to be prone"), which are spelled alike, form their participles in the same way: **lying**.

# M

**mā.** Sound heard in *mayor* (head of a town).

**machine** (mă-shēn'), a working device with several moving parts; a device, any plan, physical or not; an *apparātus*, arrangement of devices, scientific, heating; a *contrivance*, ingenious device; a *contraption*, makeshift device. The contriving of a secret plan is called *machination* (note the pronunciation with *k*: māk'ī-nā'shūp).

Done by machinery.....mechanical (mekan'ikal).

A convenient but not justified

trick (on the stage).....*deus ex machina* (makē'na).

**madam** (măd'ēm); in addressing an unknown lady: "Yes, Madam"; in correspondence with a stranger: "Dear Madam."—French form: *Madame*, used before a professional singer's or musician's name and before most names of European ladies; also used by itself: "Dear Madame."—Abbreviated *Mme*; plural *Mmes.* (*Mesdames*, pronounced mēdām').

The pronunciation "mă-ām" (with one prolonged ā) is used in addressing the Queen of England. The word is often pronounced "m," as in "Yes'm."

**mademoiselle** (măd'mwă-zel'), abbreviated before a proper name only *Mlle.*; plural *Mlles.* (*Mesdemoiselles*).—French for "young lady" when addressing one or when speaking of one by name. As it means literally "my young lady," it is not correctly used after *a* or *the*.

**magn.** Latin root meaning "great." Derived forms: *mag'nate*, *mag'nitude*, *magnan'itous*, *Charlemagne*. See *Great*.

**main'tenance** (măn'tē-nēns: note that the spelling is not -tain-like the verb "to maintain"); literally "hand-holding" or keeping in hand, keeping a hand on.

**to make.** Past tense *made*.—Latin *facio*, *factum*, to do or make; hence *fácil*e, easy; *fact*, a thing done; *feasible*, which can be done; *manufacture*, thing made up; *perfection*, thing made thoroughly. See *Do*.—To *produce*, bring forth; *create*, out of nothing or next to nothing; *invent* something new; *discover* something which was there but was not known: "a scientific discovery"; to *cause* a thing to become so and so; to *form*, shape; *con'stitute*, be the elements of; *fashion* out of a material; *manufacture* on a commercial scale; *prepare*, make ready; *force* somebody to do something; *make up* a sum; *compose* a poem; *comprise* a part.

**mal.** Latin root for "evil." Derived forms: *mal'ice*, *mal'ady*, *malā'ria*, *malign*. Used as a prefix to mean "evil" or "wrongly," with words that are not fully anglicized, as *mis* is used with fully anglicized words; *mal-* conveys more of an idea of evil.

Latin form	English form
malefaction	misdeed
malformation	misshaping
maladministration	mismanagement

**a male.** Latin masculus; hence **mās'cūline**.—In the names of persons and animals the sex is often indicated by a separate word: husband, wife; man, woman; boy, girl; bull, cow. Sometimes the pronoun **he** is used as a prefix: a he-bear, a he-goat. See Feminine.

**a man.** Latin homo, mankind in general; hence **human**, pertaining to mankind; **humane**, showing kindness to animals, etc.; **human'ity**, mankind as a whole; **humanitā'rian**, who loves mankind.—Latin vir, a male individual; hence **viril'ity**, manhood; **virile**.—Greek andros, anthros; hence **philan'thropy**, love of mankind; **anthropol'ogy**, the science of the origin of man.—A **person**, general, either sex; an **individual**, one particular person, either sex. In literature and general speech, **man** is often used regardless of sex, to include woman. A man is addressed on a letter and spoken of as Mr. — before the name; if he is engaged in one of the liberal professions he is sometimes in America, usually in England, addressed in writing as Esq. (pronounced "es-kwir'") written after the name and without a previous "Mr.": "John Brown, Esq." A boy is formally addressed in writing as "Master —" before the name: "Master Henry Jones."

**manageable** (note that the e is preserved at the end of the root, to keep the g sound soft: managEable).

**a manager**; abbreviated after a name **Mgr.**; an **administrator** of a public office; **director**, more than manager; **cūrātor** of a museum; **impresario** (im-prē-sā'rio), manager of a theatrical or concert party; **editor**, in charge of production on a newspaper, etc.

**mand-** Latin root meaning "order." Derived forms: **man'date**, **command**, **demand**, **countermand**. See Order.

**a manner** or way of doing things; a **style** or **fashion** in which things are done; a **mode** of action; a **mood** or emotional disposition left over from a strong emotion. The phrase "in the manner of" is often expressed by its French abbreviation "à la" (for "à la mode" or "à la manière de"): "chicken à la King"; "an opera à la Wagner." **Manners**, plural; way of behaving socially: "table manners," "drawing room manners." The details of good manners are called "the rules of **etiquette**" (ēt'ikēt') as practiced by people of good breeding or well-bred people. **Boorish** or **provincial manners** are those of ill-bred people.

Awkward in his movements.....**gauche** (gōsh).

**a mantle**, a cloak. Do not confuse with the word **mantel**, top of fireplace, pronounced the same.

**manu-** Latin root meaning "hand." Derived forms: **man'ūal**, **mānūfacture**, **man'ūscript**, **amānūen'sis**, (clerk). See Hand.

**manufacture**, literally "making by hand," like manual, a "hand-book." Abbreviated (if at all) mfr.; **manufacturing**: mfg.; a **manufacturer**, mfr.; **manufactured**, mfd. (not mfgd.).

**many**, adjective.—Latin multum; hence to **mul'ti**ply, make many; a **mul'ti**tude, many people or things; **mul'ti**ple, repeated many times; **multi**-millionaire, having many millions; **multi**-fārious, having many activities.—Greek poly; hence **pol'y**gon, figure with many angles; **poly**tech'nio, pertaining to many arts.—**Numerous**, in large numbers; **frē**quent, recurring; **mā**nifold, much repeated.

Living or fond of living in large groups.....gregā'rious.

### Some words used on this subject

A flock of birds; cōvey of partridges; brace of pheasants; bevy of larks, quails, girls; swarm of bees, ants; shoal or school of fish; herd of cattle; pack of hounds, wolves; drove of oxen; crowd of people; multitude of things; congeries (kon-jē'rī-ēz) of particles; outfit of things used for one purpose; kit of tools; trousseau, bride's clothes; layette of baby clothes; canteen of utensils.

### VARIOUS DEGREES OF MULTITUDE

When we say	We mean about
Just a few (of a group of people).....	2%
A few .....	5%
Not a few (pedantic).....	10%
Quite a few (colloquial but necessary).....	15%
Many.....	30%
Everybody who is anybody.....	40%
A good many.....	50%
Most .....	60%
Almost everybody.....	75%
Everybody .....	85%
Everybody without exception.....	95%
Every single one of them.....	100%

**mar**-. Latin root meaning "sea." Derived forms: **marine**, **mar'itime**. See Sea.

**marriage** (mar'ij), either the ceremony or the relation. To **marry**; **marrying**; **married**.—Latin matrimonium; hence **mat'rīmōny**, the state of being married; **matrimo'nial**, pertaining to marriage or to getting married.—Greek gamos; hence **polyg'amy**, marriage to several wives; **monog'amy**, marriage to one wife.—**Wedlock**, the state of being married; the **nuptials**, the wedding ceremony.

Pertaining to the wedding.....nuptial.

Pertaining to getting married.....matrimonial.

Pertaining to the married relation....con'jugal.

Pertaining to the husband.....mār'ital.

Non-marriage .....,cel'ibacy.

An unmarried man.....a cel'ibate, a bach'elor.

An unmarried woman.....a spinster (old maid, sarcastically).

Man having two wives at the same time .....a big'amist.

- a **master**; feminine **mistress**.—Latin *dominus*; hence to **dominate**, be above: "The castle dominates the surrounding country"; to **domineer**, "boss": "His domineering disposition had made him many enemies." In the sense of teacher, Latin *magister*; hence a **magistrate**, **magist'erial**.

A master in music.....a maestro (mā-ēs-tro).

A masterpiece.....a chef-d'œuvre (shā-dūvr).

**mat'erial** (adjective), pertaining to matter; low, common, vulgar, carnal (of the flesh), earthly; which matters: **important**, **considerable**, **weighty**.

- a **mat'erial**, used for constructing, building or making; **stuff** (general, especially cloth).

### Some materials used in clothing

**Silk**: velvet, sätin, crêpe de chine (kräp-de-shēn'), georgette (zhōr-zhēt'), pongee or tussah or tussor (Oriental).

**Cotton**: corduroy (ribbed velvet), gingham (ging'am), voile (voyl), cretonne, sateen, Italian cloth, cāmbric, madras', broadcloth (shirting).

**Wool**: tweed (heavy, rough), delaine (de-lān'), jersey cloth, gabardine, tricotine, chinchilla (in England reefer cloth), faced cloth (U. S. = broadcloth, England).

**Mixed**: mohair, Palm Beach.

**matter**, the stuff of which everything is made, unless it is made of Mind, or both. **Stuff**, raw material; **body**, assuming a soul; **substance**, assuming an invisible reality; **mat'erial** for particular purpose; **importance**.

One who believes there is no Matter.....a spiritualist.  
(the word has other less precise meanings also)

One who believes that there is no Mind.....a mat'erialist.

One who believes that Matter and Mind are  
one .....a mōn'ist.

One who believes that Matter and Mind are  
two .....a dūalist.

The subject matter of pharmacy.....mat'eria mēdica.

**māx'imum**, plural **maxima**, occasionally **maximums**. "The most," opposed to **min'imum**; "To secure **maximum** efficiency"; "the population reached its **maximum** ten years ago."

In the sense of "the best," use **optimum**: "The climate of Florida provides the **optimum** for orange growing, although California claims **maximum** production of several varieties."

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels: ä ä i ö ü y as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ä ä i ö ü y as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; ä as in father; êr as in merry; er as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ä in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.

**a meal; a breakfast** (on rising), **lunch** (small amount at any time, U. S.; in England at midday only); **tea, coffee** (generally in the afternoon), **dinner** (principal meal); **supper** (evening meal); **a repast** (heavy formal meal); **a feed** (vulgar); **a feast** (to one unaccustomed to it).

**A small, casual meal**..... **a snack** = some lunch.

**Meal at fixed price**..... **table d'hôte** (täbl-döt).

**(Meal) selected by each**..... **à la carte**.

**A featured dish for the day**.... **plat du jour** (plă-dü-zhōör).

**Meal room in private house**.... **dining room**.

**Meal room in hotel**..... **restaurant**.

**Meal room in community build-**

**ing** ..... **refec'tory**.

**to mean**. Past tense, **meant** (měnt). (Speaking of a person) **To want to say, wish to say, wish to convey**. (Speaking of an act or phrase, etc.) **To signify, intend, purport, denote, imply** (something not said), **indicate** (point to).

**A word that means almost the same**..... **a syn'onym**.

**mean** (adjective); **low, vulgar, common, undignified, coarse; wretched, contemptible, sordid, worthless, shabby**.

**(Person) stingy** (stin'ji), **parsimonious** (see this word), **penū'rious** (see this word), **small-minded, petty**.

**the meaning** (of an action): **the significance, importance, value; the purport, import, intent, drift; (of a phrase) the sense**.

**Words of the same meaning**..... **syn'onyms**.

**Words of opposite meanings**..... **an'tonyms**.

**a measure**.—Latin **mensura**; hence **mensuration**.—Greek **metron**; hence **thermometer**.—A **gauge** (gāj'), a **yardstick** (also figuratively), a **standard** (fixed measure).

**(In general sense, "the measure") the extent, the dimen'sions, the size, the area, the degree, the quantity, the number**.

**Measures of length**.... **yard, meter, foot, inch, etc.**

**Measures of weight**.... **pound, ounce, kilo, centigram, etc.**

**Measures of volume**.... **bushel, peck, gallon, quart, pint, liter, etc.**

**Measures of time**.... **year, month, week, day, hour, minute, second, etc.**

**Measures of area**.... **section, acre, hectare, etc.**

**See Metric System, Thermometer, Many, Warm.**

**mechan'ics** (mekăn'iks), the science of motion: **a mechan'ic; mechanical; mechanism; a mech'an'ician**.

**med'i-cine**, art of healing; **mēdī'cīnal**, pertaining to cure, remedies, drugs: "The medicinal properties of arnica"; **med'ical**, pertaining to medicine as an art, or to physicians: "the medical profession."

### Some words used on this subject

**Prescription, drugs, physic, a medicament, a sed'ative** (internal soothing remedy), **a purgative, a laxative, a narcōt'ic** (pain-killing), **a soporif'ic** (sleep-producing), **a fēb'rifuge**

(fever-abating), an emollient (external soothing application).

**medi-**. Latin root meaning "middle." Derived forms: **mē'dium**, **mē'diōcre**, **mēdiē'val**, **mē'diate**, **immē'diate**. See Middle.

**mē'dium**, adjective; between two: "a medium-price article"; middle, equidistant: "the middle course"; **intermēdiate**, in the middle of a sēquence of two or more: "an intermediate size between those offered, neither so large nor so small"; **middling**: "they are in middling circumstances, neither rich nor poor"; **average**; **mean**: "the mean temperature of the Pacific Ocean at noon."

**to meet**. Past tense **met**. To run across, run into; encounter, generally obstacles; **expērience** difficulty; **face** a situation; **confront**, with hostility. To run together; **assemble**, **gather**, **collect**, **congregate**, **convene**, **muster**.

**a meet** or **a meeting**, by arrangement: a **gāthēring**, accidental; a **conference**, meeting to discuss; a **convention**, trade, fraternal, etc.; a **conclave**, church; **congress**, international; a **council**, R. C. Church, very formal; **Chautauqua**, educative. A **meeting** of individuals: an **encounter** with somebody; a **confrontation** of opposing witnesses; an **interview**, conversation; a **séance** (sā-āns'), spiritism; a **rendezvous**; a **tête-à-tête**, two. A **meeting** of things; **confluence** of streams; **concomitance** of events; **coincidence** of unexpected events; **conglom'eration**, haphazard. The people who meet: the **congregation**, church; **audience**, theater; **spectators**, show; **members** of organized group.

### Some words and phrases used on this subject

**Parliamentary procē'dure**, a **Parliamentarian**; to open a meeting, come to order; read the minutes; hear the report; chairman, committee; to move a resolution; to present a motion, to second; an amendment; in order; out of order, to vote; "Those in favor say 'Aye' (i)"; "contrary-minded"; the ayes (īz), the nays (nāz) have it; carried, lost; order of the day; raise the question of order; on a point of order; move the adjournment; a motion to adjourn; to rise; **sine diē**.

**mem'oran'dum**, plural **memorandums**; written note; **memoranda**, in scientific use. Abbreviated: "**memo**."

**mem'ory**. Greek **mneme**; hence **mnemon'ics**, the science of memorizing. See Remember.

**ment-**. Latin root meaning "mind." Derived forms: **mental**, **mentality**. See Mind.

**mental**, pertaining to the **mind**, as against **matter** or **spirit**, the **mind** being the understanding substance, **matter** the physique, and **spirit** the soul or ultimate reality.

### Some words used on this subject

**Subjective**, pertaining to the thinking subject, internal; **objective**, of the object, external; **intellectual**, of the perceptions; **emotional**, pertaining to the desires; **volitional**, pertaining to the will; **instinctive**; **intelligent**; a **reaction**, response to a stimulus; a **reflex**, movement in which the will does not

enter; a **complex**, group of tendencies; **disposition**; **temper**; **temperament**.

Quiet, calm, good humor, tranquillity, satisfaction, cheerfulness, bliss, uneasiness, joy, pleasure, mirth, gaiety, laughter, smile, contentment, discontent, care, pain, trouble, sorrow, sadness, grief, anxiety, sigh, sob, complaint, tear, regret, consolation, courage, discouragement, depression, wish, carelessness, hope, happiness, unhappiness, expectation, illusion, despair, timidity, alarm, fear, fright, terror, dread, surprise, wonder, astonishment, seriousness; satisfied, pleased, glad, happy, joyful, restless, discontented, sad, painful, uneasy, timid, fearful, alarmed, merry, delighted, fearless, careless, hopeful, broken-hearted, afraid, terrified, surprised, astonished, depressed, disconsolate, serious.

**to mention** (literally "call to mind"); **state**, as a fact; **tell**; **relate** an incident; **narrate** a story; **retail** a chain of incidents; **recount** an old yarn; **enumerate**, name as from a list; **specify**, itemize; **name**; **quote** something heard or read; **recite** a series of facts.

**a mes'senger** (mes'enjer). Latin nuntius; hence **to announce**. Greek angelos; hence an **angel** or messenger of the Lord. One who carries a message; an **envoy**, one who is sent; an **ambassador**, who negotiates authoritatively; an **em'issary**, a secret agent; a **courier**, who travels ahead; Papal nuncio (nun'shio).

**Messieurs** (pronounced mēs'iz), plural of **Mr.**; abbreviated, before names only **Messrs.**—When addressing a group of men, as in a letter to a firm, use "**Gentlemen**" or "**Dear Sirs.**"

**a metal** (steel, iron, etc.). Remember it by "metallic." Do not confuse with **mettle** (really the same word as "**metal**," but used, with this spelling, to speak of somebody's strength).

### Some words used on this subject

To mine, assay, melt, molten, smelt, cast, forge, hammer, mix, alloy, solder, oxydize, rust; iron, steel, copper, zinc, brass, nickel, lead, tin, tin-plate, sheet-iron, bronze, gold, silver, mercury, platinum, aluminum, amalgam; alloy, forge, furnace, blast-furnace, mold, cast-iron; brazen, flexible, malleable, ductile, fusible, liquid, rusty.

**a metaphor** (mēt'ā-for, literally "carry-over"). A way of using a word or phrase to express an idea similar to it, such as "the leg of a table," "the eye of a needle," "the smiling rainbow which we call Hope." **Met'a-phor'i-cal-ly**, not literally.

**-meter**. Words ending in **-meter** have the accent on the syllable before: barom'eter, thermom'eter, speedom'eter, radiom'eter, photom'eter. Exceptions: Metric units are accented on the mē' of meter: kil'o-mē'ter, hec'to-mē'ter.

**meter**. In Prosody, the measure of the line of poetry according to "feet" and stress. In English poetry, the meter depends entirely on accent.

"The cur/few tolls / the knell / of part/ing day."

(Each foot consists, in this particular meter, of one unstressed



and one stressed syllable, the stressed one being at the end of the foot.)

**metric system** (met'rik sis'tem). The metric system of weights, coins and measures, used everywhere except in the United States and the British Empire—although its use is permissible there on an equality with the ancient measures still found in those countries—is based on relationship between all the units. Knowing any one of the standard units, one knows all the others automatically. The fundamental unit is the **metre** or **meter**, one yard and one-tenth, a meter being originally calculated as one forty-millionth part of the earth's meridian. A cube one-tenth of a meter in each dimension, called a cubic decimeter, is the **litre** or **liter** (lĕ'ter), equivalent to slightly less than a quart. The weight of a liter of distilled water at a temperature of 4 degrees centigrade (the temperature of minimum expansion of water) is a **kilogram**, equivalent to slightly over two pounds weight (the metric pound is therefore almost the same weight as the English pound). One cubic centimeter (abbreviated c. c.) of water weighs one **gram**, and is the standard for small weights.

The names of multiples and sub-multiples of each unit are formed according to a uniform system:

**Kilo** (Greek word meaning 1,000).....1,000 times

**Hekto** (Greek word meaning 100)..... 100 times

**Deka** (Greek word meaning 10)..... 10 times

**deci** (Latin word for 10; written with a

small letter) .....one-tenth

**centi** (Latin for 100; small letter).....one-hundredth

**milli** (Latin for 1,000; small letter).....one-thousandth

**Kilōgram**, 1,000 grams (over 2 lb.); **Kilomē'ter**, 1,000 meters (about 1,100 yards); **dēcīmēter**, one-tenth of a meter (about 4 inches); **centīmēter**, one-hundredth of a meter ( $\frac{3}{8}$  of an inch); **millīmēter**, one-thousandth of a meter ( $\frac{1}{25}$  of an inch).

The metric system is entirely **decimal** (counting by tens), each unit being ten times larger or smaller than the next. It can, however, be used duodecimally when individual figures are available for the numbers now written 11 and 12.

The adoption of the metric system will not necessitate a change of names for the popular measures, but a mere re-defining of their values. Thus a **pound** will be 500 grams, instead of 453 grams as at present; a **quart** will be 1,000 c. c., instead of 1,135 c. c. as at present; and a **yard** will be 1,000 mm., instead of 914 mm. as at present.

**mī.** Sound heard in Miss, Mrs., Mr., mŷsterŷ.

the **middle**, the center.—Latin mē'diūs; hence mē'diāl, occupying the middle of the structure; mē'dian, dividing into right and left (as the animal spine); mēdiātion, offer of good services between two parties in a dispute; mēdiāval, pertaining to the Middle Ages; mēdium, average; mēdiocre, poor in degree; intermēdiate, occupying the middle between two sizes.

The word **midst** no longer carries an idea of exact center,

and refers merely to the fact of being surrounded by, like the word **among**: "In the midst of thieves," entirely surrounded by thieves.

**midget**, a person of well-proportioned small body, distinguished from a **dwarf**, the latter being a person with large head, broad coarse limbs, and short body. "A dwarf is a repulsive sight." Dwarfs are often mentally defective, while midgets are apt to be of normal intelligence.

**mild**.—Latin *mitis*; hence to **mīlīgāte**, make milder, as "mīlīgāte a punishment." Climate: **balmy**, **tem'perate**; remedy: **gentle**, **slow**.

**milk**.—Latin *lac, lactis*; hence **lactic acid**; **lacteal glands**; **lactose**, sugar of milk.—Greek *galā*; hence **Galaxy**, the Milky Way, an assemblage of shining "stars" or persons; **galactometer**, a milk testing device.

to **mīm'ic**. This word used to be spelled **mimick**. The **k** is preserved in **mimicking**, like **trafficking**, **picnicking**, to keep the hard sound of the **c**.

**mind**.—Latin *mens, mentis*; hence **mental**, pertaining to the mind; **demented**, out of his mind.—Latin *animus*, meaning the "breath" or soul; hence **animosity**, a heated feeling; **ānimal**; **ānimation**.—Greek *nous (nōōs)*, reason; hence **noumenon**, an object apprehended by the mind, as against **phenomenon**, an object perceived by the senses. Greek also *phren*; hence **phrenol'ogy**, the study of the mind through its supposed manifestation in the shape of the head; **phrenitis**, brain fever. See **Mental**.

Study of one's own mind.....introspection  
Reading an absent person's mind.....telēp'athy

"We have to confess that it is impossible to distinguish clearly and confidently between body and mind, between the working of the body and the manifestations of mind in or through the body." (McDougall, *Outline of Psychology*, 1923.)

a **mīn'ister** of religion; a **clergyman** (in England, **clergyman** is used exclusively for a representative of the Anglican or Episcopal Church, representatives of "dissenting" or "Nonconformist" Protestant Churches being spoken of as "ministers"); a **priest**, Catholic or Anglican; a **rabbī**, Jewish; a **preacher**; **pastor**; **parson** (colloq.); **rector**, in charge of a parish and receiving the tithes; **vicar**, salaried incumbent of a parish; **cūrate**, second in command; **chaplain**, army, fraternal, etc.; **bishop**, administrator of diocese; **archbishop**; **cardinal** (R. C.).

A minister is addressed in writing as "The Reverend So-and-So"; a bishop as "The Right Reverend So-and-So."

**mirror**.—Latin *speculum*; hence **spec'ular**, having the properties of a mirror; to **spēc'ulāte**, to watch, spy, look out for oppor-

Pronunciation key. Vowels **ā ē ī ō ū y** as in *mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my*; **ă â ĩ ȳ ŭ** as in *mat, met, mitt, not, nutt, pity*; **ā** as in *father*; **ēr** as in *merry*; **er** as in *mercere*; **ou** as in *loud*; **au** as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (**ă** in *senate*). Consonants: **g** always as in *go*; **th** as in *thief*; **dh** as **th** in *mother*; **ng** as in *sing* or in *singer*; **ng-g** as **ng** in *finger*. See *Syllables*.

tunities. Same origin as Latin *spectare*, to look; hence **spectacle**; **respect**; **prospect**.—A **looking glass**; a **reflector** in a telescope, different from **refractor**, a lens; a **cheval glass** (shūvāl'), tall swinging mirror.

**mis-**, a prefix of both Latin and Saxon origin, meaning "wrongly, not suitably," as in: **mistake**, **misunderstand**, **mismatched**, **mismanage**. It is used only with fully Anglicized words, while the Latin prefix **mal-**, originally meaning the same as **mis-**, is used with words that are still Latin in form, no sharp line being drawn anywhere:

**Mismanagement** ..... **maladministration**

**Misdeed** ..... **malefaction**

**Misshaped** ..... **malformed**

**mischief** (mis'chif); hence **mischievous**; note change of **f** to **v**, like **grief**, **grievous**. Note that the adjective ends in **-ous**, not **-ious** as often misspelled, and that it is pronounced with short **i**: mis'chiv-**ūs**.

**miss-**. Latin root meaning "send, throw." Derived forms: **mission**, **missive**, **dismiss**, **permit**. See **Send**.

**missis** or **missus**, a humorous invented word corresponding to the correct pronunciation of the word **Mrs.** (never properly written in full). "My **missus**," "My old girl" (vulgar).

**mistake** of perception; error of judgment; (socially) **faux pas** (fō' pā), French for "false step"; a **social slip**, a mistake against social conventions. A **faux pas** is made or committed by a person: "She had hardly finished denouncing bobbed hair, when she realized she had made a **faux pas**; her hostess had just had her hair bobbed that very day." "Impugning the character of the witness was a **faux pas** which alienated the sympathies of the jury."

**Mistress** (pronounced Mis'us before a name). Abbreviated before a name only, **Mrs.** (see "**missus**").

to **mix** (Past tense **mixed**, formerly **mixt**), to put together; to **jumble up** (colloq.); join neatly; **shuffle** cards; **stir** liquid; **blend** tea, coffee; **fuse** metals; **amalgamate** mercury and another metal; **alloy** one metal with another; **scramble** eggs; **implicate** somebody in an accusation; **come together**; **mingle** among the crowd; **associate** with, make friends, etc.

In chemistry **mixture** is used when the elements keep their identity and are said to be physically united: "Air is a **mixture** of nitrogen and oxygen"; **compound** is used when they lose their identity and are said to be chemically united: "Water is a **compound** of oxygen and hydrogen."

a **mixture**: a medley, not well suited together; a **jumble** of ill-assorted things; a **mingle**; a **compound** (see **Mix**); an **amalgam**, mercury with another metal; a **blend** of tea, coffee; tobacco; a **hash**; a **stew**; a **hodgepodge**; a **pōtpourri**, music.

a **mob**, unruly; a **rabble**, low-class; a **crowd**, many people. See **Crowd**.

a **mode** or **mood** of a verb is a form it takes to indicate the "**mood**" or state of mind of the speaker. In English the usually recog-

nized **modes** are the **indicative**, mode of certainty; **imperative**, mode of command; the **subjunctive**, mode of dependence; and the **infinitive**, indefinite or undefined mode. See **Conjugation**.

**a mōd'el.** See **Pattern**.

**a Mōd'ernist.** In Christian polemics, a Christian who believes that many of the Bible narratives are not to be accepted as literally true. Opposite: **Fundamentalist**.

**mōd'est**, adjective; opposite of "conceited": **diffident**; **retiring**; **bashful**; **unassuming**. Opposite of large: **small**, **little**, **moderate**: "a modest income."

**to modify** (mōd'ifi), **modifying**, **modified**; slightly change in degree. In grammar, a word **modifies** another when it completes a unit of thought with it: "A large income" ("large" modifies "income").

**Mohām'medan.** The religion of Mohammed or Mahomet or Muhammad is properly called **Islam** (iz'lam), and its devotees **Moslems** or **Muslims**.

**a mōment** is longer than an **instant** (the sounds **m-m-n** suggesting weight, while the **-st-t** of "instant" suggests speed).

**money** (mūn'ī). Latin **pēcūnia**, from **pecu**, **cattle**, as cattle was the earliest means of exchange, as it still is with African tribes; hence **pēcū'niāry**, relating to money; **impecu'niūs**, poor; to **pēc'ulātē**, to "graft" in public office. **Funds** (plural); **cash**; **assets**, money and other property together; in ready form: **coin**, **bills**, **specie** (spē'shē), **legal tender**.

Pertaining to coin money.....mōn'ētary

Place where money is coined.....the Mint

Pertaining to money as wealth.....pēcū'niāry

Profitable in terms of money.....lucrative (lū'krātīv)

One who has just made money.....a nouveau riche (nōvō'-rēsh')

See **Spend**.

**mon-it.** Latin root meaning "warn, advise." Derived forms: **mon'itor**, **admonition**. See **Warn**.

**a monk** (mūng'k), a member of a monastic order, especially of an order which lives in seclusion, such as the Carthusians (named after the Chartreuse monastery), Trappists and Benedictines ("the learned monks"); loosely, a member of a strict religious order which keeps some contact with the world, such as Dominicans, Franciscans, Carmelites. The word **monk** is not properly applied to those orders which actively engage in priestly ministry, such as Jesuits, Passionists, Oblates, Marists, Redemptorists, etc. The feminine of **monk** is **nun**.

**a monkey** (mūng'kī). Latin **simia**, an ape; hence **sīm'ian**, adjective: ape-like. One of the smaller forms of quadrumanous (four-handed) mammals, with long tails; an **āpe**, one of the larger forms, heavy and without tails, such as the **gorilla**, the **orang**, the **gibbon**, the **chimpanzee** (which most closely resembles man); a **baboon** (dog-faced monkey).

**mono-**. Greek root meaning "alone, only." Derived forms: **mon'ogram**, **mon'arch**, **mon'ologue**. See **One**.

**mood**. See **Mode**.

**moon**. Latin **luna**; hence **lunar**, pertaining to the moon; a **lunatic**, one who is "moon-struck."—The moon's **crescent**; a **quarter**; **half-moon**; the **waning** (decreasing) moon; the **waxing** (growing) moon. "The moon **waxes** in the shape of a **D** and **wanes** in the shape of a **C**."

**moral**, literally "according to established usage" from Latin **mores**, customs; hence **morals**, one's attitude to society and social duties; **morality** of an act; **morale** (**morâl'**), state of hopefulness or despair of an individual or a nation; a **mor'al-ist**, one who preaches; **immor'al**, contrary to morals; **unmoral**, having nothing to do with right and wrong: "Thought is essentially **unmoral**; only when affected by the emotions does it become **moral** or **immoral**."

**more**. Latin **plus**, **pluris**; hence **plural**, a number more than one; **surplus**, what is left over and above. Greek **pleon**; hence a **plē'onasm**, a redundancy of words, as in "both alike."

The idea of "more" is often indicated by the prefix **ad-**, to: **advance**, go more forward; **additional**, given more; **accelerate**, go faster; or by the prefix **re**, again: **replenish**, fill again, fill some more; **repeat**, ask for more, ask again. With some English words the idea of more is often expressed by a word beginning with **out**: to **outdo**, do more than; **outstrip**, **outspeed**, **outcut**, **outshine**, **outnumber**, **outweigh**, **outmaneuver**, **outgrow**. To **enlarge**, give more area; **increase**, give more growth; **inflate**, fill out more; **swell**, become rounder and larger; **widen**, take or give more width; **broaden**, take or give more scope; **extend** in various directions; **distend**, extend too far; **dilate**, become larger in all directions: "His eyes dilated at the sight of food"; **magnify**, make more important; **surpass** somebody or something, grow above it, become more successful; **append**, add one thing at the end of another; **annex**, join one thing to another, in a subsidiary capacity; **accrue**, become naturally a part of a thing: "interest accrues rapidly."

When two things grow or decrease proportionately to each other, use **the more . . . the more**, **the less . . . the less**, or the followed by the comparative form:

**The more** I learn, **the more** I am impressed.

**The better** the day, **the better** the deed.

**The more** you grow, **the greater** your need of common sense.

**The longer** the theater remains open, **the more** people want to come in.

**The less** I see of him, **the less** I miss him.

**moreover** (one word).

**morose**, adjective. See **Sullen**.

**mort-**. Latin root meaning "death." Derived forms: **mor'tuary**, **immor'tal**, **mor'tify**, **mort'gage**. See **Death**.

**mortgage** (**mor'gij**), the "dead-wager," like **mortuary**, the place for the dead. Note the derived forms: **mortgāgor** (an absurd

spelling; correctly **mortgageor** to keep the **g** soft, or **mortgager** contrary to -er rule; pronounced **mor'ga-jor'**), the one who gives a mortgage on his property (i.e., the one who receives the money on it); **mortgagee**, the one to whom the property is mortgaged, who gives the money.

**mother.** Latin **mater**; hence **maternal**, **motherly**; **maternity**; **mātrix** or **mat**, a mold; **matrimony**, marriage.

**Maternal** is more properly applied to the duties (notice the sternness of the sound **T**), **motherly** to the tenderness (notice the softness of the sound **TH**), although no sharp line can be drawn. "This little girl is stern and **maternal** with smaller children; her sister is tender and **motherly**." The same remark applies to **father** and **paternal**, **brother** and **fraternal**.

**motion**, a change of position, whether the object was previously moving or not: "the **motion** of the stars"; **movement**, with a beginning and an ending: "He made a slight **movement** with his foot"; **move**, part of a plan: "I have just played; now it's your **move**."

**motion pictures**, the official name; **moving pictures**, a more popular name; "the **movies**," colloquial; the **cin'ema**; the **kin'ema**, the **screen** (figuratively); the **silver sheet**.

### Terms used in film production

The narrative from which the film is produced is called the **scenario** (sēnā'rīō). If it was written especially for film production, it is called an **original**; if based on a book or story published as fiction, it is an **adaptation**. In brief form it is a **synop'sis**; in full detail, giving each scene and title in the sequence in which they will appear in the finished film, it is a **continū'ity**.

A **scene** consists of a number of consecutive pictures made without moving the camera, and representing one unit of action. A **close-up**, made by bringing the camera nearer, or bringing the artist nearer the camera, or by using a lens of different focus, is properly counted as a separate scene from the **long shot**.

### Camera Work

Films are photographed in the **motion picture camera** and exhibited by means of the **projector**. The latter only is referred to as the **machine**, the camera being generally referred to as the **outfit**. In or on the camera, the film is held in boxes called **retorts** or **magazines**. It passes through a gate, in which it is exposed, being moved forward intermittently by a crank and a movement which allows the film to stop in the aperture for a fraction of a second.

At the end of each scene the assistant camera man or assistant director holds up a **slate** or **scene book**, consisting of any device bearing large consecutive numbers, by which the scene will be identified. A **still** or **still picture**, meaning an ordinary photograph, is made of such scenes as will have advertising value when the film is released.

The lens used is practically always an **anastigmat** (productive of utmost crispness of focus); it may be of any **focal length**, from **wide angle** to **telephoto**. Various **light filters** (color or effect filters) may be used to modify the relative intensity of highlights and shadows, to produce **night** or **fog** or other effects.

### The Film

Standard film **stock** is 35 mm. wide ( $1\frac{3}{8}$  inch); sub-standard, used by amateurs, may be 16 or 8 mm. It comes in various **emulsions**, **panchromatic** or **superpan** being most sensitive to a wide range of colors, including red. **Negative** film is used in the camera, being much faster than positive film (on which prints are made, as many as desired). After exposure and development, the negative shows the blacks and whites reversed, just like ordinary kodak film.

During **cranking** (usually by motor), the film comes to a complete stop 16 times in each foot (24 times a second at normal talkie speed). Each time it stops, a **frame** (single picture, showing no motion) is exposed. (The illusion of motion comes from the persistence of vision.) The blank space between frames is the **frame line**; it falls exactly halfway between two sets of perforations, of which there are 4 sets to each frame. The individual frame or picture is one inch wide and  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch high. The **footage** is recorded on an indicator or counter.

### Effects

An exposure in the camera may be **straight** or with certain effects. Among these are the **fade in**, **fade out**, **lap dissolve**, **wipe-over** (which may take one of many different forms), the **iris**, which makes the center of the picture appear first or disappear last, the **barn-doors**, and **mattes** of various shapes (keyhole, binoculars, etc.). Tricks are produced by **double exposure** or **multiple exposure**.

During action, the camera may be tilted up or down, or **panned** (**panorammed**) horizontally, or both. It may be placed on a **rotambulator**, so that the scene **perambulates** from a long shot to a close-up. **Reverse motion** is produced by cranking backwards.

### Speed

Standard speed, for both camera and projector, is 24 frames a second for talkies. With a camera overspeeding from 4 to 8 times or more, projection speed being constant, the result on the screen is **slow motion**. Underspeeding produces **accelerated motion**. Considerable underspeeding (one frame instead of 8 per turn of the crank) is called **stop motion**, the process used in making **animated cartoons**, etc. (**animation**).

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels: *a* as in *mate*, *meet*, *mite*, *mote*, *mute*, *my*; *ā* as in *mat*, *met*, *mitt*, *not*, *nut*, *pit*; *ē* as in *father*; *ēr* as in *merry*; *er* as in *merc*; *ou* as in *loud*; *eu* as in *land*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ā* in *senate*). Consonants: *g* always as in *go*; *th* as in *thief*; *dh* as *th* in *mother*; *ng* as in *sing* or in *singer*; *ng-g* as *ng* in *finger*. See **Syllables**.

### Laboratory Work

After exposure in the camera, the film is placed on racks and developed, fixed and washed in tall tanks, then dried on huge drums (or it is developed, fixed, washed and dried in a continuous machine with rollers), after which it is polished on a buffing machine to remove surface dirt on the celluloid. When the negative is ready, a positive print is made by running the finished negative in contact with unexposed film of another kind, called **positive stock**, through another kind of camera, called the **printing machine** or **printer**, in the dark room. Inside the printing machine is a light which exposes the film. This first positive print is called **sample print** or **test print**. It is black and white.

Each piece of film may be cut at any place, and anything from one frame up omitted. The scenes can thus be rearranged and cut to give any result. This cutting is called **editing**. The physical work of cutting scenes and putting them together is called by names that vary with every laboratory, such as **splicing**, **patching**, **mending** or **joining**, and which could be standardized as **cementing**. The resultant thicker piece of film is called **splice** or **patch**. This cementing is done by means of a solvent called **film cement**, after the emulsion has been scraped off the surface of the film from one-eighth to one-sixteenth of an inch. A small hand **press** or a large machine is generally used but is not indispensable.

The scenes arranged in their proper sequence, with or without temporary titles, are then projected before a second cutting.

### Titles

The titles and sub-titles form part of the film. Feature film titles are photographed from cards, which carry out the producer's intention and often suggest actions and emotions not shown fully on the film itself. The nature of the type and illustrations is of great psychological importance.

All titles have to be in perfect alignment, every letter being true to the sixty-fourth of an inch, horizontally and vertically. Titles are photographed in a **title camera**, fitted with the same "effects" as an ordinary camera. The title negative is developed and printed in the usual way.

### The Sample Print

When the final sequence and cutting of scenes has been decided upon, the **sample print** is **tinted** and **toned**, which means that certain colors are put on either by a **stain** or **dyeing** process, called **tinting**, which covers the entire piece of film, or by a chemical process called **toning**, which affects only the exposed parts of the picture. Or the film is printed direct on tinted stock. Then a written statement called an **assembly** is made. This contains the first few words of every title and a brief identification of each scene and also the colors.

The negative is then **matched**, meaning that the whole nega-



tive is cut and placed in such an order as to agree to one inch with the standard positive. This negative is assembled together with the negative of titles in lengths of 200 feet or less, each such length being called a **roll**, from which the **release prints** will be made (release prints being those which will be projected publicly).

### Length

The pictures of the same thing are called a **subject** and the complete number of reels required to show that subject fully is called a **print**. A subject which will occupy the greater part of a program is called a **feature**. The minimum standard length of a feature is five reels. A **reel** is one thousand feet or less. The reel is a unit of length, but the word is also used to speak of the actual metal reel on which the film is kept. Around each reel is sometimes placed a **film band** with the name of the film and the number of the reel.

Standard films are made of celluloid, which is a highly inflammable nitrate of cellulose. But there is also a slow-burning acetate of cellulose called **non-flam film** or **safety film**. Non-flam film is also made in a narrower width with smaller individual pictures, called **safety standard**, which can be projected the same size as the standard film and requires no license or licensed operator. The life of safety film is somewhat less than that of celluloid film.

**motivation.** In story-writing and the drama, the presentation to the reader of sufficient motives for an action to appear plausible. For example, if the climax of a situation is to be a fight, it will have to be motivated perhaps by an insult; the insult itself will be motivated, perhaps by a misunderstanding which causes wounded pride. All motivation arises from natural instincts or impulses (see list of instincts, under **Instincts**). In the example just given, the instinct of laughter in one of the characters may cause him to make a humorous remark; this remark, misunderstood, hurts the other person's instinct of assertion, causing him to utter the insult, which in turn arouses the opponent's instinct of assertion; hence the fight, a rivalry of assertiveness. A true happening, without sufficient motivation, will often appear impossible when related in story form.

- a **motive**, the desire which moves one to action, often explained after the event as a "reason"; an **incentive**, a good reason which incites to action, like the promise of a reward; a **stimulus**, that which rouses to action; a **spur**, figurative; an **inducement**, a reward or promise held out for departing from a negative attitude.

"I have not been able to fathom his true motives."

"The men were inclined to loaf on the job, so they were reminded of the promised double pay to the successful gang as an incentive to renewed efforts."

"The return of European money to par gave a great stimulus to business."

"He was offered a free house and an automobile as an

additional inducement to come South; but he would not relinquish his present position."

**mouth.** Latin *os, oris*; hence oral, "an oral examination"; orifice of a tunnel.

to **move** (movable, motion).—Latin *moveo, motum*; hence **promotion**, movement forward; **emotion**, movement outward (see Motion).

Able to move.....*mōbile*

Unable to move.....*immōbile*

To move up and down like a tide.....to fluctuate

Rapidity of motion.....celer'ity

To move at increasing speed.....accelerate

A sudden desire to move.....an im'petus

An urge to move.....a stī'mulus

One moving from country to country.....a nōm'ad

See Walk, Carry.

a **move**, according to plan; a **movement**, beginning and ending; a **motion**, change of position, without regard to its beginning or end.

**moving pictures.** See Motion pictures.

**Mr.** (*mīs'ter*), never written in full. The written word "**mister**" is a recent humorous coinage from the abbreviation which really stands for **Master**. As "**Mr.**" is now the word itself, many writers and newspapers use it without a period: "**Mr Jones**" (same with **Mrs**). Plural **Messrs.** (*Mēs'iz*).

**Mrs.** (pronounced *mīs'us*, but never written out). Humorously, "*missus*."

**much.** Latin *multum*; hence **multitude**, **multiply**. There is no need for a word **muchly**, as **much** is both an adjective and an adverb.

#### Some words used to convey various degrees of this idea

**Nouns:** affluence (much wealth); abundance (much produce); fecun'dity (fruitfulness); aggregation (many, as in a flock); bounty (generosity); munificence (free giving).

**Adjectives:** volū'minous, prodī'gious, colos'sal, enor'mous, tremen'dous. (Idea of too much, see: Too much): excessive, sūper'fluous, redundant, fulsome, nau'seating, sātiāted, de trop (*dūtrō*).

**multi-**. Latin root meaning "much, many," also used as a prefix. Derived forms: **mul'titude**, **mul'tipl̄y**. See Much, Many.

a **muscle** (*mūs'l*) of the body; **mussel**, a shell fish.

The spelling **Muscle Shoals** for **Mussel Shoal** is an ignorant blunder by a clerk, which has now become an official spelling.

**music**, the production of rhythmic tones.

#### Some words used on this subject

Musical instruments: piano, grand piano, player piano, organ, pipe organ, harp, harmonium, violin (*vī-ō-līn'*), guitar, banjo, mandolin, ukulele, violoncello or cello (*chēl'ō*), *vī'ōlā*.

kettle drum, snare drum, bass drum, triangle, cymbals, xylophone (zī'lō-fōn), tuba, trombone, trumpet, fife, clarion, bugle, cornet, horn, French horn, bassoon, ôphicleide, saxophone, euphonium, English horn, oboe, flute, piccolo, bagpipe.

Composer, orchestra, band, conductor, concert, score, air, chord, tune, accompaniment, chorus, execution, string instrument, wind instrument, opera, concerto, cantata, oratorio, march, rhapsody, barcarole, symphony, sonata, scherzo, recitative, nocturne, intermezzo, overture, measure, harmony. Variation, dissonance, discord, melody; solo, duet, trio, quartet, quintet, sextet, septet.

Names of various voices and other musical terms, see Sing.

**mut-.** Latin root meaning "change." Derived forms: **mütation**, **immüttable**, **commüte**. See Change. (Another form of this Latin word gives **mute**, speechless.)

to **mutter**, speak inaudibly and complainingly. Note the heavy sound **M**, indicating the almost closed lips, and the sharp **T** sound, indicating criticism.

**mütüal**, adjective; reciprocal: "our **mutual** liking for each other"; **common**, shared by both or all: "a **common** friend," not "a **mutual** friend."

**myself** (one word).

# N

**nā.** Sound heard in **neighbor**; to **neigh** (horse).

**nā.** Sound heard in **gnat** (mosquito).

**nau.** Sound heard in **gnaw**.

**naked**, adjective. Latin nudus; hence **nude**, **nudity**. **Bare**, **uncovered**, **stark**.

**-nal.** Three-syllable words ending in **-nal** have the accent on the second syllable: **noctur'nal**, **inter'nal**, **infer'nal**.

- a name.** Latin nomen, nominis; hence to **nōm'inate**, name as suitable for an office; **nōm'inal**, in name only; **cognomen**, second surname.—Greek onoma; hence **pseudonym**, an assumed name; **anōnymous**, nameless; **synonym**, word of same meaning; **antonym**, word of opposite meaning.

Note that the older usage of **name**, as in the Bible, includes the idea of **meaning**: "the **name** of the Lord" means more than our present usage of **name** would indicate

**First name** or **Christian name**; **middle name**; **surname**; **nickname**; **style** of a firm; **title** of a book; a **term** in an art or science; an **ālias**, false name; a **pseudonym**, writer's assumed name, better than **nom-de-plume**, which is an English concoction of French words; an **appellation** of a class of things; an **epithet**, qualifying word; a **misnomer**, wrongly applied name; **initials**, first letters that stand for a name.

For proper names, see **Names** below.

**namely**, **videlicet** (abbreviated **viz.**, which is to be read aloud as "namely").

**names.** Pronunciation of some peculiar names of the English nobility and gentry.

Abergavenny	Aber-G-en'i
Abinger	Ab'in-ger
Baden-Powell	Bā'dn-Pō-el
Beauchamp	Beecham
Beaulieu	Bū'lā (Bewlay)
Bellingham	Bel'in-jam
Belvoir	Bē-ver (like beaver)
Bethune	Bē'tn (like beeton)
Bosanquet	Bo'san-ket
Buccleugh	Būk'lōō
Cheyne	Chā'nē (to rime with rainy)
Claverhouse	Klāv'ers
Colclough	Kō'kli (coke-ley)
Colquhoun	Ko-hoon'
Conisborough	Kun'sbro

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels **ā ē ī ō ū ŷ** as in **mate**, **meet**, **mite**, **mote**, **mute**, **my**; **ă ē ĭ ô ŭ ŷ** as in **mat**, **met**, **mitt**, **not**, **nut**, **pity**; **ā** as in **father**; **ā** as in **marry**; **er** as in **mercer**; **ou** as in **loud**; **au** as in **laud**. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ă in senate). Consonants: **g** always as in **go**; **th** as in **thief**; **dh** as **th** in **mother**; **ng** as in **sing** or in **singer**; **ng-g** as **ng** in **finger**. See **Syllables**.

Crespigny .....	Krēp'in-i
Dysart .....	Dī-zert
Drogheda .....	Drau'-e-dǎ
Dumaresq .....	Doom'er-isk
Elibank .....	El'Y-bank
Fiennes .....	Fīnz (like "fines")
Hardinge .....	Harding
Harlech .....	Harlē
Hawarden .....	Harden
Hough .....	Huf
Inge .....	Ing
Mackarness .....	Mac'karnēs
Meagher .....	Mār
Pole-Carew .....	Pōōl-kā'ri
Poulett .....	Paul'ēt
Ranfurly .....	Ran'furlī
Reuter .....	Roy'ter
Ruthven .....	Riv'en
Sandys .....	Sandz
Shrewsbury .....	Shrou'sberi (ou as in loud)
St. John .....	Sin'jūn
St. Leger .....	Sil'injer
Strachey .....	Strā'chī (tshey)
Torphichen .....	Tor'fichen
Villiers .....	Villers
Wemyss .....	Weemz
Woburn .....	Woo'burn
Zouche .....	Zoosh

**names, Proper.**—For the benefit of fiction writers, a list of typical Christian names and surnames is appended. We call typical a name which is absolutely common in its country of origin, yet which instantly strikes people of other countries as foreign.

### United States

**Boys' names:** Elmer, Royal, Asa, Ira, Everett, Curtis, Otis, Leland, Orville, Warren, Hiram, Lee, Chester, Jefferson, Homer, Franklin, Milton, "Junior," Wilbur.

**Girls' names:** Beulah, Sadie, Mamie, Mina, Cora, Clara, Phœbe. (The following are also used in England, though less commonly than in U. S.) Virginia, Irene, Mabel, Rhoda, Effie, Essie, Julia, Cornelia, Florence.

**Family names:** (The only typically American surnames, i.e., those not also found in any other country, are Americanized spellings of foreign names.) Snyder, Swartz, Mosher, Chrysler, Blankenship, Ladue, Van Allen, Van Camp, Van Scoy, Van Noy, Yoacum, Yerkes.

### Great Britain

**Boys' names:** Percival, Reginald, Clifford, Archibald, Esme, Gerald, Cyril, Cecil. (The following are also used in U. S., though less commonly than in England) Sidney, Howard, Harold, Stephen, Hugh, James, David, Herbert, Albert. (The

following are among the most common English names) George, Edward, Henry, John, Charles, William, Arthur, Thomas, Joseph, Frank, Frederick. (Scottish) Douglas, Kenneth, Walter, Donald. (Irish) Patrick, Michael.

**Girls' names:** (These are practically all used commonly in U. S. also. The following are the most common in England) Dorothy, Kate or Katherine, Gertrude, Ann, Margaret or Peggy, Mary, Martha, Pearl, Grace, Maud, Lily, May, Daisy, Violet, Edith or Edyth, Gladys, Helen or Ellen, Eleanor, Pamela.

**Family names:** (The most common surnames are the same as in U. S.) Smith, Jones, Brown, Fowler, Turner, Baker, Chandler, Roberts, Lynch, Carpenter, Jennings, Johnson, Dutton, Harvey, Kingston, Cunningham, Benton, etc. (Uncommon names are those of the aristocracy, and should be used with great caution, as some of them are unique and would involve legal liabilities. See list under Names, Pronunciations.)

### France

**Boys' names:** Henri, André, René, Jacques, Gaston, Adolphe, Alphonse, Anatole, Remi, Pierre, Jules, Edouard, Fernand, Maurice, Armand, Marcel, Xavier, Jean-Baptiste, Yves, Antoine.

**Girls' names:** Germaine, Suzanne, Denise, Colette, Nicole, Josette, France, Sylvanie, Geneviève (Ginette), Madeleine, Jeanne, Yvette, Yvonne, Gabrielle, Léontine, Odette, Simone or Simonne, Adrienne, Antoinette, Mathilde, Berthe, Véronie, Lucie, Adèle, Angèle.

**Family names:** Durand, Dupont, Dulac, Ducasse, Dupuy, Martin, Chevalier, Lefebvre or Lefèvre, Lemoine, Lacroix, Lacoste, Lamothe, Lafon, Lalanne, Laborde, Langlois, Fleury, Flournoy, Faure, Lamare, Denis, Lenôtre, Lacour, Ferrand, Abadie, Mortier, Minvielle, Rousseau, Maréchal, Ferrière, Villeneuve, Gaillard, Giraud, Fournier, Duprat, Roux, Videau, Vigneau.

### Germany

**Boys' names:** Hans, Heinz, Kunz, Kurt, Fritz, Ludwig, Johann, Ignaz, Reinhardt, Luitpold, Bruno, Wilhelm, Rudolf, Erich, Siegfried, Sigmund, Leonhardt, Waldemar, Erwin, Hellmuth, Stephan, Moritz, Reinhold, August, Karl, Gebhardt, Gotthelf, Gottlieb, Raimund, Berthold, Heinrich, Gustav, Xaver, Harald, Herrmann, Hugo.

**Girls' names:** Gretchen, Gretel, Tilde, Adelheid, Else or Ilse, Elsbeth, Riecke, Hildegard, Auguste, Gustl, Sidonie, Liese, Armgard, Hermine, Magda, Hulda.

**Family names:** Schmidt, Schulz or Schulze, Braun, Weiss, Schwarz or Schwartz, Huber, Moeller, Vogel, Holz, Buerger, Mertens, Pieper, Haller, Werner, Wolff, Hoffmann, Schirmer, Bach, Schlegel, Schiller, Kiessling, Sachse, Ochs, Weber, Wagner, Sauer, Maurer, Schade, Clauss, Fischer, Bischoff, Schubert, Kremer, Berg, Stoll, Seiler, Haupt, Heine, Busch,

Krause, Kohl, Lehmann, Meyer, Schwaab, Mann, Becker, Dietz.

### Italy

**Boys' names:** Carmelo, Giovanni, Batista, Gennaro, Natale, Mario.

**Girls' names:** Vincenzina, Serafina, Isolina.

**Family names:** Martinelli, Antonelli, Boggio, Ferraris, Di Carlo, Di Giovanni.

### Mexico

**Boys' names:** Juan, Pedro, Simón, Luis, Ramón, Felipe, Jesús, Guillermo, Francisco (Pancho, Paco), Angel, Raúl, Pablo, Salvador.

**Girls' names:** Lupe, Guadalupe, Lola, Dolores, Concha, Concepción, María, Juana, Petra, Atanasia, Torcuáta, Luscinda, Encarnación, Josefina, Pepa, Francisca, Chuca, Paca, Lucrecia, Angela, Luisa, Consuelo, Teresa, Alicia, Florinda, Isabel, Amalia, Victoria, Paneraria, Petronila, Adela, Esther, Aurora, Sara, Carlotta, Adelaida, Asunción.

**Family names:** Pérez, González, García, Chávez, Sánchez, Galindo, Ortega, Martínez, Gutiérrez, Romero, Montaña.

### Holland

**Boys' names:** Jan, Dirk, Piet, Klaas, Hendrik, Leendert, Frans, Kees, Cornelis, Manus, Dores, Harmen.

**Girls' names:** Mina, Rika, Corrie, Jaantje, Grietje, Foos, Hannie, Cato, Suze, Petronella, Koba, Dina.

**Family names:** de Boer, van Dam, van Vliet, Jonker, de Jongh, de Vries, van Wijk, Smit, Visser, Hartog, Mulder, van Gelder.

### Denmark

**Boys' names:** Christian, Frederik, Jens, Knud, Joergen, Hjalmar, Aage, Viggo, Rasmus, Folmer, Helge, Niels, Mogens, Hans, Svend, Valdemar, Thorkil, Peter, Erik, Ejnar, Kai, Ejler, Soeren, Axel, Klaus, Harald, Henning, Morten, Holger.

**Girls' names:** Ingeborg, Inger, Margrethe, Helga, Ane, Birte, Karen, Valborg, Aase, Agnete, Bodil, Dagmar, Thyra, Ebba, Anna, Gerda, Johanne, Jutta, Sigrid, Maren, Ragnhild, Petra, Mette, Agnes, Ellen.

**Family names:** Hansen, Jensen, Olsen, Christensen, Jorgensen, Nielsen, Knudsen, Madsen, Soerensen, Petersen, Mortensen, Poulsen, Rasmussen.

### Norway

**Boys' names:** Arild, Arne, Gulbrand, Haakon, Halvard, Hans, Harald, Ingolf, Ingvald, Ivar, Jens, Knut, Lars, Leiv, Nils, Odd, Olav, Ole, Per, Ragnar, Reidar, Sigurd, Sverre, Tor.

**Girls' names:** Agnes, Alvide, Aslaug, Astrid, Borghild, Eli, Ellen, Gudrun, Gunhild, Helga, Inga, Ingeborg, Inger, Ragnhild, Signe, Sigrid, Solveig, Tora.

**Family names:** Aas, Berg, Dal, Eide, Eng, Foss, Gran, Hagen, Haug, Hol, Holm, Hov, Li, Lund, Olsen, Persen, Sand, Sten, Strand, Ström, Vik, Voll.

**China**

**Boys' names:** Ah Chong, Punggeh, Chow Dih, Ohmo, Hohang, Nansien.

**Girls' names:** Al-lang, Yeo-Gu, Honghong, I-tso.

**Family names:** Chen, Ling, Huang, Hsu, Ting, Seto, Awyang, Sah, Yih, Hsieh, Sun, Kao, Foo, Kwang, Tsang.

**Japan**

**Boys' names:** Taro, Jiro, Yoshio, Takeo.

**Girls' names:** Hanako, Fumiko, Yoshiko, Haruko, Kikuko, Masako.

**Family names:** Tanaka, Yoshida, Kimura, Sato, Ito.

**names, proper, misleading.** It is occasionally necessary in fiction-writing and in the drama to use a name that is so written or so pronounced that it can produce a misunderstanding. The following are a few examples of such names, which should be avoided unless a misunderstanding is deliberately aimed at:—

Raymonde, Valentine, Clarence, are **masculine** in English, **feminine** in French. Jean is **masculine** in French, **feminine** in English. Francis (masculine) and Frances (feminine) are **pronounced** alike in English. Claude is used both for the masculine and for the feminine in French; Evelyn, usually feminine in English, is occasionally masculine. The French masculine forms André, Gabriel, Marcel, have distinct feminines: Andrée, Gabrielle, Marcelle. These are spelled differently, but **pronounced** the same as the masculine.

**narration.** In Rhetoric, a form of discourse which presents events in their time relation. Its object is to inform the audience of what is necessary for the comprehension of the subject. A good narrative has an **introduction**, which answers the questions when? who? where?: "In the old city of Paris, on an island in the middle of the River Seine, there lived, six hundred years ago, a man named Jacquard." A good narrative has **coherence**, that is to say its parts hold together, producing an impression of unity. A good narrative is **interesting**: it begins as soon as possible to give vital facts, eliminating all explanations that would retard their presentation, or keeping some of them for parenthetical introduction later. A good narrative has a definite **incentive point**, where the interest begins to climb rapidly; it has a **climax**, toward which the entire action tends; it has **transitions** between its various parts; it has a **viewpoint**, to which the narrator adheres until he has to change it for another in order to present another aspect of the problem.

**narrow, adjective.** Latin *strictus*; hence **strict**, allowing little leeway; **constriction**, a narrowing down. Greek *stenos*; hence **stenōgraphy**, condensed writing.

**nat-.** Latin root meaning "born, birth." Derived forms: **nā'tive**, **nā'tal**, **nā'tion**, **nā'tiv-ity**, **innate**, **nā'ture**. See Born.

**a navy**, a country's fighting ships as a whole; **merchant marine**, the non-fighting ships of a country; a **fleet**, a division of a



nation's navy: "The Pacific Fleet."—Adjective: **nāvāl**. See also Ship, and War.

### Some words used on this subject

Admiral, vice-admiral, rear-admiral, commodore (retired), captain, commander, lieutenant, ensign, "gob"; the marines. The fleet, a battleship, cruiser, destroyer, submarine, aeroplane carrier, cutter, sloop, collier.

**nē**. Sound heard in knee, neither.

**near**, adverb. Latin *proximus* (adjective); hence **proxim'ity**, nearness; **approx'imately**, about; **proximo**, next (month). **Close to**, **beside**, **alongside**, **by**, **about**, **around**; **nigh** (poet'ic); **adjacent** land, lying immediately next.

Being near to.....propin'quity.

Being next to.....juxtaposition.

Do not confuse **near** and **nearly**. Both are adverbs, but they do not mean the same thing. **Near** refers to physical proximity; **nearly** to "almost complete."

**near-by**, hyphenated word; not properly used as an adjective.

Do not say a "near-by farm" but "a neighboring farm."

**necessary**, adjective (*nēs'ēsari*, accent on first syllable), "which has to be"; "Eating is necessary to life"; **needful**, necessary for a particular purpose: "a needful quality," one that is required to achieve the desired object; **requis'ite**, arbitrarily required: "A knowledge of Latin is requisite for that degree"; **indispensable**, which cannot be done without: "No man is considered indispensable to modern business, although many a man cannot be replaced by any one person"; **essen'tial**, without which the thing cannot be: "Good health is essential in many vocations."

**a need**, felt shortage.—Latin verb *indigere*; hence **in'digent**, very poor. **Want**, shortage of something desired, also nowadays the mere desire or wish; a **requirement**, thing expected; a **con-vēnience**, thing desired additionally; a **desid'eratum**, something which would be very desirable but can hardly be demanded; an **ex'igency**, an unforeseen emergency; a **requisi-tion**, call for something needed; **com'petence**, state of being above need financially.

**neg'ligence**, lack of due care; **neglect**, state of being uncared for.

"Statutes impose upon the public many positive duties, such as having tail lights on automobiles at night, failure to comply with which constitutes punishable negligence."

"Neglect of cultural opportunities is the reason for much discontent with life."

**a neighbor, neighborhood, neighborly**.—Latin *vicinus*; hence **vicin'-ity**, the neighborhood. **Proximity** to a place; **environs** of a place, the surrounding territory.

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels *ā ē ī ō ū y* as in *mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my*; *ă ă ĩ ă ū ă ŷ* as in *mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity*; *ā* as in *father*; *ēr* as in *merry*; *er* as in *mercier*; *ou* as in *loud*; *au* as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ā* in *senate*). Consonants: *g* always as in *go*; *th* as in *thief*; *dh* as *th* in *mother*; *ng* as in *sing* or in *singer*; *ng-g* as *ng* in *finger*. See Syllables.

**neither . . . nor . . . nor** (nēdher or nidher). Used in introducing coordinate clauses, usually with two but also with more than two (although many people prefer to use **neither . . . nor** with only two clauses): "I should neither sell, nor give, nor lose it" (Shakespeare); "Provide neither gold, nor silver, nor brass in your purses, nor scrip for your journey, neither two coats, neither shoes, nor yet staves." (Matthew 10: 9-10 in the Authorized Version; but the American Standard Version has it: "Get you no gold, nor silver, nor brass in your purses; no wallet for your journey; neither two coats, nor shoes, nor staff." Again the Authorized Version has: "Neither by spirit, nor by word, nor by letter" 2 Thess. 2: 2; while the American Standard revises it: "That ye be not shaken . . . either by spirit, or by word, or by epistle.")

**neo-**. Greek root meaning "new." Derived forms: **nēōl'ogism** (a novel language form), **nē'ophy'te** (a convert, a beginner). Used also as a prefix: **nēō-Raphaelite**. See **New**.

**a neologism** (nē-ol'oj-iz-m). A new word or phrase which, while possibly of good origin and conforming to known rules of language, has not yet been generally accepted as standard. Example: to **squodge** (a mixture of **squeeze** and **hug**). "Peter, I'd like to squodge you" ("Peter Pan").

**nerve**. Greek neuron; hence **neural'gia**, nervous pain; **neurot'ic**, nervously sick person; **neural**, of the nerves. Figuratively: **courage**, **audacity**, **effrontery**, "**cheek**," **aplomb** (ă-plŏng').

**neuter**. From Latin neutrum, "neither." Of neither sex; **neutral**, of neither party, not taking sides; in chemistry, neither acid nor alkaline.

**nevertheless** (one word).

**new**, adjective. Latin novum; hence **nov'el**, adjective: never presented before: "a novel idea"; a **novelty**, something never presented before; to **ren'ovate**, make to look new; **innovate**, start something for the first time: "Motor bus service on a distance rate was an innovation recently introduced in this country"; an **innovator**, one who starts new methods.—Greek **neo**; hence **neolithic**, pertaining to the "new stone" age of history; a **neol'ogism**, a new word form.—A thing is **new** which has not been made or used before: a new suit, a new book; **recent**, which did not exist before: "a recent publication"; **unprec'edented** event; **unusual**; **uncommon**; **original**; **modern**; **up-to-date**; **up-to-the-minute**; **brand new**; **late**, **latest**; **new-fangled**, said critically of inventions, etc., not approved of.

A new grammatical construction (one contrary to usage) . . . . . a **sōl'ecism**.

A new word contrary to usage . . . . . a **bar'barism**.

**news**. Although plural in form, this word is used with the singular verb: "The news is going round."

**next**. Latin proximus; hence **proxim'ity**. Latin propinquus, near; hence **propinquity**; **following**, **nearest**; **immediate**.

**nī.** Sound heard in night (opposite of day); knight (in armor); nigh (near); Nile (river).

**nī.** Sound heard in to knit.

**nice,** a general term of approval; pleasant; dainty, small and refined; delicate, done minutely with great care; refined, appealing to cultivated taste; (person) affable, very courteous; amiable, inclined to kindly intercourse.

Being nice.....the niceness (of a thing).  
A distinction.....a nicety.

**nickel,** note the spelling. Adjective nickeled.

**night** (nīt).—Latin *nox*, *noctis*; hence nocturnal, of the night.

**nine.** In Arabic figures, 9; Roman, IX—"I" to the left of "X" meaning "one less than ten").—Latin, *novem*; Greek, *ennea*.

Nine-sided figure.....a nonagon.

**nō.** Sound heard in to know something learned; a gnome (nōm), imp.

**nō.** Sound heard in knowledge, Gnostic.

**no, not** (negative words). **No** is used absolutely as a complete answer to a question: "Did he come?—No." It is also used to mean **not any**: "I have no bread." **Not** is used to modify a verb: "I have not seen it," or to modify an adjective: "It is not ready," or to modify an adverb: "He is not here."—Latin *non*; hence nonsense, that which is not sensible; a nōnē'tity, somebody who does not count.—Latin prefix *in-*; hence **infirm**, not strong; **invalid** (adj.), not good; **impossible**; **illegal**. English prefix *un-*, as in **unfair**, **unfold**.—Greek prefix *a-*, *an-*; hence **aseptic**, not full of germs; **anarchy**, absence of rule.

To say **no**: to **deny** an assertion; **refute** by disproving; **refuse** a request; **controvert** an argument; **contravene** an order. Saying **no**: a **denial** of an assertion; **nēgation** of a principle, a statement.

**nobility.** In England: the peerage.

### Some words used on this subject

His Grace the Duke; Her Grace the Duchess (dūch'ēs); mar'quess (English); marquis (Continental European); marchioness (mar'shūnes; English); marquise (Continental European); earl (English); count (Continental European); countess (wife of an earl or count); viscount (vī'kount); bāron; bāroness; baronet; knight (nīt); lady; court; Lord (before a nobleman's name); Sir (before a knight's or a baronet's Christian name); Lady (before a noblewoman's name); Dame (special English title); peer; a peeress (English).

Princes and princesses are properly royalty.

**nobody** (one word); **no one** (two words); **no man**; **none**, of several.

**no one** (two words); **nobody** (one word).

**a noise**, unmusical sound; an **uproar**, very loud; a **commotion**, people bustling; a **clatter** of falling utensils; a **crash** of something breaking; a **report** of gun fire; a **din** of traffic, etc.; a **bâbel** of voices; a **pandemonium** of shouts, threats, rowdyism.

**nom-in-**. Latin root meaning "name." Derived forms: **nom'inal**, to **nom'inate**, **nom'inative**, **nō'menclature**. See Name.

**nom'inative**. In Grammar, the "case" of the subject: "I, we, they, he, she": "I am, she is"; as distinguished from the accusative or objective, the case of the grammatical object of the action: "me, them, her, us": "They see us" (they, **nom'inative**; us, accusative or objective). Nouns do not vary in form for case as pronouns do: The mouse (**nominative**) sees the cat (**objective**).

**Nominative absolute**. In Grammar, a noun or pronoun or phrase used by itself in apposition to a sentence and equivalent to an adverbial phrase: "Weather permitting, we shall sail" (As the clause with the word ending in -ing is not directly related to the subject of the principal clause "we," the entire clause "weather permitting" is a **nominative absolute**).

See Case; Objective.

**non-**, a prefix used with words of Latin origin or with words that are not fully anglicized, indicating mere negation; equivalent to milder uses of the pure English prefix **un-**: **non-observance**, **non-compliance**, **non-essential**.

See mal-, mis-, un-, dis-.

**a nose**. Latin **nasus**; hence **nāsal**, of the nose, or pronounced through the nose as the sounds **m**, **n** in English; a nasal vowel, like the French **an**, **in**, **on**, **un**. Greek **rhis**, **rhinos**; hence **rhinoceros**, a "nose-horn" animal.

**not-**. Latin root meaning "to know." Derived forms: **nō'table**, **notō'rious**, **nōtation**. See Know.

**a note** of music; a **sound**, musical or not; a **nōtātion** in a book; a **memorandum**, an observation; a **short letter**.

**nothing** (nūth'ing, one word).—Latin **nil** or **nihil**; hence to **annihilate**, reduce to nothing; **nihilist**, an anarchist. **Nought** or **naught**; **nil**; **zéro**, **cipher**, 0.

**to nōtice** (**nōticing**, **nōticed**, **nōticeable**), pay attention to; **perceive**, see suddenly; **observe** deliberately; **survey** in detail; **examine** thoroughly; **heed** somebody's instructions; **note** clearly, perhaps in writing.

**notwithstanding** (one word).

**a noun**. In Grammar, the name of a thing, person, or mental concept of any kind; "John, door, idea, pleasure, house" are nouns. A **proper noun** is the name of an individual, generally based on the assumption that there is only one of that name: Constantinople, Georgia, Henry, Jane (if there are several of the name, which is usually the case, the noun is still proper because it then refers to one particular individual and not to any other). A **common noun** is the name of an object which is not the only one of its kind: man, goat, chair,

idea.—When a noun expresses a collection of individuals, it is called a **collective noun**: army, navy, committee.

Nouns have a gender: **masculine**, **feminine**, or **neuter**, and a number: **singular** or **plural**. Nouns are of the third person: "Henry goes," unless used in apposition to (i.e., placed next to, and meaning the same person as) a person speaking or spoken to: "I, John Henry" (first person): "I, John Henry, am glad"; "you, Betty Ann (2nd person) are glad."—Nouns have a case: **nominative** or subject; **objective**, accusative or object; **possessive** or genitive: "John went there" (John is nominative, although it does not change its form); "I took John along" (John is objective, although it does not change its form); "this is John's father" (John is possessive, and changes its form).

to **nourish**, feed adequately; **nutritious** food; **nū'trītive**, properties of a food; a **nūtrient**, a good food.

**nov.**—Latin root meaning "new." Derived forms: **nōvel**, **nōv'-elty**, **in'nōvate**, **rēn'ōvate**. See **New**.

**nowadays** (one word), or **now-a-days**.

**nū.** Sound heard in **new**; **renewal**; **pneumatic**, filled with air, as a tire; **gnu**, African animal; **nuisance**, something annoying.

**number.** Latin **numerus**; hence a **nu'meral**. The **b** of **number** was originally silent as in **dumb**, **comb**, being inserted because the lips naturally open up into a **b** sound after closing to form an **m** sound.

In point of numbers.....**numer'ically** (adverb).

A system of numbers.....**nūmerātion**.

The science of numbers.....**numerology**.

The abbreviation **No.** comes from the French **numéro**, applied only to consecutive numbers. Hence it is correct to write: "My house is No. 13" (i.e., the thirteenth house), but it is wrong to write, "State what No. you want" (i.e., what quantity).

The study of the mystical or occult meaning of numbers is called **Numerology**. See the encyclopedia article on **Pythagoras**. To understand the symbolism of ancient rites, it is necessary to ascribe certain meanings to numbers, as follows:

0. chaos.

1. creation, order, reason.

2. duality, conflict, division.

3. divinity realized in matter.

4. squareness, justice, mystery.

5. fullness of life, exuberance.

6. adjustment to material conditions.

7. peace, completeness, satisfaction.

8. friendship, material perfection.

9. intuition, inspiration, drama.

### The Expression of Numbers

1. Spell out:—

a. Numbers up to one hundred, and round numbers over one

- hundred:—five, thirty-nine, one hundred, two thousand, three million.
- b. A number at the beginning of a sentence:—Nine hundred and ninety-nine men out of every thousand. . . .
- c. Dates in formal invitations:—April the first, nineteen hundred and sixteen.
2. Use figures:—
- a. For numbers above one hundred (except the round numbers):—999; 207; 5,908,753.
- b. For dates, street numbers, numbered objects, numbers containing decimals, and the like:—February 9, 1885; 80 E. Laurel Avenue; Room 207; Track 9; page 53; \$53.20.
- c. For groups of numbers in the same passage, as in dimensions, statistics, etc:—Length, 18 feet; width, 16 feet 6 inches; height of ceiling, 9 feet. Height, 5 feet 11 inches; weight, 144 pounds.
- d. Before a.m. and p.m.
- e. In business, scientific, and technical writing figures are used much more frequently than in general writing.

### Grammatical Number

In Grammar, **number** is the form of a word which indicates whether one or more are indicated. In English there are two numbers: the **singular** (one object: I, one, dog, person) and the **plural** (two or more: we, two, ten, many, dogs, persons). In nouns, the singular is the simple form of the word: mercy, dog, person; while the plural is generally the same form with an added -s or -es: dogs, persons, mercies. For exceptions, see Plural. In pronouns, most of the personal pronouns have different forms for singular (I, he, she, it, thou) and for plural (we, they); the form "you" is called a plural and is followed by the plural verb, although it is also used to mean one person (as are sometimes we and they). Relative pronouns have no special plural form: who, which, that. Demonstrative pronouns vary: this (singular), these (plural). Adjectives in English are invariable: a good man, two good men; possessive adjectives (sometimes called pronouns) have different forms according to the number of owners: my dog (one owner, one dog), our dog (several owners, one dog), our dogs (several owners, several dogs). Some verbs have special plural forms: am, are; has, have. Most verbs have a special form for the third person singular only: goes, does, says.—See Plural.

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels *ā ē ī ō ū ȳ* as in *mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my*; *ä ē ī ō ū ȳ* as in *mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity*; *ā* as in *father*; *ēr* as in *merry*; *er* as in *mercer*; *ou* as in *loud*; *au* as in *land*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ā* in *senate*). Consonants: *g* always as in *go*; *th* as in *thief*; *dh* as *th* in *mother*; *ng* as in *sing* or in *singer*; *ng-g* as *ng* in *singer*. See Syllables.

# O

- o. Plurals of nouns ending in -o (potato, tobacco, etc.), see Plurals.
- an **oath** (Plural **oaths**). Latin *jurare*, to swear; from *jus, juris*, the right, the law; hence **per'jury**, a false oath; **jury**, men sworn to decide righteously; a **jūror**, one of a jury.
- obē'dient** through sense of right: "It takes will power to obey"; **submis'sive**, through sense of fear; **com'plaisant**, through desire to please; **servile**, through lack of self-respect.
- to **obey** an order; **comply with** a request, willingly; **accede to** a demand; **agree to** a proposal.
- an **ob'ject** (noun, accent on 1st syllable). Anything that falls under the senses; **objec'tive**, seen as existing apart from our own thought (opposite of subjective), a **phenom'enon**; an **objec-tive**, an aim.
- to **object'** (verb, accent on 2nd syllable), object to something; **dis-agree** with somebody or something; **challenge** a statement; **deny** an allegation; **refuse** a permission; **refute** an argument.
- objective case or accusative**. In Grammar, the "case" of the object of the action. In some personal pronouns it takes a different form from that of the subject:  
 Object: me, thee, him, her, us, them.  
 Subject: I, thou, he, she, we, they.
- In other cases the form is the same: you, it. In nouns, the form is always the same for subject and object: "The cat sees the mouse" (cat, subject; mouse, object). To make the sentence clear, therefore, it is usual in English to arrange the sentence as follows: subject, verb, object, and it is impossible to say in English, as in inflexional languages: "The cat the mouse sees," or "The mouse the cat sees," although such construction is permitted in poetry when the meaning is obvious.
- See Case.
- to **observe** attentively; **notice** casually; **study** in detail; **keep** a holiday; **celebrate** actively; **solemnize** a private ceremony, a wedding, etc.
- obstinate** (adjective), who holds to his own particular views; **doggēd**, who will not let go; **stūbborn**, obstinate by native disposition; **op'inionated**, adhering to his own unreasonable views; **intractable**, who cannot be dealt with; **refrac'tory**, actively hostile; **obdurate**, hardened in his sinful course; **pertinacious**, pestering and persistent; **tenacious**, who holds tightly to his determined course.
- an **occupation**, anything that keeps one occupied or engaged pleasantly or profitably. See Job, Vocation, Play, Game.
- to **occur** (an occurrence) once without preparation; **happen** accidentally; **take place** as arranged.

Do not use to **transpire** in this sense, as it means only "to become known." See **Event**.

**off** (ôf; compare the pronunciation of the word **of**: üv. **Off** and **of** were originally the same word. **Off** is now the emphatic adverbial form).

To go off (gun).....explode, shoot.  
 To take off (garment).....to doff (a garment).  
 To put off.....to postpone something.  
 To put off habitually.....to procrastinate.  
**Off-side** of a horse, vehicle.....right-hand side.  
**Offhand** (adverb).....extempore (speech).  
**Offhand** way of doing things.....hasty, inconsiderate.

to **offer** a thing for somebody's use; **propose** a course of action; **present** respectfully; **tender** aid, condolence, congratulations; **submit** a proposal; **sacrifice** at a loss.

an **office**. French **bureau**, būrô'; hence **bureaucracy**, government by red tape. One who holds an executive position is an **official**; if responsible for policies, he is an **officer** of the concern; in the Army or Navy he is an **officer**; in the government, from the viewpoint of the taxpayers, he is an **office-holder**.

**offspring**; **issue**, legal; **child**; **prögeny**; **brood**, when there are many.

an **oil**, mineral or vegetable; **petro'leum**, mineral oil in its natural state, derived from decomposed fossil shells; **crude** oil, unrefined petroleum; **distillate**, a roughly refined petroleum, used as fuel for stationary engines, trucks, etc.; **kérosene**, literally "wax oil," coal oil, used for lamps, stoves, etc.; **gas'oline** or **gasolène** (the latter being the correct chemical spelling), much refined fuel for the internal combustion engines of automobiles, called in England **pétröl**, in Australia **benzine**; **naphtha** (naf'tha), an intermediate oil.

Vegetable oils include **olive** oil for table consumption; **cottonseed** oil for soap-making; **linseed** oil, mixed with paints; **castor** oil, used medicinally and for aeroplane engine lubrication; **coconut** oil and **palm** oil, used in soap-making. The best known animal oil is **whale** oil or **sper'macé'til** oil, used in candle-making.

**O. K.**, abbreviation of an Indian word "**Okeh**"; correct; all right (two words); **genuine**.

To **O. K.** an agreement.....to ratify.  
 To **O. K.** a document.....to sign, initial.  
 To **O. K.** credentials.....to authenticate.

**old** (adjective). An **old** man, an **old** woman, to **grow** old).—Latin **senex**; hence **sénior**, older; **sénile**, pertaining to old age. —Greek **palaïos**; hence **pālēontol'ogy**, the science of by-gone animal forms. Persons: (over forty), **middle-aged** (adj.); (over 60) **aged** (ā'jéd); things: **ancient** (ān'chent, of by-gone times); **archā'ic** (ar-kā'ik), out of date; **antiquated**, no longer fashionable; **vén'erable**, worthy of respect (sometimes sarcastic); **öbsölē'scent**, going out of use; **ob'sölē'te**, no longer used; **trite**, phrase too often used.



**Longevity**, long life; **senility**, decay due to old age; a **platitude**, an old truism.

**older** refers to age only: "My sister is older than I am. I have an older sister and a younger one." **Elder** means "older of two in the same family," when referring to the person as a person: "my elder sister" (elder is therefore like a title).

**on, upon**. There is no reason for using **upon** systematically instead of **on**. It is more correct to say "depend on" than to say "depend upon," since "depend" means "hang down" (hang down up on). Latin *super*; hence **supernatant**, floating on the surface. French *sur*; hence **surtax**. Greek *epi*; hence **epidemic**, "falling on the people"; **epigram**, something written on a subject; **epithet**, a qualification added to a name.

To put on.....to don a garment.

To go on.....to proceed, advance, continue.

**one** (wūn). Written in Arabic (English) numerals, 1; in Roman numerals, I; in Oriental languages represented by the first letter of the alphabet: aleph, alpha, etc. "I am Alpha and Omega, the Beginning and the End" (Rev. 1:8).—Latin *unus*; hence **unity**, oneness; to **unite**, make one; **unify**, make as one; **uniform**, of the same shape as others; **union**, making one, for certain purposes only: "a trade union"; **unison**, accord: "singing in unison"; **unique** (ū-nēk'), the only one of its kind (this word cannot be used with comparative or superlative forms; a thing is not "more unique" or "most unique"; it is simply unique); **unicorn**, rhinoceros with one horn. Greek *monos*, single; hence a **monocle**, eyeglass for one eye; **monotony**, feeling that things are always alike; **monologue**, theatrical recitation by one person; **monoplane**, aeroplane with one set of wings; **monopoly**, exploitation of a business by one firm only; **monogamy**, marriage to one husband or one wife; **monastery**, place for single men (the word **monk** is of the same origin, meaning "alone"); **monomania**, habit of thinking only of one thing. **Singular**, one of its kind; **single**, not married; **none**, not one; **naught**, **nothing**, **nothingness**; to **annihilate**, destroy to the last one.

The one, the one who, the one which, and in the plural the ones (who, which), are used as pronouns: "I chose the blue ones."

**oneself**; better written in one word, like *itself*, *himself*, when used as an indefinite entity: "It does not take long to shave oneself"; better written in two words *one's self*, when the philosophic idea of the **self** is under discussion.

**-oo-**. There are two sounds written **oo**. One is a short **ō**, as in **foot**, **good**, **book**; the other is a long **ō**, as in **roof**, heard also in **move**, **prove**, **lose**. Short **ō** is sometimes written with a **u**: **pudding**, **Buddha**, **full**, **push**. Long **ō** is sometimes written with a **u**, especially after **r** or **l**: **rude**, **flute**, **blue**.

to **open**. Latin *aperio*, *apertum*; hence an **aperture**, opening; an

**apë'rient**, a gentle laxative. French **apéritif**, an alcoholic drink taken before a meal to "open" the appetite.

For idea of opening, see **Hole**.

**oper-**. Latin root meaning "work." Derived forms: **öperate**, **cööperation**, **öpera**, **öp'orative**. See **Work**.

**an opin'ion**, a temporary and often ill-founded belief concerning something. Greek **doxa**; hence **orth'odox**, in accordance with "right" or accepted opinion; **het'erodox**, contrary to accepted opinion; a **par'adox**, a proposition which disagrees with accepted views and seems untrue on the face of it, yet may be quite right. **Sen'timent**, a settled feeling, especially as to principles. "A personal opinion; public sentiment."

**opt-**. Greek root meaning "to see." Derived forms: **optics**, **optom'etry**, **sýnop'sis**. See **Eye**.

**-or**. A suffix meaning "one who does"; used with this spelling with Latin roots that are not fully anglicized: **vendor**, **actor**, **director**. It is equivalent to **-er** in purely English or fully anglicized words: **seller**, **promoter**, **teacher**. Note that, at the end of a line, **-er** is carried over by itself: **sell-er**, **promot-er**, while **-or** takes one consonant: **ac-tor**, **ven-dor**, **direc-tor**.

For list of **-or** and **-er** spellings, see **-er**.

**an order**. This word has many different meanings, all springing from the idea of "beginning of a sequence." Things are in **order** when they are in their sequences. The theological belief that there are nine **orders** of angels, in degree of importance, created the term **holy orders**, the priesthood, etc.; and the **orders of knighthood** followed, with their **insignia** or **dëcorations** (medals and ribbons). To **order** something is to take the necessary step to start an arrangement, either in the sense of telling somebody to do it or in that of arranging the thing itself. Latin, in the sense of giving an order, **mandare**; hence to **command** somebody to do something when one has the necessary authority; a **command**; a **mandate**, an order given by one power to another, with an idea of representation and of judgment to be exercised: "Some of the territories of the former Turkish Empire have been given to England and to France to administer, under a mandate of the League of Nations, and are called mandated territories." To **counter-mand** an order, cancel it.

An **order**, formal; an **instruction**, detailed; **instructions**; **directions** as to ways and means, generally at the request of the person directed; a **requirement**, statement of minimum expected achievements in a certain line: "The first requirement of a scientific education is a certain amount of mathematical ability"; an **arrangement** by mutual consent; a **sëquence**, way in which things follow one another; **tidiness**, habit of replacing things where they belong; **regularity** in performing certain acts at the same time; **punctuality** in arriving at the exact appointed moment; **precision**, habit of making things abundantly clear or exact; **neatness**, habit of doing things in a way that pleases the eye.

For order of animals in Natural History classification, see **Class**.

To go against an order. . . . to contravene an order.  
 In the form of an order. . . . peremptory (i.e., allowing of no discussion).

**ordinary**, in the usual order of things; **normal** temperature, etc.; **bán'al**, commonplace ideas, etc.; **average** results. **Second-rate**, inférior; **médiocre** talent; **poor**, not remarkable.

**orthog'raphy**, literally "correct writing." See Spelling.

**-ory**. Words ending in **-ory** generally have the accent on the most important syllable: oblig'atory, repos'itory, am'atory, exposit'ory, lab'oratory.

**ō-shn**. Pronunciation of ocean.

**other** (ūdh'er), different. Latin *alius*; hence **ālias**, a false name; **ālien**, a citizen of another land; to **āllenate**, lose the right to. "Other of two," Latin *alter*; hence to **alternate**, take turns in twos; an **altercation**, heated argument between two; **altruistic**, devoted to the rights of others. Greek *heteros*; hence **het'erodyne**, "outside power" to help in radio receptivity.

The word **else** is used in place of **other**, after **somebody**, **nobody**, etc. "Somebody else's responsibility."

**ourselves** (one word).

**-ous**. Words of three syllables ending in **-ous** have the accent on the first: lu'minous, ră'venous, glu'tinous, in'famous, ri'otous, gar'ulous, gen'eros, vig'orous, ō'dorous, lan'guorous, vāl'orous, pros'perous, dān'gerous, pér'ilous, friv'olous, beau'teous, vit'reous.

**EXCEPTIONS**: Words in **-endous**, **-entous**, **-orphous**, have the accent on the syllable before **-ous**: tremen'dous, porten'tous, stupen'dous, amor'phous. (See also **-ious**, etc., below.)

**-ious**, **-eous**, **-uous**, **-erous**, **-orons**, **-urons** are accented on the preceding syllable: auda'cious, prop'itious, felō'nious, luxū'rious, outrā'geous, advanta'geous, miscellā'neous, ambig'uous, mellif'uous, decid'uous (fruit), advent'urous. (Words of three syllables follow the same rule, having the accent on the first: per'ilous.)

**EXCEPTIONS**: The words **decorous** and **sonorous** are pronounced either according to rule: dec'orous, son'orous; or in the older way decō'rous, sonō'rous.

**-ous**. Note the terminations of the following words; many of them are often mispronounced or misspelled: mischievOUS (mis-chiv-us), sumptUOUS, superflUOUS, contentIOUS (kon-ten'shus), beautEOUS, rightEOUS, dangerOUS, pitEOUS, valorOUS, villainOUS, grievOUS.

**out**. Latin *e*, ex; Greek *e*, eks; French *hors*, from Latin *foras*, "outside," or perhaps from same Saxon root as "forth."

To bring out. . . . . elicit (facts after inquiry), ex-tract (by force), extort (something not due).

To come out of. . . . . to emerge (from water).

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels *ā ē ī ō ā ū* as in *mate*, *meet*, *mite*, *mote*, *mute*, *my*; *ā ē ī ō ā ū* as in *mat*, *met*, *mitt*, *not*, *unt*, *pit*; *ā* as in *father*; *ēr* as in *merry*; *er* as in *mercer*; *ou* as in *loud*; *au* as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ā* in *senate*). Consonants: *g* always as in *go*; *th* as in *thief*; *dh* as *th* in *mother*; *ng* as in *sing* or in *singer*; *ng-g* as *ng* in *finger*. See Syllables.

- To give out.....announce (an event), utter (a cry), emit (a sound), voice (a complaint).
- To give out ("stop").....to cease, come to an end, run out.
- To go out of.....to leave, to exit from.
- To grow out.....to expand (in bulk), stretch (in length), extend (become tense).
- To hollow out.....to excavate.
- To keep (something, somebody) out.....to exclude (from a company, a statement), to ban, bar, debar.
- To keep out ("stay out")....to hold aloof, to ignore (intentionally, something).
- To leave (something) out....to omit (a passage).
- To pull out.....extirpate (a tooth), uproot (a tree), exterminate (to the last), obliterate (leaving no trace), eradicate (an evil by the roots), raze (shave off), demolish (a structure), destroy (something living, standing, or in existence).
- To put out.....extinguish (a fire), quench (thirst), quell (a riot), abate (a nuisance), kill (something undesirable), abolish (something harmful), cancel (a request), countermand (an order), revoke (a permission), annul (a decision), nullify (render void), abrogate (a law), rescind (temporarily), repeal (a former law), reverse (a court decision), annihilate (to nothingness).
- To put out ("offer").....to publish (a book), present (a play), market (a commodity).
- To shut out.....exclude (somebody or something), omit (something that might be included), suppress (what is already out).
- To take out.....to obliterate (a mark), efface (forever), erase (to write again), expunge (a record).
- To throw out.....to expel (from a place), eject (a missile), eliminate (something superfluous), dismiss (somebody, something), fire (an employee), excavate (scoop out).

- Way out.....exit, égress.  
 One left out.....a dér'elict, a waif.  
 Out and out.....clear (statement), open (rebellion), overt (act).  
 Out of place.....extrinsic (matter in a statement).  
 Out of the fight.....hors de combat (or' dū kōmbâ).  
 Side dishes outside the big meal .....hors d'œuvre (or-dŭv-r).  
 Out of future competitions (supreme) .....hors concours (at exhibitions).
- an **outfit** of things used for one purpose; a **kit** of tools; a **suit** of clothes, made of same material; a bride's **trousseau**; a baby's **layette**; a soldier's **uniform**, etc.; a **canteen**, utensils.  
 See also list under the word **Many**.
- an **outline** of a plan; a **sketch**, draft; the **contour**, "lines around"; **delineation**.
- outrā'geous** (note the accent); **monstrous**, **atrocious**, **horrible**, **ridiculous**.
- over**. There is an idea of height in **over** not found in **across**: to go over the hill, to go over to a friend's house (meaning "easily"); but: to go across a plowed field, across the woods, across the street. Latin *super*, Greek *hyper*; hence **super-cil'ious**, **hypercritical**.  
**Over** is a full adverb as well as a preposition. The word **overly** is therefore not necessary.
- To take over.....to assume a duty; transfer goods from one point to another; transport, carry.
- To lean over (speaking of a vessel) .....to careen, to list (to starboard or to port).
- To talk over.....to discuss a thing.
- Left over.....superfluous, redundant (which repeats).
- to **overcome** a drawback; **conquer** an obstacle; **vanquish** an enemy; **rout**, scatter an army; **crush** to powerlessness; **quell** a riot; **defeat** in battle; **quench** one's thirst; **satisfy** one's desires; **appease** one's hunger; **extinguish** a fire.
- overhead** (one word) adjective: covering the cost of management, rent, etc.: "The overhead expense."
- to **overlook** an opportunity, a detail, accidentally; **neglect** carelessly; **ignore** deliberately; **miss**.
- an **ox**. (Plural **oxen**; feminine **cow**.)—Latin *bos*, *bovis*; hence **bōvine**, pertaining to the ox or cow.  
**Ox** meat .....beef.  
 A young **ox**.....a bullock.  
**Ox** (as future meat).....a steer.

# P

- a **pain** (From Latin *pœna*,—Greek *poine*, meaning penalty). Latin equivalent *dolor*; hence *dô'lorous*, painful; to *condole* with, share the grief of; *condo'lence*; *ind'olent*, who takes no trouble. Greek *algos*; hence *neuralgia*, nerve pain; *analges'ic*, pain-destroying. Feeling of thwarted desire, or of interference with one's well-being; the opposite of pleasure; an *ache* (*āk*), functional suffering (toothache, headache); *āg'ony*, extreme pain, as in the last fight for life against death; *torture*, pain inflicted by someone; hence very severe pain; *torment*, mostly mental anguish; *pang*, a sudden, sharp pain, as of hunger, remorse; *suffering*, prolonged feeling of pain; *distress*, prolonged trouble of serious nature; the *throes* of a violent, convulsive pain; *anguish*, generally mental: feeling of being choked or crushed; a *hurt*, generally mental: feeling of being treated slightly; an *injury*, physical hurt; *grief*, sense of loss; an *affliction*, continued source of pain, such as lameness or speech defects; a *curse*, severe affliction or cause of pain.

**pale**, adjective; lacking in bright color, as from sickness or fright; **pallid** face, indicating habitual weakness and lack of blood; **wan**, pale and thin, as the result of long illness; **colorless**, as still suffering from a shock; **blanched** as the result of sudden fear, or artificially, as vegetables; **light**, not of heavy shade; **ghastly** from terror, pale and contracted; **sickly** looks; **pasty** complexion, as of one who eats too much sweet food and does not exercise. To **bleach**, make whiter.

- a **pantomime**, a play without words; **gestures** (*jēs'tūrz*), individual hand or shoulder movements accompanying a facial expression; the **silent drama**, the **movies** (colloquial). See Motion Pictures.

- a **paragraph**. In printing, the indentation at the beginning of a line, and the leaving of blank space at the end of a subsequent line, to indicate a unit of subject-matter. In Rhetoric, a unit representing a logical division of the subject. Each paragraph should include a **topic sentence**, or sentence containing a brief statement or summary of the purpose of the entire paragraph. This may be placed at the beginning, if the audience is known to agree with the speaker; in the middle if it is a transition paragraph; at the end if the audience is believed to be opposed to the statement, and needs to be prepared by previous presentation of the facts. The topic statement, however, may be implied without being explicitly made.

**parallel** (note the double l), adjective. In Grammar, a construction is called parallel when it consists of two parts which run along the same general construction.

**Parallel constructions:** She likes riding, walking, swimming, but not dancing. She likes to ride, to walk, to swim,

but not to dance. She likes horses, dogs and all kinds of animals.

**pā'rent.** See Family.

- a **parenthesis**, plural **parenthesēs**; a sign of punctuation ( ) to enclose explanatory matter in a sentence.

**Examples:** "Punctuation (to continue where we left off) is the written music of speech." "Many cities (Los Angeles, for example) own their water and power systems."

**Parliament:** (British) **House of Commons, House of Lords; Congress** (U. S.): **House of Representatives, Senate; Chamber of Deputies** (French); **Reichstag** (German).

### Some words used on this subject

To elect, summon, prorogue, dissolve, adjourn, discuss, deliberate, vote, pass, divide, approve, reject, decide, adopt, publish, promulgate; the veto; to impeach. See Meet.

**parō'chial** (-kīal), "of the parish," local, narrow. "These people have not risen beyond their old parochial conceptions; they think of the Government as existing only for their private gain."

**parsimo'nious**, very reluctant to give too much (often a quality); **penū'rious**, inclined to excessive niggardliness, from love of possession (always a fault); **stingy** (stin'jī, colloquial), mean and narrow-minded. For examples, see Penurious.

- a **part**, any quantity cut off from the whole: "in whole or part" (legal phrase); a bit or morsel, "bitten off"; a **parcel** of land; a **section**, evenly divided; a **half** or **moiety**, divided in two; a **quarter**, divided in four; an **extract**, part taken from its surroundings: "a beef extract"; an **excerpt**, part selected from the whole: "a newspaper excerpt"; a **clipping**, cut off with scissors; a **cutting**, cut off with a knife; a **complement** (note the spelling with -plēm-), that which helps to complete the whole; a **supplement**, something added to the whole; a **component part**, one that is essential: one's **share** or **portion** of a whole; **participation** in some benefit; one's **quotā** of an obligation.

Adjectives: **partial**, which includes only a part: "a partial payment"; **complementary** (note the spelling -plēm-), which helps to make up the whole; **supplementary**, added to the whole; **accessory**, added but not indispensable; **essential**, without which the thing cannot be; **disparate**, not like the rest, different, jarring; **separate**, not joined in; **segregated**, kept apart: "The immigrants were segregated on arrival, those who had relatives here being allowed to land first"; **correlated**, having definite relationships, as in their way of working; **co-ordinated**, which have been made to fit into a system; **composite**, made up of a variety of parts of different origins. See also a multitude of words beginning with **con-**, **com-**, **col-**, all indicating "the putting together of" in so many different ways.

- a **participle** (par'tisīpl). In Grammar, a word that participates in, or shares, the nature of a verb and an adjective: **dining**: "a

dining room" (adjective, i.e., room for dining); "they are dining," verb (statement of an action). There are two forms of the participle:—

Present participle: -ing: loving.

Past participle: usually -ed: loved.

The form in -ing also forms a **gerund**, or word which is truly a noun but which takes the same complements as a verb: "Tired of doing nothing" (doing is a noun, complement of "tired of," yet it is followed by a direct object, "nothing").

For examples of the use of participles, and for pronunciation of -ed after various sounds, see Conjugation.

**pass-, pati-.** Latin root meaning "suffer." Derived forms: **passion, passive, compassion, patient, incompat'ible**. See Suffer.

**past**, adjective; finished.—In Grammar, the **past tense** is the form of the verb which indicates that an action is no longer being done. In the indicative (see Conjugation) the simple past tense, also called **preterit**, or **past definite**, or **perfect**, refers to an action that is completely finished: "I went, I looked, I bought." The **present perfect** or **past indefinite** refers to an action that is not entirely finished: although performed in the past, it continues in the present consciousness: "I have bought some bread" (meaning literally: "I have some bread, which I bought"). The past tense is used of actions which took place at some definitely past period: "Yesterday I walked three miles"; the present perfect is used of actions which took place at some period which is not yet over. "To-day I have walked two miles" ("today" is not over; I may yet walk some more). The past that was already past when another action took place is called the **past perfect** or **pluperfect** (i.e., "more than completed"): "I had finished when you entered" (the action of finishing was already complete when the other action, that of entering, began).

The **past participle** is the form of the verb often used as an adjective to indicate a complete state: "A finished product" (a product that has been finished). The form of the past participle is generally the same as that of the past tense, both ending in -ed in regular verbs: finish, finish-ed. In irregular verbs, the past tense and past participle are often different in form: I see, I saw, I have seen. See list under Verbs. Adjectives: **passé** (feminine, speaking of a woman, **passée**), gone beyond the prime, no longer young, no longer fashionable, out-of-date; **antiquated** style, design, ideas; **old-fashioned**, holding to what used to be considered desirable.

**patho-.** Greek root meaning "suffer." Derived forms: **páthet'ic, sympathy, pá'thos, pathol'ogy**. See Suffer.

- a **pattern**, a dressmaker's or tailor's paper cut-out, showing the form to be followed in cutting out a garment; a wooden object made to the exact shape of a metal object which is to be cast from it and afterward produced in quantities; a rule

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels & ã Ì Ò ù ý as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; & ã Ì Ò ù ý as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; & as in father; & as in merry; & as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ã in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.



of conduct to be followed, or a person worthy of being imitated in his conduct; a **model**, thing perfect enough to be copied, whether on the same scale or on a different scale; a **standard**, a recognized model which has been proved effective; a **norm** or rule of conduct; a **form** or approved way of doing; a **plan**, general notion of the way in which an object can be achieved; a **design**, the detailed statement of the best way to carry out an idea, usually shown by drawings; an **original**, the first of a series of articles to be copied; a **jig**, a device that makes a cutting machine repeat a certain pattern; a **die**, a hard metal device for cutting out or shaping; a **mold**, a form in which a fluid is to be poured which will harden on cooling to take the same shape as the mold; a **mātrix** (plural **mātrices**), the form that gives its shape to the product; especially, in printing, the paper impression from the flat type from which type for the cylindrical press will be made; a **neg'ative**, photographic reversed image (the blacks being white and *vicē versa*) taken in the camera, from which the positive prints will be made in any desired quantity; a **prēcedent**, a way of behaving in society which has previously been recognized as correct, prēcedents as a whole being called **etiquette** (ēt'ī-kēt) in social life, and the **prōtocol** in diplomatic relations; a **mōtif**, in music, an idea as represented by the music; a **theme**, in writing or speaking, a subject selected as important.

**to pay** (Past tense, **paid**). Nouns:—**Pay**, money handed out for value received; **wages**, for manual labor; **salary**, for mental work; **hire**, hourly wage; **fee**, professional; **allowance**, fixed amount (discretionary); **compensation**, any kind of pay; **re-muneration** for valuable services; magistrate's **stipend**; **recompense**, reward; professional man's **honorārium**; **amortization** of a debt.

To pay off part of (a mortgage).....to amortize

To pay the penalty for.....to expiate

Working only for pay.....mercenary

A proposition that pays.....remūnerative

**pē**. Sound heard in peace (quiet), piece (bit), piano (correctly piā'no), pēan (pē'ān, song of joy), pier (jetty), peer (lord, equal), pierce (bore).

**peace**. Latin *pax*, *pacis*; hence **pacif'ic**, inclined to peace; to **pācify**, restore to peace; **pacifist** (pas'ifist), one opposed to militarism.—Greek *irene*; hence the name **Irene** (U. S., irēn'; England, ī-rē'nē); **irēnic** (poetic), pertaining to peace.—**Quiet**, absence of noise; **stillness**, absence of movement; **tran-quillity**, attitude of leisureliness and contentment; **calm** or **calmness**, state of being unruffled; a **truce** between individuals, an **armistice** between nations, agreement to a temporary peace.—Verbs: to **appease** somebody's anger; **pācify** a person rightly angry; **soothe** a sore, a grief; **plācāte**, make partial amends; **mōlIFY** a pain, make it less severe; **con-ciliate** one's enemies, by making advances to them; **reconcile** people who have been estranged; **propitiate** (prō-pī'shīāt)

the gods by making offerings or promises.—Adjectives: **pacif'ic**, inclined to peace; **peaceful**, enjoying peace or characterized by peace; **peaceable**, tending to promote peace; **concil'atory** remarks; **quies'cent**, peaceful on the surface only.

**Some words used on this subject**

Armaments, preparations, divergence of opinions, acute differences, controversy (kōn'trō-ver-sī), threats, excuses, diplomacy, arbitration, judges, an award, enforcement, an apology, amends, a treaty. See War, Diplomacy.

**pecū'liar**, adjective: uncommon, attracting attention.—A **peculiar'ity**; an id'iosyn'crasy, a person's particular way of doing things.

**ped-**. Latin root meaning "foot." Derived forms **pēdal**, **pēd'estal**. See Foot.

**pēd'ant**, a book-learned person who tries to set others right; a **highbrow** (colloq.); a **pūrist**; a **bluestocking**, woman **pédant**.

**pedlar** or **pedler**, better spelling: **peddler**: a **hawker** of cheap wares; **canvasser** for orders; **huckster**, a **vendor** who travels about.

**Vegetable peddler** (England).....costermonger

to **pen** animals, to enclose in a pen: "The pigs have been penned." (**Pent house**, a lean-to, does not come from **pen** but from "appendix," something attached to.)

**pē'nal**, **pē'nal-ize**, **pēn'al-ty**.

To pay the penalty for.....to expiate.

**pend-**. Latin root meaning "hang." Derived forms: **pen'dulum**, **pendant**, **depend**. See Hang.

**penū'rious**, poverty-stricken (mentally), afraid to spend pennies, grasping for fear of lack.

**Penurious** is a stronger word than **parsimo'nious**. One who naturally does not give more than strictly indispensable is **parsimonious**, sometimes from the consciousness of a dislike for the receiver: "She was very parsimonious in her gifts of food to tramps." **Penuriousness**, on the other hand, arises from a consciousness of lack of supply, a sense that there is no more coming: the word is therefore used to refer to a mental attitude.

**people** (pē'pl). Latin *populus*; hence **pop'ular**, **popularity**. Greek *demos*; hence **democracy**, government by the people; **dema-gōgue**, a popular leader; **ēpidēm'ic**, a sickness that falls upon the people.—A **race** of common origin; a **nation**, with common desires and a common territory; a **population**, the inhabitants of a territory or area; a **tribe**, small group of same origin.

Many people together.....a mob, crowd, gathering  
Funeral or royal crowd.....cortège (kortēzh')

People who accompany for pro-

tection .....an escort

People's language.....the vernac'ular

People's government.....democ'racý  
 People employed by one firm....the personnĕl (two n's)  
 People who patronize.....the clientĕle (properly  
 klĕ'an-tĕl'; usually kli'-  
 an-tĕl')

to **perceive**, receive through the senses, without attention; also to understand something not looked for; to **see**; **note** for the future; **observe** deliberately; **catch sight of**, accidentally, **discern** a truth, **penĕtrate** something hidden; **spot** one thing among many; **spy**, **espy** something hidden; **descry**; **pierce** a veil.

Not easily perceived.....subtle (sŭt'ĭ)

**per cent** (in two words without a period after; used after figures and abbreviated % or p. c.); **percentage** in one word. "Five per cent of the people are insane; it is a large percentage."

**peremptory** (perĕmp'torĭ or per'em'torĭ), admitting of no argument: a peremptory order; **ab'solute**, **final**, **impĕ'rious**, **dogmatic**, **autocratic**.

**perfunct'ory**, done because one "has to." "The girl gave her mother a perfunctory kiss." "The policeman went through the prisoner's pockets in a perfunctory manner."

**pĕriod** or **full stop**, a sign of punctuation (.) used to indicate a complete ending. The period is used principally:

(1) At the end of a declarative sentence: "The book is out of print."

(2) At the end of an imperative sentence spoken without much change in voice level. "Very well; go."

(3) At the end of an abbreviation: Dr., etc., I. O. U.

(4) After numerals set separately:

12. The names are . . .

III. It has been agreed . . .

(5) After a parenthesis: "... (... that he is right)." except when the entire sentence begins and ends within the parentheses, in which case the period is placed inside: "He came of his own accord. (How much of his own accord it really was, I do not know.)"

(6) After a question which does not call for an answer (equivalent to a polite order). "Will you not see that the regulations are followed."

**per'manent**, made to remain for a considerable time; **perpet'ual**, intended to continue forever; **fixed**, settled definitely; **final**, not subject to future change; **lasting**, which does not vary (generally used of the past); **dŭ'rab'le**, made so as to last (generally used of the future); **constant**, not varying in direction or force; **contin'uous**, operating without ceasing; **contin'ual**, recurring at frequent intervals; **ceaseless**, recurring so frequently that it looks likely never to stop entirely; **steady**, not easily shaken; **firm**, well established.

a **per'mit** (accent on first syllable). See License.—To **permit** somebody to do something (verb; accent on second syllable), formally consent to somebody's doing something which might not be done otherwise; to **allow**, not interfere with the doing

of a thing in which one might interfere; to **let** somebody do something, very informally, hardly taking notice of it; to **suffer** somebody to do something, "**on sufferance**," not to enforce one's strict rights, with a feeling of condescension; to **grant** permission to somebody to do something, on formal request; to **tolerate** an act which one does not look upon with favor.

to **perplex**, cause one to hesitate: "He was much perplexed by the failure of the check to arrive as promised"; to **mystify** by creating an atmosphere of mystery: "His sudden change of front mystified all those who knew him best"; to **puzzle**, create a mental difficulty; to **nonplus**, leave one unable to do or say anything further; to **disconcert**, by giving the unexpected answer or doing the unexpected thing; to **confuse** between several courses of action no longer clearly perceived; to **bewilder** somebody by introducing a mass of facts or too much talk; to **fluster** somebody by causing him to lose his equanimity; to **embar'ass** somebody by making public or calling attention to something not so intended; to **annoy** somebody by going against his wishes.

**persev'rance** (**persev'erant**). **Perseverance** is a quality; **perse'stence** is merely the act of keeping at it.

**persis'tence** (**persistent**), keeping at it. **Persistence** is mere continued action, generally with an idea of stubbornness or obstinacy in it; **perseverance** is the quality of keeping at something worth while.

a **person**, a human being; **party**, when sex is not known or not mentioned; **fellow**, individual, one separate person; **chap** (colloq.).—Adjectives: **per'sonal**, intended only for the person, or referring to the person only; **private**, not for general discussion or knowledge; **individ'ual**, to be used one by each: "individual drinking cups."—To **person'ify**, treat as a person, act as a person: "She is kindness personified"; "Poets often personify Nature."—**Person'ification**, a rhetorical figure which consists in making a person of a thing, as when we say: "Imagination is a pilgrim of the earth, and her home is in heaven" (Ruskin). **Personal'ity**, the sum total of the character of a person as perceived by others, consisting of the natural **disposition**, the physical **temperament**, and the present **temper**: "This man has a wonderful personality."—**Person'nél** (with two n's, from the French), the people who constitute an organization: "The entire personnel of the factory will receive a bônus."

In Grammar, **person** is the way of distinguishing between the speaker (first person: I, me, we, us), the one spoken to (second person: you, thou, thee), and the one spoken of (third person: he, she, it, him, her, they, them). Nouns, when used by themselves, are third person: "A man is waiting"; in apposition, a noun may be first or second person: "I, John Jones" (first person); "You, Henry Smith" (second person). A verb must agree in person as well as in number with its subject: "I am, I go, I say" (first person); "He is, he goes,

he says" (third person); "We are, we go, we say" (first person plural). As most verbs remain the same in all persons except the third person singular, this presents no difficulty, except when the verb follows a choice of subjects of different persons, particularly with the verb "to be." Grammarians recommend agreement with the nearer subject only: "You or I am going"; "You or he is going"; but public usage is tending more and more toward a third person plural: "You or I are going," "You or he are going" (meaning: "We are going, either you or I"; "You are going, either you or he").

The pronouns that stand for persons are called **personal pronouns**: I, me, you, he, him, she, her, it, we, us, they, them. See Pronouns.

To pose as somebody.....to impersonate (somebody)

To make suitable for each person...to individualize

To do a thing not in person.....to act by proxy

An acceptable person to a foreign

country .....persona grata

to **persuade** (per-swād'). **Persuā'sion**, **persuā'sive**. "He persuaded the boy to lend him his car, and never came back with it."

**Persuasion** is a matter of yielding, conviction is a matter of understanding or believing. "You can be persuaded through weakness to do something that you are convinced is wrong."

**per'tinent**, which pertains or belongs to; **rel'ative**. "Being one of the firm's best salesmen, he was in a position to make **pertinent** suggestions on sales policy."

**pet-**. Latin root meaning "ask." Derived forms: **pet'ition**, **com-pete**. See Ask.

**petrō'leum**: See Oil.

Petroleum jelly .....vāseline

**phenōmenon** (plural: **phenōmena**), a Greek word meaning "what seems to be" (pronounced fēn-ōm'ēn-ōn).

The opposite of a phenomenon is a noumenon (nōō'menon or nou'menon), "that which exists in the mind," without which the mind could not perceive a phenomenon.

**phil-**. A Greek root meaning love: Philadelphia, brotherly love; philology, love or science of word-forms; philosophy, love of wisdom.

**philol'ogy** (fil-ol'ōjī), the science of language changes, sometimes called **linguistics**. An example of the method of philology is found in Grimm's Law, which shows how an ordinary sound will change in passing from one language to another:—

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels: ā ē ī ō ū ȳ as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ä ä ī ō ū ȳ as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; ä as in father; ēr as in merry; er as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in untressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ä in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.

## Greek or Latin

## Changed to Gothic and English

p as in pater.....	f as in father
t " tu .....	th " thou
th " tharsein .....	d " dare
ph " pherein .....	b " bear
k (sound) cornu .....	h " horn
g " gonu.....	k " knee (k now silent)

**phon-.** Greek root meaning "voice, sound." Derived forms: **phōnēt'ic**, **phō'nōgraph**, **tel'ephone**. See Sound.

**phonetic** (fōnēt'ik), written by sound.

"A language is written phonet'ically when it is written almost as it is pronounced." "Phonetic spelling" is that in which every letter represents only one sound, and in which there is a separate letter for each sound.

See Alphabet.

**photog'raphy** (fō-tōg'rāf-ī), the art; **photog'rapher**, the artist; a **photo** or **photograph** (better called a photogram); **photograph'ic**.

## Some words used on this subject

A cam'era, kodak, lens (plural lenses), bellows, shutter, iris, film, plate, plate-holder, revolving back, rising front, extension, tripod, stand; developing, fixing, washing, drying, printing; dark room, safelight, trays (dishes), chēmicals, h'ypo; bromide paper, Velox, gaslight paper, P. O. P. (day-light printing paper), self-toning paper, printing frame; soft, hard, contrasty (yielding very white high lights and darker shadows), glossy, matte or mat; portrait, studio, head, bust, full length, full face, three-quarter face, side face or profile; retouching, proofs, mount, frame.—Additional terms under Motion Pictures.

**a phrase** (frāz). A commonly found group of words with the meaning of a single word: "in the first place"; "so to speak"; "of course." See Adverbs, Conjunctions, Transitions.

**physics** (fiz'iks), the science which deals with **mechanics**, **water-pressure** or **hydraulics**, **sound** or **acoustics**, **light** or **optics**, **heat**, **electricity**.

## Some words used on this subject

Body, matter, force, power, phenomenon, gravity, pressure, resistance, equilibrium, pump, receiver, vacuum, electricity, affinity, attraction, magnetism, optics, mirror, image, reflection, spectacles, lens, microscope, magnifying glass, photog'raphy, camera, acoustics, echo, sound, motion, acceleration.

**a piano** (piā'nō, not pronounced pē'ānō). Plural **pianos**.

**to pick** with one sharp motion, as "pick a flower"; figuratively meaning to **select**, "to lift from among many"; to **choose** (I chose, I have chosen), after much hesitation (sound CH for determination); to **gāther**, bring together indiscriminately, "to gather wild flowers" in quantities; to **detach** from its

fastenings: "to detach the enclosure" (fastened by a clip); to **clip** with scissors: "clip the coupon"; to **cull**, detach a selected number to form a **collection**: "to cull a fruit": to **pull** roughly; to **pluck** sharply and often recklessly, remove; to **strike** a set on the stage (theatrical), remove it to make room for another; to **pierce** a tunnel by boring.

- a **picnic**, to **picnic** (but **picnicKing** with a K, to preserve the K sound of the letter c; as in **mimicKing**, **trafficKing**, which come from **mimic**, **traffic**).
- a **pic'ture** (pik'cher). Any reproduction of something seen or imagined; a **painting**, work of art, in oil or water-colors; an **im'age**, exact reproduction; **still pictures**, ordinary photographs (see Photography); **motion pictures** or **moving pictures** (see Motion Pictures): "The people who sit at a motion picture are called the spectators, not the audience."—**Pan'oram'ic**, embracing great width; **stereoscop'ic** (stē- or stē-), as seen by both human eyes; a **silhouette** (sil'ōō-ēt), black against white; a **stereopt'icon**, a "magic lantern" or projection apparatus for still pictures.—Adjectives: **picturesque** (pik'tū-resk'), "as pretty as a picture"; **pictorial**, explained by means of pictures.

See the important article under Motion Pictures.

**pidgin** or **pidgeon English**. A much simplified form of English spoken as the international language of Eastern Seas and the Indian Ocean: "Me no savvy"; "um (him) good fella."

- a **pie**: English, **tart**; French **gâteau**, sweet pie; **pâté**, meat pie; hence **patty**. Printer's **pie**, type fallen together. Goose liver pie, **pâté de foie gras**.
- a **piece**: a **lump**, heavy; **chunk**, rough; **shred**, long, fine; **slice**, sharply cut.—See Part.
- a **pier** (pēr), a landing place and warehouse for ship's freight, built to project into the sea or into a river; a **wharf** (American plural **wharfs**; English plural **wharves**), a landing place and ship's warehouse in general; a **quay** (kē), a wharf that is parallel with the shore; a **mole**, massive works for the protection of the coast from the ravages of the sea; a **landing**, the place in general where a ship stops along the shore; a **buttress**, the structure that supports a heavy wall, as in a cathedral; a **pillar**, a structure that supports the roof or a ceiling; a **support** in general, anything that holds up something else; figuratively, one who helps: "He is the sole support of his widowed mother"; a **post** stuck in the ground to hold up anything, usually wires or ropes; a **jetty**, masonry thrown across a natural current; a **lêvee**, against river floods.
- to **pierce**, to enter by means of a sharp instrument: "Women have their ears pierced for earrings"; to **prick**, cause a sensation of pain by means of a sharp instrument; to **pen'etrate** deeply and with effort; to **perforate** right through, generally with a series of holes or slits: "Motion picture film is perforated at the sides to run in the projector"; to **puncture** something con-

taining compressed air: "a punctured tire"; to **punch**, make a single hole by means of a special cutting device, often by machine; to **lance** an abscess; to **gore** somebody, speaking of his being penetrated, as by a bull's horns; to **stab** with a sharp instrument, a knife, etc., generally with intention to hurt; to **drill** with a rotating cutting tool; to **bore**, make a cylindrical hole by a series of cutting operations, as "bore a tunnel"; to **tap** a nut, make a screw-thread in it.

**pious** (pi'us; opposite: **impious**, pronounced im'pi-ūs with short i); devoted to religious pursuits; **reverential** attitude; **devout** conduct. "A pious resolution," one that cannot or will not be carried into effect.—Noun: **piety**, especially in "filial piety," respect for one's parents and ancestors, as in China.

**piquant** (pē'kǎnt), French, literally "pricking" or "stinging"; hence also: a **pique** (pēk), a mood of wounded love.—"A piquant sauce, piquant criticism"; **biting**, unpleasant; **pun'gent**, penetrating (odor); **sharp**, as observed impartially; **saucy** story; **zestful**, which gives enjoyment.

a **pit**, a large hole in the ground; a **hole**, comparatively small; a **trap**, device for catching a wild animal or an unwary person; an **abyss** (ābis'), a pit of very great depth; a **cavity**, in a tooth, a wall; a **burrow**, animal's dwelling place; a **dent** like a tooth-mark in a surface; the **crater** of a volcano; a **crēvice**, as a crack in a rock; a **crevasse** (krē-vās'), a big gap in a glacier; a **chasm** (kǎz'm), terrific opening, as in mountains; a **fissure**, narrow slit between rocks.—The **pit** of a theater, originally (and still in England) the dark part of the main floor under the balcony, the "orchestra circle." **Wheat pit**, floor of a Grain Exchange.

a **place**. Latin locus; hence **lōcal**, limited to one place: "local showers"; **lōcātion**, situation of a building, etc. (U. S.); the **locale** (lō-kāl', an incorrect French feminine form, which should be written **local**, but is not likely to be changed now, as it differentiates itself from the adjective without an -e), the place selected by an author for the development of his story: "Missouri has been the locale (i.e., the background) of many a successful American novel"; **local'ity**, a place not clearly known or described; **lōcum-tēnens**, a doctor or clergyman who takes the place of another during a temporary absence of the latter; **loco citato**, abbreviated in printing "loc. cit.," indicating a reference already mentioned (as in the footnote to a page); **locomotive**, an engine that moves itself from place to place. French, lieu; hence **lieutenant** (U. S., loo-ten'ant; England, lēftēn'ant), one who "takes the place of"; in lieu of (a phrase frequently used in England), instead of, in place of.—In the sense of "to place," Latin pono, positum; hence a **pōsition**, that in which one is "placed," employment; **depose**, "put down" a king or put down a statement on paper; **compo'nent**, that which is put together to make the whole. See Put.

In the same place.....**ibidem** (printing)

And in other places.....**et al.** (printing)



a **plan**, clear conception of the required means to an end, often in the form of a drawing or statement on paper; a **system**, fully worked-out plan repeatedly used; a **method**, plan covering every successive step: "a good teaching method"; a **theory**, a plan which is being experimented with; an **idea**, more or less vague conception on a single point; a **program** or **programme**, the detailed arrangements of a forthcoming event; a **device**, any way of doing a thing or instrument used in carrying out a plan; an **arrangement** between parties for each to change his

previous plans in order to fit a new object; a **contrivance**, an ingenious device of any kind; a **contraption** (humorous), a crudely designed contrivance; a **plot**, the coming together of several heads for a secret and usually wrongful purpose; a **trick**, ingenious way of achieving a result by taking advantage of a weakness; a **ruse**, way of achieving a result by turning somebody's attention in another direction; an **intrigue** (in-trég'), an incipient plot, generally of a personal nature.

- a** **plănet**, a body that revolves about the Sun. The principal planets are: **Vēnus, Jupiter, Mars, Mercury, Săturn, Urānus, Neptune.**
- a** **plant**. Greek botane; hence **bōt'āny**, the study of plants; **botān'ical**.—A **vēgetable**, useful; an **herb**, for flavoring or for medicine; a **weed**, useless.

### Some words used on this subject

To sprout, come up, spring, grow, bud, open, blow, flower, sow, manūre, plant, set, blossom, bloom, fade, wither, pluck, blight, gāther, pick, cultivate, fertilize, graft, soil, earth, seed, roots, stalk, stem, branch, sap, blooming, leaf, calyx, petals, corolla, flower, stāmen.

**plausible** (adjective; literally "worthy of applause"); "plausible argument," one that sounds true but is not entirely so; "a plausible theory," "a plausible solution."—**Spēcious**, based on trivial distinctions.

**play**. In the theatrical sense, see Theater.—**Relaxation**, removing the nervous tension; **rēcŕeātiōn**, amusement which "creates anew" the muscular system; **fun**, which provokes smiles or laughter; **merriment**, which makes people friendly and happy; **cheer**, which makes people forget their troubles; **entertainment**, which helps while away idle time; **plēasure**, the satisfaction of desire; a **jest**, pleasant play on words; a **frol'ic**, a scene of merrymaking, especially of younger people; a **sport**, organized play, generally competitive; a **game**, a unit of organized play; a **pastime**, a harmless way of idling; a **lark**, a surprise pastime of a riotous nature, suddenly decided upon, as by youths.

### Some words used on this subject

A **băgatelle** (trifle, thing of no consequence); **dalliance** (a poetic word: trifling with duty, procrastinating); a **hobby** (habitual pastime of absorbing interest); an **avocation** (a person's choice of work done without pay; "He is a stockbroker by profession, but his avocation is bee-keeping").—A **stage play**; a **trăgedy** (fight against Fate), a **drāmă** (conflict of wills), a **mēlodrama** (fight against a series of accidents caused by Nature more than through character development), a **com'edy** (conflict of an amusing nature, often with one-

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels: ā ē ī ō ū ŷ as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ä ē ī ō ū ŷ as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; & as in father; ēr as in merry; er as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (& in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.

self), a farce (uproarious series of absurdities), a pan'tomime (play without words, through gestures only).

See Theater.

- a player** (plā'er), in a stage play; an **actor**, professional (feminine: **actress**); a **performer** in a particular presentation; an **artist** or **artiste**, one whose business is acting; a **musician**, one skilled in music; an **acrobat**, one who performs tricks aloft; a **clown**, one who performs amusing stunts.
- to plead**, make a plea for; to **advocate** a certain course of action; **recommend** a certain choice after having had experience with it; **endorse** a measure of which one is willing to bear the responsibility; **advance** views on a certain subject; **urge** the adoption of a plan; **urge** somebody to act in a certain way; **request** as a favor; **beg** for a thing, beg somebody to do a thing, with humility; **implore** very earnestly; **press** a claim, a suit; **allege** that things are so and so; **contend** that something is different from what is claimed; **supplicate** mercy, or supplicate a person to grant an undeserved favor, humbly; **implore** on one's hands and knees; **beseech** God to hear one's prayers; **entreat** somebody, humbly and earnestly, to do something; **crave** a favor, a privilege; **solicit**, call upon a person in order to further one's purpose: "subscription solicitors."
- to please** (plēasing, plēased, plēasant, plēasure, plēasurable). Latin placeo; hence to **placate** somebody, turn away his anger; an **implacable** enemy, one who will not be reconciled; a **placid** disposition, one that is easily pleased. French plaire; hence **s'il vous plaît** (abbreviated, in formal invitations and on advertisements only, **s.v.p.**), "if you please," as in **R.S.V.P.**, "Répondez, s'il vous plaît," "please reply." Greek hedone; hence **hēdonism**, the belief that the pursuit of pleasure is the greatest good.
- Adjectives: **plēasant**, which is so constructed as to give pleasure: "a pleasant afternoon," one that has been agreeably passed; **plēasing**, that from which one receives pleasure: "a pleasing personality," one whom other people like to meet; **agreeable**, so disposed as to be congenial to all; an **enjoyable** performance; a **delightful** entertainment; an **enter-taining** conversation; a **fascinating** subject of study; **cap-tivating** manners; an **acceptable** proposition; an **affable** stranger; an **amiable** old lady; a **gracious** manner; **graceful** motions; a **courteous** (ker'tī-ūs) reply, polite but not excessively friendly; a **prepossessing** appearance; a **suave** (sōōāv) person, who expresses everything in smooth form; a **jolly** crowd, informal and easily amused.
- Nouns: **pleasure** (plēzher), the satisfaction of a desire; **joy**, the emotion of satisfaction; **happiness**, state of continued joy; **ec'stasy**, heavenly transports; **gladness** at some particular circumstance; **cheer** after gloom; **mirth**, friendly and sociable jollity; **bliss**, treasured to oneself; **rādiance**, pouring out in "rays"; **grātification** of a long-held desire.
- Verbs: To **appease** somebody's anger; **propitiate** an angry dēity, by making sacrifices and promises; **charm** by the out-

pouring of one's magnetism; fascinate so that the person is no longer able to exercise his discretion; enchant, as by a magic "incantation," please to the point of delight; ravish as if carrying to the seventh heaven.

Opposites (adjectives): displeasing, repulsive, objectionable, annoying, offensive, loathsome, disgusting, nauseating, obnoxious, odious.

to **pledge**, promise security; **pawn** a thing deposited; **mortgage** the security of real estate; **give as collateral** an additional security.

**plural**, "more than one." In Grammar, the form which indicates that more than one person or thing is concerned. In English, nouns and pronouns may vary in their plural form, while adjectives are invariable (except the possessive adjectives, such as **my**, **our**; **his**, **their**, and the demonstratives, such as **this**, **these**).

### The Plural of Nouns

The plural may be formed as follows:

1. By adding **s** to the singular, as **boy**, **boys**; **uncle**, **uncles**; **book**, **books**; **table**, **tables**.

2. By adding **es**, when the singular ends in **o**, **s**, **x**, **sh** and **ch**, as in **potato**, **potatoes**; **hero**, **heroes**; **gas**, **gases**; **kiss**, **kisses**; **fox**, **foxes**; **box**, **boxes**; **fish**, **fishes**; **lash**, **lashes**; **church**, **churches**; **inch**, **inches** (but **tobacco**, **tobaccos**; see below: "Plural of nouns ending in -o").

3. By changing the terminations **f** and **fe** into **ves**, as **leaf**, **leaves**; **half**, **halves**; **life**, **lives**; **knife**, **knives**.

#### Exceptions.

Nouns ending in **ff**, as **cuff**, **muff**, **puff**, **sheriff**, **skiff**, **snuff**, **stuff**, form their plural regularly: **cuffs**, **muffs**, **puffs**, **sheriffs**, **skiffs**, **snuffs**, and **stuffs**; also the following words ending in **f**: **brief**, **chief**, **dwarf**, **grief**, **gulf**, **handkerchief**, **proof**, **roof**, **turf**, **wharf**, form the plural by adding **s**.

4. By changing the termination **y** into **ies**, when **y** is preceded by a consonant, as in **fly**, **flies**; **lady**, **ladies**; and by adding **s**, when **y** is preceded by a vowel, as in **day**, **days**; **key**, **keys**; **attorney**, **attorneys**.

5. Certain foreign nouns retain their foreign plural formation as: **focus**, **foci**; **vortex**, **vortices**; **index**, **indices**, **indexes**; **analysis**, **analyses**; **ultimatum**, **ultimata**; **candelabrum**, **candelabra**, etc.

6. Certain old noun forms are retained in the plural, as: **man**, **men**; **woman**, **women**; **child**, **children**; **louse**, **lice**; **goose**, **geese**; **mouse**, **mice**; **foot**, **feet**; **ox**, **oxen**, etc.

7. The plural of compound words is formed in the regular way: **cupful**, **cupfuls**; **handful**, **handfuls**.

8. The plural of hyphenated words is formed by adding **s** to the most important noun in the combination when the compound is made up of two nouns; and to the noun when composed of a noun and another part of speech, as: **father-in-law**, **fathers-in-law**; **waste-basket**, **waste-baskets**; **tea-board**, **tea-**

boards; court-martial, courts-martial; passer-by, passers-by; looker-on, lookers-on.

9. Certain nouns are used only in the plural: alms, ashes, billiards, bowels, drawers, goods, riches, scissors, spectacles, thanks, trousers.

10. Certain nouns have no plural form as: gold, eloquence, hose, silver.

11. Certain nouns have only a plural form, while they are singular and are followed by the singular verb: "The news is good." Among these are the names of sciences ending in -ics: "Physics includes optics, acoustics, hydrostatics, electricity, magnetism and other branches." But the names of arts ending in -ics are generally considered plural: "Gymnastics are healthful." When a word in -ics may be the name of a science or a popular word, the tendency even among educated people is to make the word plural when it is used in its popular sense: "The acoustics of the hall are poor" (meaning "the sound waves do not carry without echoes").

12. The apostrophe is used to form the plural of letters:—**Learn your a, b, c's; mind your p's and q's.**

13. The apostrophe is used to form the plural of figures:—**Everything is 6's and 7's; He wears number 9's.**

14. The apostrophe is used to form the plural of signs, as the plus and minus signs of arithmetic:—**The + 's and — 's are the bane of a child's life.**

15. Use the apostrophe to form the plural of words used as nouns and having no usual plural form:—**Don't use so many don't's; There are no if's or and's about it.**

### Plural of nouns ending in -o

Altos, archipelagos, banjos, bravoes (of the crowd), bravos (hired), buffaloes, calicoes, cantos, cargoes, centos, chromos, curios, electros, echoes, embargoes, frescoes, grottoes, haloes, heroes, impresarios, innuendoes, Lotharios, manifestoes, mementoes, mosquitoes, mottoes, negroes, octavos, oratorios, piccolos, porticoes, potatoes, provisos, punctilios, quartos, ratios, salvoes, solos, sopranos, tyros, tomatoes, tornadoes, torpedoes, torsos, volcanoes, zeros. (Roughly speaking, fully anglicized words have the plural in -oes: mosquitoes, tomatoes, with the exception of tobaccos; words still felt as foreign have the plural in -os: impresarios.)

**pneum-.** Greek root meaning "air, wind." Derived forms: **pneumát'ic, pneumō'n'ia** (p silent before n). See Air.

**poetry** (three syllables: pō'ēt-ri), a **pō'ēt** (two syllables), a **pō'ēm** (two syllables). Poetry is the art of expressing lofty thoughts in beautiful language, usually with rime and rhythm. Poetry should not be confused with mere **riming** (or **rhyming**). The element of rime is not the principal part of poetry, which is characterized by: high **imagination**, to see in commonplace things more than ordinary people see; **concise expression**, to condense much thought into few pregnant words; **musical rhythm**, with or without rime; **emotional intensity**.

## Some words used on this subject

Riming or rhyming; versification (verse making); *pros'ody* (rules of verse-making); a foot (unit of stress); scansion (division into feet); an *épíc* (long heroic poem); ode (shorter heroic poem); *idyl* (pastoral, rural); *lýric* (emotional); *bucolic* (rustic); an *eclogue* (shepherd's); *sonnet* (14-line poem, consisting of two quatrains, and two tercets); *rondeau* (two *rimes* repeated six or seven times); *él'egy* (plaintive song); *ballad* (romantic); *canto* (one of the greater divisions of a long poem); *stanza* (combination of verses). A line or verse: a *couplet* (two verses riming together); *tercet* (three verses riming together); *tríplet* (three verses riming together); *quatrain* (four verses riming alternately); *strophe* (*stró'fe*, group of lines forming a repeating system of meter).

An *iám'bus* (a two-syllable foot, the first syllable unstressed); a *trochee* (*tró'kí*; two syllables, the second unstressed); an *an'apest* (three syllables, the first two unstressed); a *dác'tyl* (three syllables, the last two unstressed); the *cesū'ra* (natural pause in a verse).

- a **point.** Latin *punctum*, a sharp end, punch or prick; hence *punctil'ious*, who sticks to minute points of etiquette; *punctua'tion*, the use of points or marks in a sentence; *punctual*, who carefully keeps appointments to the point or dot; *punc'ture*, a hole made by a sharp object in an air-filled surface.—The point or sharp extrem'ity of an object; the *tip* (or "narrow top") of the tongue, the fingers; the *summit* of a mountain; the *ápex* of a pyramid, of one's fame; the *clímax* of a slowly built-up achievement, of a story; the *crux* or crucial or vital point of an argument.—To *point out*, indicate (with the first or "index" finger).

the **point system.** Practically all type used by printers has been standardized in height. The unit of measurement is the point, or 1/72nd of an inch. Six-point type goes 12 lines to an inch, twelve-point type goes 6 lines to an inch, and so on.

- a **poison** (*poisonous*, *poisoning*, a *poisoner*, *poisoned*). Latin *venenum*; hence a snake's *venom*, a natural secretion; to *enven'om* a quarrel; *ven'omous*. Greek *toxikon*; hence a *tóxin*, scientific name for poison; *antitoxin*, counterpoison; *intoxicate*, to poison whether by alcohol or any other poison; *toxic*, poisonous; *toxicologist*, a poison specialist.—A *germ* of anything that grows; a *bactérium* (plural *bactéria*), vegetable micro-organism; *bacillus*, a special genus of bacteria; the *virus* of a contagious disease, whether known or unknown.

Remedy for internal poison.....an *antídote*.

Destructor of external poison.....a *disinfectant*.

Germ-destroying .....antiseptic, *germicí'dal* (adjectives).

Germ-free .....aseptic.

Not affected by germs.....*immūne* (to disease).

The word **poison** is derived from **potion**, a dose of medicine,

from Latin *potare*, to drink. It is therefore more naturally used with anything taken into the system through the mouth.

**poli-**. Greek root meaning "city." Derived forms: **pōl'itics**, **pōlice**. See City.

**pōlite**, adjective: "pōlished" in manners; **cīvil**, barely polite, just refraining from being rude; **courteous** (ker'tī-ūs), going out of his way to render a service; **gallant** (accent on last syllable) to the ladies, excessively anxious to please; **urbane**, "as a city man," opposed to "countrified" or "rustic"; **courtly** (kōrt'li), with the manners of a royal court, given to extreme bowings and formalities; **el'egant**, this word properly applies to "well-selected" attire and furniture, and to well-dressed people; **genteel**, who has acquired better manners than those of his native surroundings (usually sarcastic); **deferential**, showing an attitude of respect to superiors or older people. See To Please.

**pol'itics**, **polit'ical**, a **pol'it'ician** (note the three different accents). From Greek *polis*, "city," **politics** being the business of the city or state; hence **metrop'olis**, the principal city; **metro-pol'itan**, pertaining to the important city; **cosmopol'itan**, in the manner of a "citizen of the world."

**poly-**. Greek root and prefix meaning "many." Derived forms: **pōl'ytēch'nic**, **pol'ychrōme**. See Many.

**poor**, adjective. Latin *pauper*; hence **pau'perism**, habitual poverty; a **pauper**, one who lives on public bounty; to **pau'perize**, cause to lose one's self-respect by becoming dependent.—In most languages, "poor" or its equivalent is used both of money shortage and of brain shortage or luck shortage: "Those poor people have no idea how to do it."—**Unfortunate**, out of luck; **needy**, suffering from want; **des'titute**, entirely lacking the common necessities of life; **impecū'nious**, short of money through lack of thrift; **penū'rious**, always afraid of running out of supplies, and dispensing them stingily; **parsimo'nious**, careful in dispensing, often from a dislike of the receiver.

**pōp'ular**, adjective; "of the people," finding favor with the mass of people; **fāshionable**, finding favor with the more discriminating people; **accepted**, no longer questioned; **rēc'ognized**, established in a certain reputation after a struggle; **success'ful**, which has been found to work; **predom'inant** belief, etc., which has taken the place of most others; **current** views, which are now "running" and in due time will have run their course; **fā'vōrite**, preferred as a choice; **vulgar**, as practiced by people of low taste; **plēbē'ian**, not aristocratic or refined.

The language of the people.....the vernac'ular.  
Popular government.....democ'racy.

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels: *ā ē ī ō ū y* as in *mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my*; *ă ă ı ă ă ă* as in *mat, met, mit, not, nut, pity*; *ā* as in *father*; *ēr* as in *merry*; *er* as in *mercer*; *ou* as in *loud*; *au* as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ă* in *senate*). Consonants: *ç* always as in *go*; *th* as in *thief*; *dh* as *th* in *mother*; *ng* as in *sing* or in *singer*; *ng-g* as *ng* in *finger*. See Syllables.

to **pore** over a book, gaze fixedly at it. Do not confuse with to **pour** out a liquid (same pronunciation), or with the **pores** or breathing holes of the skin.

**posit-** (-pon-). Latin root meaning "to place." Derived forms: **pōsition**, **pōsitive**, **depōs'it**, **compō'nent**, **oppō'nent**. See Place.

a **position**, the way in which a person or thing is placed, especially one not very likely to endure; a **situation**, literally the "place" where a person or thing is to be found, with an idea of permanence and stability (sounds S-T-T); a **job**, casual piece of specific work, often used to mean one's position; a **place**, especially a servant's; **employment**, the state of being paid wages for one's time; a **berth**, one's work, with an idea of the personal comforts the salary brings; a **billet**, soldier's right to live with a family during military operations; hence a position regarded as a more or less temporary means of earning a livelihood; a **pōst**, dignified term, used by ambassadors and ministers, with the idea of a position to be defended; a **dīg'nity**, a position considered as an honor and a responsibility, as a bishop's; a clergyman's **incum'bency** or right to enjoy an ecclesiastical ben'efice; a cabinet minister's **portfolio**.

The idea of **position** is sometimes indicated by the suffix **-ship**: a clerkship, an apprenticeship; sometimes by the suffix **-cy**: the Presidency, a baronetcy.

**poss-**. Latin root meaning "able to." See **pot-** below.

to **possess** (twice two s's; pronounced with a **Z** sound in the middle: pō-zēs'). **Possession**, **possessor**, **possessive**.—To have both the right to, and the use of, property, faculties, etc.; to **own**, have the right to. (An owner may be unable to secure **possession** of his property.)

## THE POSSESSIVE CASE

For the choice of the possessive inflections, the apostrophe and **s** ('s) or the apostrophe alone ('), the following simple rules may be followed:

1. The possessive of singular nouns is ordinarily formed by adding 's. This may necessitate pronouncing it as an extra syllable: **John's book**; **Bill's coat**; **The ship's deck**; **Hawkins's yacht**; **The boy's coat**; **The dog's tail**; **The girl's hat**; **Evans's career**.

2. The possessive of plural nouns is formed by adding simply the apostrophe ('): **The boys' coats**; **The girls' hats**; **The shoppers' bundles**; **The ships' decks**.

3. When the plural of a noun does not end with **s**, the possessive is formed by adding the apostrophe (') and **s**, as **men's**, **women's**, **children's**, **geese's**, **oxen's**, **people's**.

4. When the singular of a noun ends with **s** or **x**, ease in pronunciation permits the use of the apostrophe only as: **Essex' death**; **Jones' house**; **Dickens' works**. Usage differs as to this, however. Some prefer **Essex's death**; **Jones's house**; **Dickens's works**.

See Declension.



**possible**, adjective: feasible, workable; **pōtential**, which may happen if something else happens first; **contingent** upon something happening.

**pōst**, a Latin word meaning after, behind: as in **postscript**, written after the letter; **postpone**, put off till after.

**posthumous** (pōs'tū-mūs; notice the ō and notice also that the h is not pronounced).—"A posthumous child," born after the father's death; "a posthumous book," published after the author's death.

to **pōstpone** until a stated or assumed future time; **defer** until later, in general; **put off**, with an idea of reluctance; **stave off** an evil occurrence; **suspend** temporarily something that is already on; **delay**, keep from starting; **adjourn** for later resumption; **procrastinate**, put off habitually (this verb requires no object).

See examples under Defer.

**pot-**, **poss-**. Latin root meaning "able to, can." Derived forms: **possible**, **pōtent**, **pōten'tial**, **pōtentate**. See Can.

a **pot**: a receptacle in general; **vase** (U.S. generally vās; England vāz), ornamental; **kettle** to cook things in; earthen **crook**, for liquids; a glass or stone **jar** for jam, etc.

a **pota'to**. Plural **potatoes** (with an e).

**poten'tial**, which may develop later. See Possible.

a **pound**, weight. Latin *libra*, abbreviated "lb.," both in the singular and in the plural, after figures. The English pound sterling (\$4.86) is abbreviated with a special large £ in front of the amount.

to **pour** (pōr), to cause a liquid to flow into something.

Pouring out.....an effusion (of sentiment).

**power**. Latin *potentia*; hence **pōtent**, powerful; **pōtency** of a drug; **im'potent**, helpless; **poten'tial**, that may become a power. Greek *dynamis*; hence **dý'namite**, a powerful explosive; **dýnām'ic**, powerful to lead to action; **dynasty** (dī'- or dīn-), the family in power, the ruling family. In the sense of authority, Greek *kratos*; hence **aristoc'racy**, government by "the best"; **democ'racy**, popular power; **autoc'racy**, self-power, one-man rule.

Power (right) to act legally...a warrant.

Power (right) to act discretionally .....carte blanche (kărt-blâns'h).

To give somebody power

(right) .....to authorize somebody (to do something).

**prac'ticable**, which can be done; **prac'tical**, useful; (person) "matter-of-fact."—Opposite; **theoretical**.

a **practice** (but the other spelling, *practise*, is not wrong for either the verb or the noun), a personal **habit**; a natural or local **custom**; a definite rule of conduct; a theatrical **rehearsal**; court **procédure**.

to **praise**. Latin, *laudare*; hence to **laud**, praise loudly; **laudation**;

**laudatory**; also eulogium from the Greek meaning "speak well"; hence to **eulogize** somebody.—To **vaunt** one's good looks, one's deeds; **extol** the merits of a proposition; **commend** somebody's endeavors; **applaud** a successful performance; **compliment** somebody on the manner in which he has done something; **congratulate** somebody on a propitious event; **celebrate** a happy event.

Praise to please.....flattery.  
 Servile praise.....adulation.  
 Outburst of cheers by crowd.....ōvātion.  
 Praise in public discourse.....eulogy (ū'loji).  
 Formal and discriminating praise...encō'mium.  
 Praiseworthy.....laudable, commendable.  
 Giving praise.....laudatory (speech).  
 Glorification at climax.....apotheosis.  
 Emblem of glory round head.....aureole, hālo.  
 Pay respects to.....pay homage.  
 To honor with medals.....dēcorate.  
 Visible signs of a decoration.....insig'nia.  
 Brilliancy.....ēclat (ā-klā').

to **pray**. Past tense **prayed**; (**praying, prayer**). Latin oro; hence an or'ison, habitual prayer: "It was the time at which he performed his or'isons" (same word originally as **oration**, now restricted to public speech); an **or'atory**, place of prayer, especially a private church (not to be confused with the word of same spelling and pronunciation which means "the art of public speaking"); an **orato'rio**, a sacred composition or text set to music; "**ora pro nobis**," "pray for us" (addressing a single person; plural "**orate pro nobis**"; in the Roman Catholic litany). Latin also: rogo, to ask; hence a **rogation**, formal petition; **Rogation Days**, three days of prayer before Ascension Day; a **rog'atory** commission, one empowered to ask questions; to **dērogate** from a person's rights, to take them away; a **derog'atory** comment, one that causes loss of prestige. Latin peto, to request, seek; hence a **pet'ition**, a formal request, generally by a group of people: "Your petitioners pray that the Council refuse the permission which . . ."; to **compete** with somebody, seek the patronage of buyers at the same time as he does; **pet'ulant**, aggressive and fretful, always seeking something new. Latin quæro, to seek; hence to **request** politely; **require** authoritatively: "your presence is required in court"; **rēquis'ition**, supplies to which one is entitled; a **question** or request for information; **inquis'itive**, who seeks causes; to **quiz** (colloquial, U. S.), to examine by means of questions. Latin vocare, to call; hence to **invoke** a powerful person's aid against an enemy; an **invoca'tion**, a brief and ardent prayer.

To **implore** on one's hands and knees one who appears obdurate; to **beseech** God to hear one's prayers; to **entreat** somebody humbly and earnestly, to do something; to **supplicate** mercy, or supplicate a person to grant an undeserved favor. See Plead.

Prayer stool.....(French) prie-dieu (prē-dīū).  
Prayer book.....(R.C.) missal; (priest's) brē-viary.

Place of prayer.....church, chapel, oratory (private), temple, synagogue.

Object of prayer.....Deity, God, Christ; statue, image, icon; idōl.

Object of superstitious fear...fētish

**precā'rious**: uncertain, insecure, unsafe. "The boy had a precarious foothold on the running board of the car."

to **precede**, "go ahead"; lead; introduce a speaker; announce something forthcoming; preface a few remarks to a book, a speech.

**pre-cē'dence**, right to go first. "The King has **precē'dence** over all his subjects."

a **prēcedent** (prēs'ēdent), something in the past which serves as a rule for future practice: "A court of justice decides every case according to established legal **prēcedents**."

**prēdicāte** (prēd'ikāt). In Grammar, "what is said about" the subject: "A tall man (subject) walked across the street" (predicate). The predicate always includes a verb, and often includes various complements: "Water (subject) runs" (verb which is the whole predicate). "A child (subject) threw (verb which is part of the predicate) a stone over the garden wall at a bird on a tree" (various complements which "complete" the verb, forming with the verb the full predicate).

the **pref'ace**, the explanatory remarks at the beginning of a book.  
—**Pref'atory** remarks which introduce the subject.

to **prefer** (prefer'ring, prefer'ed, prefer'able, a prefer'ence). A thing is preferred to another: "I prefer swimming to riding"; but when the infinitive is used in the construction, which is often necessary for parallelism, then it is impossible to avoid the illogical form "rather than": "Would you like to ride or to swim?"—"I prefer to swim rather than to ride." (The other form: "I prefer swimming," would not answer this particular question, which is not as to habitual preferences, but as to inclination at the moment. As in all cases of grammatical complications, most people are wise enough to turn the obstacle and say: "I would rather swim than ride.")

a **prē'fix** (noun; accent on first syllable); to **prefix'** (verb; accent on last syllable).—A prefix is a short word or what was formerly a word, placed before the principal part of another word in order to modify its sense; **misunderstand**; **retroactive**; **maleficent**.

**prefixes**, Greek.

**A**, **AN** (no, not), aseptic, anarchy.

**AMPHI** (Latin *ambi*) (about, around, both), ambidextrous, amphitheater.

**ANA** (up, again), anatomy, Anabaptist.

**ANTI** (against, opposite), antidote, antiphonal, antagonist.

**CATA** (down), catalepsy, cataclysm.

**DIA** (through, across), diameter, dialogue.  
**EPI** (upon), epidemic, epithet, epode, ephemeral.  
**HYPER** (over, extremely), hypercritical, hyperbola.  
**HYPO** (under, in smaller measure), hypodermic, hypophosphate.  
**META** (after, over), metaphysics, metaphor.  
**PARA** (beside), paraphrase, paraphernalia.  
**PERI** (around, about), periscope, peristyle.  
**PRO** (before), proboscis, prophet.  
**SYN** (together, with), synthesis, synopsis, sympathy.

**prefixes, Latin.**

**A, AB** (from, away), avert, abnegation, abstract, abnormal, abduct, abbreviation.  
**AD** (to), adduce, adjacent, affect, accede, administer, adhere.  
**ANTE** (before), antediluvian, anteroom, antedate.  
**BENE** (well), benefactor, benefit.  
**BI, BIS** (two), biped, bicycle, bisect, biscuit.  
**CIRCUM** (around), circumambient, circumference, circumnavigate, circumscribe.  
**CUM, COM, CON, CO** (with, together), combine, consort, coadjutor, concur, collect, correspond.  
**CONTRA** (against), contradict, contrast, contrary.  
**DE** (from, down, negative, intensive), deplete, decry, demerit, declaim, degrade, dejected.  
**DI, DIS** (asunder, away from, negative), divert, disbelief, dissatisfy, disrobe.  
**E, EX** (from, out of), evict, excavate, evaporate, exclude, exile.  
**EXTRA** (beyond), extraordinary, extravagant.  
**IN, IM, IL, IR** (not), infirm, insignificant, impossible, illegal, irresponsible.  
**IN, IM** (in, into), invade, inmate, impress, innate, instill.  
**INTER** (among, between), interchange, international.  
**INTRO, INTRA** (into, within), introduce, intramural.  
**MAL** (bad, ill), malefactor, malpractice.  
**MIS** (wrong, ill), misfortune, misbehave.  
**MULTI** (many), multitude, multi-millionaire.  
**NON** (negative), nondescript, nonsense, non-essential.  
**OB, OP** (against, before, facing toward), obloquy, obstacle, offer, object, oppose.  
**PER** (through, extremely), persecute, perfervid, pursue, pilgrim, pellucid, pervade.  
**POST** (after), postpone, postscript, post mortem.  
**PRE** (before), prepay, preoccupy, predict, predestined.  
**PRO** (before), proceed, proffer, pronoun, produce.  
**RE** (back, again), return, resound, rebound, recur.  
**BETRO** (back, backward), retroactive, retrospective, retrograde.

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels *ā ē ī ō ū y* as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; *ă ă ĩ ă ũ ŷ* as in mat, met, mit, not, nut, pity; *ā* as in father; *ēr* as in merry; *ēr* as in mercer; *ou* as in loud; *au* as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ă* in senate). Consonants: *g* always as in go; *th* as in thief; *dh* as *th* in mother; *ng* as in sing or in singer; *ng-g* as *ng* in finger. See Syllables.

**SE** (apart, side), seclude, secession.

**SEMI** (half), semiannual, semicivilized, semicircle.

**SUB, SUP** (under, less than, inferior), subscribe, suffer, subnormal, subcommittee, subordinate, support.

**SUPER** (above, extremely), superfluous, supercritical, soprano, superhuman, superior.

**TRANS** (across, through), transfer, transparent, trans-Atlantic.

**ULTRA** (beyond, extremely), ultramundane, ultraconservative.

**UNI** (one), uniform, unify.

- a **prěj'ūdice**, a judgment not based on knowledge; a **bīās**, a natural tendency to choose a certain course of action; a **prēpossession**, a definite idea which prevents one from seeing another side to a question. "The likes and dislikes of childhood years are the true source of nearly every adult přejūdice."
- a **prēl'ūde**, the part "played before" a musical performance, generally in key with the main theme; to **prēlūde** (accent on second syllable), to play or say something before: "He preluded a few remarks"; a **prō'lōg** or **prō'lōgue**, a statement or recitation that precedes the main speech or performance; in motion picture theaters, an acted entertainment on the stage, of the same nature as the film which is to follow; a **prēf'ace**, the author's explanation of his book, which precedes the matter; a **progrām**, a printed or written statement of the contents of a forthcoming performance.
- a **prem'ise**, a statement leading to a conclusion. A **syllogism** or logical way of reasoning, includes a **mājor přēm'ise**, a **minor přēm'ise** and a **conclusion**:  
 Mājor přēm'ise: All men are mortal.  
 Minor přēm'ise: John is a man.  
 Conclusion: Therefore John is mortal.  
 "If I could agree with your premises, I could accept your conclusions."  
 Verb: to **přēmise** (prē-miz' with long i and with z sound).  
 —The noun **přēm'ises**, in the plural, is also used as synonymous with property and its appurtenances: "No smoking on these přēm'isēs."
- to **prepare** (preparing, prepared, přēparation), to arrange in advance, make ready: "We were not prepared for snow in October"; **adapt** a thing to a situation by changing it to suit: "Adaptability to one's surroundings is the secret of success"; **set** to a fixed limit: "The alarm clock was set for six"; **dress** a window in a store; **cook** a meal; **provide** or **furnish** somebody with something; **make** the beds; **do** the housework; **clean** the house; **supply** something to somebody or supply somebody with something; **arrange** in the proper order; **tidy up** something that has been thrown into disorder; **quālify** oneself for a position requiring certain aptitudes; **compile** facts or figures to prove a point; **procure** something for somebody else.
- a **přēposition**. In Grammar, a word expressing a relationship between two simple objects, or between an action and an ob-

ject: "a day of reckoning," "a treatise for experts." The name "preposition" is of French origin, because in French Grammar a preposition always "goes before" its object; it is not so in English and other Teutonic languages, and the equally good name **postposition** has been used by some linguists to indicate the peculiar and entirely correct, often indispensable, use of a so-called preposition after a verb and without an object: "That remark was uncalled for," "It cannot be done away with," "What did he do it for?" "The house we live in." In most such cases, the postposition is truly an integral part of the verb: "the house / I / live in: the house / I / occupy (or inhabit)."

**Classification of prepositions.** While classifications are always arbitrary, the classification of English prepositions is particularly so, because the use of English prepositions is amenable to few clear rules. However, it may be stated that prepositions express **place**: without motion: "at, by, with, on, among, in, between, above, beneath, below, etc."; with motion toward: "to, toward, till, against, athwart, across, around, through, about"; with motion away from: "from, of, since"; or that they express **time**: before, after, during, pending; or **hesitation**: "but, notwithstanding, except, save."

**Prepositional phrases.** Two or more words having the effect of a preposition constitute a prepositional phrase, such as: according to, as for, as far as, because of, by the side of, by dint of, by means of, but for, contrary to, close to, down to, even with, far from, for less than, for want of, in spite of, in order to, in sight of, in regard to, instead of, next to, on account of, on this side of, out of, over against, unknown to, up to, with regard to.

- a **prés'ent**, a formal gift; a **dōnā'tion** of money to a good cause; a **tip** or **gratū'ity** to an inferior, a servant, a waiter; a **souvenir** (sōō'vū-nēr'), gift in remembrance.—To **present** (verb, accent on last syllable) formally, knowing it will be accepted; **offer** for one's approval; **introduce**, be the first to offer; **show**, display; **dem'onstrate** by explaining the detailed workings of; **nom'inate** a person for public office; **express** an idea by clothing it with suitable form; **suggest** (sū-jest') a remedy to people who may know it but have not thought of it.
- to **press** together tightly; **push** away, against; **pull** toward one; **crush** so that it is damaged; **squeeze** from every side: "to squeeze the juice out of a lemon," "to squeeze the taxpayers for more money"; **jam** roughly into an already crowded space; **tread** under foot; **urge** to action, by calling forth the other's motives; **enlist** the support of; **constrain** somebody to act, by bringing pressure on him; **squash**, crush into a mass.
- prestige** (prēs'tij), accumulated good name due to achievements, position, etc.: "The flight around the world enhanced the prestige of the American Navy." "An ambassador's wife enjoys considerable social prestige." "Putting out an inferior article will hurt the prestige of any established firm."
- to **pretend**, make others believe, seriously or in play, what one does

not believe: "pretend to be angry," "he pretends to know"; **claim** openly: "He claims to have been sent by the President"; **affect** a manner considered desirable; **feign** a feeling; **sham** an affliction; **simulate** the symptoms of a disease; **make believe**, in play; **dissemble** for an unworthy purpose: "He dissembled stupidity in order to avoid punishment"; **imagine** (Imăj'in), think it is so. To **malinger** (măling'ger), feign sickness in order to avoid duty.

to **prevent** something from happening, or somebody from doing something, arrange so that it cannot happen; **hinder** somebody from doing something, by making it difficult or by being in the way; **retard** something, make it late; **delay** somebody, cause him to be late; **impede** a person's progress: "Too large an outfit is a great impediment to a camper"; **check** somebody's activities, make them come to a stop; **curb** one's unruly passions; **restrain** somebody from acting, as by a moral force: "Civilization imposes many restraints upon people"; **deter** somebody from a course of action, by making him realize its perils or its undesirability; **obstruct** somebody in the exercise of his functions, by raising unreasonable obstacles; **oppose** somebody by making known one's disagreement; **obviate** the necessity for a measure by taking other steps first; **debar** a person from a privilege; **preclude** somebody from doing something, by making it impossible: "His wife's illness precluded his coming"; **forbid** authoritatively and personally; **prohibit** by law; **foil** somebody's plan by making it fail; **thwart** somebody's efforts by throwing obstacles in the way; **frustrate** somebody's wishes by rendering them vain; **balk** somebody by causing him to stumble; **counteract** an effect by afterwards taking measures in the opposite direction; **circumvent** a law or an agreement by going around it; **forestall** trouble by taking the necessary steps ahead of it.

**pride** (usually accounted a quality in oneself, a fault in others), the emotion of self-assertion, based on strength; **conceit** (in other people), pride without a substantial foundation of strength; **vanity**, exaggerated good opinion of some point in one's make-up; **arrogance**, expectation that others should submit to one's superiority; **haughtiness**, a combination of pride and repulsion, which makes one avoid strangers; **superciliousness**, intellectual pride combined with repulsion toward intellectual "inferiors"; **self-respect**, a well-balanced and reasonable amount of pride which prompts one to ethical conduct; **domineering**, habit of assuming that one is right and of expecting others to act accordingly; **insolence**, desire to assert one's superiority offensively.—Opposites of pride: **humility**, the impulse of submission; **modesty**, the avoidance of self-obtrusion, whether prompted by natural humility or by timidity; **meekness** (used nowadays in a deprecatory sense), avoidance of fight or quarrel at all costs, desire to be friendly to all.

a **priest** (Catholic or Anglican), a **minister** (Protestant), a **pastor**, in charge of a congregation; **pope** (Greek Orthodox priest; also, when spelled with a capital letter, **the Pope**, bishop of Rome

and head of the Roman Catholic Church); **rabbī** (Jewish); a **bishop**, **archbishop**, **presiding bishop**, **cardinal** (R.C.).—A priest is **ordained** to the priesthood by a bishop, and is in **holy orders**. The successive degrees of ordination include (in the R.C. Church) **minor orders**, which are those of **ācōlyte**, **exorcist**, **reader** or **lector**, and **doorkeeper**; and **major orders**, which are those of **subdeacon** (the subdiāconate), **deacon** (the diāconate), and **priest** (the priesthood). The Anglican (Episcopal) Church has no minor orders and no subdiaconate.

**prim-**. Latin root meaning "first, earliest, best." Derived forms: **prim'er**, **pri'mate**, **prim'itive**. See First.

- a **prince**, male offspring of royalty.—Plural **princes**. Feminine **prin'cess** (Pronounce the second syllable clearly -ēs, as if it had a secondary accent, to avoid confusion with the masculine plural **princes**); feminine plural **prin'cesses**.

Possessive: the **prince's** (singular); the **princes'** (plural); the **prin'cess's** (singular); the **prin'cesses'** (plural).

A prince is spoken of as His (Royal) Highness, and addressed as Your (Royal) Highness.—See King, Nobility, Royalty.

**principal** (written -al) like nation-al, capit-al, gener-al, speci-al, and other adjectives (qualifying words) formed by adding -al to a noun idea.

**Principal** as an adjective means **chief**, **most important**; it is used before a noun: "My **principal** reason for studying is that I wish to achieve success." **Principal** is also used as a noun to mean "the chief money": "All his **principal** is invested in bonds," or "the chief person": "The **principal** of the school is a fine scholar."

Do not confuse with Principle.

- a **principle** (written -le), a fundamental belief on which rules may be based: "The sanctity of contracts is one of the **principles** safeguarded by the American Constitution." "He is a man without **principles**. He is unprincipled."

Do not confuse a **principle** with a **rule**. A principle is a fundamental truth which is absolute and cannot be changed; a rule is a practical, limited and therefore inevitably unsuccessful attempt to bring about a desired object. "Rules are made for thinkers to break" and are subject to constant revision in the endeavor to make them simpler or clearer. "The **principles** of Expression are sometimes helped and sometimes hindered by the rules of Grammar."

to **print** (printing, printēd, a printer).

### Some words used on this subject

The **written** or **typewritten** manuscript as sent by the author to the printer is called the **copy**. It is **set** or **set up** in type by a **compōsitor**. The work of setting it up is called **composition**.

The length of the printed line varies according to the width of the page or of the column. It is always measured in **picas** (pī'kās), a pica being one-sixth of an inch in width.

The general appearance of the copy, as regards capital let-



ters, punctuation and the like, is called the **style**. Each large firm has its own rule of style. Some spell a word one way, and some another.

Practically all type now in use in this country has been standardized in height, although not always in width. The unit of measurement is called the **point**, a point being 1/72nd part of an inch. Six-point type, then, goes twelve lines to an inch, and twelve-point type goes six lines to an inch. Sometimes, however, the lines are "leaded" (pronounced léd'ed), which makes them stand farther apart. Here are a few specimens of common sizes of type:

This is 8-point type, 2/3 of an inch high.

This is 10-point type.

This is 12-point type.

This is 14-point type.

The largest type ordinarily used even in newspaper headlines does not exceed three inches in height (216 points).

There are many different kinds of type. One kind may have long tails to certain letters like t, b, q, g; another kind may have a squat appearance; a third may affect the "thin and thick" stroke; a fourth may have certain neat little lines at the foot of each letter. The American Type Founders Company has over 500 varieties of type listed in its catalog, and each variety in a multitude of sizes.

Many of the types in use are named after the distinguished artists who designed them: Goudy, Parsons, Kennerly, De Vinne, Caslon. Others are named after certain historical associations: Antique, Gothic, Scotch Roman, Old English.

This is a specimen of De Vinne.

This line is set in Antique.

This is Caslon type.

Within each type, in addition to size, there are several styles. These names are common to all sizes of type: **roman**, **italics**, **small caps**, **bold face**, **upper case**, **lower case**.

This is set in Caslon roman.

*This is Caslon italics.*

## THESE ARE CASLON CAPS OR UPPER CASE.

whatever is not upper case is lower case.

THESE ARE SMALL CAPS.

THESE ARE CAPS AND SMALL CAPS.

There are three ways in which type is set:

**By hand**, the compositor taking one letter at a time from a case;

**By a machine called the Monotype**, in which the operator presses keys like the typewriter's, the machine casting lines consisting of separate letters;

**By a machine called the Linotype**, also with a keyboard like

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels: æ as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ä as in mast, met, mitt, net, nut, pity; å as in father; êr as in merry; er as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in loud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ä in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.

the typewriter; this machine, however, casts entire lines and not separate letters.

The specimen of the copy as first set in type, sent to the author for correction, is called a **proof**. If all the type is set in a long row, it is called a **galley proof**; if it is set as it will appear on the page, it is called a **page proof**. When you change the proof by making corrections in it, and ask for another proof which will show that those corrections have been made, you are asking for a **revise**.

When the proofs have been finally corrected and O. K.'d, the type is **locked** in the **forms**, and is **made ready** (leveled so that no letter will print more heavily than the rest). Then the **press work** begins. In good press work all the lines of each page, and all the pages compared with one another, give an impression of being evenly inked.

- a **prison** (State or Federal) for crimes; **jail** or **gaol** (city or county) for minor offenses; **penitentiary** with hard labor for serious crimes; **reformatory** or **reform school** for young people; **dungeon** (dŭn'jŭn), underground prison; **quod, jug**, slang for jail.

**private**, adjective: not public; **personal**, not connected with business; **confidential**, not to be disclosed; **secret**, to be closely guarded from strangers; a **secluded** location, far from others; a **quiet** neighborhood; an **intimate** relationship between two or more people; a **close** connection.

- a **privilege** (Latin: "private law"), a special right not granted to all; a **permission**, generally granted for the asking; a **favor**, unusual request granted out of personal consideration; an **advantage** not shared in by all; a **facility** ("special facilities") which will remove obstacles, make things easier.
- a **prize**, reward of achievement; a **prĕmium**, article given free when another is purchased; a **bonus**, additional money to employees, etc.; a **trĕphy**, prize won competitively or against great odds: "He brought home the caribou's horns as a trophy"; a **cup** of silver awarded to the winner in sports; the **sweepstakes**, the entire money bet of a number of people, won by one person.

**prob-**. Latin root meaning "to prove, test." Derived forms: **prōb'able**, **prōbā'tion**. See Prove.

**probability**, likelihood or verisimilitude. In Rhetoric, the requirement that the action should appear possible. Truth often lacks the appearance of truth, and has to be presented in much circumstantial detail to be believed. Probability is created by suitable **characterization** and **motivation**. See Characterization, Motivation.

**prōb'able**, adjective; which is more reasonably expected than not: "It is probable he was delayed"; **likely**, according to similar previous cases: "That is more likely to happen."—Opposite: **improb'able**.

- to **proceed** (**proceeding**, **procĕdure**, **procession**, **prōcess**), to go forward, especially against somebody or something; hence to sue at law; the **proceeds** of an entertainment, the money taken in; **prōcĕdure**, the correct way of attaining the result, espe-

cially in law; a **procession**, people marching one behind another in honor or in support of some worthy cause; **process**, a method used in science or industry, involving several steps: "secret process for the production of an indestructible brake-lining"; **mental processes**, the sequence of desires and inhibitions that lead to a decision.

to **proclaim** (a **proclāmination**), literally "to shout forth," announce solemnly, make known to everybody. "The Thanksgiving Proclamation is signed by the President of the United States."

to **prōcrās'tinate** (literally "put off until tomorrow," from Latin *cras*, tomorrow), to have the habit of deferring action.

"Procrastination is the thief of time." "The habitual procrastinator is a person who always appears very busy but never completes any task."

For all the synonyms of procrastination and examples, see **Defer**.

to **prōduce** (verb; accent on last syllable); to **yield** a harvest, an income; **bear** fruit; **bring** a reward; **generate** power, bring it into existence; **create** something out of nothing; **furnish** an incentive; **compose** a work of art; **supply** a demand; **meet** with approval; **give birth** to a new growth; **engender** suspicion; **exhib'it** a document in court.—Noun: **prōd'uce** (accent on first syllable, which is short): "Farm prōd'uce"; a **prōd'uct**, manufactured.

To produce fruit. . . . . to fruc'tify.

a **profession**, skilled "white-collar" job, such as medicine, law, etc.; a **trade**, work involving skill or craftsmanship, or work of barter. See **Job**.

A man of my profession. . . . . my confrère.

a **profes'sor**, a teacher who is a specialist in his subject.—Abbreviated **Prof.** (with capital letter) before a proper name only, and better not abbreviated at all.

to **prof'it** by an event, by experience; **gain** an advantage through a ruse; **benefit** under an arrangement, under a will.—**Prōfit'ing**, **prōfited**, **prōfitable**, a **prōfiteer**.—Do not confuse with **prophet**, a forecaster.

To use a thing for profit. . . . . to avail oneself of a thing; to bēn'efit from.

a **pro'gram**. The dropping of the former termination **-me** (**programme**) does not decrease the necessity for clear pronunciation of the last syllable as **grām**.

**prōg'ress** (noun; accent on first syllable); to **prōgress'** (verb; accent on last syllable), move forward.

a **prōj'ect** (noun; accent on first syllable); to **prōject'** (verb; accent on last syllable). Literally "throw forward," a **project** being a thought "thrown forward" toward realization.—To **protrude**, stick out when it is not intended to, or more than normal, or so as to break a line: "His eyes were dilated with fear and protruded from their sockets."

- a** **projec'tion**, thing which projects or stands out; **motion picture projection**, the operation of throwing the small film image on the screen by means of a **projector** or intermittent type of magic lantern; an **extension** of something already started: "an extension of the time limit," "They are building an extension to the jetty"; **prom'inence**, the fact of standing out very visibly; a **protuberance**, a swelling: "The protuberance on his head shows where he hit the windshield"; a **spur**, sharp V-shaped elevation, as "the spurs of this hill extend in every direction"; an **em'inence**, a place which stands out and dominates others; a **salient point**, one which juts out; **cape**, land that extends into the sea, more or less in a point; a **headland** or **prom'ontory**, a high cape.
- prōlif'ic**, having much offspring, especially figuratively: a prolific author.—From Latin *proles*, offspring; hence the **prō-lē-tā-rīāt**, or the working classes, whose offspring is their chief asset.
- a** **pro'lōg** or **prōlōgue**, an introductory statement or recitation; in motion picture use, a spectacular act on the stage of the same nature as the film that follows it; a **foreword**, a written introduction to a book, a motion picture, etc.; a **pref'ace**, the author's explanation before presenting his reading matter; a **prē'lūde**, the music "played before" the main theme.
- to** **prolong'** (**prolonging, prolonged, prolongation**); to cause to last longer or to extend further: "prolong one's sufferings," "prolong a pleasure."
- a** **prom'enade** (**prom'ī-nād'**), to **promenade**; social walk for pleasure, to see and be seen; a place especially devoted to such purpose.
- prōm'inent**, that stands out so clearly as to be noticed by all: "a prom'inent landmark," "a prom'inent citizen"; **protru'ding**, standing out when it is intended to be concealed: "The fruit he had stolen protruded from his pockets"; "She has protruding teeth"; **em'inent**, distinguished, but not so conspicuously known as "prominent"; **projecting**, which stands out beyond the main line: "a projecting balcony."
- to** **prom'ise** (**prōm'ising, prōm'ised, a prōm'ise, prōm'issory**). Latin *spondeo, sponsum*; hence to **respond**, promise in return; **espouse**, exchange marriage vows with; a **sponsor**, one who promises for another, who guarantees the other's behavior.—To **agree** to a **prōp'osition**; **accept** a **propō'sal**; **undertake** to achieve a result; **subscribe** to a statement, a creed, promise to abide by it; **swear** loyalty, allē'giance to somebody; **vow solemnly** to be true to a person, a course of conduct; **resolve** to oneself to do or forbear; **contract** with somebody for an exchange of rights and duties; **covenant** (**kūv'enant**) under seal to carry out an agreement; **guarantee** or **warrant** the completion of the agreed terms.
- A **prōm'ise** to marry.....a **betrōthal**, the engagement.
- to** **promote**, literally "move forth" (**promoting, promoted, pro-motion, promoter**), to cause to move in a certain direction.

whether by establishing in a superior position: "to promote an officer," or by giving one's endeavor to secure support: "to promote a company," i.e., to put it on its feet, secure the first capital for it.

**prompt**, acting or done without delay: "He is very prompt in meeting his obligations," "He always makes prompt payment"; **punctual**, who is there at the appointed time; **exact**, without error; **rap'id**, working fast: "a rapid worker."

a **pronoun**, "noun substitute," a word used in place of the name of a thing or person.

**Personal pronouns**: I, me, thou, thee, you, he, him, she, her, it, they, them. **Demon'strative pronouns**: this, that, these, those, this one, that one. **Rel'ative pronouns**: who, whom, whose, which, what, that, as, but (after "none, nothing," etc.). **Interrog'ative pronouns**: who? whom? whose? which? what? **Indef'inite pronouns**: any, every, some, all, none, another, each, either, neither, the other, etc. **Reflexive or re-flective pronouns**: myself, thyself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, yourself, yourselves, themselves, oneself or one's self. **Recip'ocal pronouns** (when considered together, each being separately an indef'inite pronoun): one another, each other, etc.

For model declension of pronouns, see Declension.

**Uses of pronouns.** (1) In order to be perfectly clear, writing must leave no doubt as to the person or object referred to by a pronoun. That person or object is called the **antec'e-dent**, "which goes before." The more closely the pronoun is placed to its antec'e-dent, the clearer the meaning.

This is the **house** (antecedent) **that** (pronoun) I built.

Here is the **man** (antecedent) **whom** (pronoun) you want.

I have a **dog** (antecedent). **He** (pronoun) is called Chin-chin. (2) The pronouns **he**, **she**, **it**, will be taken to refer to the **last named antec'e-dent** when there are several:

"He took the ball and raised his hat and threw it up" (it would refer to the hat, nearest possible antecedent).—"My mother, a dear old lady who is fond of dogs, **whose** house I live in, is coming home soon" (**whose** would refer to the dogs, not to the mother; when referring to the mother, it is necessary to construct the sentence differently: "My mother, a dear old lady who is fond of dogs, **and in whose** house I live . . .").

(3) The pronoun **it** is often indeterminate: "**It** rains" (no-body; but originally it must have been "Jupiter is raining," the god is raining); "**It** is easy to do anything when you know how" (in this case it stands for the entire second part of the sentence, and is used because the real subject, "to do anything when you know how," is too long to place before the verb: "is easy").

(4) Indef'inite reference, i.e., reference to a non-existent antecedent, should be avoided: "**It** says in the paper that we shall have some rain" (Correct: "The paper says . . .").

See All, Any, Both, Each, Every, etc.

to **pronounce** (pronouncing, pronounced, pronounceable; **pronuncia-**

tion, note the sound of the last word: proNUN'- not "-noun-"), literally "to call forth" or make known.—A word is **pronounced** correctly when the syllables are **enunciated** clearly and the proper **intonation** is placed on each syllable. The correct use of words, their choice for effect, and their pronunciation, is called **diction**; the effective use of intonation and gesture, as by a public speaker, is called **el'o-cū'tion** or **or'a'tory**. Good elocution at the service of noble and powerful sentiments is called **el'oquence**.

Read the speech principles in this book under Syllables.

- a proof** (Plural: **proofs**; to **prove**; **proving**; **proved**; **provable**, which can be proved; **prōb'able**, more than likely).

Information tending to prove.....ev'idence.

Indirect evidence .....circumstantial evidence.

Proof of identity.....creden'tials.

Proof of citizenship for traveler....passport.

Opposite of proof.....refutation.

**prōper**. This word has two distinct meanings: (1) **prōp'erty**, ownership: "Let each go to his proper place"; (2) **propri'ety**, conformity to usage: "The use of slang is not proper in serious discussions."

**property**, the fact of owning or the thing owned: **ownership**, possession; **real estate**; **premises**; **assets**; **belongings**; **appurtenances**; **stocks**; **personalty**, goods; **chattels**; **fee**, inherited estate (**fee simple**, **fee tail**).

- to **propose**, put forward, offer, suggest an idea to another person; to **purpose** (per'pūs), intend, to oneself; to **purport**, appear officially.

"I propose that we support the movement for the universal adoption of English" (i.e., I put forward this suggestion for others to accept); "I purpose to write a book about it" (i.e., it is my intention to write a book); "This story purports to have been written in the South Seas" (i.e., it is presented in such a way as to lead people to believe that it was so written).

- a propō'nent**, one who proposes; **prōp'osition**, idea proposed; **propo'sal**, an offer. "His propō'sal to buy the land was not accepted."

**propri'ety**, suitability of an action in certain circumstances: "He very much doubted the propriety of complaining of the service while he was a guest"; **ac'curacy** of a statement, of a measurement, its exact agreement with the original; **dē'cency** of an action affecting morals; **respectability** of a person suspected of being of doubtful morals; **fastid'iousness** of a person who dislikes everything that is not just so; **deco'rum**, respect for appearances: "to observe a proper deco'rum."

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels **ā ē ī ō ū y** as in *mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my*; **ă ă ī ō ū ŷ** as in *mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity*; **ā** as in *father*; **ēr** as in *merry*; **er** as in *mercer*; **ou** as in *loud*; **au** as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (**ā** in *senate*). Consonants: **g** always as in *go*; **th** as in *thief*; **dh** as *th* in *mother*; **ng** as in *sing* or in *singer*; **ng-g** as *ng* in *finger*. See Syllables.

**pros'ody**, the science of making verse, one of the branches of the art of poetry. **Pros'ody** includes the laws of **accent** (stress on a particular syllable), **quantity** (short and long syllables), **meter** (arrangement of syllable-groups in a line according to a definite rhythmic effect), and **versification** (the choice of successive forms of verse to make a whole).

For terms used in **pros'ody**, see **Poetry**.

to **prospect'**, literally "look forth," search for minerals or for hidden values not yet noticed by others; a **pros'pect**, a reasonable expectation of something good; a fine view stretched out before one; in salesmanship, a prospective customer, one "looked forward to" as a future client or customer; a **prospec'tus**, a written or printed description of results anticipated by an undertaking: "a financial prospectus"; **pros-pector**, one who looks for gold.

to **prosper**, flourish increasingly, be happy in one's achievements and earned rewards; **succeed**, reach one's object, not necessarily with any idea of satisfaction in the achievement.—**Pros-per'ity**, **pros'perous**.

**pros'trated** with grief, literally "lying face down"; nervous **pros-tration**, very great loss of vital energy due to overwork or grief.

a **protag'onist**, literally "first to act," the noble champion of a cause.

to **pro'tect** against possible peril; **defend** from actual attack; **guard** in case of danger; **safeguard**, ensure from harm; **preserve** in the condition in which it is; **shield** someone by exposing oneself instead; **champion** a cause; **shelter** a homeless person.—A **protector**; **protec'tive**; **protec'tion**. Politically, **Pro-tection** (written with a capital P) is the system opposed to **Free Trade**. The latter would admit goods free of duty into a country, on the ground that cheaper products benefit the whole country by reducing the cost of living, and in turn enable that country to produce more cheaply in other fields than its competitors. The former, **Protection**, would tax incoming goods to equalize the cost of the article manufactured abroad with that of a similar article manufactured at home. **Tariff Reform**, in U. S., a tendency toward **Free Trade**; in England, a tendency toward **Protection**.

a **prō'test** (noun; accent on first syllable); to **prō-test'** (verb; accent on last syllable), literally "to witness before."

a **Prōt'estant**, a Christian who believes that a man's only authority in matters of religion is his conscience, and that the sufficient source of Christian belief is to be found in the Bible; as opposed to **Roman Cath'olic**, or **Eastern Orthodox**, these believing in the authority of the Church over the individual judgment, and in traditional forms of worship whether or not found in the Bible.—See **Religion**, **Church**, **Bible**.

**proud**, legitimately; **conceited**, illegitimately; **vain**, of a particular talent or possession; **satisfied** that he has enough; **haughty**, having a great sense of his superiority; **ar'rogant**, claiming for himself more than he has a right to, in the way of esteem,

respect, etc.; **presumptuous** (-sum'tū-ūs, NOT -tious), who takes liberties with other people's sense of their own dignity, by assuming an equality they are not willing to concede; **overbearing**, intending to make others feel small; **supercilious**, looking down with contempt, as with half-closed eyelids and tilted chin; **insolent**, actually intending to give offense in word or manner.

Opposites: modest, humble, self-effacing, submissive, bashful, obsequious (excessively ready to oblige).

to **prove** (prōōv). Past tense **proved** (prōōv'd). As an adjective, **proven** is sometimes still used: "What he has proved is now recognized as proven."—Latin *probo*; hence **probable**, which is more than likely; do not confuse with **provable**, which can be proved; a **reprobate**, one who has not stood the proof or test of his mettle. To **demonstrate** the working in detail; **establish** on a firm basis; **verify**, ascertain that it is true; **substantiate**, give detailed proof; **aver**, state as true.

Opposites: to **disprove** a statement, **confute** a false witness, **refute** an allegation.

**provisional** (prō-vī'zhun-al), subject to change when something better is available. "All our lines of separation between the sciences are provisional only and liable to readjustment as knowledge grows." (McDougall.)

**Temporary**, intended to last only a short time, the better thing to take its place being known but not available. "The City has decided to build a temporary wooden bridge, pending an election to vote funds for a permanent structure."

**psych-**. Greek root meaning "soul." Derived forms: **psychology**, **psychic** (sī'kik). See Soul.

**psychic** (sī'kik; in all words of Greek origin beginning with **ps-**, the **p** is silent; compare *psalm*, *pseudo*. The same applies to words beginning with **pt-**, like *pterodactyl*, *Ptolemaic*). Greek *psyche*, the soul, personified as a mortal maiden loved by Cupid; hence **psychology** (sī-kōl'ōjī), the science of the human mind; **psychoanalysis** (usually more conveniently written with a hyphen, which makes the component elements clearer: **psycho-analysis**, and by some without the **o**: **psych-analysis**), the study of the hidden causes of personal behavior, found in the difference between the **conscious** or self-knowing mind, and the **subconscious** or **unconscious** mind, in which latter every sensation ever experienced is supposed to be stored, kept from appearing in the conscious mind by **inhibitions** which, when removed, are believed to remove causes of mental conflict. Psychoanalysis is based on the discoveries of **Freud** (froyt), an Austrian neurologist; hence the name **Freudian**.

Psychology is "the science which aims to give us better understanding and control of the behavior of the organism as a whole," while physiology is the science "which aims to give us better understanding and control of the chemical and physical processes of the various organisms of the body." (McDougall, *Outline of Psychology*, 1923.)



**pūblic**, adjective; literally "of the people, popular"; that which pertains or belongs to the community. Opposite of **private**, which pertains to intimate matters; **personal**, which pertains only to the one individual.—**Pūblicity**, originally "writing on the subject of public law"; later, any kind of writing in the public press; now, unpaid advertising represented as "news items" in the papers. "Publicity is often given free to those who buy advertising space."—To **pūblish** a book, a libel, a statement, make it public; a **pūb'lisher**, **pūb'lishing**, date of **pūblication**.

**pugn-**. Latin root meaning "fist, fight." Derived forms: **pūgnā'cious**, to **impūgn**. See **Fight**.

to **pull**, in an attempt to bring toward the one who is exerting the force, sometimes unsuccessfully; **draw**, succeed in bringing forward a vehicle, a train, etc.; **drag** against resistance, as "drag a sled on the ground"; **lug** something cumbersome, especially figuratively; **tow** a boat, an auto, by means of a tow-rope; **attract** a crowd, cause it to congregate; **allure** a person by emotional inducements; **entice**, lure somebody by persuasion, flattery, usually in a bad sense; **wrench** something away from its firm foundation, with a twisting movement; **tēar** part of a thing, leaving an irregular mark; **pluck** a flower, cut it off with a sudden movement; **jerk** a thing away from a place where it is wedged in.—For synonyms of **pull** out, see **Out**.

the **pulse**, rhythmic beating of the heart as felt in an artery; a **heart-beat**, unit of pulse-count (the normal heart beats from 70 to 75 times a minute); figuratively, what people think: "He has been feeling the pulse of industry throughout the country."

Verb: to **pul'sate**, especially in the figurative sense: "The audience was pulsating with emotion"; a **pulsation**.

a **pumpkin** (pump'kin; humorously and colloquially: pung'kin). This word comes from the old French pompon, a melon. The word pompon is now used in a different sense and re-Anglicized as pompom or ponpon.

**punctuation** marks indicate the rise or fall of the voice:

- , Shortest pause signal, known as a comma.
- ; Longer pause signal, known as a semi-colon.
- . Longest pause signal, known as a period.
- : "As follows" sign, requiring a longer pause than a period, and known as a colon.
- ! Screamer, known as an exclamation mark.
- ? Uncertainty sign, known as a question mark.
- Continuation sign, known as a dash.
- ( ) Interruption signs known as parentheses.
- [ ] Intrusion signs, known as brackets.
- " " Voice signs, known as quotation marks.

to **pūnish** (pūn'ish), correct somebody by inflicting pain or a loss, as the result of a wrong action; **chastise** somebody for an offense with a whip or rod; **castigate** especially in words, with sharp criticism; **pē'nalize** somebody, cause him to lose an advantage.—A **pūnishment**; **pen'alty**; **chas'tisement**; **castiga-**

**tion**; **discipline**, orderly restraint; **ret'ribū'tion**, deserved punishment in return for a wrong; **revenge** inflicted in a spirit of personal enmity.—Adjective: **punishable**, which may be punished: "This offense is punishable by a fine or by imprisonment"; **pū'nitive**, intended as a means of effecting punishment: "a pū'nitive expedition against the marauding tribes"; **painful**, which causes pain.

**pūre**, adjective (**pū'rity**; **pūrely**; to **pū'rify**; a **pū'rist**, one who is excessively particular about purity of style; a **Pā'ritan**, one who is excessively particular about other people's morals, also the name of a former religious sect).—Free from inferior or added material: "pure food," "chemically pure"; free from low motives: "a pure soul." **Clean**, not containing defiling material; **sound**, good throughout; **natural**, not containing other products added in the course of handling: "a natural sparkling wine"; **undefiled**, **unsullied**, poetic: "the faith undefiled"; **unalloyed**, **unadulterated**; **ab'solute** truth; **innocent**, not having been corrupted by knowledge of evil; **ingē'nuous** (do not confuse with ingē'nious, clever), not looking for evil motives in others; **chaste**, having preserved himself from material desires; **virtuous** (ver'tū-ūs), actively engaged in good works and from noble motives; **sincēre**, wearing no mask; **Simon pure**.

a **pur'pose**, the reasoned object behind an action; **pur'port**, the meaning and intent as understood: "The purport of this clause is to reduce accidents, but it is far from clear"; the **tēnor** of a document, its meaning correctly understood: "The tenor of this clause is that speed shall not be considered in deciding the right of way"; the **aim** at which one shoots as straight as possible; an **object** to be reached or grasped; an **objective**, to be reached eventually; an **aspiration**, a noble aim; a **desire**, impulse to get something; an **intention**, general movement of desire without the urge of immediate satisfaction; a **goal** (gōl), objective; a **plan**, arrangement of details; a **prōj'ect**, the first plan of a future action.

to **pursue** (per-sū'), "follow forward," from the same Latin word as **per'secute** and **pros'ecute**. To continue after a thing or person with great attention: "to pursue knowledge," "to pursue a criminal."—Nouns: **pursuit**, the act of pursuing; a **pursuer**, one who goes after (these two words have an idea of speed in them).—Adverb: **pursuant** to an Act of Parliament, etc., in agreement with its provisions.

to **push** from behind, with the exertion of physical effort; **drive**, cause to go forward through fear of the whip or other punishment; **press**, keep closely after one who is already going as fast as he can; **propél** by means of a special device; **shove** (shŭv), push along a surface; **advance**, gain ground; **pursue** an enemy, keep relentlessly after him; **thrust** an object suddenly through something; **impél** one to action: "His love of the sea impelled him to make one more trip"; **punch** somebody with the fist; **poke** a finger into something which should not be touched; **prod** somebody to action with a sharp instru-

ment or stick; **pry** into somebody's affairs as by "lifting up" the lid of secrecy.

- to **put** (Past tense: **put**; present participle: **putting**), to move a thing to a new position, generally one of rest; to **place** in proper order among others; to **set** in a place where it is intended to remain; to **arrange** according to a plan; to **lay down** a flat object, horizontally.

To put off ..... See Procrastinate.

To put off punishment.....reprieve the prisoner.

To put up money.....to find, supply, provide, guarantee.

To put up with something.....to tol'erate, bear, suffer.

Which cannot be put up with.....intol'erable, unbearable.

To put away.....remove, transfer, divorce.

- a **puzzle** (this word is derived from "opposal," an interrogation), a perplexing problem, one almost impossible of solution; a **riddle**, a problem requiring much ingenuity in its solution, the result often being known in advance to the one who propounds it; an **enigma**, an "obscure saying," also used for a person of mysterious purpose who talks very little; a **conundrum**, a simple question based on the twisting of some words or on a misunderstanding deliberately brought about; a **paradox**, statement which appears to contradict what everybody knows, but which may be perfectly true and sound.

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels *ā ē ī ō ū ŷ* as in *mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my*; *ă ă ĩ ă ŭ ŷ* as in *mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity*; *ā* as in *father*; *ēr* as in *merry*; *er* as in *mercer*; *ou* as in *loud*; *au* as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ā* in *senate*). Consonants: *g* always as in *go*; *th* as in *thief*; *dh* as *th* in *mother*; *ng* as in *sing* or in *singer*; *ng-g* as *ng* in *finger*. See *Syllables*.

## Q

- a **quack**, an ig'norant person who pretends to effect wonderful cures; a **fäker** (no connection with the Indian fäkir), anybody who uses tricky methods and promises more than can be done; a **char'latan**, a pretentious faker; a **moun'tebank**, a vendor of cure-all medicines at county fairs, etc.
- a **quail** (Plural quails or quail; a covey of quail).
- a **quality** (kwol'iti), literally a "suchness" or the fact of being such and such, any distinguishing feature, without any idea of good or bad. (By an inverse process of the one applied to the word "health," which originally meant "being well" and now simply means "being" either well or badly, the word "quality," which originally meant "being," is now popularly understood to mean "being good." This popular idea disregards the psychological fact that the same character may be a quality in certain circumstances and a fault in others—a fact which is at the very basis of the art of fiction-writing.)

### Some words used on this subject

Duty, honor, dignity, morality, innocence, piety, order, punctuality, regularity, cleanliness, prudence, foresight, faithfulness, constancy, honesty, probity, straightforwardness, integrity, truthfulness, sincerity, candor, artlessness, modesty, humility, activity, perseverance, moderation, respectability, thrift, economy, goodness, gentleness, justice, gratitude, politeness, kindness, patience, indulgence, tolerance, secrecy, discretion, generosity, benevolence, good office, benefactor, benefactress, pity, mercy, clemency, charity, commiseration, compassion, tact, diplomacy, cheerfulness, hopefulness, mirth, stick-to-itiveness.

- a **quarrel** in words; a **disagreement** on principles; a polite **dissension** from somebody's views; a **dispute**, with heated words; a **contention**, strong effort to win; a **wrangle**, each side trying to "wrench" its point from the other; an **altercation**, sharp words between two or more; a **squabble**, undignified and petty; a **row** (rou), noisy; a **brawl**, very rough; a **scrap** (slang); a **scene**, involving loss of social self-restraint; a **breach** of étiquette; an **estrangement** between friends; a **feud** (fūd), grievance carried through successive years or generations.
- queer**, adjective; literally "oblique," not straight: "a queer sensation"; **odd**, not mated: "an odd glove," also not like any other: "an odd idea"; **stränge**, entirely new in appearance: "A strange mal'ady"; **pecū'liar**, which belongs to one personally: "A pecū'liar nose"; **quaint**, old-fashioned and curious: "a quaint old tower"; **cū'rious**, strangely novel and interesting, owing to skillful construction: "a curious inven-

tion"; **singular**, alone of its kind: "a singular habit"; **erratic** person or idea, showing lack of mental balance; **eccentric**, unconventional: "He conceived the eccentric idea of writing his name without a capital letter"; **bizarre** (bē-zar', French), which achieves results in a roundabout way or by extraordinary means: "She wore a bizarre waist with a snake pattern"; **grotesque** (grō-tesk'), distorted in its conception yet producing a pleasing surprise: "The gargoyles of Notre Dame, in Paris, are an example of the grotesque in architecture"; **droll** person or idea, ingeniously amusing: "a droll remark"; **funny**, which causes one to laugh.

Something queer.....an anomaly.

**ques-**. Anglicized form of the Latin root **quæ-**, meaning "to seek." Derived forms: **question**, **request**. See **Seek**.

- a **question** to be answered; a **quēry**, expression of doubt, which may or may not call for an answer; a **request** for help; an **inquiry** for information, made in good faith.

**Begging the question**, trying to prove a case by taking for granted premises that are included in the subject in dispute: "One cannot sell books to people who cannot read" is a statement that begs the question, because it has not been proved that all books are bought exclusively for the purpose of being read. They may be bought for the pictures they contain or as table ornaments.

See **Ask**.

**question mark**, or Note of Interrogation (?).

The question mark is used: (1) after a direct question embodied in a sentence: "Will you go?"

(2) When a doubt is expressed by the voice as to the form or meaning of a fact or word: "War was declared in 1842 (?)."

(3) After the question part of a compound sentence: "He said, 'Will you go?'" (Note that the question mark is INSIDE the quotation marks that belong to that quotation. If the question is contained in the first part of the sentence, the question mark goes at the end of the whole sentence: "Did he say, 'I will go?'" If both parts of the sentence are questions, use only one question mark, outside the last question: "Did he say, 'Will you go?'" )

**quick**, adjective, literally "alive," as in "the quick and the dead." Latin *celer*; hence **celerity**, quickness in responding to a call, etc.; **accelerate**, go quicker and quicker.—**Fast**, literally "steadily"; hence "to run fast," run at a steady pace; **rapid**, literally "seizing, snatching," a rapid motion; **ready wit**; **fluent** in speech; **nimble** in limb; **speedy** in decision; **lively** disposition; **hot-tempered**, **irascible**, readily angered; **agile**, who moves readily.

**quiet** (kwī'ēt, two syllables; not like **quite**, one syllable), in a state of repose; **silent**, not speaking; **still**, not moving; **tranquil** by temperament, unruffled: "the tranquil waters of a Southern lake"; **motionless**; **placid** disposition; **peaceful** mood; **calm** attitude, sea; **tacit** agreement, not expressed in

## Questions and Answers.

TABLE OF SIMPLE QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

	PLACE			TIME	PERSON	THING	MANNER	KIND	CAUSE	QUANTITY	NUMBER
	At	From	To								
Question: (wh, h)	where?	whence?	whither?	when?	who?	what?	how?	which? what?	why?	how much?	how many?
Answer: Near (h)	here	hence	hither	now	he, she, it, they, this one	this	so; this way	this	because; for this reason	this much	this many
Answer: Far (th)	there	thence	thither	then	that one	that	thus	such	because; for that reason	so much	so many
Answer: indefinite positive	somewhere	from somewhere	somewhere	sometime	somebody; someone	something	somehow	some kind	for some reason	some	some
Answer: indefinite, negative or interrogative	anywhere	from anywhere	anywhere	any time	anybody; anyone	anything	anyhow; anyway	any kind	for any reason	any	any
Answer: universal	everywhere	from everywhere	everywhere	ever; always	everybody; everyone	everything; all	in every way	every kind	for every reason	all; the whole	all
Answer: negative	nowhere	from nowhere	nowhere	never	nobody; no one	nothing; none	nowhow; in no way	no kind; none	for no reason	none	none

words; **reticent**, not inclined to tell much; **unruffled** countenance.

**quite** (kwit, one syllable).—Completely, truly, entirely. “It is quite good.” In addition to this use, there is a colloquial and idiomatic American use of the word, to mean “more than”: “This is quite a town” (more than an ordinary town); “The Oxford Dictionary is quite a book” (more than a book; it is ten large volumes). “Quite a few people think so” (more than a few people; see Many). “The excretion of these pores contains a large proportion of water . . . and quite a quantity of inorganic salts.” (J. A. Larson, Single Fingerprint System, 1924.)

It is never right, however, to say “quite dead,” because there are no degrees in death.

to **quiver** along the length of a cord or muscle; **vibrate** in response to an imparted motion; **shake** suddenly and violently; **pulsate**, breathe more quickly; **shiver** from physical cold or fear; **shudder** at the thought of a peril; **quake** in a mass; **chatter** as a pane of glass, vibrate rapidly.

**quotation marks** (“ ”) are used: (1) When a person’s actual words are repeated:—

He said to me, “I am coming with you.”

I said, “Why are you coming?”

He asked, “Why should I not come?”

(2) When a word is used which is not accepted as being of the same tone or nature as the rest of the writing. This applies to new words, slang, peculiar idioms, and ways of speaking which are strictly individual:—

The word “brunch” means a breakfast-lunch.

He called himself a “man of affairs.”

(3) When quoting an author’s words, or the name of a book, poem, article, ship, or in giving the translation of a word:—

My favorite picture is “The Song of the Lark.”

Quotation marks are NOT used in indirect quotations: He asked if you would go. (NOT: He asked “if you would go.”)

As to punctuation with quotation marks, usage varies. The Oxford authorities insist that the quotation marks are to be placed according to sense, as: He said, “I can”. (Note the period **after** the quotation mark, because the period refers to the whole sentence and not to “I can” only.) Some American authorities, on the other hand, prefer to place the period always **inside** the quotation marks, as: He said, “I can.” This last usage is contrary to the meaning of the sentence.

When a sentence ends in a quotation mark after a **question mark**, no period is used at the end: He said, “Are you coming?” (no period).

## R

**ră.** Sound heard in rain (storm), reign (king's), reins (horses), reindeer, to raise (lift up), to raze (shave off).

**ră.** Sound heard in wrap (envelop), rap (knock), rhapsody.

**răbbit.** In the sense of "a toasted cheese sandwich," **Welsh rabbit** is quite correct, meaning "a rabbit that is not one," like **German silver** or **French leave**.

There is as much rabbit in a Welsh rabbit as nut in a dough-nut, moccasin as in a water moccasin, crab in a crab apple, pig in a guinea pig, or man in a man-of-war. The phrase "Welsh rarebit" is a fabrication based on ignorance.

**a race** of people. Greek *ethnos*; hence *ethnôlogy*, study of human races; *eth'nic*, pertaining to the race.—A group of the same distinctive origin and having common physical features. "The Aryan (*ăryan*) or Indo-European race includes the Latin, Anglo-Saxon, Armenian, Hindoo, Russian, Greek, and Persian races.—A *nâtion*, people with common objects, occupying a common territory; a *trîbe*, organized family group; a *clan* (Scottish); a *fam'ily*, near relatives; a *breed* of horses, dogs, etc.; a *stock*, the characters of a particular ancestry: "He is of sturdy stock"; a *strain*, characters found mixed with others: "These Leghorn pullets have a strain of Buff Orpington in them."

See Class.

**to raise** (*raising*; Past tense, *raised*). To bring to a higher place; lift something heavy; hoist by mechanical device; erect a barrier; build or construct a dam, a wall, etc.; set up standards; breed animals; bring up or rear children; grow vegetables; excite comment; stimulate enthusiasm; brighten hopes.

This word **raise** has no connection with the verb **to raze**, meaning "tear down, shave off."

See Rise.

**rarebit.** An ignoranism for "rabbit." "Welsh rabbit" is quite correct. "A rare bit," however, may be used to mean "a delicacy" of any kind.

See Rabbit.

**rē.** Sound heard in Rhênish (of the Rhine), rhēostat (electrical).

**rē.** Sound heard in wreck, wren (bird), rhētoric, read (book one has gone over), red (color).

**to reach** a place, an objective; **attain** a worthy aim; **achieve**, "bring to a head" a difficult result; **accomplish**, fulfill; **obtain** after

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels *ă* *ĕ* *ĭ* *ĕ* *ŭ* *ŭ* *ŭ* as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; *â* *ĕ* *ĭ* *ĕ* *ŭ* *ŭ* as in mat, met, mit, not, nut, pity; *â* as in father; *ê* as in merry; *er* as in mercur; *ou* as in loud; *au* as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ă* in senate). Consonants: *g* always as in go; *th* as in thief; *dh* as *th* in mother; *ng* as in sing or in singer; *ng-g* as *ng* in finger. See Syllables.



overcoming obstacles; **consummate**, bring past the last stage, a deed, etc.; **secure**, become safely possessed of.

Easy to reach.....accessible.

Difficult to reach.....inaccessible.

to **read** (rēd), (Past tense **rēad**).—From Anglo-Saxon *raedan*, to interpret. Latin *lego*, *lectum*; hence **lëgible** (lëj'ibl), which can be read; **illegible**, difficult to read; a **lectern**, reading pulpit; a **lecture**, public reading or talk.

Art of reading aloud.....ëlôcūtion.

**ready** (rēd'ī); **readier**, **readiest**; **readily**. This word indicates eagerness, promptness, as well as completion for a purpose: "I am ready to help you" (the moment you accept); **prepared**, set rather elaborately, but with an idea of waiting: "A room was prepared in case of need"; **available**, which can be used without notice; **willing** person, ever anxious to oblige; **fluent** speech; **quick** temper; **prompt** decision; **speedy** process; **nimble** fingers; **ägilë** creature, one that moves very rapidly, as a monkey; **in suspense** (adverbial phrase), as an account not settled; **in abeyance** (adverbial phrase), as a decision not finally made.

**real** (rē'ül), literally "which is the thing itself" from Latin *res*, thing; hence the legal word *re*, "in the matter of"; a **rëbus**, a puzzle consisting of pictures of objects that stand for parts of a word.—**Actual**, now carried out, now existing; **gën'üine**, of undoubtedly pure origin, not an imitation; **concrëte** statement or example, based on facts.

**reason**. Latin *ratio*, "a judgment" or estimate of quantity or value; hence **rätional**, which accords with reason. (This root is connected with Latin *ratus*, a rate; whence the **rätio** or proportion of one number to another; an army **rätion**; a **rätting**). French *raison*; hence the **raison d'être**, "the reason for being" or the very essence of an institution.—Ground for a belief; **mötive** for an action, that which strongly tends to induce one to act; **cause** of a phenomenon, that which makes it happen; **occasion** for doing something; **bäsis** of an argument; **foundation** on which a belief rests firmly.

Which sounds true.....plausible (adjective).

Not according to reason.....irrätional (adjective).

One who believes in reason as a guide

and not in Revelation.....a rätionalist.

to **recëive** (receiving, received, receivable), to get, through delivery by someone; **accept** willingly something offered; **admit** the truth of a statement, without implying guilt; **allow** somebody to come in; **recognize** a custom; **experience** a feeling.

"If you receive a present by mail, but do not wish to accept it, you return it to the sender."

a **rec'ompense**, literally, a "giving back weight for weight," an equivalent return, generally used with an idea of appreciative payment for services: "The employees of the Post Office De-

partment should receive adequate recompense," i.e., not only pay but a form of appreciation as well: "To see one's daughter well married is sufficient recompense for the time and money expended on her education"; **reward**, gift for a service: "The finder of the purse will receive a suitable reward"; **payment**, handing over of money whether due or not; **compensation**, payment for loss of ability to gain: "The Workmen's Compensation Law"; an **indemnity**, payment for loss of property, etc.: "The Powers demanded an indemnity from China for the losses sustained during the rebellion"; an **award**, a decision by an arbitral court giving one party the right to an amount or object in dispute, also the object so awarded; **amends**, compensation with an apology for loss negligently or wilfully caused; **remuneration**, repayment of loss of time or money sustained on one's behalf; **retribution**, payment extorted or punishment inflicted in return for an evil act; **satisfaction**, sufficient recompense for a wrong, whether apologies, or money, or both: "Having heard through gossip of the false allegations by his enemy, the colonel demanded satisfaction on the field of honor" (i.e., by fighting a duel).

- a **rec'ord** (noun, accent on first syllable); to **record** (verb, accent on last syllable); literally a "bringing back to heart" or to memory.—A permanent document as to certain facts; a **mem'oran'dum**, a written statement of something to be remembered; a **note**, brief statement in writing; an **account**, a detailed statement, whether orally or in writing; the **evidence**, the facts presented by witnesses, or various objects connected with the event and which tend to prove something; the **proceedings** of a club; a journal **entry**; an **item** of account stated in a proper account book.

**rect.** Latin root meaning "upright, rule." Derived forms: **rec'titude**, **rector**, **direct**. See **Right**.

**red**, **carmine** (-mĭn or -mĭn), **scarlet** (a bright red), **crimson** (deep bluish red). Latin *rubeo*, to be red; hence **ru'bicund** or **rosy** face; a **ruby**, red stone. Greek *eruthros*; hence **erysip'elas**, skin inflammation.

Reddish (complexion) ..... **flōrid**.

- a **redun'dant** verb, one which has a choice of forms: **hanged**, **hung**. See **Verb**.
- to **refer**, **referring**, **referred**, a **ref'ERENCE**, a **ref'eree**, a **referen'dum**.
- to **regard**; kind regards (plural); **in regard** to (singular), in respect of; as regards (verb with an s); **regarding**, concerning.—**Regard** for somebody, a conventional high opinion, as between equals; **esteem**, friendliness and high opinion, especially toward an inferior; **respect**, high opinion, generally of a superior, often without actively friendly emotions.
- to **register** (rĕj'ister), a **rĕgister**, person or book in which a systematic record is kept, the person more commonly called the **registrar**; a **rĕgistry** office for servants; **Lloyd's Register**, a list of the ships of all nations for marine insurance purposes;

the registration of voters before election.—In motion picture parlance, to **register** is to express emotions on the screen in such a way that the spectators feel the same emotions through the mechanism of imitative facial adaptation.

**reign** of a king. Remember the **g** in it by “regular, regulate,” which also refer to ruling. Do not confuse with **rein** (for a horse).

**a relation**, literally “that which bears back”; any kind of connection, as between two ideas that are **relā'ted** or have something in common, or between **rēl'ā'tives**, members of the same family directly or by marriage.—A **connection**, the link which relates; **kinship**, the fact of being kin or members of the same family; **blood**, figuratively, the relationship between people of the same family or **rācial** origin.

**a rel'ative**. In Grammar, a word that establishes a relation. The relative pronouns are **who**, **whom**, **which**, **that**, **what**; also sometimes **as** and **but**. Every relative must have an **antecē'dent**, a word to which it refers: “My **father** (antecedent), **who** (relative) left home yesterday, will return today.” “**Such** (antecedent, i.e., those people) **as** (relative, i.e., who) wish to enter are welcome.”—In these examples the relative joins or relates two sentences: My father will return, my father left home. Those are welcome; they may enter.

The relative pronoun should always be placed very close to its antecē'dent, to avoid loss of continuity of thought.

**religion** (re-lī'jyūn), literally “that which binds back” man to God; **relig'ious**, adjective.—This word has no connection with **sac'rilegious**, “disrespectful of sacred things.”—See Church, Bible, Qualities, Faults.

### Some words used on this subject

**Thē'ism** (belief in God, in general); **pan'thēism** (belief that all Nature is God), **pol'ythēism** (belief in many gods), **mon'othēism** (belief in one God), **ā'thēism** (belief in no God); **pā'ganism** (religion of heathens, superstitious beliefs), **idol'atry** (worship of idols). **Jū'daism** (religion of the Jews), **Christian'ity**, **Islam** or **Moham'medanism**. **Prim'itive Christianity**, **Orthodox Church** (Greek, Russian, Eastern), **Catholic** or **Roman Catholic**, **Ang'lican** (Episcopal), **Prot'estant**, **Evangel'ical**, **Lu'theran**, **Cal'vinis'tic**, **Presbyte'rian**, **Bap'tist**, **Meth'odist**, **Wes'leyan**, **Con'grega'tionalist**, **Unitā'rian**, **Quāk'ers** or **Friends**, **An'abap'tists**, **Seventh-day Ad'ventists**, **Christian Sci'ence**, **New Thought**, **Thēōs'ophy**; **Lib'eralism**, **Fundamen'talism**, **Mod'ernism**; **Mormonism**.

**a rem'edy**, from Latin *medeor*, to heal; hence **mēd'ical**, **mēd'icīne**, etc. Greek *pharmakon*; hence **phar'mācy**, place where remedies are sold; **phar'mācist**, a skilled dispenser of drugs; **pharmaceutic**, pertaining to the preparation of drugs; **phar-macop'oisia**, the catalog of drugs used in medicine.—A **rēm'edy** is a means of treatment expected to be effective; a **cure**, the actual effect of a successful treatment, or a treatment which is supposedly certain to be effective; a **nōstrum**, a secret or

quack medicine; a **păn'acē'a**, a cure-all; an **elix'ir**, a sweet liquid preparation of a medicine; an **an'tidote**, a counter-poison.

- to **remem'ber**, remembering, remembrance (without the -e- after b); to **recollect** something after "collecting" one's thoughts; **re-call** something, call back; **rem'inisce** (colloq.), allow one's memories to come back; **remind** somebody of something, cause him to remember.—A **mem'ory**, a **rém'inis'cence**.
- to **remove** (removing, removed, removal), to take away; **elim'inate** as unsuitable, by failing to include it; **clear away** rubbish; **transfer** from one owner to another; **transport** across a distance; **shift** an object along a surface; **change** by making different in any way; **extract** a tooth; **abstract** a document from a collection, steal it; **purloin** small change, etc., take it unlawfully; **discharge** an employee; **expel** by force; **abolish** a nuisance; **recall** an ambassador.
- a **rendezvous** (rân-dă-vōō), literally "betake yourself there," especially in a personal sense or secretly, speaking of either the place or the act; an **appointment**, a set time for a meeting of any nature; a **meeting place**; a **trÿst** or **trÿsting place**, poetic. "I have a rendezvous at seven"; "Paris is the rendezvous of Europe."
- to **renew** (rĭ-nū), **renewing**, renewed, a **renew'al**; to start a thing again; "renew an acquaintance," "renew a subscription"; **ren'ōvāte**, cause to appear new again; **restore** as it was; **re-place** where it was; **refresh** one's memory; **repaint**; **repair** something partly damaged; **revive** a color; **refurbish** something, scour it until it shines; **regén'erate** character.
- to **repair'**, **rep'arā'tion**, **rep'arable**, **irrep'arable** (note the accent).
- to **repeat**, literally "seek again," do again; a **rep'eti'tion**, doing the same thing again; a **rehearsal** (rĕ-her'sal), repetition of a play or spectacle in preparation for the event; **tautol'ogy**, repetition of the same statement: "The phrase 'quite dead' is tautological."
- a **rep'ertory** or (French form) **rep'ertoire** (-twâr), a set of plays, songs, etc., which a person or a company is prepared to perform at short notice: "a repertoire theater"; the assortment from which the material for an entertainment is drawn: "She has a large repertoire."
- a **reproof**, to **reprove** (like **proof**, to **prove**), personally expressed blame, in firm but kind words; a **rebuke**, gentle; a **rebuff**, abrupt refusal combined with unflattering reasons; **rep'ri-mand** by a superior; **censure** by a moral judge; **criticism** purporting to judge impartially, but often construed by the recipient as **censure**; **reproach** for neglect of duty; **blame** for lack of judgment or courage; **scolding**, noisy fault-finding.
- rĕputation**, the opinion held by others as to a person's character; **char'acter**, a person's real value, regardless of the appraisal of others; **fame**, widespread good reputation.
- to **reside** (rĕ-zid'), **residing**, a **rĕs'ident**, **rĕs'idence**; **rĕs'iden'tial** district.—To **reside** in a place is to have one's official domicile

there; to **abide** in a place, stay there continuously; **dwell** in a place, remain there steadily; **inhabit** a country; **lodge** by the night or by the week in a house; **sōjourn** temporarily.

**respect** for a person, "looking up to" a superior person; **deference**, "giving way to"; **esteem**, high and affectionate thought; **regard**, formal, as between equals; **rēv'ence**, deeply seated respect and awe; **submission**, placing one's judgment under; **honor**, recognition of character. "To present one's respects to a person."

We have **respect** for those we consider our superiors and **regard** for our equals. We **defer** to superior judgment, and we **submit** to a certain kind of treatment from those we consider superior, which we would not **tolerate** from equals or inferiors.

In respect of.....as regards, in regard to.

to **restrain** somebody from giving free rein to his passions: "The law imposes many restraints upon civilized people"; **refrain** from doing something oneself, prevent oneself through self-control; **constrain** somebody to obey, by moral force or fear of punishment; **check** the progress of an undesirable action; **suppress** something dangerous; **repress** an emotion; **hinder**, make more difficult; **block** one's path, one's progress, by placing an object in the path; **foil** a plot or the plotters; **frustrate** a design or a person in an attempt to get something; **deter** somebody from doing something, by making him change his mind through fear; **arrest** temporarily.

**rē'tro** or **rēt'ro**. Latin prefix meaning backward; **rē'tro-act-ive**, which operates on past as well as on future conditions, as by inflicting a penalty.

to **return**, go back; **recede**, step back; **retreat** before a pursuing enemy. (In the sense of "give back") **restore** to its rightful place or owner; **replace** a thing lost by supplying another; **refund** money advanced; **reimburse** somebody for an advance of money; **re'compense** somebody for something done; **reinstate** somebody in a position of which he has been deprived.

a **revenge** from personal feeling; **vindication** of a claim, from a sense of duty.—To **revenge** oneself on somebody for something; to **avenge** a wrong, in the name of justice.

See Punish.

to **rev're**, respect and love as an aged statesman, a sacred memory.—**Rev'ring**, **rev'red**; **rev'erent**, marked by an attitude of **rev'ence**; **rev'rend** (final d), a person "worthy of reverence," now used as a title for clergymen: "The Reverend So-and-So," abbreviated (without "the"): "Rev. So-and-So."

See Respect.

a **revi'val**, "making alive again"; **restoration** of a thing to its rightful place; **recovery** of lost goods or lost health; **renas'cence**,

---

Pronunciation key. Vowels **ā ī ō ū** as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; **ē ē ī ē ū** as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; **ā** as in father; **ēr** as in merry; **er** as in mercer; **ou** as in loud; **au** as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (**ā** in senate). Consonants: **g** always as in go; **th** as in thief; **dh** as **th** in mother; **ng** as in sing or in singer; **ng-g** as **ng** in anger. See Syllables.

new birth of a long-forgotten thing; **rekindling** of strong passion; **resurrection** from the dead.

to **revoke** (literally "call back"), revoking, revoked, **rĕv'ocable** (note the accent).—To **revoke** a permit; **cancel** an arrangement; **annul** a decision, as by a superior authority; **abrogate** a law; **abolish** an institution; **expunge** an entry from a record; **quash** a decision, arbitrarily; **rĕscind** a previous decision by the same body, temporarily; **void** a privilege automatically by abusing it.

**rhetoric** (rĕt'o-rik), the art of convincing discourse, the art of writing and speaking effectively.—From Greek rhetor, a public speaker; hence **rhetorical**, done with an eye to effect in speech: "rhetorical sentences," elegant and often insincere; a **rhetorician** (rĕt-o-rĭ'shan), one versed in the subtleties of public oratory and convincing discourse.

**Rhetoric** is based on **Grammar**, or the common rules of intelligible construction of ideas into sentences, which Rhetoric uses with artistic freedom and not merely with mechanical effect; on **Logic**, or the science of reasoning; on **Ethics**, or the knowledge of right and wrong in the purpose to be attained; and on **Esthetics**, or the somewhat ill-defined and arbitrary art of producing beautiful effects.

**Rhetoric** uses the following means (some of which overlap) among many that can be classified:

(1) **Selection** of a theme or subject of which one aspect will be featured, from one point of view, creating **Unity**.

(2) **Elimination** of all themes or subjects not directly related to the selected theme, and of all aspects of the main theme which are unimportant.

(3) **Co-ordination** of all the facts that will assist in presenting the theme according to an orderly plan, creating **Coherence**.

(4) **Subordination** of the facts selected, so that they may help bring out the one main purpose, without themselves attracting attention. Subordinated facts may produce **motivation**, i.e., reasons for people's actions, or **characterization**, i.e., direct ways of making people appear real.

(5) **Exposition**, or the clear statement of ideas to be developed.

(6) **Argumentation**, or the systematic attempt to convince.

(7) **Narration**, or the record of events, real or imaginary, making use of suspense and climax.

(8) **Description**, or the attempt to make the reader or listener feel certain emotions in terms of the senses.

See **Figures of Speech**, **Motivation**, **Characterization**, **Suspense**, **Climax**.

**rhyme**. See **Rime**.

a **rhythm** (rĭdh-m), the regular recurrence of a certain stress, as in poetry, oratory, or good prose, time being the basis of rhythm.—**Mĕter**, the orderly arrangement of rhythm in poetry, by means of verses, etc.; a **cădence**, literally "fall," of the voice, of footsteps, musical beat; a **swing**, the free

movement of a voice or sentence that seems to have smooth ups and downs.

Contracted rhythm.....syncopation.

**ri-**. Sound heard in right (correct), rite (ceremony), Rhine, Rheingold, rhinoceros, rhyme or rime (poetry).

**ri-**. Sound heard in rhythm, written.

**rich**, adjective, abounding in wealth or quality; **prosperous** person, institution, country, enjoying a season of well-being; **wealthy**, having a store of worldly goods, partly undeveloped; **moneyed**, having money; **op'ulent**, rolling in displayed riches; "op'ulent Eastern rulers"; **well-to-do**, having enough money to live without worry.

Rich people: **Society** (with capital S), those who entertain much; the **élite**, the "selected ones"; the **beau monde** (bō-mongd), the "fashionable world."

Speaking of things: **lux'urious** surroundings; **lux'uriant** vegetation; **productive** undertakings; **fat** food; "a rich cake."

—Speaking of the voice: **mel'odious**, pleasing; deep, from the chest; harmonious, musical.

**rid-, ris-**. Latin root meaning "to laugh." Derived forms: **rid'ic'ule**, to deride, **ris'ible**, **der'ision**. See Laugh.

to **ride**. Past tense: **rode**. "Yesterday I rode"; past participle: **ridden**. "I have never ridden this horse."

**right** (adjective).—Latin *rectus*, "straight"; hence **rec'titude**, uprightness in principles and conduct; to **rectify** an error; **rectangle**, a figure with right angles; **rector**, the person who directs the activities of a parish. In the sense of "right hand," Latin *dexter*; hence **dextér'ity**, skill; **ambidex'trous**, "having two right hands," able to use both hands with equal facility. Greek *orthos*; hence **orthōg'rāphy**, right spelling; **orthōphōn'ic**, which reproduces the voice rightly; **orthodox**, which professes the right doctrine.—**Correct**, in accordance with the model; **prōper**, in accordance with expectations; **suitable**, made to agree; **équitable**, in good justice; **lawful**, legal, permitted by law; **just** to all concerned; **éth'ical**, according to the moral code; **legit'imate**, according to custom; **gên'úine**, of rightful origin; **deco'rous**, according to the proprieties; **expédient**, according to present desirability or necessity; **appro'priate** to the occasion; **categor'ical** statement, absolutely right.

To set right.....to redress (a wrong), correct (an error), rectify (a wrong delivery, etc.).

One who wants everything

right in all details.....a punctil'ious person.

a **right**, a just claim; a **priv'ilege** conferred privately and not applying equally to others; an **advan'tage**, a point in one's favor; a **prerōg'ative**, a right attaching to an office in virtue of itself: "the right to pardon criminals is part of the royal prerōg'ative"; a **fran'chise**, the privilege to do a certain thing not

generally allowed, as "the street car franchise of this city," i.e., the exclusive right to lay tracks in certain streets and to operate cars on them; an **exemption** from common duty; **immūnity** from a threatened peril, tax, arrest, etc.

To restore to rights.....rehabilitate a convict.  
The right to occupy land.....tēnūre.

- a rime** (a better spelling than **rhyme**, which is based on a false etymology). In Poetry, the likeness of the final syllables of successive or alternating verses. Rime is not poetry but a mechanical feature often mistaken for poetry. See Poetry. An **identical rime**, no longer permissible in English, is one in which two words of same sound but different spellings are rimed: pair, pear. A **masculine rime** is one in which a single final syllable rimes with another single final syllable: pair, fair; repair, compare. A **feminine rime** is one in which the stressed syllable, and an unstressed syllable that follows it, rime with a similar stressed syllable followed by an unstressed syllable: curious, furious (accented syllables CU-, FU-, followed by unaccented -rious). A **triple or multiple rime** is one in which the stressed syllable is followed by two, or possibly more, unstressed syllables: temER'ity, sever'ity. Poetry without rime, written in iambic pentameter, is called **blank verse**. It consists of five "feet," each having one short or unstressed and one long or stressed syllable:

Of Man's / first dis/obe/dience and / the fruit /  
Of that / forbid/den tree / whose mor'tal taste /  
Brought death / into / the world / and all / our woe /  
Sing Heav/enly Muse.

- a ring**, a narrow circular object with a large opening, made to go round something; a **circle**, geometrical; a **hālo** round somebody's head; a **nimbus** of glory; a **disc**, flat and without an opening.

To make a ring around.....to surround, circle, encircle.

- to ring**. Past tense, **rang**: "Yesterday the bell rang all day." Past Participle, **rung**: "It has never rung that way before."—To sound like a bell; **tinkle**, ring repeatedly, in a high pitch but faintly, like a small bell; **jingle**, like loose coins in the pocket, or like sleigh-bells; **clink** glasses; **clang** with a deep tone; **peal**, merrily, like church bells on a festival; **chime** like a carillon (kar'il-on) of church bells playing a hymn tune; **toll** slowly at intervals, for mourning.

- to rise**. Past tense, **rose**: "The sun rose at six this morning." Past Participle, **risen**: "The moon has not risen yet." To go up, **ascend** a mountain; **mount** a horse; **soar** above; **climb** a hill; **scale** a difficult peak.

Do not confuse with **raise**, to put up or lift.

- a rīval**, one who strives to reach the same aim, where only one can succeed, generally in a friendly spirit of **ēmulation**; a **competitor**, one who also bids for an order or a reward, generally where several are seeking a limited number of rewards; an **entrant** in a race.—**Rīvalry**.



- rō-**. Sound heard in "wrote," Rhode Island, rho'doden'dron, a road, he rode (came riding), he rowed (came in a rowboat).
- a road**, literally a "riding place"; **way**, literally a "transporting place" (compare the word **wagon**); **highway**, a main traveled road; an **avenue**, leading somewhere; **street**, between buildings; **boulevard**, broad street planted with trees; **passage**, narrow way between buildings; **track**, a series of footprints, also used figuratively; **trail**, a beaten footpath into mountains or wild country; a **path**, narrow footway through a field, etc.; a **détour**, temporary way.
- to roast**, cook meat before a fire or in an oven; **bake** bread in an oven; **toast** bread by drying its surface before a fire; **grill** a steak on a gridiron; **broil**, same as grill (more generally used in United States, while **grill** is almost exclusively used in England); **barbecue**, to broil a whole animal or a large portion of it before an open fire. **To roast** somebody, colloquial, to criticize a person for unseemly conduct. A **roast** of meat (U. S.), a **joint** (England), a **sirloin** of beef (i.e., the part above the loins).
- to rob** somebody, take things from him: "He was robbed of his money"; **despoil** a person: "The bank was robbed by burglars." Do not use the word **burglarize** in careful writing.
- a robber** who steals with violence; **thief** who steals without violence; **burglar** who enters by night; **housebreaker** who enters by day; **sneak thief** who watches for people to leave the premises.
- rōbūst** health; a robust person, muscular and vigorous; **hardy**, inured to all changes of weather and temperature; **sturdy**, possessed of great endurance; **strong**, possessed of muscular force; **vigorous**, having great natural capacity for action.
- "He is a sturdy baby with a broad chest and firm limbs."  
 "The old man has always been in robust health; he comes from a healthy stock." "These are hardy trees, from a severe climate."
- rog-**. Latin root meaning "to ask." Derived forms: **rōgation**, **derōgatory**, **arōrogate**, **arōgant**. See Ask.
- to roll** along a surface without sliding, as a wheel; **revolve** round an external orbit or circle, as "the earth revolves around the sun"; **rotate** round an internal axis, steadily, as "the earth rotates on its axis"; i.e., its center remains in the same position; **turn** in an unsteady or irregular manner: "turn the head"; **wheel** a barrow, push or pull it along on its wheel; **trundle** a hoop; **wind** a spool, bobbin or reel; **spin** a top; **curl** by extending as a tight spiral, like vine tendrils; **trill** a liquid consonant like l and r: "Telephone operators learn to trill the r in the word three"; **twist** two things round one another, or twist one thing by bending it, producing part of a spiral; **twirl** one's mustache between one's fingers.
- roman** (written with small r), the ordinary upright type of printing, as contrasted with *italic*, the slanting type.
- a romance** (ro-mans'), an adventure undertaken for love or the

story of such an adventure.—In the Middle Ages, serious books were written in Latin, while fiction was written in the popular or “romanic” language; hence the name.

**rōō.** Sound heard in Rubaiyat, rheu<sup>u</sup>matism, rheumat<sup>i</sup>c, rhu<sup>u</sup>barb, to rue (regret), rumor (popular report), to ru<sup>u</sup>minate (chew the cud), rule, ruin.

**a rōōm**, literally a “width” or wide space; hence the phrases “to find room for something,” “plenty of room,” i.e., space enough; a **chamber**, enclosed space reserved for one purpose; therefore a bedroom; **apart<sup>u</sup>ment**, place “set apart,” consisting usually of several rooms occupied by one person or family; **flat**, apartment on one floor; **suite** (swēt), a number of connected rooms, as in a hotel; **sālon**, a reception room; **boudoir** (bōō-dwār), a “sulking room,” or lady’s private dressing room; a man’s **den** or corner that is not often tidied; **study**, a writer’s or thinker’s private room.

**a rōōt**, the underground part or foundation of a plant, a belief, etc. The root of a word is the **simple** form which it took in the language from which it is borrowed: **lingua** is the root of the word “language.” The **radical** of a word is the part which remains after prefixes and suffixes have been detached: “**langu**” is the radical of the word “language.”

**roots, Greek.—**

**ANER, ANDROS, ANTHROPOS** (man, stamen) androgynous, philander, philanthropy.

**ARCHOS** (chief, primitive) archaic, architect.

**ASTRON** (star) asterisk, disaster.

**AUTOS** (self) autograph, automatic, authentic.

**BARYS** (heavy) baritone, barites.

**BIBLOS** (book) Bible, bibliomania.

**BIOS** (life) biology, autobiography, amphibious.

**CHEIR** (hand) chiropody, chirurgical, surgeon.

**CHILIOI** (a thousand) kilogram, kilowatt.

**CHROMA** (color) chromo, achromatic.

**CHRONOS** (time) chronic, anachronism.

**COSMOS** (world, order) cosmopolitan, microcosm.

**CRYPTO** (hide) cryptogram, cryptology.

**CYCLOS** (wheel, circle) encyclopedia, cyclone.

**DECA** (ten) decasyllable, decalogue.

**DEMOS** (people) democracy, epidemic.

**DERMA** (skin) epidermis, taxidermist.

**DIDONAI, DOSIS** (give) dose, apodosis, anecdote.

**DIS, DI** (twice, doubly) dichromatic, diagraph.

**DYNAMIS** (power) dynamite, dynasty.

**EIDOS** (form, thing seen) idol, kaleidoscope, anthropoid.

**ETHNOS** (race, nation) ethnic, ethnology.

**EU** (well) euphemism, eulogy.

**GAMOS** (marriage) polygamy, bigamy.

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels **ā ē ī ō ū ŷ** as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; **ä ä ī ō ū ŷ** as in mat, met, mit, not, nut, pity; **ā** as in father; **ēr** as in merry; **er** as in mercer; **ou** as in loud; **au** as in land. Tonic accent (‘) after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ä in senate). Consonants: **g** always as in go; **th** as in thief; **dh** as th in mother; **ng** as in sing or in singer; **ng-g** as ng in finger. See Syllables.

- GE** (earth) geography, geometry.  
**GENOS** (family, race) gentle, engender.  
**GRAMMA** (writing) monogram, grammar.  
**GRAPHO** (write) telegraph, lithograph.  
**HAIMA** (blood) hematite, hemorrhage, anemia.  
**HETEROS** (other) heterodox, heterogeneous.  
**HOMOS** (same) homonym, homeopathy.  
**HYDOR** (water) hydraulics, hydrophobia, hydrant.  
**ISOS** (equal) isosceles, isotherm.  
**LITHOS** (stone) monolith, chrysolite.  
**LOGOS** (word, study) theology, dialogue.  
**METRON** (measure) barometer, diameter.  
**MICROS** (small) microscope, microbe.  
**MONOS** (one, alone) monoplane, monotone.  
**MORPHE** (form) metamorphosis, amorphous.  
**NEOS** (new, young) neolithic, neophyte.  
**NEURON** (nerve) neuralgia, neurotic.  
**NOMOS** (law, science, management) astronomy, gastronomy, economy.  
**ONOMA** (name) anonymous, patronymic.  
**OPSIS** (view, sight) synopsis, thanatopsis, optician.  
**ORTHOS** (right) orthopedic, orthodox.  
**PAIS, PAIDOS** (child) paediatrics, pedagogue, encyclopedia.  
**PAS, PAN** (all) diapason, panacea, pantheism.  
**PATHOS** (suffering) allopathy, pathology.  
**PETROS** (rock) petroleum, saltpeter.  
**PHAINO** (show, be visible) diaphanous, phenomenon, epiphany, fantastic.  
**PHILOS** (loving) bibliophile, Philadelphia.  
**PHOBOS** (fear) hydrophobia, Anglophobe.  
**PHONE** (sound) telephone, symphony.  
**PHOS** (light) phosphorus, photograph.  
**PHYSIS** (nature) physiognomy, physiology.  
**PLASMA** (form) cataplasm, protoplasm.  
**PNEUMA** (air, breath) pneumatic, pneumonia.  
**POLIS** (city) policy, metropolitan.  
**POLYS** (many) polyandry, polychrome, polysyllable.  
**POUS, PODOS** (foot) octopus, chiropodist.  
**PROTOS** (first) protoplasm, prototype.  
**PSEUDES** (false) pseudonym, pseudo-classic.  
**PSYCHE** (breath, soul, mind) psychology, psychopathy.  
**PYR** (fire) pyrography, pyrotechnics.  
**SCOPOS** (watcher) scope, microscope.  
**SOPHIA** (wisdom) philosophy, sophomore.  
**TECHNE** (art) technicality, architect.  
**TELE** (far, far off) telepathy, telescope.  
**TOMOS** (that which is cut off) epitome, anatomy, tome.  
**THEOS** (god) theosophy, pantheism.  
**THERME** (heat) isotherm, thermodynamics.  
**THESIS** (a place, arrangement) epithet, hypothesis, anathema.  
**TOMOS** (that which is cut off) epitome, anatomy, tome.  
**TREIS** (three) trichord, trigonometry.

**ZOON** (animal) zoology, protozoa, zodiac.

See also Prefixes.

roots, Latin.

**AGO, ACTUM** (do, rouse) agile, transact.

**ALIUS** (other) alias, inalienable.

**ALTER** (other) alteration, adultery.

**ALTUS** (high) altitude, exalt.

**AMBULO** (walk) perambulator, preamble.

**AMICUS** (friend) amicable, enemy.

**AMO, AMATUM** (love) inamorata, amateur, inimical.

**ANIMA** (life) animal, inanimate.

**ANIMUS** (mind) animosity, unanimous.

**ANNUS** (year) annuity, biennial.

**AQUA** (water) aquarium, aqueduct.

**AUDIO, AUDITUM** (hear) audience, audit.

**BELLUM** (war) rebel, belligerent.

**BENE** (well) benefit, benevolence.

**BONUS** (good) bonanza, bona fide.

**BREVIS** (short) abbreviate, unabridged.

**CADO, CASUM** (fall) cadence, casual.

**CÆDO, CÆSUM** (cut, kill) suicide, incision.

**CANO, CANTUM** (sing) recant, chanticleer.

**CAPIO, CAPTUM** (take hold) capacious, incipient.

**CAPUT, CAPITIS** (head) cape (Cape Cod), decapitate, chapter, biceps.

**CEDO, CESSUM** (go) concede, accessory.

**CENTUM** (hundred) per cent, centigrade.

**CIVIS** (citizen) civic, uncivilized.

**CLAMO** (shout) acclaim, declamation.

**CLAUDE, CLAUSUM** (close, shut) conclude, recluse, cloister, sluice.

**COQUO, COXI** (cook) decoction, precocious.

**COR, CORDIS** (heart) core, discord, courage.

**CORPUS** (body) corpse, incorporate.

**CREDO, CREDITUM** (believe) creed, discreditable.

**CRESCO, CRETUM** (grow) crescendo, concrete, accrue.

**CRUX, CRUCIS** (cross) crucifix, excruciating.

**CURA** (care) curate, sinecure.

**CURRO, CURSUM** (run) occur, concourse.

**DENS, DENTIS** (tooth) dentist, indent.

**DEXTER** (right, right hand) ambidextrous, dexterity.

**DICO** (speak, say) abdicate, verdict.

**DIES** (day) diary, quotidian.

**DIGNUS** (worthy, fitting) dignity, condign.

**DIRIGO, DIRECTUM** (direct) dirge, dirigible, address.

**DO, DATUM** (give) condone, data.

**DOCEO, DOCTUM** (teach) document, doctor.

**DOMINUS** (lord) dominion, dominate, dōmineer.

**DOMUS** (house) domicile, majordomo.

**DORMIO** (sleep) dormant, dormouse.

**DUCO** (lead) traduce, deduction.

**DUO** (two) dubious, duet.

**DURUS** (hard) durable, obdurate.

- EO, ITUM** (go) exit, initial.  
**ERROR, ERRATUM** (wander) erroneous, aberration.  
**FACIO, FECI, FACTUM** (make, do) manufacture, affect, sufficient, verify.  
**FERO, LATUM** (carry) transfer, relate.  
**FIDO** (trust, believe) confide, perfidious.  
**FINIS** (end) confine, infinity.  
**FLECTO, FLEXUM** (bend) reflection, inflexible.  
**FLUO, FLUXUM** (flow) influence, reflux.  
**FORTIS** (strong) fortress, comfort.  
**FRANGO, FRACTUM** (break) infringe, refraction.  
**FRATER** (brother) fraternity, fratricide.  
**FUGIO, FUGITUM** (flee) centrifugal, fugitive.  
**FUNDO, FUSUM** (pour) refund, profuse, fusion.  
**GERO, GESTUM** (carry) belligerent, gesture, digestion.  
**GRADIOR, GRESSUM** (walk) degrade, progress.  
**GRATIA** (favor, good-will, pleasure) ingratiate, congratulate, disgrace.  
**GREX, GREGIS** (flock) segregate, egregious.  
**HABEO, HABITUM** (have, hold) habituate, prohibit.  
**ITUM** (see Eo).  
**JACIO, JECI, JACTUM** (throw, hurl) reject, interjection.  
**JUDEX, JUDICIIS** (judge) judgment, prejudice.  
**JUNGO, JUNCTUM** (join) enjoin, juncture.  
**JURO** (swear) abjure, perjury.  
**JUS, JURIS** (law, right) justice, jurisprudence.  
**JUVENIS** (young) rejuvenate, juvenile.  
**LATUM** (see Fero).  
**LAUDO, LAUDATUM** (praise) allow, laudatory.  
**LEGO, LECTUM** (read, choose) elegant, lecturer, dialect.  
**LEX, LEGIS** (law) privilege, illegitimate, legislature.  
**LIBER** (book) libel, library.  
**LIBER** (free) liberty, deliberate.  
**LIGO** (bind) obligation, allegiance, alliance.  
**LINQUO, LICTUM** (leave) delinquent, relict, derelict.  
**LITERA** (letter) illiterate, obliterate.  
**LOCUS** (place) collocation, dislocate.  
**LOQUOR, LOCUTUS** (speak) soliloquy, elocution.  
**LUDO, LUSUM** (play) prelude, illusory.  
**LUX, LUCIS** (light) lucid.  
**LUMEN, LUMINIS** (light) luminary.  
**MAGNUS** (great) magnate, magnificent.  
**MALUS** (bad, evil) malaria, malnutrition.  
**MANDO** (order) mandatory, commandment.  
**MANUS** (hand) manual, manufacture.  
**MARE** (sea) maritime, submarine.  
**MATER** (mother) maternal, alma mater.  
**MEDIUS** (middle) mediocre, intermediate.  
**MENS, MENTIS** (mind) mental, demented.  
**MIROR** (wonder) mirror, admirable.  
**MITTO, MISSUM** (send) commit, emissary.  
**MONEO, MONITUM** (to warn, remind) admonish, monitor.  
**MORDEO, MORSUM** (bite) mordant, morsel, remorse.

- MORS, MORTIS** (death) mortal, mortify.  
**MOVEO, MOTUM** (move) remove, locomotive.  
**MULTUM** (many) multiform, multiplex.  
**MUTO, MUTATUM** (change) transmute, immutable, moult.  
**NASCOR, NATUS** (be born) renascence, cognate.  
**NIHIL** (nothing) nihilism, annihilate.  
**NOMEN, NOMINIS** (name) denomination, renown.  
**NORMA** (rule) abnormal, enormous.  
**NOSCO, NOTUM, COGNOSCO, COGNITUM** (know) notation, incognito.  
**NOVUM** (new) novelty, renovate.  
**NOX, NOCTIS** (night) nocturnal.  
**NUNTIO** (announce) denounce, renunciation.  
**OPUS, OPERIS** (work) operator, inoperative.  
**PATER** (father) patrician, patrimony.  
**PATIOR, PASSUS** (suffer) impatient, passion.  
**PELLO, PULSUM** (drive) propeller, repulse.  
**PENDEO, PENSUM** (hang) pendulum, appendix.  
**PENDO, PENSUM** (weigh) compendium, expense.  
**PES, PEDIS** (foot) expedite, biped.  
**PETO** (seek) impetus, compete.  
**PLAUDO, PLAUSUM** (clap, applaud) explode, plausible.  
**PECTO, PLEXUM** (braid) perplex, complexion.  
**PLEO, PLETUM** (fill) complement, expletive.  
**PLUS, PLURIS** (more) surplus, plural.  
**PLICO, PLICATUM** (fold) reply, implicate.  
**PONO, POSITUM** (place) opponent, deposit.  
**PORTO** (carry) report, porter.  
**POTENS, POTENTIS** (powerful) impotent, potential.  
**PRENDO, PREHENSUM** (seize) comprehend, apprise.  
**PRIMUM** (first) primary, primate.  
**PROBO, PROBATUM** (prove) improbable, reprobate.  
**PUGNO** (fight) impugn, repugnant.  
**PUTO** (think) impute, disreputable.  
**QUAERO, QUAESITUM** (seek) require, inquest, exquisite.  
**RAPIO, RAPTUM** (seize) enraptured, surreptitious.  
**REGO, RECTUM** (rule, lead) region, erect.  
**RIDEO, RISUM** (laugh) deride, risible.  
**ROGO, ROGATUM** (ask) prorogue, abrogate.  
**RUMPO, RUPTUM** (break) disrupt, eruption.  
**SALIO, SALTUM** (leap) salient, insult.  
**SANGUIS** (blood) sang froid, sanguinary.  
**SCIO, SCITUM** (know) prescience, plebiscite.  
**SCRIBO, SCRIPTUM** (write) prescribe, manuscript, escriptoire.  
**SECO, SECTUM** (cut) secant, dissect.  
**SEDEO, SESSUM** (sit) supersede, obsession.  
**SENTIO, SENSUM** (feel) presentiment, consensus.  
**SEQUOR, SECUTUS** (follow) sequence, persecute, ensue.  
**SIGNUM** (sign) insignia, designate.  
**SOLUS** (alone) solitude, desolate.  
**SOLVO, SOLUTUM** (loosen) solvent, dissolute.  
**SOMNUS** (sleep) somnambulist, insomnia.

**SONO** (sound) consonant, resonance.  
**SORS, SORTIS** (lot) sort, assortment.  
**SPECIO, SPECTUM** (look) despicable, suspect.  
**SPIRO, SPIRATUM** (breathe) perspire, conspiracy.  
**SPONDEO, SPONSUM** (promise) respond, espouse.  
**STO, STETI, STATUM** (stand) constant, establish.  
**SISTO, STITI, STATUM** (cause to stand) consistent, super-  
 stition.  
**STRINGO, STRICTUM** (bind) stringent, restrict.  
**STRUO, STRUCTUM** (build) construe, destruction.  
**TANGO, TACTUM** (touch) intangible, tact.  
**TEMPUS, TEMPORIS** (time) temporize, contemporary.  
**TENDO, TENSUM** (stretch) distend, intense.  
**TENEO, TENTUM** (hold) tenure, detention.  
**TENTO** (try) tentative, attempt.  
**TERMINUS** (end, boundary) terminal, exterminate.  
**TERRA** (earth) territory, inter.  
**TORQUEO, TORTUM** (twist) distort, tortuous.  
**TRAHO, TRACTUM** (draw) extract, subtraction.  
**TUMEO, TUMIDUM** (swell) tumor, contumacy.  
**TURBA** (tumult, crowd) turbulent, disturb.  
**UNUS** (one) unify, triune, onion.  
**URBS** (city) urbane, suburban.  
**VADO, VASUM** (go) pervade, invasion.  
**VALEO, VALIDUM** (be strong) prevail, invalid.  
**VENIO, VENTUM** (come) intervene, adventure.  
**VERTO, VERSUM** (turn) divert, adverse.  
**VERUM** (true) verdict, veracity.  
**VIA** (way) obviate, impervious, trivial.  
**VIDEO, VISUM** (see) provide, revise.  
**VINCO, VICTUM** (conquer) province, convict.  
**VIR** (man) triumvir, virtue.  
**VIVO, VICTUM** (live) vivacious, vivisection.  
**VOCO, VOCATUM** (call) revoke, avocation.  
**VOLO** (wish) malevolent, voluntary.  
**VOLVO, VOLUTUM** (turn) revolver, evolution.  
**VOX** (voice) equivocal, vociferate.  
**VELOX, VELOCIS** (swift) velocity.

See also Prefixes.

**rough** (rūf), adjective, opposite of smooth.—**Coarse** manners, lacking polish; **brusque** approach, treatment, lacking gentleness; **crude** way of expressing oneself; **prim'itive** instincts, not in accordance with civilized concepts; **unkind** treatment; **mean** disposition; **harsh** words; **brutal** actions, in which physical force is used unfairly; **rude** behavior; **gruff** voice, deep and rasping; **surlly** reply, ill-humored; **rūggēd** beard, unkempt; **rāggēd** garment, or rocky edges; **shaggy** animal, whose coat is rough and tangled; **jāggēd** outline, with irregular jutting out points.

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels **ā ē ī ō ū y** as in *mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my*; **ā ē ī ō ū y** as in *mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity*; **ā** as in *father*; **ēr** as in *merry*; **ēr** as in *mercer*; **ou** as in *loud*; **au** as in *laud*. Tonic accent (ˈ) after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ā in *senate*). Consonants: **g** always as in *go*; **th** as in *thief*; **dh** as **th** in *mother*; **ng** as in *sing* or in *singer*; **ng-g** as **ng** in *finger*. See Syllables.

**round** (noun, verb, adverb, adjective and preposition. There is no grammatical reason for preferring the form **around** in any circumstances. See below).—Latin **circum**; hence **circumference**, the boundary line of a circle; **circumlocution**, a round-about phrase; to **circumvent** or find a way round an obstacle. Greek *peri*; hence **pēriod**, the way round of Time; **pēriscope**, a device for looking round the horizon from below, as from a trench or a submarine.—A **circle**, plane figure bounded by a line of which all points are equally distant from the center; **sphere**, body or space bounded by a surface of which all points are equally distant from one point within called the center; a **ball**, any object approximately spherical; **ring**, an object in the shape of a circle with a large opening in the center; a **hālo**, ring round the head of a saint, etc.; **group** of people; **club**, regularly formed group; **round table**, informal body of representatives, generally of opposite views, gathered to discuss common interests; **circuit** (ser'kīt), regular sequence of operations, or course traveled; "an electrical circuit," "a theatrical circuit."

Walking about (adjective) ... ītīn'érant, peripatet'ic (vender).  
A roundabout way ..... circū'ītous (adjective).

Which surrounds and per-

mēātes ..... circumambient (atmosphere).

Round in figure (person) .... rō'tund.

It is never wrong to use **round** instead of **around**. English authors and the English public seldom use the word **around**. **Round** is not an abbreviation of **around**; therefore the spelling **round** is wrong; on the contrary, **around** is a lengthening of the already sufficient word **round**. It is right to say **all round** and wrong to say **all around**. In the United States, **around** is preferred when there is little or no idea of roundness: "walking around," with the meaning of the better English word **about**, which should be preferred in writing: "walking about."

**royalty** (noun), a royal personage or royal personages collectively; also a percentage payment to an author or an inventor on the sale of his works or his inventions.—The **aristocracy**, members of the nobility and their families; the **gentry** (England), the upper class below the nobility and above the yeomanry (yō'man-rī).

### Some words used on this subject

King, His Majesty, queen, Her Majesty, emperor, empress, crown, throne, accession, coronation, mon'archy, monarch, kingdom, viceroy, empire, royal family, prince, His Royal Highness, princess, predecessor, successor. See King.

to **rub**, **rubbing**, **rubbed**. The name rubber was given to caoutchouc (kōō'chōōk) because it was first used for erasing pencil marks.—Latin *fricare*; hence **friction**, a strong rubbing against resistance.—To **grate**, disintegrate by friction: "to grate nutmegs"; also, rub with an irritating noise: "grating gears";



**grind**, break into small particles or sharpen by friction: "grind coffee"; "grind a knife"; **stroke** an animal, a soft texture, by passing the hand along its surface; **pat** an animal by alternately touching and lifting the hand.

Do not confuse **friction**, which implies action and often unpleasantness, with **contact**, which implies merely a meeting: "He had many contacts with the world of business, with very little friction."

- a ruin** (rōō'in), complete destruction of hopes, etc.; **wreck** which causes suffering or misery, as a shipwreck; **crash**, sudden and complete; **destruction**, falling down of a structure; **dilap'idā-tion**, stones falling off; **overthrow** of an institution by popular revolt; **loss** of something valuable, accidentally or otherwise.
- a rule** (rōōl), Latin regula, the arbitrary way; hence **reg'ular**, according to the set rule; **reg'ulate**, cause to follow rule. Latin norma, the habitual thing; hence **normal**, according to custom; **abnormal**, contrary to the usual; **enormous**, much larger than is usual. Greek **kriterion**; hence a **critē'riōn**, a form or rule, a standard of comparison. In another sense, Greek arche, government; hence **monarchy**, one-man rule.—A **formula**, list of required ingrēdients and their proportions; **mēthod**, complete course of action; **systēm**, ingēnious course of action; **precept**, rule of conduct; **principle**, a fundamental belief; **domin'ion**, political rule.

A rule is a limited, definite, unexplained statement of a thing to be done. No rule ever applies to all cases. "The rules of grammar are merely attempts to crystallize usage." A **principle** is a general, logical statement of a desirable object to be achieved. A principle applies to all cases. "The principles of Expression frequently override the rules of Grammar."

Self-evident rule of conduct.....an āphorism.

Rule by self-willed person.....des'potism.

Arbitrary rule.....tyranny (tīr'ānī).

Arbitrary ruler.....tyrant (tī'rant), autocrat, des'pot.

- to rule**. Greek archos, a ruler; hence **patriarch** (pā'tri-ark), a fatherly ruler; **mōnarch**, a single ruler; **hī'erarchy**, sacred rule, government by priests; **archangel** (ark'ān-jel), chief of the angels; **architect** (ark'itekt), chief craftsman or master builder; **archipel'ago** (arkipel'ago), the "principal sea" of the Greeks, the Mediterranean and its islands; **archbishop** (pronounced arch, not ark), the presiding or ruling bishop.—To **prevail** as a custom; **dōm'inate** surrounding territory; **dōmīneer** by "bossing"; **lord** a place, "lord it" over other people.—A **ruler**, person who rules; an **emperor**, who has other rulers under him; **king**, chief of the nobles; **mōnarch**, sole ruler; **gōvernor**, elected or appointed to rule a territory; **chief**, **chieftain**.

Person under a ruler.....a subject.

- to run**. Latin curro, cursum; hence **occur**, "run against"; **course**,

the run of a thing; **concourse**, things that run together; **current**, running; **courier**, a forerunner, special representative who goes ahead to make arrangements.—To **walk** slowly; **step** in a certain way or in a certain direction, forward, briskly, up, etc.; **pace** up and down, impatiently; **trot** (horse) at about 12 miles an hour; **canter** (horse), easily and rapidly; **gallop** (horse) fast; **march** in step, like soldiers, to cover a given distance in a certain time; **sprint**, by going as fast as one can for a short period; **scurry**, hasten away; **scamper**, go off speedily as from fright; **gambol**, **frisk**, skip and hop with joy.

A horse **walks** 5 miles an hour, **ambles** at 8 miles an hour, **canters** at 9 miles an hour or over; **trots** at 11 to 13 miles an hour, **gallops** at 25 to 35 miles an hour. In a race, horses have been known to **trot** over 30 miles an hour, and to **run** for a mile at a speed of over 38 miles an hour.

To run like water.....to flow, circulate.

One who runs away.....a fugitive (from justice).

Which runs easily.....fluent (speech).

**rupt-**. Latin root meaning "to break." Derived forms: **rupture**, **eruption**, **interrupt**, **disrupt**. See Break.

to **rush**, go or do a thing with great precipitation (the sound R indicates agitation, SH a dragging, as of the feet on the floor, of water on a torrent bed); **speed** along; **tear** along regardless of obstacles; **hurry** against a time limit; **scurry** lightly, in different directions; **dart** forward like an arrow; **shoot** like a bullet; **flow** like water; **plunge** into a question, a difficulty; **dive** into water; **storm** a citadel.

Cattle rushing away.....a stampede.

Water rushing down stream.....a torrent.

## S

- a **sacrament**, a holy symbol, an "outward and visible sign of an inward and spiritual grace." Eastern Orthodox and Roman Catholic sacraments: baptism (christening), confirmation, the eucharist (ū'karist), pen'ance (confession), holy orders (priesthood), mātrimony (marriage), extreme unction or holy unction (anointing).

**sac'rilē'gious**, which violates sacred things. (This word has nothing to do with "religious." Note the difference in spelling.)

**sad**, adjective (**sadder**, **saddest**; **sadly**; **sadness**), literally the same word as "sāted," who has had his fill, sadness being induced by a retrospective attitude and loss of desire. Latin tristis; hence the French adjective **triste** used in painting: "a triste sky."—**Joyless**, **cheerless**, **mirthless**; **melancholy**, literally "black humored," in a mood to see nothing hopeful; **black** thoughts; **morose** by temperament, apt to be habitually without joy; **pessimistic** by intellectual outlook; **glum**, temporarily; **sulky**, who has a grievance; **mis'anthrop'ic**, who hates human beings; **crabbed**, habitually cross; **grumpy**, dissatisfied; **grouchy**, colloquial.

To express sadness over (a loss).....lament (a loss).

**sāfe**, adjective (**sāfer**, **sāfest**; **safely**; **safety**; **to save**; a **sāvior**; **unsafe**); from Latin salvus, "whole"; hence **salvation**, **safety** of the soul.—Placed out of the way of harm; **secure**, which has been so placed that it should be safe (therefore not such a strong word as **safe**); **sure**, not liable to great change; **reliable**, on which expectations can reasonably be built; **dependable** person, one whose integrity can be trusted (not a generally accepted word, as it almost duplicates the meaning of **reliable**).

**Safe** and **safety** are generally used absolutely: "He is safe"; **secure** and **security** are generally followed by a preposition and the name of the threatened peril: "Secure from temptation," "security against loss." **Surety** (two syllables—shoor'ti) is used to mean a guarantee of safety: "to stand surety for a friend," guarantee that he will perform his promise.

Opposites: **unsafe**, not to be trusted; **insecure**, not built on knowledge: "an insecure belief"; **preca'rious**, of no assured safety: "a precarious foothold."

- a **sage**, a wise man, especially one whose sayings are noted for their foresight (from Latin sapiens, one who knows).

**said** (sēd). Past tense of **say**. For synonyms, see **Say**.

- a **saint**. Latin sanctus, holy; hence **sanctify**, to make holy; **sanc'tuary**, holy place; **sanctity**, holiness.

In the Roman Catholic Church there are three degrees in

the process of cānonization. The holy person is first proclaimed as **venerable**; then he is bēātified or proclaimed **bleſsed**; later he is cān'onized or proclaimed a **saint**.

**-sal**. Three-syllable words ending in -sal have the accent on the second syllable: rever'sal, propo'sal.

- a sal'ary**. This used to mean "salt-money," as paid to Roman soldiers by way of recompense. It is now used for wages to permanent employees, the word **wages** itself being reserved for pay of a temporary nature, daily or weekly.

See Pay.

**same**, adjective: "the same as"; **identical with** another; **sīm'ilar** in appearance to another. Greek homos; hence many derived forms.

The same thing.....a rēpetition.

Of the same kind as most.....typical (tīp'ikal).

Of the same kind throughout...homogē'neous.

Happening at the same time...concom'itant, concurrent, co-incident, simultāneous.

To happen at the same time...to coincide with.

To be of the same opinion.....to concur with (an opinion).

Same treatment as one gives...reciproc'ity.

Of the same period.....co-ēval with.

Person of the same period.....a contemporary of.

In the same place.....ibid. (printing, i.e., ibidem).

Having the same center.....homocentric.

Word of the same sound.....a hōm'onym.

Annoying sameness.....monōt'ony.

Not the same.....other, different.

Not in the same place.....elsewhere.

- a sandwich**. Plural **sandwiches**. (Note the spelling.) Sandwich is the name of a town in England, meaning "the village on the sands." The -wich is also found in Greenwich, Ipswich, Woolwich; in another form it is found in Warwick, Fenwick. It comes from the Latin word vicus, a village. The Earl of Sandwich, being a great gambler, invented the convenient article of food now called a **sandwich** in order to have a meal without rising from the card table.

**sang-**. Latin root meaning "blood." Derived forms: san'guinary, consanguin'ity (blood relationship). See Blood.

- a sǎnitā'rĭum**, literally "healthery"; plural **sanitariums**. Same word as sǎnātōrium (sanatoriums or sanatoria).

**sar**. Sound heard in sergeant.

**sāted**, person who knows he has had all he can hold; **sātiated** (sā'shĭ-ā'ted), having even lost the desire for more; **gorged**, filled to bursting with food; **drunk**, having had too much alcoholic drink; **stuffed** with candy, etc.; **crammed** with knowledge; **sātisfied**, feeling he has had enough; **content**,

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels ā ē ī ō ū ŷ as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ä å ĩ ö ŷ as in mat, met, mit, not, nut, pity; ä as in father; ēr as in merry; er as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in land. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ä in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.

willing to stop with what he has had; **surfeited**, feeling he has had too much.

All these adjectives are followed by the prefix "with."  
 to **save**, keep whole; **preserve** from damage; **conserve** together; **rescue** from harm; **recover** after loss; **snatch** quickly, by force; **redeem** by payment, after loss; **salve**, **salvage** a wreck; **economize**, save unnecessary expense.

A person who saves may be **provident**, looking toward the future; **frugal**, content with modest food; **thrifty**, industrious and economical.

An object bought at a saving may be **cheap** or it may have been purchased under **economical** conditions.

**savoir-faire** (să-vwăr'fēr'). French: "The knowing how to do," knowing how to handle people to obtain a result; **tact**; **diplomacy**: "He could have put the whole scheme across if he had used a little savoir-faire instead of trying to bully everybody."

**savoir-vivre** (să-vwăr'-vė'vr'). French: "the knowing how to live," knowing how to behave in company, how to put up with the faults of others; patience, **manners**, **étiquette**. "The way he always insists upon his **lég**al rights shows he has no savoir-vivre."

to **saw** by means of a toothed edge. Past tense, **sawed**: "The boy sawed logs yesterday"; Past Participle, **sawn** or **sawed**: "Today he has not yet **sawn** (or **sawed**) any."—An old **saw**, a proverb, or **máxim**.

to **say**. Past tense, **said** (sėd).—To utter sounds, words; pronounce the syllables of a word; tell somebody the details of an event; **swear** solemnly; **testify**, bear witness; **aver**, confirm a truth; **affirm**, declare true; **assert** a claim; **state** as a fact; **maintain** something already stated; **claim** something to one's advantage; **allege** a wrong against somebody; **insinuate** a wrong by indirect statement; **suggest**, cause the other to believe; **predict**, **foretell**, announce in advance.

**Say** is used when actual words are quoted (whether they are expressed or merely "understood"):

He said he would come (He said, "I will come").

It happened as you said it would (You said, "It will happen"; it did).

I have come to say good-by (to you). (It is never right to use the phrase "tell good-by," since "good-by" is the actual word used.)

**Tell** means to narrate a story, and is not used with actual words of the story or event:

He told us a tale.

They told us how they came here. (They told us the story of their coming.)

They told us that they came here. (These are not their actual words.)

They said they came here. (These are their actual words, "We came here.")

Never use **say** before an infinitive. Do not say: "He said to go home." Either use **tell** with the name of the person

who was told: **He told us to go home**; or use a different form of the sentence with say: **He said we were to go home.**

Saying things back.....rep'artee.

A true saying.....an aphorism, an ap'othem.

An obviously true saying.....a truism.

A hackneyed truth.....a plätitude.

**Synonyms for "said."**—In fiction-writing, it is desirable to avoid the constant repetition of the word **said**. This can usually be done by rearranging the dialogue to leave no doubt as to who is the speaker. It is never necessary to use synonyms with such frequency that the villain is always hissing, snorting, fuming, croaking or booming. The following classified list, however, may supply synonyms for occasions when they are truly required.

**"He said yes."**—He acceded, accepted, acknowledged, acquiesced, admitted, affirmed, agreed, alluded, apologized, assented, asserted, asseverated, assured, attested, averred, avouched, avowed, chimed in, confessed, confirmed, consented, noted, nodded, owned, pledged, supported, thought, vouched.

**"He said no."**—He belied, contradicted, controverted, corrected, demurred, denied, disagreed, disavowed, disclaimed, disowned, doubted, gainsaid, objected, opposed, rebutted, recanted, refused, regretted, rejoined, repudiated, retorted, revoked, shook his head, traversed.

**"He told or stated."**—He accounted, announced, calculated, claimed, communicated, confided, contended, declaimed, declared, deposed, directed, described, enumerated, enunciated, exclaimed, greeted, hailed, informed, mentioned, named, narrated, observed, offered, notified, predicted, proclaimed, quoth, reckoned, recited, recounted, remarked, reported, stated, spoke up, told.

**"He added."**—He began, broached, commenced, commented, concluded, continued, emphasized, ended, iterated, joined in, proceeded, pursued, put in, reiterated, repeated, resumed, supplied, supplemented.

**"He argued."**—He advised, answered, argued, asked, charged, conceded, cut in, debated, decided, determined, defended, eluded, equivocated, evaded, excused, explained, finished, followed, granted, guessed, hinted, ignored, illustrated, implied, impugned, inferred, interpolated, inquired, insisted, instructed, interjected, interposed, interrogated, interrupted, itemized, joined issue, judged, lectured, maintained, modified, pleaded, prompted, proposed, propounded, puzzled, queried, questioned, quibbled, quizzed, reasoned, reminded, replied, responded, retorted, returned, seconded, soliloquized, speculated, surmised, teased, tantalized, ventured.

**"He pleaded."**—He adjured, admonished, begged, besought, cautioned, complained, consoled, counseled, exhorted, implored, importuned, interceded, invited, moralized, promised, protested, reassured, rebuked, remonstrated, reproved, requested, suggested, threatened, urged.

"He said pleasantly."—He bandied, bantered, chattered, chuckled, cooed, crooned, crowed, encouraged, flattered, gloated, grinned, jested, jubilated, lauded, laughed, mimicked, prated, purred, saluted, sang out, smiled, soothed, teased.

"He said slowly or hesitatingly." He babbled, blubbered, bluffed, blundered, blurted out, breathed, cackled, chanted, cogitated, considered, drawled, echoed, faltered, gasped, gulped, gurgled, hazarded, hummed, indulged, insinuated, jabbered, lamented, lisped, meditated, moaned, mumbled, murmured, mused, muttered, palavered, panted, parleyed, pondered, quavered, resented, ruminated, shrugged his shoulders, stammered, sighed, stuttered, ventured.

"He said rapidly or angrily."—He barked, bawled, bel-lowed, blazed, blustered, boasted, boomed, bragged, bristled, broke in, burst out, called, challenged, chided, commanded, cried, croaked, denounced, deplored, despaired, dissembled, demanded, derided, ejaculated, enjoined, entreated, exploded, expostulated, exulted, flamed out, flared, fluttered, fumed, grated, groaned, gushed, hastened, hissed, hooted, hurled, growled, grumbled, grunted, incited, jeered, jerked out, lied, ordered, piped, railed, ranted, rasped, raved, roared, rumbled, scoffed, scolded, screamed, screeched, shouted, shrieked, sibilated, snapped, sneered, snickered, sniggered, snorted, sparkled, spouted, spluttered, spurted out, sputtered, squeaked, stormed, swept in, swore, taunted, threatened, thrust in, thundered, tittered, vilified.

- a **scenario** (sě-nā'rĭō or sě-nâ'rĭō), a **photoplay** for the "movies"; an original story written especially for the screen; an **adaptation**, a story taken from a published work of fiction; a **synopsis**, short form; a **continuity**, scene by scene; an **episode**, part of continued story.—**Titles**, the printed matter that accompanies the pictures, consisting of a **main title**, **crédit titles** giving the names of the participants, and **sub-titles**. The latter are divided into **narrative titles**, which describe the action, and **spoken titles**, which reproduce words spoken by the characters in the play. Originally an Italian word, scenario was pronounced **shenario**, and meant scenery, view, panorama.

See Motion Pictures, Rhetoric.

- a **schedule** (from a Greek word; in America, pronounced SKĕd'-ūl; in England SHĕd'ūl). A specification of details or plans, usually in the form of a table: "a railway schedule" or time-table.
- a **schism** (sĭzm), a breach which creates a new sect or division.—Adjective—**schismatic** (sĭz-mat'ĭk).
- a **school** (skōōl).—This is a combination and confusion of two words of entirely different origins: Anglo-Saxon *scolu*, a "multitude" (whence "a school of fish"), and Greek *scholē*, "leisure," a school being considered a place where leisured people went to improve their minds. Latin *schola*; hence **schōlas'tic**, pertaining to schools; a **schōlar**, one who is "at school," and therefore one whose life has been spent mastering a certain subject; **scholasticism**, the strictly logical method applied to

religious discussions in the theological schools of the 12th and 13th centuries.—The derived words **schoolbook**, **schoolmaster**, are written without a hyphen.

In the school method.....didactic (adjective).

A schoolmaster .....a ped'agogue (affected usage).

**sci-**. Latin root meaning "to know." Derived forms: **sci'ence**, **con'science** (kon'shens). See Know.

**scissors** (síz'erz). Used to be spelled cissors, as it comes from the Latin cisorium, a knife. Some wiseacre discovered that it came from the Latin scando, which is not so, and spoiled it with an S in front.—**Scissors** over six inches in length are technically called **shears**.

**a science** (sí'ens), from Latin scio, to know.—**Sci'entífic**, a **sci'entist**.—**Science** is a systematized body of facts ascertained by observation and verification; **knowledge** is anything known, singly or otherwise, without regard to the relationship of one fact to another; an **art** is a practical and usually **empír'ical** (i.e., not theoretically tested) way of achieving a useful or esthetic result. Every **art** has a basis of **science**, whether the artist or craftsman knows it or not, but the higher arts also require a personal touch sometimes called **tálent**, sometimes **inspiration**, occasionally amounting to **gēnius**, which is beyond analysis. **Art** is doing, **science** is knowing.

The principal sciences are: math'émat'ics, astron'omy, physics (fiz'iks), chemistry (kēm'ist'ri), bot'any (plants), biol'ogy (origin of life), phýsiól'ogy (bodily functions), med'icine, anthropology (history of man).

**to scold**. See Blame.

**scorn**, a feeling of pride and superiority toward a person or an object. Latin contemno, to despise; hence **contempt'**, scorn mixed with hatred. To **disdain** something as unworthy of one's attention; **despise** a low character or course of action; **dispar'age** an achievement, by speaking slightly of it; **belittle** an achievement by comparing it unfavorably; **discred'it** one's motives by insinuating their unworthiness; **deride** a person or his actions, by showing their ridiculous side; **scoff** at religion; **flout** a creed, flout somebody; **mock**, treat lightly, with less animosity than in **scorn**; **sneer**, turn up the sides of one's upper lip at something, as an expression of contempt; **taunt** somebody with his inferiority, in sarcastic speech.

Nouns expressing various forms of scorn: **ar'rôgance**, the attitude which assumes a superiority which others are unwilling to concede; **süpercil'iousness**, haughty attitude as toward trifles beneath one's attention; **sarcasm**, expression of mild contempt; a **gibe** (jib), words of sneering reproach; **deris'ion**, ríd'icüle, mockery, laughing: "An object of derision"; **í'rony**, the use of words meaning the opposite of what they appear to say.

See Boast, Pride, Instinct.

**to scrape**, **scraping**, **scraped**, rub a surface with a hard object to



clean it; **scour** a metal pot with a cleaning substance to make it shine; **scrub**, with brush, soap and water; **abrade** (technical), reduce a surface by friction, with an **abrasive**, like pumice stone, emery, carborundum, etc.; **rasp** as with a tool with raised (pyramidal) points; **rake** as with a toothed utensil, for the purpose of leveling: "rake the ground," or of gathering: "rake up the leaves"; **grate** for the purpose of producing small particles: "grate a carrot"; **file** with a sharp-toothed tool in order to reduce the volume; **scratch** so as to mar the surface.

- a screen**, a protective structure to cut off light, vision, air, heat, flying particles, etc., hence a sheet stretched on a frame, on which pictures may be projected. See Sieve.

**scrib-, script-.** Latin root meaning "to write." Derived forms: **scribe**, **inscribe**, **scripture**, **description**, **conscript**. See Write.

**sculpture** (a **sculptor**, to **sculpture**; colloquially and humorously **sculp**).

#### Some words used on this subject

A statue, group, relief (sculpture on a flat surface); **bas-relief**, or low relief (figures cut into background); **high relief** (figures standing out from the background); **bust**, **pedestal**, **monument**; **clay**, **wax**, **stone**, **marble**, **brass**, **bronze**, **inscription**, a **chisel**; a **plaque** (plāk).

**sē.** Sound heard in sea (water), see (with the eyes), si (musical note), Cæsar, scene in a play, scenery, to cease, cedar, cement, cereal, secret, to seize.

**sě.** Sound heard in celebrate, cellar (underground), a cell (battery, body), scepter, scent (smell).

- a sea** (sē). Latin mare; hence **marine** (mă-rēn'), adjective, pertaining to sea life; **maritime**, adjective, pertaining to sea navigation.

Pertaining to ships ..... nautical.

Open sea between continents ..... an ocean (ō'shun).

See also Water, Ship.

**sec-, sect-.** Latin root meaning "cut." Derived forms: **sēcant**, **sector**, **section**, **dissect**, **vivisect**. See Cut.

- to secede** (seceding, seceded) from a body, become separated from it by wilful choice.—**Secession** of an individual member, as judged impartially; **schism** (siz-m) of a group to form a rival body, as viewed by the original body; **apostasy** of an individual who renounces his previous faith, as viewed by those who retain that faith.

**sēcret**, adjective: which is to remain unknown to strangers; **hidden** deliberately by somebody to prevent discovery; **concealed** from curious eyes; **secluded** retreat, shut away; **private** letter, intended only for one's own use; **confidential** document, not

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels **ā ē ī ō ū y** as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; **ă ă ī ō ū y** as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; **ā** as in father; **ēr** as in merry; **ēr** as in mercer; **ou** as in loud; **au** as in laud. Tonic accent (´) after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ă in senate). Consonants: **g** always as in go; **th** as in thief; **dh** as th in mother; **ng** as in sing or in singer; **ng-g** as ng in anger. See Syllables.

to be published or referred to in public; **surreptitious** action, done with precautions to avoid discovery; **cōvert** act, not directly traceable to its real cause (opposite of **ōvert**).

Sharing a secret with.....in cahoots with (colloquial).

to **see**. Past tense, **saw**: "Yesterday I saw the new house." Past participle, **seen**: "I have already seen it." Present participle, **seeing**.—Latin **video**, **visum**; hence **vision**, sight; **vis'ible**, which can be seen; **invis'ible**, not to be seen; **prevision**, announcement made possible by foresight; **provision**, accumulation made possible by foresight; to **visualize**, see as vividly as if it were real. In the sense of looking, Latin **specto**; hence **spectacle**, a show worth looking at; **spectator**, one who witnesses an incident or a show (the attendance at a "movie" show is properly called "the spectators," not "the audience"); **respect**, looking back (and up) to somebody. Greek, **opsomai**, **eidon**, **orama**; hence **optics**, the science of vision; **idēa**, a "view" in the mind; **panorama**, a general view.—To **stare** at, look hard; **perceive**, begin to see something unexpected; **notice**, pay attention to; **remark**, take notice of; **gaze** in wonderment at; **observe** in detail, attentively; **behold** something worth while; **examine**, study in detail; **view** deliberately; **distinguish** between several; **descry** with displeasure; **discern** with effort and judgment; **espy** suddenly something hidden; **note** something already seen; **watch**, keep looking at.

To see with the understanding...discern (*dī-zern'*).

Easily seen, noticed.....ob'vious (argument, error).

Easy to see, to detect.....palpable (deception).

Easy to see, to approach.....accessible (place, person).

Always ready to see.....vī'gilant, watchful.

Too deep to be seen.....recondite (studies, causes).

Do not say "I see by the paper," but "I see in the paper." to **seek**. Past tenses, **sought**: "He sought to escape"; "You have sought him in vain." Latin **quæro**, **quæstum**; hence a **request** for specification or information: an **inqu'ry** about goods, facts; an **inquest** to ascertain responsibilities; a **rêquisition** for supplies already there; a "**quiz**," colloquial, examination. Latin also **peto**; hence a **petition** to a governing person or body; to **compete**, seek a reward at the same time as another.

Much-sought person (favorably).....a favorite.

to **seethe** (*sēdh*), boil. **Seething**, **seethed**: "The city was seething with discontent."—The old past tense **sodden** is now used only as an adjective, in the sense of "soaking wet": sodden ground.

to **seize** (*seizing*, **seized**, **seizure**). Latin **rapio**, **raptum**; hence **rapture**, being "seized" from the flesh and transported into the dream world; **rāpid**, adjective, "snatching"; to **rāvish**, snatch away. Latin also **capio**, **captum**, to take or hold; hence to **capture** a city by force; a **captive**, one who has been taken prisoner; to **captivate**, charm somebody so that he forgets his

reason; a **captious** argument, one that undeservedly catches the attention; a newspaper **caption**, an "attention-catcher," a cross-head or subtitle; **capacity**, ability to hold. Latin also *prendo* or *prehendo*; hence to **apprehend** a person wanted for an offense; **apprehension**, the taking to oneself of an idea, and especially of a fear idea; to **comprehend**, take into one's mind, understand thoroughly, include; **reprehensible**, which should be taken back again, blameworthy.—To **take** in general; **arrest** a person legally; **impound** a stray animal; **confiscate** a forbidden object; **distrain** against property by legal resort; **nab** one wanted, unceremoniously; **grab** by hand; **grasp** tightly; **snatch** quickly from the thing or person that holds it.

**self.** Greek *autos*.

Self-killing .....*sūicide*; (Japanese) *hara-kiri* (ha'ra-kē'rē).

Self-operating .....*automatic*.

Writing in one's own hand.....an *autograph*.

Coming from the author himself...*authentic*.

Self-repeating (phrase) .....*tautological*.

The word **self** is used alone to call attention to the ego or personality: "To thine own self be true." In other cases it is embodied in the pronouns, written in one word: *myself*, *thyself*, *herself*, *itself*, *oneself*, *ourselves*, *yourselves*, *themselves*. Notice that some of these retain the possessive form: *my*, *your*; while the others are the regular personal pronouns: *him-*, *it-*, *them-* (NOT *hisselt*, *itselt*, *theirselt*).

The spelling **one's self** is better used only when attention is called to the philosophical self, as "true to one's own self, true to one's self." In other cases, use the regular condensed form, **oneselt**, similar to the form **itselt**: "There are many unpleasant tasks one has to perform oneself."

**selfish, egoistic, egotistic.** The word **egotistic** is more personal and offensive than **egoistic**, owing to the aggressive sound of the added T. (Better pronunciation: ē'go-, but ēg'o- is also used.)

Believing in helping others.....*altruistic*.  
One who mortifies himself.....an *ascet'ic*.

**to sell.** Past tense, **sold**. From Anglo-Saxon *sellan*, meaning "to give." Latin *vendo*; hence a **vendor** (better spelling than **vender**, as -*er* is properly a form used with fully Anglicized words only: a *sell-er*, a *ven-dor*. See Syllables).—To **market** a *prōduct*, offer it for sale through regular trade channels; **dispose of** property; **realize upon** one's jewelry, etc., by turning it into cash; **close** a deal; **liquidate** one's assets entirely.

The word **sell** has recently acquired the useful meaning of "convince thoroughly" as if prepared to buy: "He is thoroughly sold on the idea of a vacation in Europe."

**semi-**, a prefix meaning half, partly, like: **semiannual**, happening twice a year; a **semicircle**, a half circle; **semicivilized**, partially civilized.—**Semi-** is another form of **demi**: a **dēmi**god.

Words formed with **semi-** take no hyphen: **semiconscious**, **semiliquid**, unless the second part of the word is an adjective derived from a proper name: **semi-Arian**, **semi-Pelagian**.

- a semicolon** (sēm'ī-kō-lŏn), a mark of punctuation (;) which indicates that the voice drops in two notes. It is less of a pause than the period (full stop), and more than the comma.

The semicolon is used to separate two sentences that bear a close connection with each other: "He was not ready ; that is why he missed his train."

A semicolon is always used before connectives like: **so**, **therefore**, **thus**, **hence**, **consequently**: "He was late ; so he missed his train." "I am here ; therefore we can come to terms." Before "so that" connecting a dependent sentence, use a comma: "He would like to come , so that he might explain." If, however, there is a long string of statements, these may be separated from the conclusion, and a period (.) would be used before the connective: "I have no money; I am ill; I have no home; I have no friends . Therefore any attempt to collect an old debt from me will fail."

- to send**. Past tense, **sent**.—Latin *mitto*, *missum*; hence to **dismiss**, send away; a **prom'ise**, a gift "sent before"; a **mission**, people sent for a definite purpose; to **emit** sounds, vapors, fumes; **transmit** across a third party.—To **dispatch** hurriedly; **hurl** a missile; **ship** goods; **express** a shipment (U. S.) by an express company; **forward** a letter to a new address; **offer** one's services; **tender** money in payment; **present** one's congratulations.—One who is sent: a **messenger** to deliver letters or goods; a **courier**, who goes ahead to reserve accommodations; an **em'issary**, secret agent to foment trouble; a **representative**, fully informed on a certain subject; a **missionary**, religious; an **envoy**, confidential; an **ambassador**, between countries; a **leg'ate**, envoy from the Pope or from a Power.

**sense**, an organ establishing contact between the individual and the outer world, or consciousness of the contact so established. Latin *sentio*, to feel; hence the five **senses** (sight, hearing, smell, taste, touch); a **sensation**, the consciousness of a sense impression, such as heat, pain, weight, color, motion; a **sen'timent**, a tendency to act in a certain way toward a certain object: "the sentiment of respect to one's parents"; **sentient** (sen'shent) organism, having the power of feeling sensations; **consensus** (of opinion), the opinions and sentiments of most people on a certain subject; **common sense**, the way in which the average person would behave; **sensible** person, course of action, in accord with common sense; **sen'sitive**, inclined to think too highly of praise or blame.

**sent-**. Latin root meaning "feel." Derived forms: **sen'timent**, **consent**, **assent**, **dissent**. See **Feel**.

- a sentence**. In Grammar, a definite statement, complete in itself: "Two men entered." A sentence consists of a subject and a predicate (see Predicate). A **simple sentence** consists of one subject and one predicate: "Water (subject) runs down hill" (predicate). A **compound sentence** is simply two sentences

of equal importance, linked by a conjunction: "He arrived on the scene (one sentence) and (conjunction or link-word) he immediately took charge (another sentence, as important as the first). A **complex sentence** is one in which two or more elements are contained, one being more important than the others, and in which the subordination of the less important to the more important element is done by means of a subordinate conjunction: "He arrived in time (principal statement), although it was raining (less important statement) and in spite of his being delayed on the way (another statement, less important than the first, but equal in importance with the second)."

**-sep-**. Sound heard in accept, except, conception, deceptive, perceptible, separate.

**sequ-**. Latin root meaning "follow." Derived forms: **sēquence**, **con'sequence**, **per'secute**, **prōsecute**, **pursue**. See Follow.

**-ser-**. Sound heard in sir, surgeon, surgical, surplus, certain, circle, circular, circumstance, circuit.

**sep'aration**, spelled like **prep'aration**. To **separate** opponents, different elements, combatants by breaking their hold on one another; **dīvide** things among people; **sēver** an artery, a limb, one's connection with an enterprise; **sunder** two parts of a whole; **seclude**, put in closed place; **sēgregate**, keep as in a separate "flock," one group apart from others; **divorce** man and wife; **disconnect** a pipe, a telephone, a means of communication; **strain** through a filter; **winnow** the chaff by blowing.

**a series** (sērēz), an arrangement or gradation of things according to a definite principle, such as time, place, size, quality; a **succession** of events in time; a **progression** of events, numbers, etc., each being larger or more important than the one before, according to a definite law; a **sēquence**, logical order, or things logically arranged. "In story-writing, each series of incidents centering upon one person or location and one period of time constitutes one sequence."

**serious** (sēr'ius), adjective: not inclined to jest (person), not to be treated lightly (situation); **grave** countenance, decision, problem; **important** matter, which will have bearing upon future events; **consequential** decision, which will be the beginning of other events; **earnest** person, taking things to heart; **solemn** (sol'em) conclave, formal and held in hushed alertness; **severe** judgment, not tempered by mercy; **deep** or **profound** truth, which goes to the root of the trouble; **sōber** opinion, not influenced by temporary glāmour; **staid** disposition, not given to flightiness; **sedāte** person, not given to excitement; **demure** young lady, not given to flirting; **deco'rous** action, complying with social standards; **precise** person, strict follower of rules.

**a servant**, in general, one employed at the pleasure of another, for pay; collectively (U. S.), the **help**; an **employee** of a firm; a **hired man** on a farm (U. S.); a **butler**, principal male **servant** in a private house; **chef** (shěf), man in charge of

the kitchen; **cook**, woman in charge of the kitchen; **maid**, female servant in a private house or in a hotel; **lady's maid**, who helps the lady dress; **valet** (vāl'ēt or vāl'ē), man servant; **chambermaid**, who takes care of the bedrooms; **parlormaid**, who waits at table; **housemaid**, who cleans the house; **chauffeur**, who drives an automobile; **footman**, who opens doors and carriage doors, and takes care of wraps; **nurserymaid** or **nurse maid**, who looks after the small children; a **boy**, **bell-boy**, **bell-hop** (U. S.), **boots** (England), **chasseur** (France), who takes messages; **waiter** (feminine, **waitress**), at a restaurant; **steward**, on board ship (cabin steward, dining-room steward, deck steward, etc.); **charwoman** or **charlady** (colloq.), who cleans the floors; **laundress**, who washes clothes; a **slave**, a servant bound for life and without pay to a particular master or owner; **serf**, one bound to the land; **peasant** (pěz'ant, European), one who works the land of another; a **pē'on** (Latin America), one who works on the land or for debt.

to **serve** somebody; **wait on** a person; **wait at** table; **attend to** a need; **help** somebody.

It will serve the purpose. . . . . it will do, it will answer.

**ser'viceable** (with an e, to keep the soft sound of the c).

**sess-, sed-.** Latin root meaning "sit." Derived forms: **sēd'entary**, **sedāte**, **sēd'ative**, **session**, **assess**. See **Sit**.

to **set**. Past tense **set**.—To **put down**; **go down** (sun); **place**; **arrange** in order; **group**, put together; **prepare** in advance; **appoint** a date.

**Set** is generally an incomplete or transitive verb. It has to be followed by a noun: "Set the pitcher on the table.—Set it down!—I have set myself a standard of study." However, we say that the sun **sets** in the West.

Compare **sit** and **set**: "I have **set** the hen on the eggs, and she is now **sitting**." I hope that this will prove to be a good **setting** of eggs." A **setting** hen is ready to be set on eggs; but while she is on the eggs she is called a **sitting** hen.

to **settle** in a country, by taking up one's residence there; **settle** a country, by sending a population there; **occupy** a country, temporarily or permanently; **colonize** it from the mother land; **clear** the land, to make it habitable.—To **settle** an indebtedness by paying it off; **liquidate** all one's assets by turning them into liquid funds (cash); **patch up** a quarrel temporarily; **solve** a problem; **arbitrate** a difference, with the previous consent of both parties; **arrange** the terms of a deal; **fix** a price; **decide** a point in favor of somebody.

**seven.** (In Arabic figures, 7; Roman, VII; Latin septem, Greek hepta.) In numerology, the symbol of completeness.

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels **ā ē ī ō ā ŷ** as in *mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my*; **ä ē ī ö ü ŷ** as in *mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity*; **ā** as in *father*; **ēr** as in *merry*; **ēr** as in *mercier*; **ou** as in *loud*; **au** as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ä in *senate*). Consonants: **g** always as in *go*; **th** as in *thief*; **dh** as *th* in *mother*; **ng** as in *sing* or in *singer*; **ng-g** as *ng* in *finger*. See **Syllables**.

Sevenfold ..... septuple.  
 Seven singers ..... a septet.  
 The seventh copy ..... a septuplicate.  
 With seven angles ..... heptagonal.  
 A government by seven ..... a heptarchy.  
 One of seven rulers ..... a septemvir.

**several.** Latin plus, pluris; hence plural, pertaining to two or more. In law, **severally** is used when speaking of a responsibility for which each contracting individual is as liable individually as because he is one of a group; **jointly** is used when each individual's responsibility ends with that of the group. "The parties of the second part, Smith, Jones, Brown, jointly and severally agree to pay White the sum of a thousand dollars a month from date"; in this case White can recover from the group as a whole, or from any of its members.

**severe,** lacking in roundness, in gentleness; **stern** parent, command; **strict** orders, leaving no latitude; **rigorous** punishment, well enforced; **austere** attitude, self-restrained; **grim** determination, merciless; **rigid** rule; **harsh**, grating; **sharp**; **fierce**; **repellent**; **merciless**; **relentless**; **cruel**; **violent**; (temperature) **cold**, **extreme**, **wet**, **rough**, **unpleasant**.

to **sew** (sō). Past tense, **sewed** (sōd): "I sewed it a minute ago." Past participle, **sewn** (sōn) or **sewed** (sōd): "I have just sewn (or sewed) it."—To stitch two pieces of cloth together, especially on the sewing machine; **baste** temporarily; **tack** lightly, as with pins and a few stitches; **embroider** with ornamental design; **picot** (pē'kō) an edge with small loops.

a **shade**; a **shady** place. Latin umbra; hence to take **umbrage** at a statement, or resent it like a shadow cast across one's reputation; to **adumbrate**, shade somebody; **umbrella**, literally a "shading device," now mostly used against rain, except in the case of the **beach umbrella**, while the shading device is called **parasol** or **sunshade**; **penumbra**, the half-darkness during an eclipse; **um'bel**, botany, an umbrella-shaped plant formation. Spanish **sombra**; hence a **sombrero**, a shady, broad-brimmed hat.—The **shade** is a place protected from the direct glare or heat of the sun: "The shade of a tree is pleasant in the heat of the day." "Come out of the glaring sun, and rest your eyes in the shade." A **shadow** is the projection of an image cast by the light, entirely apart from glare or heat: "The tall elm casts its shadow on the ground." "The children made hand shadows on the wall by the light of the oil lamp." In poetic speech, a **ghost** is called a **shade**.

to **shake.** Past tense, **shook**: "The earthquake shook the houses." Past participle, **shaken**: "Japan has again been badly shaken by an earthquake."—To **shake** a tree, an object, by imparting to it short back-and-forth motions; **rock** something in an up and down semicircle while its bottom rests in one place; **away** something by causing it to bend in a quarter-circle; **swing** semicircularly round a pivot; **agitate** by causing to assume motion, generally with a mechanical device; **stir** by

producing a rotating motion with a stick, spoon, etc.; **wave** a flag, etc., by causing it to open out in the wind; **brandish** a weapon at arm's length and over the head, as when making a threat of violence; **jar** a thing loose by a blow or a shock; **jerk**, move or twitch sharply; **jog** somebody lightly in a crowd; **jolt** somebody up and down, as by a sudden hole in the road while one is driving; **jilt**, "shake off" or abandon suddenly one who has been courted.—A thing **shakes** when it moves with short back-and-forth motions; it **vibrates** when it shakes rapidly and repeatedly, often with a rhythmic sound; it **oscillates** like a pendulum; it **shivers** unpleasantly when its individual elements appear to move in relation to one another, as when one shivers from cold; it **quivers** as though filled with power, when its elements move in relation to the whole, like a violin string; it **quavers** when it hesitates between two sounds, like the voice; it **quakes** violently, as from fear, or in a fearsome motion, as an earthquake; it **flaps** in the wind, like sheets hung out to dry; it **flutters** like a flag in the breeze, proudly. A person **reels** back under a surprise blow; an infant or a very old man **totters** unsteadily; one's opinions **fluctuate** under the influences of changes in one's knowledge.

**shall and will.** Use "I shall, we shall" (1) for simple future: I shall be glad to see you; we shall come if we can; we shall expect you; (2) for obligation: I shall have to . . . We shall be obliged to take action.

Use "shall I? shall we?" when asking for instructions from someone who has a right to give them: Shall I open the window? Shall we (children) go to bed now, or shall we stay up? What shall I do?

Never use "will I?" or "will we?" unless talking to yourself about making up your mind: Will I marry him? (Am I willing? I wonder.)

Use "you will, he will, she will, it will, they will" in all cases unless definite obligation is present: You will come, won't you? He will be glad to write to you.

Use "you shall, he shall, they shall," only when insisting that the other people must: Thou shalt not kill. Every car owner shall have a license.

**shame.** Latin pudor; hence **im'pudent**, who is not ashamed of his inferiority, who treats others as equals (when they think they are superior); **repū'diate**, put away as with shame: "repudiate a claim," "repudiate a wife."—A feeling of distress at having broken the moral code; a **disgrace**, the loss of reputation brought upon an individual or family as the result of a shameful act; **dēgradātion**, the loss of "grade" or social stātus: "He lived amid scenes of degradation"; **ig'nominy**, public degradation, exposure to public contempt; **humil'iation**, which causes the loss of one's pride; **mortification**, which causes a "dead feeling," as at one's grave mistakes in public; **chagrin** (shā-grīn'), disappointment over one's failure, often coupled with grief over another's success (the opposite of the German term **Schadenfreude**, rejoicing at another's failure); **oppro'brium**, public reproach, whether justi-



fied or not: "He endured the crowd's opprobrium to shield his friend"; **infamy**, extreme loss of reputation; **obloquy**, "being spoken against"; **contumely**, arrogant treatment or speech which has to be endured: "to suffer contumely at the hands of a race that considers itself superior"; **abomination**, a condition that causes loathing.

**shan't**, also spelled **sha'n't**: **shall not**.

- a shape**. Latin *forma*; hence **oviform**, egg-shaped. Greek *eidos*; hence a **kaleidoscope** (ka-lī'dō-skōp), "view of beautiful forms"; hence also many words in **-oid**, as **spheroid**; **celluloid**; **typhoid**, producing an appearance of stupor.—**Form** is the appearance of an object in three dimensions; **shape** is the appearance as it results from action upon the object, therefore more or less acquired; **figure** is the contour or outline, judged from the point of view of gracefulness; **profile** is the side view; **conformation** is the form of each part in reference to the form of the whole.

- to shape**. Past tense, **shaped**; old form used sometimes as an adjective, **shapen**: "It is strangely shapen."—To **form** (see "shape," noun), **build** from a variety of materials; **cast** in a plaster, iron, etc.; **mold** to a certain shape; **turn** on a lathe; **forge** enduringly; **regulate** the course of life by rules; **adjust** to fit something else; **adapt** to its environment.

Shapeless .....amorphous.

Easily shaped .....plastic.

Not easily shaped.....refractory.

- to share**. Past tense, **shared**. Literally, to "cut out with shears," that each may have some, usually with an idea of generosity; **divide** a large unit among several, accurately; **allot** various units among so many people, not equally; **apportion** to each his due; **assign** to each a definite duty or function; **distribute** individual and similar things among many recipients; **disperse** with care something valuable, in small doses; **appoint** a time, place or person for a definite action.—One **shares** in benefits conferred by others; **partakes** of something that he seeks; **participates** voluntarily in a common endeavor; **engages** in an occupation.

One who shares in a common endeavor.....participant.

All-share-equally system of government.....communism.

Sharing the same secrets.....in cahoots with (colloq.).

- a share** of something in which one has a joint interest with others; **portion** due to each; "a marriage portion" or **dowry**, i.e., a fair share of the estate allotted on marriage; **part** of a whole; **section** of a book, of evenly divided land, of a law; **allotment** of a unit, by fate, luck or arbitrary action; **quota**, due proportion necessary to make up a whole: "Each citizen must contribute his quota to public charity"; one's lot in life, in business, one's allotted part; **contingent** of soldiers, helpers, etc., contributed by a town, a state; a **contribution**

of money, services, etc., given toward the attainment of a definite purpose; an **allowance**, share of money given at discretion to cover expenses: "an automobile allowance of ten cents a mile."

**sharp**, adjective; literally "scrapping"; fine-edged: a sharp knife; fine-pointed: as sharp as a needle; causing sudden pain: a sharp blow; a **keen** blade, keen humor; a **cutting** remark; an **acute** angle; a **penetrating** noise, light; an intelligent person, who understands readily; a **clever** writer, who turns his words to good advantage; a **pungent** taste; an **acrid** smell; **poignant** (pon'yant) grief; **smart** attire; **canny**, i.e., cautious, behavior; a **stern** command; a **quick** response; **prompt** compliance with a request; a **shrewd** mind, which foresees all complications; a **sensitive** disposition, which feels keenly; an **unkind** criticism, not tempered by consideration for the feelings of the other person; an **acrimonious** discussion, marked by bitterness; a **ensorious** attitude toward moral problems; a **fiery** temper, promptly excited; a **snappy** observation, which crystallizes facts instantly.

to **shave**. Past tense, **shaved**; as an adjective often **shaven**; **clean-shaven**, **smooth-shaven**. To **raze** buildings, tear them down to the ground; a **razor**, for shaving. Do not confuse with an **eraser** for rubbing off pencil marks.

**she**, subject, feminine; **her**, object; **her**, possessive adjective: "her complexion"; **hers** (without an apostrophe), pronoun: "This is hers." Plural: **they**, **them**, **their** (adjective); **theirs** (pronoun, without an apostrophe): "This is theirs." See Pronouns, also Declension.

**shē**. Sound heard in Chihuahua (shē-wā-wā, dog); sheik (chief-tain).

**shē**. Sound heard in chef (cook), sherry (wine), chevalier.

to **shear**. Past tense, usually **sheared**; poetic form, I **shore**, I have **shorn**; adjective **shorn**: "God tempers the wind to the shorn lamb."—Latin *tondeo*, *tonsum*; hence **tonso'rial**, pertaining to barbers; **tonsure**, the shaving of a priest's head.

a **sheep**. Plural, **sheep** (without an s).—Latin *ovis*; hence **ō'vile**, pertaining to sheep; **ō'vine**, pertaining to races of sheep. (Do not confuse this root with Latin *ovum*, egg.)

Sheep's meat.....mutton.

Young sheep or its meat.....lamb.

One who tends sheep.....a shepherd (shēp'erd).

**sheer**, adjective; literally "clear," unquestioned, unmixed: "a sheer drop," a drop in a straight line, without encountering obstacles; "sheer nonsense," which is unquestionably foolish; **transparent**, exceedingly fine: "sheer silk"; **gossamer** (gōs'ā-mer), as fine as cobwebs; **georgette** (zhōr'zhet') **crêpe** (krāp), sheer silk texture.

a **shelf**. Plural, **shelves**. Verb, to **shelve**.

**sheltered**, adjective: protected through foresight; **covered** with something; **screened** from heat, light, view; **cloistered** as in a

convent; **sequestered**, put aside, as an object in dispute in a lawsuit.

The side of the ship sheltered from the wind. . . . . leeward,

**shĭ**. Sound heard in Cheyenne (shĭ-en').

**shĭ**. Sound heard in chic (smart); chicane (shĭ-kān'); chiffonier (shĭf-o-nēr); schist (shĭst).

to **shield** somebody by exposing oneself instead; **protect** somebody or something against possible peril; **guard** in case of danger; **safeguard**, ensure from harm; **preserve** in the same condition in which it is; **champion** a cause; **shelter** a homeless person; **cover** something or somebody with something; **screen** from heat, light, view; **cloister** somebody as in a convent; **sequester** property in dispute, as in a lawsuit; **defend** somebody who is attacked.

to **shift**, move slightly, especially along a surface: "The cargo shifted to one side"; "Children and nervous people keep shifting their position when they have to sit for a long time." This is also the meaning in the phrase "a shift of workmen," the machinery or work remaining in place, while the operatives are changed.—A **makeshift**, a temporary or inadequate device: "In the absence of proper scenery, curtains are often used as a makeshift in amateur theatricals."

to **shine**. Past tense, **shone** (pronounced shōn in America, shōn in England). To **radiate** in rays or beams; **beam**, smile upon; **twinkle**, **scintillate** like a star; **sparkle** like a gem; **gleam** intermittently; **glisten** like a wet surface; **glitter** strikingly; **glare**, so that it hurts the eyes; **glow** like a warm, still, weak light; **flare**, appear suddenly; **flicker** intermittently, like a dying light; **flash** like lightning.

See Bright.

a **ship**. Latin *navis*; hence to **navigate**, sail on a ship; **navigable** river, one on which ships can go; **naval**, pertaining to warships; **navy**, warships; the **nāve** of a cathedral, owing to its shape, which is like a ship's. Greek *naus*, *nautos*; hence **nautical**, pertaining to navigation; **nausea** (nau'shĭ-ă), ship sickness.—A large sea-going boat; a **vessel**, anything that is hollow and floats, a more general term than **ship**; a **steamer**, steamship (written S.S. before the name of the steamer); a **liner**, a steamer belonging to an important line which maintains regular service, especially across an ocean; a **warship** or **man-of-war**, a fighting unit of the navy; **dreadnaught** or **dreadnought**, large warship used for attack; **cruiser**, fast warship used for preying on enemy commerce; **destroyer**, smaller and very fast warship used against battleships; **submarine**, diving boat; **aeroplane-carrier**, with flat decks for launching aircraft; **schooner** (skoō'ner), sailing vessel with two or more masts; **ketch**, two-masted; **yacht** (yŏt), for pleasure; **scow**

---

Pronunciation key. Vowels **ā ē ī ō ŭ ŷ** as in *mate*, *meet*, *mite*, *mote*, *mute*, *my*; **ă ē ĭ ô ŭ ŷ** as in *mat*, *met*, *mitt*, *not*, *nut*, *pity*; **ā** as in *father*; **ēr** as in *merry*; **ēr** as in *mercer*; **ou** as in *loud*; **au** as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (**ā** in *senate*). Consonants: **g** always as in *go*; **th** as in *thief*; **dh** as **th** in *mother*; **ng** as in *sing* or in *singer*; **ng-g** as **ng** in *finger*. See Syllables.

(skou), large flat-bottomed river boat; **yawl**, small rowboat belonging to a ship; **gon'dola**, in Venice.

Adjectives: **nāval**, pertaining to warships; **nautical**, pertaining to ship management and navigation as a science: "the Nautical Almanac"; **mar'itime** (-tīm or -tīm), of the seaboard: "maritime countries," "maritime laws"; **marine** (ma-rēn'), pertaining to sea life: "marine animals," also used in "marine insurance," and as a noun to mean non-fighting ships: "the merchant marine," or to mean a fighting man who is a soldier carried on a war-vessel: "the marines."

### Some words used on this subject

To sail, embark, on board, aboard, row, steer, cast anchor, spread sail, land, disembark, weigh anchor, passage, voyage, a deck, a cabin, a porthole, captain, the bridge, seaman, pilot, sailor, crew, a steward, mast, crow's nest, lookout, smoke-stack (England: funnel), rudder, helm, tiller, compass, chart, shipwreck, sextant, course, port (left side), starboard (right side), the bows (bouz), the prow (front), the stern (rear), amidships; a convoy (escorting ship or ships).

For ship time, see Hour.

to **shirk** an unpleasant task, by pretending one has no time or ability to do it; **avoid** a person, a place where unpleasantness is expected, by keeping away from it; **dodge** skilfully, trickily, a creditor, a peril; **escape** from harm's way by running; **balk** at an apparently hopeless task; **slack**, by not doing one's share of a common duty.—Nouns: a **shirker**, who avoids his unpleasant tasks; a **quitter**, one who does not carry out his task to the end; a **slacker**, who does not assume his due share of the work.

to **shiver** with cold or fear; **shudder** at the thought of peril; **tremble** all over with fear; **shake** suddenly and violently; **quiver** along the length of a cord or muscle; **quake**, move in a mass; **vibrate**, return an imparted motion; **pulsate**, breathe more rapidly.

See Shake.

**shō**. Sound heard in showing, shown, shone (American pronunciation).

a **shock**, a sudden, violent impact: "an earthquake shock"; a **concussion**, perception of a violent impact; a **tremor** or trembling movement (There is no need to introduce into English the Spanish word **temblor**, but if used it should be pronounced with the accent on the last syllable); a **jolt** up and down; a discordant **jar**; a **scandal**, shock to public morals.

to **shoe**, **shoeing** (with an e); **shod**.—A **shoe**; **oxfords** (U. S.; **shoes**, England); **high shoes** (U. S.; **boots**, England); **boots** (U. S.; **high boots**, England); **sandal**, open top shoe; **slipper**, unlaced shoe; **brogues**, heavy low shoes; **rubber shoes**, **galoshes**, **overshoes**; **moccasins**, soft-soled shoes; **high tops**, shoes or boots reaching to the knee.

**shōō**. Sound heard in chute (dropping device), shoeing.

to **shoot**. Past tense, **shot**. Hit with intent to kill or wound with a

missile as from a firearm, which may be a bullet or a lead pellet called shot; **shoot at** something, in an endeavor to hit it; **throw** something by hand at something or somebody; **emit** a sound; **discharge** suddenly a gun, a liquid from a syringe; **expel** violently as a foreign body; **squirt** a liquid through a narrow opening; **launch** a torpedo.—In the sense of killing: **wound** somebody by cutting his flesh; **hurt** somebody by causing him pain; **murder** brutally; **assassinate** in cold blood.

Shooting devices: gun, pistol, revolver, cannon, mortar, howitzer, quick-firer.

One who shoots well.....a good shot, a sharp shooter.

- a shop.** In American usage, this word refers principally to a manufacturing establishment; in English usage, it is equivalent to the American word **store**, a retailing warehouse; an **emporium**, dry goods store; **market**, for food.

**short**, adjective. Latin *brevis*; hence **brief**, short in point of time; **brēv'ity**, being brief; **abbreviate**, write in a few signs instead of writing in full. Latin also *curtis*; hence **curt** answer, a little too short to be polite; **curtail** expenditures, cut them down.—**Concise** statement, which wastes no words; **terse** order, very brief and abrupt; **transitory**, of short duration.

To **shorten** in length, distance or time; **abridge** by re-writing; **abbreviate** by using shorter forms; **curtail** something unnecessary; **epit'omize** pithily; **recapitulate** after a detailed statement; **reduce** a quantity.

A short statement.....a résumé, a summary, an exposé, an epit'ome.

**should** and **would** are used in the same way as **shall** and **will**: I **should** like to know. He **would** like to know. He **should** tell his wife. (Duty.) He **would** tell her, but he is afraid to. (He is willing.) She **would** not mind. (Simple condition, no emphasis; pronounced *she w'dn't mind*.)

After **if**, use **should** when there is a question of doubt: If anything **should** happen to me. If I **should** be late, don't wait. If you **should** find the door locked.

After **if** implying willingness or consent use **would**: If you **would** only be reasonable. If it **would** please you better. If she **would** relent.

**to shout.** Latin *clamo*; hence to **exclaim** suddenly; **acclaim** a victor; **proclaim** news. Latin *voco*; hence **vociferate**, shout loudly.—To **scream** loudly as in fear; **shriek** in a piercing tone; **yell** objectionably; **cheer** a favorite; **give an ovation** to a hero.

**to show.** Past tense, **showed**: "Yesterday he showed us the books." Past participle, **shown**: "He has never shown it to us before."—Latin, *monstro*; hence **demonstrate**, show how a thing works.—To **exhibit** proudly, publicly; **display** so it is noticed; **present** ceremoniously; **disclose** what had been concealed; **perform** a play; **lay out** a number of articles; **spread** for display; to **designate** the particular kind; **indicate**, point to; **show off** for the gallery; **attitudinize**, strike a pose; **exemplify** a point; **evince**, give evidence of; **connote** as being also there.

In a way that shows publicly...osten'sibly.

Man who shows people around...cicerone (chē-chā-rō'nā or sīs'ē-rō-nē).

Public vehicle for showing a

city to tourists.....char-à-bancs (shar-ā-bân),  
sight-seeing wagon, rub-  
berneck wagon (colloq.).

**showy**, adjective; done for effect: "a showy discourse"; **visible**, which can be seen; **noticeable**, which cannot help being seen; **ostensible** action, done to cause the public to believe a certain thing; **flamboyant** speech, poster display, full of heroics or of vivid colors; **ostentatious** display of wealth, so as to attract envy; **pretentious**, too costly; **sumptuous** repast; **spectacular** performance, as thrilling as a drama; **loud** remarks, **glaring** error; **flashy** attire; **gaudy** style, in bad taste, too "loud."

to **shriek** in a piercing tone; **scream** loudly, as in fear; **yell** objectionably; **shout**, call aloud.

See Cry.

to **shrink**. Past tense, **shrank** or **shrunk**; past participle, **shrunk**: "It has shrunk." To **contract**, draw together; **diminish**, become smaller; **warp**, twist itself out of shape, as by the shrinking of one side of the surface.

**shū**-. Sound heard in cheval', chemise.

to **shudder** at the thought of a peril; **shiver** with physical cold; **tremble** all over with fear; **shake** suddenly and violently; **quiver** along the length of a cord or muscle; **quake**, move in a mass; **vibrate**, return an imparted motion; **pulsate**, breathe rapidly.

to **shut**. Past tense, **shut**: "I have shut the door; the door is shut." Latin claudō, clausum; hence to **close**.—To **shut** firmly; **close** gently; **slam** a door angrily; **snap** a fastener.

**shy**, adjective; temporarily disliking to appear in public for a particular purpose; **bashful**, habitually disinclined to appear in company; **timid** by disposition, inclined to fear consequences; **rét'icent**, giving out limited information; **coy**, struggling between shyness and approbateness, coquettish; **diffident**, hesitating to trust his own ability, especially mental.

**Shy** refers to the emotion, **bashful** to the disposition. "He is not bashful at home, but he is always shy in the presence of strangers. "A bashful child" (disposition); "you make him shy" (emotion).

**si**. Sound heard in scion (sī'on), sigh (breathe), Si (abbreviation for Silas), to cite, recite, scythe (for cutting hay), psychic, psychology, sciatica, science, sight (eyes), site (location).

**si**. Sound heard in scissors, cic'atrix, scintillate, Cinderella, cigar, cinch, cinema, cinnamon, citron, citrus, schism (siz-m), system.

**sick**, adjective (in England, this word is used almost exclusively to mean nauseated, inclined to vomit); **ill**, not well (there is no need for "illy," as ill is both adjective and adverb); an **ailing** child, who suffers and frets, often from an unknown cause; a **diseased** condition of certain organs or tissues; a

**qualmish** (kwâm'ish) feeling, as of oncoming nausea; **nauseated**, as if ready to throw up phlegm; **tired of a condition**; **weary of a long wait**; **disgusted with a person's character**.

Nouns: a **sickness**; an **illness**; an **ailment**, unknown or trifling; a **disease**, serious; a **mal'ady**, long and serious; **nausea** (nau'shî-ă), desire to throw up from the stomach; **sea-sickness**.—See Illness.

- a side**. Latin later; hence **lateral**, at the side: "a lateral opening"; a **collateral** deposit, an additional guarantee of repayment of a loan; an **equilateral** triangle, with three equal sides.—The **flank** of an animal; a person's **prôfile**, side face; **limit**, the end, beyond which one cannot go; **edge** of a flat surface; **facet** of a diamond; a **part**.

Located on the side of.....adjäcent to.

To go off on the wrong side.....dêviate from.

- a sieve** (siv; note the short i, as in sift); device for separating different sizes of certain articles, or for keeping out coarser articles; a **screen** for metals and ore; a **côlander** for kitchen use; a **riddle** for separating rocks of different sizes; a **separator** for cream; a **filter**, to remove impurities from a liquid.

**sight**. Latin visus; hence **vision**, act of seeing; **view**, thing looked at; **vista**, extensive outlook. Greek opsîs; hence **optician**, eyeglass and lens specialist; **optometrist**, eye correction expert.

Sight illusion which makes lines con-

verge.....perspective.

False sight of something which is

really below the horizon.....mirage (mêrâzh').

Sudden appearance.....apparition.

Sight of something which is not there..a hallucination.

Devices to aid sight.....eyeglasses, spectacles.

Near sight.....myopia.

Far sight.....presbyopia.

Distorted sight of lines.....astig'matism.

Eyesight doctor.....oculist.

A far-spread view.....a panorama.

- a sign**, way of indicating a purpose; a **mark**, cut or written; an **indication**, **pointer**, **index**, pointing to; a **trace**, faint; a **vestige**, very faint; an **emblem**, symbol; a **symptom** of coming disease; the **insig'nia** of an office, its ribbons, badges, medals, etc.; an officer's **épaulet**, or shoulder-badges; a **poster**, or advertising sign; a **showcard**, small poster for window use; the **stamp**, seal or mark imprinted upon an object; a **direction post**.

**significance** of an action; **signification** of a word, its **meaning** or **sense**; **import** of a decision, its meaning and full value; **importance** of a person, thing or act, its effect on the future; **value** for a certain purpose or to a particular person; **worth**, intrinsic, in itself.

**silence**, saying nothing; **quiet** (noun), absence of noise; **taciturnity**, great reluctance to unnecessary speech.—A **tâcit agree-**

ment, not mentioned explicitly; **silent** person, who is not saying anything; **dumb**, unable to speak; **speechless** as the result of surprise; **mute**, unwilling or unable to speak.

**silly**, adjective. From Anglo-Saxon *gesælig*, **happy**; related to German *selig*, **holy**, "because the holy men's faces in church statues looked happy and lifeless." Compare the British word "balmy," meaning silly.—**Foolish** person or thing; **fâtuus** idea or action; **inane** remark; **asinine** conduct.

- a **simile** (sim'il-ē); a comparison between objects or ideas, because they have something in common, as in "It is with words as with sunbeams; the more they are condensed, the deeper they burn."

**simple**, adjective (**simplicity**, to **simplify**).—Not complicated; **ingenuous** person, one naturally simple; **artless**, not putting on any art or trick; **innocent**, not having learned; **unsophisticated**, believing in good; **unaffected**, not seeking effect; **guileless** youth, not on the lookout for danger; **plain** food; **natural** products, not changed; **frugal** tastes.

Opposites: a **complex** situation; **complicated** object; **artful** person; **sophisticated** youth; **elaborate** details; **gaudy** attire, in bad taste.

**simultaneous** (sim' or si'-), which happens at the same moment: "An event is **simultaneous** with another; both happen **simultaneously**."—**Concurrent**, "which runs alongside": "The two jail sentences are to run concurrently," i.e., he will only stay in jail for the duration of the longer sentence; **concomitant**, "which accompanies": "War and its concomitant evils have left their heavy trace upon the world"; **coincident** with, which curiously happens at the same time: "Great wars have been coincident with extremely cold winters."

- a **sin**, a moral wrong-doing recognized as such by one's conscience; a **transgression**, or stepping over the bounds of the moral code; an **offense** against a particular rule; a **crime**, serious offense against the standards of the public conscience; **guilt**, the recognition of sinfulness; **deprav'ity**, literally "straying away from the right," a lack of moral righteousness likely to lead to transgression; **wickedness**, depravity as viewed by righteous people; **iniquity**, persistent sinfulness, or great injustice; **vice**, indulgence in low, sensual pleasures; **delinquency** of a young person, etc., failure to keep to the straight path.

A **deadly sin** (R. C.), one considered very serious; a **vēnial sin**, one of less consequence. **Deadly** or **mortal** sins (causing the "death of the soul"). The seven deadly sins are: **pride**, **covetousness** (avarice), **lust** (sensuality), **anger**, **gluttony**, **envy**, **slôth** (laziness).

See Faults.

**sincere**, adjective (**sincērer**, **sincērest**, **sincērely**, **sincērity**); whole-

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels *ā ē ī ō ū y* as in *mate*, *meet*, *mite*, *mote*, *mute*, *my*; *ă ă ī ō ū ŷ* as in *mat*, *met*, *mitt*, *not*, *nut*, *pity*; *ā* as in *father*; *ēr* as in *merry*; *er* as in *mercer*; *ou* as in *loud*; *au* as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ă* in *senate*). Consonants: *g* always as in *go*; *th* as in *thief*; *dh* as *th* in *mother*; *ng* as in *sing* or in *singer*; *ng-g* as *ng* in *finger*. See Syllables.



**hearted** approval, expression; **outspoken** criticism, made without regard for the person's feelings; **honest** endeavor; **genuine** concern for somebody's welfare; **true** friend; **single** purpose (singleness of purpose); **guileless** person, not giving thought to possible evil; **real**, based on facts.

**a** **sincere** or **sincere**, a job "without a care" or worry.

**to sing**. Past tense, sang: "Yesterday our canary sang." Past participle, sung: "He had never sung before."—Latin *cano*, cantum; hence to **chant** slowly, solemnly; an **incantation**, solemn magic formula; to **enchant**, charm like a singing siren; a **cantor**, a church song-leader; a **cantatrice** (pronounced either the Italian way, kan-ta-tré-châ, or the French way, kân-tâ-três), a woman opera singer; a **canticle**, a light song of praise. To intone the beginning of a chant; **hum** without opening the lips.

### Some words used on this subject

Singer, voice, glee, hymn, *basso-profundo* (the lowest voice); *bass* (low F to middle C); baritone (higher than *bass*); *tênor* (higher than baritone); contralto (lowest female voice); mezzo-soprano; soprano (highest female voice); a solo (song by one singer), a duet (by two singers), a trio (by three), a quartet (by four), a quintet (by five), a sextet (by six), a septet (by seven); a chorus (many singers); choir (*kwir*, church); a musical composition; a piece of music; a concert; an oratorio (sacred composition); an opera; an operetta (light musical drama); a musical comedy; the lyrics (sentimental poetry); a ballad (romantic song); a serenade (outside one's window at night); a hymn (religious), a dirge (mournful), a carol (Christmas); a melody (succession of pleasant tones), a tune (harmonizing series of tones), the air (of a song), an *ăriă* (catchy air in an opera).

**singular**, adjective: one of its kind, unexpected, unusual: "a singular behavior"; **peculiar** to an individual; **exceptional** merit.

In Grammar, a word is said to be in the singular when it refers only to one individual: hat, book, John. A singular noun or pronoun used as subject is followed by a singular verb: I am, he is, John goes. As the form of the verb in English is generally the same in the singular and plural (I don't, we don't), except in the third person (he, she, it: it doesn't, it goes), it is important to know the person as well as the number. See Person. A collective noun (army, people, jury, committee) may be considered as either **singular** or **plural** according to the thought in the mind of the person who speaks: "The committee are agreed" (i.e., the members of the committee among themselves; plural); "The committee has decided" (i.e., the committee as a whole, singular).—Some nouns with a plural form are considered singular: news, physics, etc. "The news is good," "Physics is a science." But names of arts in -ics are plural: "Gymnastics are good." When a word in -ics may be either the name of a science or that of an art, it is singular or plural according to

the speaker's intention: "Acoustics is the science of sound" (singular); "The acoustics of the hall are poor" (i.e., the various sound combinations produced by the structure of the walls; plural). See Plural.

**to sink.** Past tense, **sank**: "The boat sank in full view of the crowd"; past participle, **sunk**: "He has sunk his fortune in unlucky ventures."—To go down into a liquid; to **submerge**, as a submarine, intentionally; **immerse** something into a liquid, temporarily; **immerge** it permanently; to **founder**, be wrecked like a ship; **fail** in one's ventures.

**sin'uous**, adjective; winding or bending in and out, especially figuratively: "a sinuous approach, sinuous ways." Owing to the three S sounds, this word carries a suggestion of the snake, and an implication of crawling and underhand methods; **dēvious**, "going by a different way," is more suggestive of avoidance of publicity; **crooked**, with its K sounds, is more aggressive in its wickedness; **tor'tuous** is more obdurate; **circū'tious** is cautious and formal, without idea of concealment.—The word **sinuous** has no connection with the word **sin**, but comes from **sinus**, a bend.

**a sister.** Latin *soror*; hence **sorority**, a girls' organization. French *sœur*, pronounced almost like the English word "Sir."

The word **sister**, owing to the harshness of its sound group ST, is seldom used in literature with an idea of tenderness. Girls' names are preferred to the word "Sister." See **Mother**.

**to sit.** Past tense, **sat**: "We sat down for a rest"; past participle, **sat**: "We have sat here long enough." Latin *sedeo*, *sessum*; hence a **session**, or sitting of a public body; **obsession**, a persistent thought that "sits" heavily on one; to **supersede**, or "sit over" somebody, by taking his place.

**Sit** is an intransitive (i.e., complete) verb, requiring no object: "I sit down to breakfast at six-thirty every morning. There she sat, waiting for him. Many a time I have sat under the old elm tree. Won't you sit down for a minute?" However, it is also used as a transitive verb: "I sat the baby in his high chair. We sit the invalid up in bed."

**a situation**, the fact of being placed in a certain way; a **position** of responsibility in business; a public **office**; the **location** (U. S.) of a building. In Drama, a climax or crisis resulting from previous conflicting endeavors; a **predicament** in which some of the characters find themselves; a **conjunctiōn** of events. The term **climax** is properly used principally for the chief situation of the play or story. Situations are created by the play of **character** and **circumstances** upon one another.

The thirty-six fundamental situations, often stated to represent the limit of possibilities, are as follows:

1. Supplication.
2. Deliverance.
3. Crime pursued by vengeance.
4. Vengeance taken for kindred upon kindred.
5. Pursuit.
6. Disaster.

7. Falling prey to Cruelty or Misfortune.
8. Revolt.
9. Daring Enterprise.
10. Abduction.
11. The Enigma.
12. Obtaining.
13. Enmity of Kinsmen.
14. Rivalry of Kinsmen.
15. Murderous Adultery.
16. Madness.
17. Fatal Imprudence.
18. Involuntary Crimes of Love.
19. Slaying of a Kinsman Unrecognized.
20. Self-sacrifice for an Ideal.
21. Self-sacrifice for Kindred.
22. All Sacrificed for a Passion.
23. Necessity of Sacrificing Loved Ones.
24. Rivalry of Superior and Inferior.
25. Adultery.
26. Crimes of Love.
27. Discovery of the Dishonor of a Loved One.
28. Obstacles to Love.
29. An Enemy Loved.
30. Ambition.
31. Struggle against a God.
32. Mistaken Jealousy.
33. Erroneous Judgment.
34. Remorse.
35. Recovery of a Lost One.
36. Loss of Loved Ones.

**six.** In Arabic figures, 6; Roman, VI; Latin *sex*, hence **sextuple**, sixfold; a **sextet**, six singers or six lines of poetry; a **sexennium**, six-year period; **sexennial**, happening once in six years. Greek *hex*; hence a **hexagon**, with six angles or sides; a **hexameter**, a verse of six measures; a **hexapod**, six-footed insect.

**skā.** Sound heard in skein (silk), escape.

**skā.** Sound heard in scaffold.

**skē.** Sound heard in scheme, mosquito.

**skě.** Sound heard in schedule, scherzo.

**skī.** Sound heard in schipperke (dog).

**skill** (**skilful** with one l; occasionally spelled, in America only, with two l's: **skillful**). Acquired ability to do well something difficult or technical; **dexterity** with one's hands; **proficiency** in an art, from long practice; **deftness** of one's fingers, etc., speed and ingenuity; **expertness** at a trade; **adroitness**, mental ability to grasp advantages; **craftsmanship** in a manual art; **science**, accurate thought; **technique**, good methods; **virtuosity** in music; **tact** with people; **marksmanship** in shooting; **repartee**, gift of quick and pointed response to sarcasm; **address**, skilful management; **capability** for a position, all-round ability; **com'petence** on a particular issue; **qualifica-**

tions for assuming a function; **mastery** of a trade; **excellence** at a certain achievement; **efficiency**, ability to achieve a result with a minimum of effort; **cleverness**, natural quickness of mind; **talent**, natural gift of a superior kind; **ingēnū'ty** in making both ends meet; **faculty** for doing particular things well and easily; **gift**, fortunate native endowment in a certain direction; **knack** of doing things just the right way, whether natural or acquired; **gēn'ius** (for), native talent of great intensity and originality; **knowledge**, acquired through study or experience; **an accomplishment** after much practice; **an attainment**, ability to do a thing worth while.

- a skin.** Latin *cutis*; hence a **cū'ticle**, a small piece of skin, "hang-nail"; **cū'tā'neous** disease; **subcutā'neous** eruption. Greek *derma*; hence the **ep'ider'mis**, the outer skin; a **taxidermist**, one who preserves animal skins; a **pachyderm** (pāk'ī-derm), a thick-skinned animal, like the elephant; **hy'poder'mic**, syringe, injection used under the skin.—The **hide** of an animal; **pelt**, before tanning; **leather**, tanned; **rind** of a fruit; **peel** of an orange; **parchment**, prepared underskin of an ass; an **intēg'ument** (scientific or literary), an outer skin or covering.

A healing mark on the skin.....a **cicatrix** (sīk' or sīkā'-).

**skw** (See *squ-* spellings).—Sound heard in squall (storm, cry), square, squaw (Indian wife), squeeze.

**sky.** Latin *cœlus*; hence **celestial**, pertaining to the skies; also (with a capital C) **Celestial**, pertaining to China, the kingdom ruled by the dynasty of the "Sons of Heaven"; **ceiling**, the "sky" of a room.—The **sky** is the physical region of the clouds, the stars, etc., formerly called the **firmament** or "immovable" dome over the earth; also (in the plural) the **heavens**; while **heaven** (in the singular) is used principally in a religious sense, as the region of higher impulses, etc.—The **welkin** (poetic), cloud region; the **em'pyrē'an** (poetic), the highest heaven; the **starry vault**.

### Some words used on this subject

Astronomy (science of the stars), astrology (fortune-telling by the stars); the **ēther** (weightless substance believed to fill all space); a **star** (distant sun), a **planet** (body which revolves around the sun), a **moon** (body which revolves around a planet), a **sāt'ellite** (subordinate body), a **mētēor** (falling stellar mass), a shooting star, a **cōm'et** (traveling heavenly body with a tail), a **nebula** (cloud-like group of stars), the **Milky Way**, or **Galaxy**, a constellation (a group of fixed stars); the **atmosphere** (air, etc., surrounding the earth); the **horizon** (line at which the sky appears to meet the landscape); an **eclipse**; a **revolution** (complete movement of one body around another); **rotation** (of a body on its axis); the **orbit** (of a body, its path in reference to its center of attraction); an **observatory**, a **telescope**.

See **Heaven**.

to **slap** (slapping, slapped), strike with a flat surface; **cuff** with the open hand; **spank**, hit hard on the buttocks, as a punishment, either with hand or with a flat object.

See Beat.

**sleep**, noun. Latin *somnus*; hence **somnambulist**, one who walks in sleep; **insomnia**, sleeplessness; **som'noient**, inclined to sleepiness; Latin *dormio*, to sleep; hence **dormitory**, sleeping place in a community house; **dormant** ability, passion, desire; **rest**, without sleeping; **repose**, relaxation; **nap**, short sleep period; **doze**, going off to sleep; **slumber**, long, peaceful sleep; **drowse**, heaviness of head; **siesta** after a meal; **côma**, unconsciousness from illness; **trance**, visionary sleep; **lêth'argy**, "death sleep," i.e., inaction; **torpor**, loss of desire or power to exert oneself; **stū'por**, mental numbness.

God of sleep.....Morpheus.

Asleep .....in the arms of Morpheus.

to **sleep**. Past tenses, **slept**. To **nod**, drop the head sleepily; to **doze**, go off into light sleep; **drowse** heavily, while trying to keep awake; **slumber** peacefully; **snooze** between duties.

See Sleep above.

**sleight** (slit) of hand, juggling, conjuring tricks; **mă'gic** (mă'j'ik), the supposedly secret art of performing wonders.

**slight**, adjective; unimportant; originally meaning "plain, simple": "a slight cold," "a slight error"; **small**, not large; **frail** person, constitution, not sturdy; **slender** build, not broad; **slim** figure, of small width; **lean** person, meat, not fat; **skimpy** garment, cut too sparingly; **meager** information, details; **feeble** effort, lacking energy; **weak** resolution, not strong; **delicate** color, not applied in excess.

to **slope** (sloping), have a direction which is not parallel with the horizontal plane; **slant** from the vertical, as handwriting; **incline** to one side; **list** to starboard or to port, like a ship with a shifted cargo; **lurch** dangerously and suddenly to one side, like a moving vehicle; **tilt** away from the vertical, like a pole. —A **slope**, **slant**, **incline**, **list**, **lurch**, **tilt up** (as above); a **decliv'ity**, downward slope; a **grade** (U. S.), **gră'dient** (England), ascending road; a **descent**, gradual slope; a **drop**, sharp sudden slope; a **dip**, sudden slope before a rise; a **bêvel** on a manufactured article, as on a mirror, an edge cut away from the plane of the article; a **ramp**, built slope as in a two-story drive-up garage; the **bias** or departure from the line of the grain, as in cutting cloth.

a **slough**, mud hole (pronounced *slou*, to rhyme with *cow*); a **bog** of wet decayed vegetable matter; a **quagmire**, soft land which yields under the feet; a **marsh**, flooded lowlands; a **swamp**, land saturated with water.

The same word pronounced *slōō*, and sometimes spelled

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels *ă* *ā* *ī* *ō* *ū* *y* as in *mate*, *meet*, *mite*, *mote*, *mute*, *my*; *ā* *ā* *ī* *ō* *ū* *y* as in *mat*, *met*, *mitt*, *not*, *nut*, *pity*; *ā* as in *father*; *ēr* as in *merry*; *ēr* as in *mercer*; *ou* as in *loud*; *au* as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ā* in *senate*). Consonants: *g* always as in *go*; *th* as in *thief*; *dh* as *th* in *mother*; *ng* as in *sing* or in *singer*; *ng-g* as *ng* in *anger*. See Syllables.

**slow**, is a local American variant, meaning "a low place in the prairie, where water accumulates for lack of natural drainage." A **coulee** (koo-lā'), a deep dry gulch, with easier slopes than a canyon.

Do not confuse with **slough**, pronounced slūf, a snakeskin.

**slow** (slō), adjective. Latin tardus; hence to **retard**, cause to be slow; **tardy** person, who arrives late.—Having low velocity, lacking speed or understanding; **sluggish** liver; **dull**, **unintelligent** person; **late** for an appointment, compared with time of expected arrival; **deliberate** person, who takes ample time to decide or act; **dilatatory** tactics, intended to delay action; **phlegmatic** (fleg-mat'ik) temperament, not easily rushed; **unruffled** temper, showing equanimity.

**small**, adjective. Greek micros; hence a **microbe**, small organism; **microscope**, instrument for seeing small things.—Not large; little, not great; **tiny**, very small; **wee**, small and loved; **diminutive**, compared with others much larger; **pūny** child, animal, not sturdily grown; **stunted**, checked in growth; **insignificant**, of no importance; **minute** particle, hardly measurable; **infinitesimal**, exceedingly small; **dapper**, neat; **petite** girl, small in build but well proportioned; **narrow**, without width; **slight**, thin; **lean**, not fat; **faint** image, echo, hardly visible or audible; **petty**, small-minded; **remote** risk, not imminent; **exiguous** space, confined; **scant** attire, almost insufficient; **limited** means; **inadequate** for a particular purpose; **imperceptible**, hardly large enough to be seen; **intangible**, hardly large enough to be "touched" or noticed; **embryonic**, not grown beyond its earliest stages; **rudimentary**, containing only its first elements; **homeopathic** dose of medicine, very small.

A small trace, a spark.....a scintilla.

Very small portrait.....a miniature.

To make a circumstance appear small.....to extenuate.

**smart**, quick in thought or action; **piquant** (pē'kant) remark, having pungency; **intelligent** person; **clever** person or idea (in the British sense—showing wit or skill); **sharp** rejoinder; **bright** idea, appearing as a sudden enlightenment; **pert** youngster, lively; **saucy**, full of "pep" and repartee; **good-looking** person, well-groomed; **fashionable** society; **elegant** clothes, furniture; **stylish**, **modish**, **chic** (shīk) dress.

a **smell** as perceived by the nose; an **ōdor**, the quality which makes a substance perceptible to the sense of smell: "the odor of musk," "a pungent odor" (often used for unpleasant smells or poetically); the **scent** of an animal as perceivable by another animal; the **trail**, the line in which the scent travels, as found by hunters; a **perfume**, pleasant; **fumes** from chemical action; an **aroma**, oily, pungent; a **frāgrance**, extracted or perceived; an **essence**, much concentrated frāgrance; a **sāvor**, taste; a **stench**, offensive; a **tang**, peculiar; a **rédolence**, strong frāgrance; a **whiff**, sudden odor brought on the breeze.

to **smell**. Past tenses, **smelled** or **smelt**.—This verb is used either with or without an object: "A dog smells a rat; a rose smells sweet."—To **sniff**, try hard to perceive an odor; **inhale** deep into the lungs; **scent**, perceive that an odor has been left; also figuratively: "to scent mischief."

to **smile** (**smiling**, **smiled**; a **smile**).—"Almost all the writers on laughter have assumed without question that the smile is identical with the laugh, or have regarded it as a partial and incipient laughter. I suggest that this is an error. . . . Note one extreme and significant contrast between the smile and the laugh—the smile is beautiful, the laugh is ugly. Why, then, does laughter so often die away in smiles? . . . The answer is that laughter, freely indulged, gives rise, like all other successful activities, to satisfaction which expresses itself in a smile." (Wm. McDougall, *Outline of Psychology*.)

To **grin**, smile while exposing the teeth, the intermediate stage between laughter and smile; to **chuckle** with suppressed laughter; **simper** in a silly, conceited way; **smirk** in self-complacency.

See Laugh.

to **smoke** (**smōking**; **smōky**, adjective). Latin fumo; hence **fūmes**, chemical smoke; **perfume**, "penetrating smoke," i.e., volatile essence; a **fūmarole**, a small smoke-hole in a volcano; to **fūmigate** a room, disinfect it by burning chemicals; to **fūme**, emit smoke, or, figuratively, be very angry.

A large smoke hole in volcano.....the crāter.

**smooth** (**smōōdh**), adjective; not rough: "a smooth road"; **slippery** surface, like ice; **level**, having no ups and downs; **polished** furniture; **sleek** hair, well-brushed and oily; **silky** texture; **velvety** surface; **glossy** photograph, paper, smooth and reflecting light; **glacé** (**glās'ā**) kid, leather; **even** temper, agreeable disposition; **suave** (**sōō-āv**) manners, very civil; **unctuous** manners, too "oily" to be sincere; **untruthful** person; **tricky** method of obtaining one's way; **slick** performance of a trick (U. S. colloq.); **glib** tongue, talker; **flattering** talk; **ingrātiating** action; **plausible** argument, which sounds truer than it is; **harmonious**, musical; **euphonious** sounds; **liquid** tones of the voice, flowing smoothly; **mellow** tints, of delicate quality; **clear** glass, etc.

a **snake**, a serpent (poetic), a reptile in general, "crawling thing"; **viper** or **adder**, poisonous European and Asiatic snake; a **cōbra**, Indian or African snake which dilates its neck before striking; a **boa constrictor**, large nonpoisonous South American snake which crushes its prey between its folds; **pŷthon**, poetic and classical name for a kind of boa; a **rattlesnake** or **rattler**, venomous American snake with a tail that rattles; a **col'ubrine** (noun or adjective), general name for any non-venomous snake.

a **sneer**, an unfriendly form of laughter or a grimace in which the corner of the upper lip is slightly turned up in contempt, from a mixed feeling of loathing and superiority; a verbal expres-

sion of amused contempt; **sătire**, words which bitingly express amused contempt; a **jeer**, rude words of contempt, often spoken direct to the person; a **gibe** (jib), a more refined and concealed expression of amused contempt; **quip**, a bright, witty remark with a touch of contempt; a **scoff**, expression of doubt mixed with amusement: "scoffing at religion"; a **fling**, sarcastic expression thrown out without serious desire to hurt; **sarcasm**, a series of scornful expressions in an amused tone: **irony**, the sarcastic method, as used in literature or in speaking; **superciliousness**, the attitude of superiority; a **slight**, minor humiliation inflicted upon one, seriously.

See Laugh, Smile.

to **snicker** or **snigger**, laugh slyly with little cackling sounds.

See Laugh, Smile, Scorn.

**snow** (snō), a precipitation of lightly frozen rain. (It is **snowing**; it **snows**; it **snowed** yesterday; it **has snowed**).

The words **snowball**, **snowdrop**, **snowfall**, **snowstorm**, **snowflake**, are written without a hyphen.

**Snow skates**.....**skis** (correctly pronounced shēz, but often Americanized skēz).

**sō**.—Sound heard in sew (with a needle), sow (seed), sewn (sōn, with a needle); sown (like seed).

**so**.—Adverb, conjunction and interjection.—The colloquial use of **so**, meaning **very**, is permissible in familiar writing and should be followed by a note of exclamation: "He is so kind!" but it is better avoided in very formal writing: "He is very kind." (followed by a period). In the second part of a compound sentence, **so** by itself marks the beginning of a clause, and should be preceded by a semicolon: "He was tired ; **so** he sat down." When the relationship is a simple one, however, it is better to make a single sentence of it, with a comma: "Being tired, he sat down"; but if the connection is strongly logical, it is better to make a compound sentence with **therefore** preceded by a semicolon: "He has not eaten for a whole day; **therefore** he will be glad of a meal." In a compound sentence **and so** is preceded by a comma: "He came too soon , **and so** he saw all the preparations." **So that** is preceded by a comma in a complex sentence: "He arrived early , **so that** he could see the preparations."

**soap**. Latin *sapo*, *saponis*, a pomade; hence to **săpōnify**, to convert into soap; **saponaceous**, soapy. French *savon*; hence **săvonette**, a soap preparation.

to **soar** above a height, nobly, slowly, like an eagle.

to **sob** (**sobbing**, **sobbed**), catch the breath while weeping or in grief; **weep**, shed tears; **cry**, make a vocal noise, with or without tears; **wail**, utter long, high-pitched, plaintive cries; **whine**, complain in a nasal drawl; **whimper**, complain in whining tones; utter a low, interrupted cry which appears to catch at the base of the nose; **groan** in prolonged, low tones, as in great pain; **snivel**, whine unconvincedly; **sniffle**, sob while



inhaling through the nose; **snuffle**, inhale through an obstructed nose, not necessarily in pain.

**söber**, adjective; habitually **temperate**, especially as to drink or, figuratively, as to demonstrations of temper; **dry**, colloquial U. S., not having partaken of alcoholic liquor; **abstemious** person, who lives on scant food and drink; **abstinent** person, who does not touch alcoholic liquor; **moderate** drinker, one who partakes of alcoholic drink in small quantities; **staid** person, conduct, not given to excitability; **frugal** tastes, content with a moderate amount and variety of food; **sedate** manner, person, not liable to be easily excited; **solemn** resolution, promise, impressive and very formal.

Nouns: a total **abstainer** from alcoholic drink; a **teetotaler** (England); a **dry** (U. S.), one who advocates Prohibition.

Being sober .....sobriety.

**society**. Latin socius, a fellow; hence **söcial**, pertaining to fellowship or the art of living in groups; **söciabie**, who behaves agreeably toward others; **socialism**, a system of government based on public ownership of the means of production, distribution and exchange; an **associate** of a person or group, one who shares in his profits or interests; to **dissociate** two propositions, treat them as separate.—A society is any kind of organized group; **society** (often written with a capital S, for added dignity) is the group supposedly formed by the rich or the fashionable, or by the followers of the royal court and the nobility; the **élite** (ä-lēt') or "selected" people; the **world of fashion**; the **beau monde** (bō-möngd) or "fine world."

**soft**, adjective: not offering much resistance to the touch or to a tool; **smooth**, having a uniform surface; **silky**; **velvety**; **waxen**; **supple** joints, bending easily; **lithé** or **lithesome** or **lissom** person, nimble, bending easily; **limp**, not rigid, offering no resistance; **flimsy** construction, paper, texture; **flabby** tissue, lacking firmness; **flaccid** (flak'sid) muscle, lacking elasticity; **mellow** to the taste; **ductile** metal, capable of being drawn out; **malleable** metal, easily hammered without breaking; **flexible**, which is naturally rigid, but can be bent, like whalebone; **pliable**, which can be easily bent over for working, like leather; **plastic**, easily molded, like clay; **tractable** person, animal, not refractory; **gentle** disposition, not inclined to hurt; **döcile** student, aménable to instruction; **foolish**, lacking intelligence; **effeminate** man, lacking manliness; **feeble-minded** person, definitely deficient in average reason.

To soften justice.....to temper justice.

To make (a rule) softer.....to humanize, modify.

To use soft words on somebody...to möllify somebody.

To soften a punishment.....to mitígate.

Softening circumstances.....extenuating circumstances.

To soften (meat, etc.) by soaking...to määcerate.

To soften one's anger.....to relax.

the **soil**, the loose upper strätum of the earth in which vegetable growth is possible; the **ground**, the firm part of the earth,

from the point of view of one walking on it; **land**, the surface of the earth, as compared with water; **earth** (in general), **dirt** (U. S.): "A dirt farmer," one with practical experience; **loam**, mixture of clay and sand; **hūmus** or decayed vegetable matter; **mold**, earth mixed with decayed vegetable matter; **allūvial** land, on which matter has been deposited by flood; a **clod** or lump of dirt; the **subsoil** under the immediate surface; **gumbo** (Western U. S.), silty soil that becomes very sticky when wet.

### Some words used on this subject

Poor, rich, sandy, stony, clayey, pōrous (which allows water to seep through), dry, wet, fertile (i.e., fruit-bearing), sterile (i.e., fruitless), lūxūriant (vegetation), abundant (sup-  
ply), alkali (filled with soluble mineral salts); **unearned** in-  
crement (value earned without effort by land-owner owing to  
increase in value of the land).

See Earth.

to **soil**, make dirty as in contact with bodily impurities: "Soiled  
linen"; **befoul**, cover with offensive matter; **defile** something  
sacred; **taint** a reputation; **tarnish** a shining surface; **sully**  
(poetic); **begrime** on the surface; **smear** a surface with some-  
thing defacing; **daub** with paint, recklessly; **stain** with a dye;  
**spot** unevenly on the surface; **contaminate** somebody by an  
unclean contact, as with a contagious disease; **pollute** a water  
supply; **smirch** one's honor; **smudge**, make dark with soot;  
**discolor**.

a **soldier**, one engaged in military service; **conscript**, one compul-  
sarily enrolled; **warrior**, poetic or primitive; **enlisted man**,  
voluntarily in service; **recruit**, recently induced to enlist;  
**sentry**, soldier on guard.

See Army.

a **sol'ecism**, a grammatical turn which has not received public ap-  
proval, or which contradicts current usage, like the phrase:  
"It's what there is nothing else but," or "They don't do  
nothing."

**solid**, adjective (**solidity**, to **solidify**); which resists pressure;  
**firm**, not easily shaken; **substantial**, well-built; **rigid** very  
firm and straight, "a rigid support," "a rigid duty"; **com-  
pact**, occupying little space; **dense**, closely pressed together,  
crowded; **thick**. "Matter falls under the senses as solids,  
liquids, and gases."

Solid particles that fall to the bottom in a

liquid.....a precip'itate.

**solidarity**, standing together as one, as of creditors, allies.

**somebody**, **someone**.—There is no recognized difference in sense  
between these words. It may be noted, however, that, owing

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels **ā ē ī ō ū y** as in *mate*, *meet*, *mite*, *mote*, *mute*, *my*; **ă ă ī ō ū ŷ** as in *mat*, *met*, *mitt*, *not*, *nut*, *pit*; **ā** as in *father*; **ēr** as in *merry*; **ēr** as in *mercer*; **ou** as in *loud*; **au** as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ă in *senate*). Consonants: **g** always as in *go*; **th** as in *thief*; **dh** as *th* in *mother*; **ng** as in *sing* or in *singer*; **ng-g** as *ng* in *finger*. See Syllables.

to its origin and to the heaviness of its sound, **somebody** is more suggestive of physical appearance: "There is somebody at the door," while **someone** suggests an intellectual unit: "Someone may disagree with this observation."

**some day** (two words), **one day**, **one fine day**.

**somehow** (one word), in some way.

**someone** (sūm'wūn), pronoun meaning **somebody**; better written in one word by analogy with **somebody**, but often written in two words: **some one**. In two words, however, it is more truly a double adjective: "Some one man will do it easily while several together may fail."

**something** (one word).

See Questions and Answers.

**sometimes** (one word), **occasionally**, **infrēquently**.

**Sometimes** is different from **sometime**, which means at one time: "I met him sometime during the last year."

**some way** (two words).

**somewhat** (one word), to some extent: "It is somewhat doubtful."

**somn-**. Latin root meaning "sleep." Derived forms: **somnam-bulist** (sleep-walker), **insom'nia**. See Sleep.

**son-**. Latin root meaning "sound" (noise). Derived forms: **sōnō'rous**, **con'sōnant**, **dis'sōnance**. See Sound.

a **son** (sūn). Latin filius; hence filial devotion, as due by a son; to affiliate oneself with a larger group, to acquire a dependent relationship to it.

a **song**; a **ballad**, romantic; **lullabȳ**, cradle song; **hlt**, buoyant; national **anthem**; Christmas **carol**; church **hymn** (hĭm); slow and solemn **chant**; funeral **dirge**.

**sono'rous** or **son'orous**, which produces sound vibrations, loud, res'onant: "a sonorous voice."

**soo**. Sound heard in sou (French cent), Sioux City, Sault St. Marie, suave (sooav), suède (leather) (sooād).

**sōōn**, at no great distance from now; **sooner**, **rather than**, in preference to; **early**, not long after the appointed time.

**soprano** (sōprā'no); plural **sopranos**; the highest range to be covered by a woman's voice, or a singer with such a voice.

a **sorrow**, depression caused by a loss or pain; **anxiety** for the future; **anguish**, grave doubt and fear; **concern** for somebody's welfare; **care** of the present; **despair**, loss of hope; **grief** at a loss; **dejection** following loss of hope; **distress** at one's impotence; **pain** due to keen sensation or to realization of an evil; **mourning** for a loss; **discomfiture** at not finding what one joyfully anticipated; **chagrin** over one's failure and often over another's success; a **woe** or **wo**, great misery: "Woe is me!" "Woe to the vanquished!"; an **ordeal** through which one has to pass to test one's mettle; a **trial** of one's mettle; **tribulations**, continued trials; an **ache** (āk), physical pain in a part of the body; a **regret**, wish one had acted otherwise; **remorse**, persistent sharp regret that one did wrong by not acting otherwise; **repentance**, desire to make amends for

the wrong done; **compunction**, sense of guilt; **contrition**, humble feeling after wrong-doing; **pen'tence**, humble state of one who is conscious of guilt; **expiation**, paying the penalty.

**sorry**, adjective; filled with sorrow. "I am sorry," I acknowledge the wrong and regret the harm done; **sad**, not cheerful, from any cause; **pen'tent**, in a humble frame of mind after wrong-doing; **contrite**, feeling very small after wrong-doing; **repentant**, wishing to make amends; **remorseful**, persistently reminded of guilt by his conscience.

To say "sorry" . . . to apologize (to somebody for something).

**a sort of, kind of.** These expressions are often used in speech for lack of more precise definition which should, however, be made in writing, as by using special adjectives or adverbs: "He is **somewhat** tired (not "kinder tired"), **rather** tired; a **curious, strange, unusual** shape, etc. (not "it was kinder peculiar").

**a soul** (sōl). Latin anima, life, motion, breath; hence an **ānīmal**, a creature endowed with motion; to **animate**, endow with life or motion. Greek psyche; hence **psychology** (sī-kōl'ojī), the science of the human mind; **psychic** (sī'kik), pertaining to the human mind or its phenomena.

Every religion and every philosophy having its own interpretation of "the soul," writers should use the term cautiously and in accordance with the characterizations they have created.

A man's immortal soul; his guiding **conscience**, which discerns right and wrong; the **breath** of life; the **spirit** that pervades all that is; man's **mind**, whereby he perceives the facts of the intellect; his **intuition**, whereby he senses facts, especially of an ethical nature, not knowingly perceived by the senses; his **emotions** or the expression of his desires, based on his instincts; his **feelings** or tendency to react to certain emotions; his **sentiments** or accumulated trend of beliefs based on past emotions; his **cog'nition** or knowledge; his **cōna'tion** or endeavors; his **behavior** or **con'duct**.

Number of "souls" (i.e., human beings) in an ārēa . . . . . the population.

To die . . . . . to give up the ghost.

To lose one's soul (religion) . . . . . damnation.

Theory of the universal soul . . . . . animistic theory.

**a sound.** Latin sonus; hence **sono'rous**, full-sounding; **res'onant**, which sends back the sound. Greek phone; hence **phono-graph**, a device which "writes the sound"; **phonet'ics**, the science of articulate sound; **telephone**, "distant voice"; **microphone**, a device for catching "small sounds."

Most names of sounds are imitative: bang, buzz, boom, clatter, click, swish, tick, etc.

Sound sent back by obstacle . . . . . an echo (ĕk'o).

Echoing quality of a voice . . . . . res'onance.

The science of sounds . . . . . acoustics (ă-kōō'stiks)

A self-contained sound ..... a vowel.  
 Sound heard only with a vowel..... a consonant.  
 Repetition of same sounds in words..alliteration.  
 Many harmonious sounds together...a symphony.  
 Clear utterance of sounds.....enunciation.  
 Correct articulation and sound of  
     words .....pronunciation.  
 Well-sounding language.....euphonious (adjective).  
 See Music, Singing.

**sour**, adjective, lacking in sweetness, unpleasant to the taste, like fermented milk or over-ripe fruit; **acid** (a scientific word opposed to alkaline or to neutral), biting or cutting, like vinegar, lemon juice; **bitter**, having a sharp taste which is sometimes not altogether unpleasant and which causes one to contract the muscles of one's face around the mouth and nose, like an unripe orange; **salt** or **salty**, having a peculiar taste like salt; **tart**, almost sour to the taste; **acidulous**, slightly sour, especially when the acidity is perceived through a sweetening agent, as in a candy drop; **sharp**, cutting; **acid** smell, like that of wood smoke; **dry** beverage, unsweetened.

**Sour wine** is a tart wine drunk by Old World peasants, not to be confused with **vinegar**, which is entirely sour and unfit to drink. The gospel word "vinegar" in the Crucifixion narrative is really **sour wine**, an acceptable drink. (Weymouth.)

**a source** (sors), literally the "rising point," the place, person, etc., from which something originates: "a source of inspiration," "a book compiled from original sources"; a **spring** of water, where it appears spontaneously at ground level; a **fountain**, artificial arrangement whereby the water rises in a jet above the ground; a **well**, water found at the bottom of a shaft or excavation below ground level; an **artesian well**, a deep bore well of great depth which delivers water at high pressure at ground level. Most of these words are largely used figuratively, in the sense of **origin**, **beginning**, **starting point**.

**south**, adjective and noun.—Written with a small **s**, "a south wind" except in the phrase "the South," meaning the region below Mason and Dixon's line.—Derived adjective, **southern** (pronounced sŭdh'ern); with capital **S**, the **Southern States**; a **Southerner**.

**a sovereign** (sŏv'rĭn). See **King**.

**to sow** a seed. Past tenses, **sown** or **sowed**. (Do not confuse with the verb to **sew** a seam, which is pronounced in the same way.) To **scatter** recklessly in any direction; **disseminate** knowledge in many directions, but judiciously; **broadcast** a fact, make it known everywhere; **distribute** according to a plan.

**space**, noun.—This word, like all words which relate to ultimate realities, should be used with great caution, especially when it comes to deducing logical conclusions from its assumed obvious meaning. Science and philosophy have not solved the problem of what space is.—A **space** between two objects; the **distance** from one object to another; an **interval** of time between two events; an **intermission** between acts in a

play; **room** or sufficient space in which to do something; “**a place** for everything, and everything in its place”; the **area** or two-dimensional space (length and width) occupied by an object; the **surface** or outer area of a body that has three dimensions (length, width, depth); a **surface**, in geometry, a two-dimensional form; the **span** of a bridge, the length from one support to another; the **span** of one’s life, its allotted duration; a **région** or place known by certain definite characteristics: “a mountainous region,” “the region of the clouds”; a **country**, political division of the earth’s surface; a **section**, small natural portion; a **văc’uum**, a space devoid of air; a **stand**, room enough for something or somebody to stand and carry on a trade; the **wilds**, unoccupied and uncultivated spaces of the earth; a **désert**, large barren space; the **êther**, the supposed substance that fills the space between celestial bodies; the **heavens**, the **sky**, the space around the earth, perceived as a vast expanse dotted with stars.

**a spark**; to **sparkle**. See Fire, Bright.

to **speak**. Past tense, **spoke**: “Yesterday he spoke to us”; past participle, **spoken**: “He has never spoken to them.”—Latin loquor, locutus; hence **êl’ôquent**, able to speak convincingly; **êlocution**, the art of effective speaking; **loquâcious**, talkative; a **locution**, a peculiar phrase; **circumlocution**, a round-about phrase, “beating about the bush”; an **allocation**, a formal address to a body of people, as by its president; a **côlloquy**, an argument or discussion; **solil’oquy**, talking to oneself. Latin also dico, dictum, to say; hence to **predict**, foretell; **contradict**, etc. Greek logos, the word; hence **prô-lôgue**, literally “foreword,” the part that precedes a play; **eulogy**, a speech in praise of somebody. Greek also phemizein, to speak; hence **euphemism**, a pleasant saying, a nice way of putting something unpleasant.

To utter a sound; **pronounce** a word; **articulate** a syllable; **talk** fluently; **chat** with a friend; **converse** with anybody; **say** something; **tell** somebody something; **express** an opinion; **confer** with somebody on an important matter; **discuss** a topic; **argue** with somebody in order to change his views; **debate** publicly; **recite** a composition; **declaim** rhetorically; **lecture** on a learned subject; **preach** a sermon in church; **discourse** at length on an involved subject; **improvise** a speech; **extemporize**, speak without preparation; **stutter**, hesitate in speech; **stammer** from a speech defect; **lisp**, pronounce **s** like **th**: “hith thithter (his sister)”; **drawl**, speak slowly and lazily; **shout**, speak loudly; **whisper**, speak quietly; **scream** loudly and in a high key, in terror; **murmur** against somebody; **reprimand** somebody for a wrong; **affirm** a truth; **aver**, acknowledge as true; **admit** an objection; **assert** something against opposition; **accept** somebody’s assertion; **controvert** a statement by bringing facts against it; **rant**, talk violently; **câvil** at a difficulty; **dogmatize** upon a subject as if one were the final authority; **denounce** an evil; **dêprecate** a course of action as unsuitable; **digress** from the subject; **fulminate**, thunder against; **inveigh** against somebody, with invectives;

call somebody to make him come; **exclaim** suddenly; **cry** in pain or surprise; **soliloquize**, speak to oneself; **confabulate**, plan with others; **outline** a course of action briefly.—See Say.

**special** (spēsh'ul), adjective; out of the ordinary: "a special train," "a special message"; **particular**, reserved for one class of cases only: "Please take particular notice of this"; **individual**, suitable for the one person only: "individual drinking cups"; **specific**, limited and inapplicable to others: "a specific purpose"; **dēfīnite**, known and understood: "a dēfīnite object in view"; **concrete**, actually true in all its details: "a concrete example."

In writing, better visualization is created by the use of **specific** language: "twelve miles," "a touch of persimmon," instead of **general** terms: "great distance," "a touch of color"; **concrete** illustrations also make a statement appear more real: "I made a terrible mistake yesterday" (general statement). "Seeing a man who held out his hat in his hand, I mistook him for a beggar and gave him a dime" (concrete illustration).

**a species** (spēshēz), a cat'egory less than the gē'nus and greater than the variety.—In the natural sciences, the cat'egories are, in the order of decreasing importance, the **phylum** (fī'lum), **class**, **order**, **fam'ily**, **gē'nus**, **species**, **vari'ety**, **individual**.

**spect-** (-spic-). Latin root meaning "look." Derived forms: **spectā'tor**, **spectacle**, **aspect**, **respect**, **retrospect**, **prospect**; **conspic'uous**, **perspicācity**. See Look.

**a spectator**, literally "one who sees," particularly one who attends a spectacle or arranged show; a **beholder**, one who watches attentively; an **onlooker**, one who happens to look without much interest; a **witness**, one who is present and sees or hears; an **eye-witness**, one who sees all the details with his own eyes; an **observer**, one who carefully studies all the details; a **passer-by**, one who sees while passing.

The people who sit in a motion picture theater are properly called the "spectators," not the "audience."

**a speech**.—See also Speak, Say.

A speech to oneself.....a solil'oquy.

A set speech committed to memory...a declamation.

A talk with others.....a col'loquy.

A public and impassioned speech...a harangue (hă-răng').

An address to students or spiritual

charges.....an allocution.

A speech on a learned subject.....a lecture.

A speech in church.....a sermon.

A long, scheming conversation.....a confabulation.

A violent denunciation.....a diät'ribe.

An improvised or extemporized

speech.....an impromptu speech.

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels ä ä i ö ü y as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ä ä i ö ü ä y as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; ä as in father; êr as in merry; er as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ä in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.

- The art of public speaking.....oratory, rhetoric.  
 Mode of utterance or articulation....delivery (good or bad).  
 One who argues on logic.....a dialectician.  
 Art of convincing and persuasive  
 speech .....éloquence.  
 Relative to public speaking.....forensic, adjective;  
 ("the forensic arts").
- The formal "wind-up" of a public  
 speech .....the p<sup>er</sup>oration.  
 A certain way of speaking.....the parlance (of a  
 trade).  
 Irish way of speaking English.....a brōgue (brōg').  
 Local form of language.....a dialect.  
 The language of the people.....the vulgar tongue, the  
 vernacular.
- (A word or phrase) used in speech  
 only .....colloquial (adjective).  
 Bombastic manner of speech.....grandiloquence.  
 Speech in mockery.....satire.  
 Long speech in denunciation.....a tirāde.  
 Denunciation in speech.....obloquy.

**speech, parts of.** The various grammatical functions of words have been grouped under the names of Parts of Speech. The parts of speech are: the **article** (a, an, the), called by many modern grammarians an adjective; the **noun** or name of things, persons and concepts: "table, man, goodness"; the **adjective**, or word which expands or limits the concept expressed by the noun: "a large house," "this door" (large, this, are adjectives); the **pronoun** or noun-substitute: I, you, he, who, which, each, such; the **verb** or essential word, expressing action: go, struck, shall see; the **adverb** or word which modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb: "It is very cold," "He is entirely right," "She came slowly" (very, entirely, slowly, are adverbs); the **conjunction** or link-word: "although it is raining; because he came; while he was there" (although, because, while, are conjunctions); the **preposition**, which forms a simple link between words: "to me, for your, after him" (to, for, after, are prepositions); the **interjection**, or "thrown-in" word: "Alas! Oh! Bah!"

See Article, Adjective, Pronoun, etc.

**to speed.** Past tense **sped** or **speeded**.

See Fast.

**to spell.** Past tense (in America) **spelled**, (in England) **spelt**.

**spelling** or **orthog'raphy**, the art of using standardized combinations of letters to produce recognizable forms corresponding to spoken words. Spelling is constantly undergoing changes from one generation to the next. See Spelling Reform below.

**Spelling Reform**, the plan to change spelling so as to make it agree more closely with pronunciation. As English has many more sounds than letters, phonetic spelling is impossible without using one of three expedients:

(1) the introduction of new letters to represent especially



the longer vowel sounds *ā*, *ē*, *ī*, and the short vowels *ō* and *ū*.

(2) the introduction of accented letters in ordinary printing. This has proved disastrous in foreign countries and is a permanent cause of illiteracy where used extensively.

(3) the duplication of vowels on a conventional basis such as *ai* for the sound of *ā*, *ie* for the sound *ī*, *ue* for *ū* (paiper for paper, fieniet for finite, fueel for fuel).

Until the International Phonetic Alphabet (see Alphabet) gains more widespread recognition, spelling reformers are content with minor simplifications such as:—

(1) The dropping of entirely useless letters: *wil*, *hav*, *gon*, *siv* (sieve), *beuty*; (2) the use of *f* instead of the Greek *ph*: *filosofy*, *fotograf*; (3) the respelling of misleading words: *thru*, *enuf*, *tuf* (tough).

It is not true that such forms would make older books difficult to read, as we have no difficulty now in recognizing older forms such as "gentilman" or "liquorice." Nor would it make the language anything but easier for foreigners, so long as the reforms did not apply to words of Latin origin, which are the common patrimony of Western civilization. The word written "nation," for example, should be kept in its present form (until we adopt an absolutely phonetic spelling for the entire language), because the written words "national," "international," are used and recognized all over the earth.

The real question as to Latin words is whether we might not profitably change our pronunciation in a few outstanding cases, like "finite" (pronounced with two long i's). We could more easily learn to say *fin'it* or even *fin'it* than to write "feineit" or "fainait"; we should preserve the relationship with "infinite," a much used word.

As regards foreigners learning English, the most important improvement in our methods would be to indicate the tonic accent whenever it is found elsewhere than on the first syllable: *contem'porary*, *deter'rent*.

(Read also the Speech Principles given in this book under Syllables.)

**spelling rules.**—The following are the three most generally needed rules:

1. Drop final *-e* before adding a suffix which begins with a vowel: *sale*, *salable* (not *saleable*); *force*, *forcible*; *guide*, *guidance*. Exception: *mileage* with an *e*;—BUT keep the final *e* in the syllables *-ce*, *-ge* before an *a* or an *o*: *manage*, *manageable*; *advantage*, *advantageous*; *trace*, *traceable* (except: *mortgagor*, *pledgor*).

2. Change final *y* preceded by a consonant to *i* before adding a suffix: *try*, *trial*; *apply*, *appliance*; *pretty*, *prettier*, *prettiest*; *likely*, *likelihood*; *lovely*, *loveliness*. Except when the suffix begins with an *i*: *try*, *trying*; *apply*, *applying*. (The American spellings *dryly*, *slyly*, for *drily*, *slily*, are contrary both to rule and to the best English usage.)

3. In one-syllable words ending in a short vowel with a single final consonant (like *beg*, *get*), or in longer words

ending in an accented short syllable with a final consonant (like admit', forbid'), the last consonant is doubled before adding a suffix beginning with a vowel: begging, getting, admitting, forbidding.—(This does not apply to long syllables: repair', repairing; or to unaccented syllables: travel, traveler.)

**Note.** There is no such thing as a rule of any kind that works in all cases, in grammar or in anything else. Fairly complete rules for spelling are usually given in the Introduction to good dictionaries.

Read the important article on Rules of Word Division under Syllables in this book.

**to spend.** Past tense **spent**.—**Spend** freely; **expend** judiciously; **disburse** out of controlled funds; **waste** recklessly; **lavish** on somebody; **squander** an accumulation.

One who spends his money foolishly.....a spendthrift.  
One who will not spend reasonable amounts...a miser.

**a sphere**, see Round.—Figuratively, the **sphere** of one's activities; **scope** of one's ability; **field** wherein one labors; **province** wherein one is competent; **domain** where one is master; **realm** wherein one is king; **range** wherein one can reach; **department** of an organization; **bounds** of reason.

**a spice**, an aromatic flavoring substance of vegetable origin; a **condiment**, literally "thing eaten with" not eaten by itself; a **relish**, savory dish, especially a liquid sauce.

### Some words used on this subject

Salt, pepper, cayenne, mustard, curry, pickles, sauce, cinnamon, nutmegs, mace (tarragon), ginger, herbs, cloves, mint, spearmint, peppermint, paprika, caraway, rataria (rāt'a-fē'a), aniseed, vanilla, pistache or pistachio (pis-tā'shīo), betel (bēt'l) nut, licorice, allspice.—Articles of food usable by themselves (therefore not properly called condiments) are also used for flavoring others: onion, celery, parsley, strawberry, chocolate, maple sugar, etc.

**to spill.** Past tense **spilt** or **spilled**. (From Anglo-Saxon spillan, "to destroy.") To **spill** a liquid, allow it to be wasted through overflowing or running over the edge of a container: "It's no use crying over spilt milk"; **shed** blood, in murder; **slough** (slūf), shed one's skin, as a snake; **let** blood as physicians used to; **drop** something solid in a vertical line: "She dropped the pan and spilled the cream"; **scatter** various units in different directions.

**to spin.** Past tense, **spun**. Former past tense, **span**, as in:

"When Adam dived and Eve span

Who was then the gentleman?"

Latin filo; hence **filature**, the art of spinning; **filament**, a spun thread; **filigree**, thread-like jewelry.

**a spine**, the human spinal column or backbone; a **thorny leaf**; a **prickle**. Adjectives, **spiny**, **thorny**, **difficult**; **spineless**, figuratively, unenergetic.

**spirit**, life force; **Spirit** (with a capital S), God; a **soul**, individual unit of consciousness; a **ghost**, appearance of a departed form; **essence**, the unseen reality behind anything visible; **morale** (mo-räl') of a nation, an army, its optimism or pessimism; **mettle** of an individual, his power of conquest; **dash**, speed and courage shown by an individual; **go** (colloq.), **pep** (colloq.), **ginger** (colloq.); **disposition**, the sum total of one's natural tendencies; **inclination**, natural preference for a certain course of action; **temperament**, one's physical constitution and one's moral and intellectual tendencies taken as a whole.

See Soul.

**spirited**, adjective; not easily downed; **enterprising**, who seeks new fields to conquer; **energetic**, who does well and promptly what comes to his hand; **pushful** (colloq.); **spunky** (colloq.); **snappy** (slang).

A spirited, enterprising man.....a go-getter.

to **spit**. Past tense **spit**. To throw saliva from the mouth; **expectorate** (technical).

a **spit**; a slender pointed rod to hold meat while it roasts; also a narrow neck of land extending into the water.

**splendid**, adjective; literally "shining brightly"; **magnificent**, large and dignified; **resplendent** in its newness and polish, as a new uniform with brass buttons; **glittering** array of shining things; **dazzling** display of jewelry, which almost hurts the eyes; **gorgeous** uniforms, rich in the variety of their colors and ornaments; **picturesque**, such as would make a pleasing picture; **pompous** language or bearing, which befits high ceremonies of state; **impressive**, so presented as to command attention; **stately**, imposing and formal; **majestic**, imposing in its grandeur; **grand**, large and spectacularly presented; **luxurious**, very costly; **sumptuous**, involving great luxury and expenditure; **ostentatious** display of wealth, for the purpose of exciting envy; **pretentious**, excessively spectacular and a trifle vulgar; **münificent** gift, showing great generosity; **beautiful**, harmoniously made and pleasing to the eye; **superb**, exceedingly well or artistically done; **sublime** ideal, ennobling in its spiritual appeal; **solemn**, marked by hushed silence and great respect.

See Bright.

to **split**. Past tenses, **split**.—To separate into almost equal parts, as by driving a wedge between; **cleave** profoundly; **rend** a piece of cloth, a garment; **divide** according to a plan; **sunder** (poetic) that which is united.

a **split** or longitudinal crack; a **breach** in a city's defenses, through which one can pass; **break** in a continuous line; **crack** in a continuous surface, an incomplete break; a **fissure** in rocks; **disagreement** between parties; **rift** in the clouds; **rupture** of negotiations.

**split infinitive**: "To well do" is called a split infinitive because the word "well" is placed between "to" and "do." It is

generally better to avoid such constructions, not because they are grammatically wrong (which they are not), but because they are apt to break the rhythm of the phrase.

- to **spoil**. Past tense **spoilt** or **spoiled**.—To make unfit or less fit for future use; **mar** the appearance; **damage** in such a way as to cause material loss; **destroy** totally; **defeat** a purpose; **impair** an opportunity; **ruin** something valuable, render it totally unfit; **vitiate** a claim; **murder** (colloq.), **butcher** a piece of work, a story, an opportunity.

**spons-**. Latin root meaning "answer." Derived forms: **sponsor**, **response**, **responsible**. See Answer.

**spontaneous**, adjective; not brought about by external forces; "spontaneous combustion," caused by natural heat; "a spontaneous offer of help"; **extemporaneous** speech, without preparation; **improvised** arrangements in an emergency; **unpremeditated** offense; **unintentional** wrong-doing; **unsolicited** testimonial, advice; **natural** consequence; **automatic**, due to the operation of a mechanical device; **free** statement, **outspoken**, without restraint.

- a **spoonful** (written with one l); two **spoonfuls** (plural at the end of the whole word).

One tablespoonful... $\frac{1}{2}$  fluid ounce, or  $14\frac{1}{2}$  cubic centimeters.  
One teaspoonful...1 fluid dram or  $3\frac{1}{2}$  cubic centimeters.

- a **sport**, amusement, more particularly an organized and competitive group recreation, out-of-doors; **athletics**, violent muscle-building exercise; **play**, action without serious aim; a **game**, a unit of organized play; **fun**, laughter-producing play; a **diversion**, which draws the mind away from care; a **frôlic**, scene of merrymaking, especially of younger people; **recreation**, amusement which "creates anew" the muscular system.

**Ball games played with a small ball thrown through the air**: baseball (U. S.), cricket (England), tennis, fives, pingpong; **(with a ball rolled along the ground)** golf (golf club), croquet (krō-kā) (mallet), polo (stick), bowling, ninepins, hockey (stick, club), lacrosse; **(with a large bladder ball)** football, soccer (association), rugby (England, colloq.: rugger), basket-ball, pushball.

**Sports, etc., depending on devices other than balls**: archery (bow and arrow), gymnastics (trapeze, rings, bars), hunting, shooting (gun, rifle), fishing (rod, line, net), cycling (bicycle), motoring (automobile), aviation (aeroplane), yachting (yacht), camping (tent), riding (horse), quoits, skittles. **Ice sports**: skating, skiing, tobogganing, curling (curling-stone), ice hockey.

Indoor games. See Games.

- a **spot**, a small, well-defined place; the location of a store, a house,

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels: æ ɛ ɪ ɒ ʌ ʏ as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ʌ ɛ ɪ ɒ ʌ ʏ as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; ʌ as in father; ɛr as in merry; ər as in mercur; ou as in loud; au as in laud. Tonic accent (ˈ) after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ə in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.

its place in reference to its surroundings; a **mark**, done intentionally; a **blot**, disfiguring; **blotch**, untidy; **brand** with a hot iron; **stain**, chemical; **smear** with tar, grease, etc.; **speck**, tiny round mark; **smudge** with paint, soot.

Spotless.....immaculate; unsullied.

- a. **spouse**, husband or wife; **partner** in any venture; **mate**, who shares one's "meat," a helper; **consort**, who shares one's fate.
- to **spread**. Past tense **spread**.—To enlarge the surface of a thing without changing its real size: "to spread butter over a piece of toast," "spread the news"; to **stretch** in length only, as a rubber band; **expand** in all directions: "a metal expands when heated"; **swell** by absorption, as a tissue gradually filling with liquid; **dilate** as the pupil of the eye; **distend** as the nostrils; **unfurl** a flag to the breeze; **deploy**, as an army extending its front by decreasing its depth; **extend** the limits of something; **unroll** something rolled up; **aggrandize** an institution, by increasing its prestige; **amplify** a sound, a statement, by making it clearer or more explicit; **diffuse** a light by placing a surface before it to break its direct rays; **wax** larger, as the moon; **circulate** a report; **sprawl** along a surface, stretch oneself at length.

Information spread for a purpose.....propaganda.

See also in the dictionary many words beginning with the prefixes **e-**, **ex-** or **dis-**, which indicate a movement away from a center.

- to **spring**. Past tense, **sprang**; past participle, **sprung**: he has sprung. (The structure of this word indicates all its various meanings: a penetrating movement, **S**, appearing suddenly, **P**, and coming to a sudden stop, **NG**.)—To **appear** to the eye; **jump** out of something that acted as an obstacle (see **Jump**); **start**, come unexpectedly; **dart** like an arrow; **dash** recklessly through obstacles; **rush** confusedly in all directions; **flow** as water; **rise** from a depth; **issue** as a family, a stream of water; **prance** as a horse.
- the **spring**, first season of the year. Latin *ver*, *vern-*; hence **vernal**, of the spring: "vernal foliage." French *printemps*; adjective, *printannier*, meaning "first time"; hence **potage printannier**, soup with spring vegetables.
- a. **spring** of water, where it comes naturally to the surface of the ground; a **well**, below ground level; a **fountain**, spouting water through artificial jets; the **source** or **origin** of anything, the point where it first appears: "the sources of the Nile." A **fount**, poetic.
- See **Source**.
- a. **spy**. Plural **spies**. (To **spy**, **spying**, **spied**.) One sent to watch from an unsuspected position, as in enemy territory; a **scout**, one sent ahead to reconnoiter; a **traitor**, one who delivers his friends' side to their enemies; an **informant**, one who secretly gives inside information; an **eavesdropper**, one who listens at keyholes, in corridors and when people are not on their guard;

a **delātor**, one who secretly brings accusations against another; a **detective**, one who investigates crimes or mysteries; an **intelligence man**, one employed by a government service to discover facts secretly (the name given by a government to its own spies).

Practice of spying.....es'pīōnage.  
One who shoots at an enemy from a distance or  
under cover .....a **sniper**.

- a **square**; abbreviated, in measurements only, **sq.**; a plane figure having four equal sides; a **rectangle**, four right angles, but not all sides necessarily equal; a **pane** of glass; a **plaza**, open space in a city.

Square brackets [ ] are used in printing to indicate an interruption; as when a writer inserts words of his own in a quotation. "That winter [i.e., in 1815] great events were to happen."

to **squeeze** (**squeezing**, **squeezed**). See **Press**.

to **stab** (**stabbing**, **stabbed**). See **Pierce**.

- a **stage**, literally "standing place" or stopping place; hence the two meanings: **platform** and **progress** (or step forward); a **platform**, raised boards, large enough to accommodate one or more; **rostrum**, pulpit or platform for one speaker; **pulpit** in church, for a preacher; the **stage** (figuratively), the **theater** or **theatre**, a place where shows are given; the **drama** (**drā'mā**), serious plays; **acting**, the performance of the artists; the **movies** or **motion pictures** or the **cinéma**, animated photographs thrown on a screen; **vaudeville** (**vōd'vīl**) or **variety**, a mixture of sung, spoken and acted entertainments; a **stage coach** or **bus**.

See **Theatre**.

to **stain** by dipping in or splashing with a strong coloring substance; **discolor** as with an acid; **tarnish** a polished surface; **soil** a clean thing; **sully** a reputation; **dye** by adding color.

- a **stain** on one's character, etc.; **blot** which covers up the good; **smirch**, impression left by something dirty; **aspersion**, "sprinkling" as by somebody's remarks; **stigma**, applied by society; **brand**, permanent mark of infamy; **blēmish**, whatever mars the surface; **flaw**, defect in the structure, as in a gem; **fault**, shortage of something which should be there; **defect**, shortcoming; **imperfection**, which prevents the object from being perfect; **speck**, small piece attached to the surface; **spot**, small mark left by staining substance.

to **stand**. Past tenses, **stood**. Latin **sto**; hence **constant**, which "stands together," unchanging; **establish**, to "cause to stand up"; **resist**, stand back or against; **persist**, stand or stay right through.—To be on one's feet, be motionless; **remain** where one was; **stay** in one place; **rest** calmly; **continue** a course of action once begun; **stop**, cease to move. To **endure** suffering patiently; **bear** a burden; **tolerate** a wrong temporarily; **suffer** without resistance.

Upstanding .....erect.  
 Standing still .....motionless.

**standard**, adjective, serving as a model; **authoritative** statement, account, coming from one who knows; **average** quality, no better and no worse than most; **normal** conditions, neither too high nor too low.—A **standard**, noun. See **Pattern**; the **flag** of a country; the **banner** of a society, etc.

a **stanza**, a group of verses forming one unit of a poem.

a **star**. Latin *stella*; hence **stellar**, pertaining to the stars; a **constellation**, an apparent group of stars. Greek **aster**; hence an **aster**, a flower with radiating petals; **astronomy**, science of the heavens; **astrology**, fortune-telling by the stars; **disastrous**, "contrary to the stars," unlucky; **asterisk**, star used in printing.—In popular usage, a **star** is any luminous celestial body, including the **planets** which revolve around the sun; in astronomy, a star is always a **sun**, or the center of a system which revolves around it.—Figuratively, a motion picture or theatrical **actor** or **actress** whose name appears on the advertisements before the name of the play itself; a **featured player**, whose name appears after that of the play; a **screen luminary** (hackneyed phrase).

Shooting past at star speed.....**météoric**.

to **start**, move quickly, as in surprise, or with the intention of going somewhere; to **begin** informally; **commence** formally; **cause** something to happen; **inaugurate** an era, a new policy; **initiate** somebody into some mysteries; **embark** in an enterprise; **launch** a ship, a campaign; **spring** a mechanism.

(Thing) hardly started, incomplete....**inchoate** (in'kō-āt, adjective).

a **start**, "going forth"; **beginning**, informal; **commencement**, formal; **inauguration** of an era, a policy; **initiation** of somebody into some mysteries; a new **departure** from tradition; **impulse**, strong desire to act; the **outset** of a long-winded affair; the **genesis** or beginning of something involved; a **send-off** (colloq.), friendly acclaiming of one who is leaving; a **lead** or guidance to some opportunity; an **entrance** into a closed place or society; an **introduction** to a person or an opportunity; **apprenticeship** to a trade.

to **state**. See **Say** or **Speak**.

a **state**, way of being at a certain time: "a state of unrest"; **condition**, temporary way of being: "in good condition"; **situation**, place considered in relation to its surroundings; **stātus** (bookish word), case to be discussed; **plight**, desperate state; **circumstance**, modifying event. In the sense of political unit: a state or country; a province, part of a country; a **government**, the men at the head, or the method used; a **commonwealth** or republic; a **monarchy**.

a **statement**, something said formally; an **affirmation**, solemn declaration; an **assertion**, personal and not proved; a **declaration**,

public and formal; a **protestation** of something doubted; an **allegation** of a wrong; an **exposition** in detail.

**stationary**, adjective: which is not to be moved. Do not confuse with the noun **stationery** (with an e), paper goods.

**statistics**, the science of stating and forecasting facts by means of tabulated results.

### Some words used on this subject

**Rātio** (of one quantity to another, the proportion between the two); **quota** (assigned proportion); **average**; **maximum**, **minimum**, **percentage**, **per cent**, **distribution**, **vāriation**, **error**, **probability**, **recurrence**.

- a **stātūe**, a sculptured and nearly life-size reproduction of a figure in a permanent material; **statuette**, small statue; a **statuary**, one who makes statues; a **statuesque** pose; a **sculptor**.

**stā'tus**, pronounced like State.

- a **stātūte**, a written law, made by a constituted body, as opposed to the common or unwritten law. Adjective: **statutory**.

- to **stay**. Past tense **stayed** (old form **staid**). Latin **maneo**, **mansum**; hence to **remain**, stay instead of going on; **permanent**, intended to remain; **mansion**, a dwelling place.—To **stop** something moving; **abide** in a place, with a person, permanently; **dwell** in a place; **inhabit** a place; **sōjourn**, make a short stay; **linger**, hate to go; **lodge**, in a limited and temporary manner.

**steadfast** or **stedfast**, immovable; **staunch** supporter; **fixed** belief; **constant** endeavor, companion, suitor.

- to **steal**. Past tense, **stole**; past participle, **stolen**.—To **appropriate** something to one's own use, unlawfully; **purloin** an article, by carrying it away; **swindle** a person out of a thing by clever tricks; **rob** a person or a place with violence; **pilfer** a thing, plunder pettily; **filch** small articles from a place, pettily; **thieve**, stealthily; **abstract** an object from a difficult place; **commit larceny**, legal phrase for any kind of theft; **embezzle** trust funds; **bilk** a person by tricking him out of his due; **fleece** a fool by taking all his money by fraud; **loot** a place by taking booty; **convert** to one's own use property held in trust. See **Take**.

Stealing in the night by force.....burglary.

Love of theft and robbery.....prēdatory instincts.

To steal a writer's or composer's ideas,

words or music.....to plagiarize a composition.

Adjectives: **surreptitious**, done carefully to avoid detection: "a surreptitious transfer of goods"; **clandes'tine**, attended by great secrecy, unauthorized: a clandestine meeting; **furtive**, not done openly: "furtive glances."

**steam**, the gas formed by water after it reaches boiling point at 100° C. or 212° F. Latin **vapor**; hence the English word **vāpor**, which, however, refers to a gas, smoke, fume or to moisture produced without boiling and from other sources



than water. Greek atmos; hence **at'mosphere**, the mass of vapors surrounding the earth.

- a step**, unit of unaided progress; **distance** from one point to another; **pace**, rate of speed; **rung** of a ladder; **gait**, way of walking; **footprint**, mark left by the sole of the foot; a **move** of any part of the body in any direction; a **decision** by the mind after weighing facts.

To take the fatal step.....to cross the Rubicon.

The first step.....the initial step.

To keep step.....to march.

**stern** (adjective), requiring unhesitating obedience: "a stern parent, a stern command"; **strict** orders, discipline, allowing no latitude; **rigorous** enforcement; **austere** countenance, due to self-restraint; **grim** visage, silently ferocious; **rigid** rule; **severe** punishment, lacking in gentleness; **harsh** tone of voice, grating; **sharp** reprimand; **relentless** vengeance.

- to stick**. Past tense, **stuck**. Originally "to pierce"; hence to remain fixed, to adhere or cause to adhere: "the pins stuck or driven in a cushion tend to stick (or adhere) to it." To **adhere** to an opinion, a cause; **adhere** to a body through an adhesive substance; **cling** tenaciously to something, as in a tight embrace; **cleave** faithfully to a principle; **hang** loosely from something; **cohere** or stick together; **attach** something to something else as with a peg, nail or cord; **agglomerate** or gather in a mass; **agglutinate**, or combine as if glued together, without change of form; **gum** one thing to another; **cement** firmly, as a friendship that has passed through trials; **persist** or remain as before, despite opposition; **persevere** in a good resolution.

Stick-to-it-iveness .....perseverance.

- a stick**, long and thin piece: "a stick of wood"; a **cane**, walking stick; a fairy's magic wand (**wand**); a **rod**, slender stick, especially one used to inflict punishment; a **pole**, very long slender piece of wood; a **switch**, flexible rod; **club**, massive stick, larger at one end.

Orchestra conductor's stick..... }  
Field marshal's stick..... } **bât'on**.

**sticky**, adjective; which adheres readily; **adhesive**, having the quality of ready adherence: "adhesive plaster"; **viscous**, sticky liquid; **clammy**, cold and sticky; a **clinging** vine; **tenacious** in one's purposes; **pasty**, like dough.

**stiff**, adjective; unchanging, which does not weaken: "a stiff breeze"; **erect**, standing up; **rigid**, firm; **unbending** attitude; **unyielding** disposition; **obstinate** person; **stubborn** in maintaining his viewpoint; a **hard** fight; a **prolonged** battle; a **tense** situation; **strong** emotions; **high** courage.

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels: **ā** **ā** **ī** **ō** **ū** as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; **ā** **ā** **ī** **ō** **ū** as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; **ā** as in father; **ēr** as in merry; **ēr** as in mercur; **ou** as in loud; **au** as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (**ā** in senate). Consonants: **g** always as in go; **th** as in thief; **dh** as **th** in mother; **ng** as in sing or in singer; **ng-g** as **ng** in finger. See Syllables.

**still**, adjective, motionless; **calm**, habitually; **quiet**, not noisy; **inert**, not able to move itself.

- a stimulant**, something that induces temporary action followed by depression, like drink; a **stimulus**, an incentive to action, like the promise of a reward; a **cordial**, "heartening" drink; a **tonic**, restoring the "tone" of the organism; an **intoxicant**, which causes partial paralysis of nerve centers; a **bracer** (colloq.); an **appetizer**, French **apéritif**, drink before a meal.

**stingy** (stīn'jī), adjective; opposite of generous; **mean**, who intends to act in an unfriendly way; **avaricious**, who keeps his money closely; **tight** (colloq.), not easily induced to spend; **miserly**, who has money, yet lives in discomfort; **penurious**, afraid of a shortage in the supplies; **parsimonious**, who hands out supplies sparingly.

- to stir** (stirring, stirred), as with a handled device; **agitate** rapidly; **excite** somebody; **rouse** sentiment; **stimulate**, rouse to action; **raise** a question.

See Shake.

- the stomach** (stūm'ūk); **belly** (vulgar); **abdomen** (scientific); **entrails**.

- a stone**. Latin lapis; hence a **lapidary**, expert in precious stones; to **lapidate** somebody, stone to death; **dilapidated** building, whose stones are falling down. Latin *petra*, a rock; hence to **petrify**, turn to stone; **petroleum**, "rock-oil"; **Peter**, name of the Apostle who was "like a rock"; a **pétrel**, bird who appears to "walk on the sea," like St. Peter in the Gospel narrative. Greek *lithos*; hence **lithography**, printing by means of impression on a stone; **monolith**, "single stone" monument.—A gem or precious stone.

In England, the **stone** is a 14-lb. weight. "He weighs 10 stone 12," i.e., 152 lb. (A stone is half of a "quarter hundredweight," the English cwt. being 112 lb. and the English ton 2240 lb.)

The principal **precious stones** are: **diamond**, ruby (red), **emerald** (grass green), **sapphire** (sāf'ir, blue), **turquoise** (tur-koyz', greenish blue); **tōpāz** (yellow), **garnet** (pomegranate color), **ām'ethy'st** (bluish), **ōpal** (iridescent), **moonstone**, **aquamarine**, **beryl**, **carne'lian** (reddish), **jade** (green), **lā'pis lāz'u'li** (literally "the azure stone," blue), **agate** (striped), **ōn'yx**.

- to stoop**, bend forward or lean forward; (figuratively) to condescend to contemptible means: "She stoops to conquer."

- to stop**, to bring to an end or bring to rest; **close** a place; **check** a growth; **impede** progress; **break off** relations; **suspend** a privilege; **arrest** something threatening; **abrogate** a law by act of authority; **annul** a deed, make it void; **prevent** something from happening; **interrupt** during the proceedings; **cut short** an argument; **adjourn** a meeting, by consent; **restrain** somebody or something, prevent action; **stay** one's hand; **suppress** a nuisance; **stem** the tide; **halt** by military order; **parry** a blow; **interpose** an obstacle in the way of something.—To

come to an **end**; **pause** temporarily; **cease** for good; **halt** according to a plan.

Stopping (motionless) ..... **immō'bīle**.

Act of stopping, coming to an end ..... **cessation**.

Something that causes a stop ..... **an impediment**.

**a stop**.—Full stop, see Period.

**a store**, quantity of supplies, or place where they are kept; a **shop**, small, for retail trade; **warehouse**, for wholesale or storage; **supply**, available quantity, especially in its raw state; **stock**, quantity ready and expected to be drawn on: "The greater the supply of a commodity, the less it is likely to be kept in large stocks"; **reserve**, source of supply for contingent use; **accumulation** of goods of which the supply has been greater than the demand; **fund**, great quantity of money, information, etc.; **hoard**, quantity secretly preserved; a **magazine**, storehouse for military supplies; **arsenal** for arms and explosives; **armory** for weapons; **repository**, **depository** for furniture or anything; **safe**, piece of furniture built for safeguarding supplies; **vault**, safe built in a wall; **safe deposit vault** in a bank, where valuable documents are kept; **treasury**, where national funds are kept; **cache** (kāsh, arctic), a hole in the ground, or a hut built on high poles, where provisions are hidden from wild animals.

**to store** (storing, storage), lay up, keep safely for future use; **stock** an article, have it habitually for sale; **preserve** something in the same condition; **put up** for future use; **reserve** something without touching it until a contingency arises; **save** something that would be destroyed; **hoard** secretly; **gather** haphazard; **collect** discriminatingly; **accumulate** by degrees; **stow away**, conceal for future use; **stack up** in quantities, untidily; **load up** against shortage; **garner** wheat, etc., in a granary.

**a storm**, great atmospheric disturbance, indicated by a low barōm'eter and generally a high wind (up to 80 miles an hour); a **tempest**, poetic; **blizzard**, cold, snow and wind; **squall**, sudden gust; **gale**, wind of 25 to 75 miles an hour; **hurricane**, wind over 80 miles an hour, rain and thunder; **cyclone**, wind traveling in a circle; **whirlwind**; **tornado**, funnel-shaped wrecking cloud; **typhoon** (tī-foon'), in the Orient.

**stormy** atmosphere; **rough** water; **foul** weather; **severe** storm; **wild** waves; **strong** current; **uproarious** meeting; **violent** invective.

**a story**, account of a particular event, true or invented; **history**, true account in sequence; **narrative**, long, explanatory account; **legend**, mythical story; **fable**, story with a lesson; **apologue**, fable; a **fib** (colloq.), a harmless lie; a **whopper** (colloq.), a story that is a lie.

Belonging to fiction, not to history ..... **lēg'endary**.

A writer of fables ..... **fābulist**.

Almost too large to be true ..... **fāb'ulous**.

**straight**, adjective. Latin *rectus*; hence to **rectify** or straighten out an error; **erect**, upright, standing up vertically; **direct**, "straight through."—**Vertical**, at right angles with the horizon; **rectilinear**, in a straight line, not curved; **honest person**, actuated by honorable motives; **just person**, desirous of giving each his due; **plain reasons**, clearly stated.

Opposites: **crooked**, **angular**, **zigzag**, **tortuous**, **dévious**, **sinuous**.

**to strain**, twist and pull: "to strain one's nerves," over-exert them; **filter**, **ooze**, **percolate**, like a liquid through a porous substance; **sprain** a ligament; **stretch** to breaking point, as one's patience.

**a strainer**, device with a mesh bottom for separating liquids from solids; **sieve** (*siv*), for separating different sizes or for keeping out coarser articles; **colander** (*kül'ander*), for kitchen use with vegetables; **percolator**, for coffee, etc., in which a liquid drips through a loose mass; **filter**, to remove impurities from a liquid; **screen** for metals and ore; **sep'arator**, mechanical device for cream or grain; **riddle**, for separating rocks of different sizes; **pore** of the skin or of earthenware, small aperture through which liquids may pass.

**strange**, adjective; presenting an unfamiliar appearance; **unusual**, not like others; **unfamiliar**, not seen before; **unwonted** (*un-wun'ted*) behavior, not customary; **odd**, without precedent; **foreign** (*for'in*), from another land; **alien**, belonging to another group or country; **baroque** (*bärök'*), **grôtesque** style, architecture; **fantas'tic**; **weird** (*wërd*), unearthly; **uncanny**.

**a strätum**, plural **sträta** or **strätums**.—A continuous mass of rock of one origin or period, divided into **layers** or **beds**; in the excavation of ancient cities, each successive civilization as indicated by the ruins of its edifices; hence a social class: "They moved in different social **sträta**."

**to stray** (**straying**, **strayed**).—To wander from a set place; **déviâte** from a straight course; **roam** aimlessly; **rove** habitually; **ramble** in search of unknown amusement; **migrate** to another country for a prolonged stay.

Straying away from the path (*figuratively*).....aberration.  
Wandering or lost domestic animal.....a stray.

**a street**, highway between houses; **road**, highway from one town or part of one town to another; **avenue**, highway leading to an important place; **boulevard** (*böö'le-vard*), broad street with sidewalks planted with trees; **turnpike**, a highway on which one comes to a toll gate; a toll road; **causeway**, a highway across marshy ground; **thoroughfare**, a highway that leads into another ("No thoroughfare" means "one cannot or must not pass"; U. S. signs on an incomplete street usually read: "This is not a through street"; such a street is called in French an **impasse**: "Impasse So-and-So," a word which English might well adopt in this acception); **alley**, narrow way at the side or back of buildings; **pavement**, part of the road which is firmly built (in U. S. a permanent road; in

England, the ordinary name of the sidewalk, the other part being called "the roadway" or "the middle of the road"); **sidewalk** (U. S. only), the place for pedestrians at the side of a road (called in England "the pavement"); **path**, a way for one or two pedestrians; **walk**, a narrow way for pedestrians; **passage**, a narrow street or way, as a covered way for shoppers in an "arcade" or buildings with stores on each side; **row** (rō), a narrow street lined with houses or shops (England), sometimes with a second-story sidewalk along the stores; **lane**, a way between hedges; **green lane**, a grassy way between hedges.

**strength**, personal muscular power; **power**, ability to do; **might** (poetic); **energy**, inherent power; **potency** of a drug; **sinews**, muscular strength; **vigor**, activity of mind or body; **stām'ina**, native endurance; **brawn**, brute strength; **vitality**, native resistance and buoyancy; **caliber**, measure of one's energy; **capacity**, ability to receive; **efficiency**, ability to achieve with least effort; **solidity** of an object, resistance to breakage or dissolution; **firmness**, resistance to pressure; **toughness**, resistance to tearing; **elasticity**, ability to stand being pulled.

to **strengthen**, make strong; **reinforce** a thing, an army, by adding to it; **fortify** a person against calamity, etc.; **confirm** an opinion; **corroborate** another's statement that seemed incredible; **intensify** an emotion; **support** a cause, a theory, a loose panel; **brace** something, steady it by means of an added piece; **increase** one's faith, knowledge; **heighten** one's respect.

to **stretch** (spelled like **fetch**, **vetch**, with a t before ch). Latin *tendo*, tensum, hence **tension**, a stretching; **extend**, to stretch out; **distend**, to stretch away.—To **extend** in one direction; **expand** in several directions; **strain**, twist and pull in opposite directions; **tighten**, leaving little room for play.

**strict** adjective; a **strict** rule, to be enforced exactly; **stern** parent, **stern** command, requiring unhesitating obedience; **stringent** obligation; **precise** formulation; **exact** amount; **rigorous** enforcement; **rigid** determination; **scrupulous** care; **austere** countenance, due to self-restraint; **peremptory** order, not to be even discussed; **inexorable** justice, not to be changed by prayer; **relentless** vigor; **harsh** tone of voice, grating; **imperative** necessity; **unyielding**, **inflexible**, **unbending**, **uncompromising**, **unswerving** person; **scrupulous** as to the rights of others; **conscientious**, who needs no watching.

to **strike**. Past tense, **struck**: "He had struck oil"; adjective form, especially in the sense of "calamity," **stricken**: "stricken with paralysis."—To **strike** once or twice; **hit**, make a sudden contact with, often accidentally; **cuff** with the flat of the hand; **slap** with a flat surface; **knock** with something heavy; **whack**, give a smart blow; **box** the ears; **smite**, poetic; **pommel** (pūm'el) with fists or with handle of a weapon; **collide** accidentally with; **beat** repeatedly; **pound** heavily; **bang** suddenly, once; **cudgel** with a club; **drub** thoroughly; **thump** with something heavy, causing a dull sound; **thrash**, beat to pieces; **belabor** somebody with many blows; **buffet**, hit in every direc-

tion, and prevent from reaching one's aim, as "buffeted by the waves"; **maul**, tear and bruise: "mauled by a lion"; **lick** (colloquial), punish, defeat.—A **wham**, a **whang** (colloquial), a heavy blow.—To **strike** or **go on strike**, jointly refuse to continue working. When the employers close the plant on account of a disagreement with their employees, this is called a **lock-out**, and the workers are said to be **locked out**. One imported to take the place of a striking workman is a **strike-breaker**; he is called by the strikers a **scab** (U. S.) or a **black-leg** (British).

to **string**. Past tense **strung**.

a **string**, slender line; **cord**, heavier than a string; **twine**, two or more strands of hemp twisted together; **rope**, very heavy, made of several strands twisted together, themselves consisting of similar but smaller twisted strands; **thread**, very thin (cotton, silk, etc.); **chain**, made of links, often of metal; **filament**, especially metallic; **braid**, interlaced; **wire**, thin strand of metal.

to **strip**. Past tense **stripped**.—To remove with a quick gesture a close-fitting cover, leaving the underpart bare: "to strip a narrative of its embellishments"; **deprive** somebody of an advantage; **rob** somebody of his own property; **bare** heartlessly something that has been kept covered; **disclose** a secret; **dismantle** a house, a building; **divest** somebody of a dignity; **unfrock** a priest.

to **strive**. Past tense, **strove**; past participle, **striven**: "I have striven."—To make an earnest endeavor: "strive to do right"; **endeavor**, "take it as a duty"; **labor**, work persistently; **compete** with another who is seeking the same prize; **contend** for a prize, in rivalry with somebody; **differ** from somebody else in one's views.

a **stroke**, a sudden powerful movement; "a stroke of luck"; a **blow**, a heavy movement which reaches somebody: "He was hit a smart blow"; **hit**, sudden contact, often accidental; **slap** with a flat surface; **shock**, encounter with a heavy mass; **tap**, gentle touch with a small surface: "a tap of the finger"; **lash**, with a whip: "ten strokes of the lash"; **stripe**, mark left by whipping or beating with a rod; an **attack** of paralysis; a **calamity**, great and sudden misfortune.

to **stroll** along, walk contentedly; **saunter** purposelessly; **promenade** sociably; **stride** with long swinging steps; **strut** arrogantly; **plod** dejectedly; **trudge** tiredly; **mæander** in indirect course; **ramble**, looking for novelty.

**strong**, adjective; **powerful**, able to do; **pōtent** drug; **brawny** muscles; **sturdy** person, built with a powerful frame; **rōbust** constitution; **vigorous** action; **sōlid** mass, not easily dispersed; **dŷnām'ic** leader; **determined** course of action; **cōgent** argument, which makes hesitation impossible; **emphatic** statement,

---

Pronunciation key. Vowels ä ē ī ō ū ŷ as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ä ä ī ō ū ŷ as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; ä as in father; ēr as in merry; ēr as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ä in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.

made with great force; **loud** expression, to be heard afar; **earnest** endeavor, strong and sincere; **energetic** disposition; **influential** help; **fresh** breeze.

**stubborn**, adjective; not to be moved by reason: "a stubborn man"; **obstinate** person, who persists in his own course despite warnings; **opinionated**, who will not yield to the judgment of others; **perverse**, who goes contrary to common sense; **pig-headed** (colloq.), unyielding from pride; **bigoted**, unyielding from prejudice; **conceited** person, who thinks too much of his own worth; **doggéd** resolution, not to be changed by anything; **ob'durate** in his sin, who does not repent; **despötic** rule, not to be argued with; **pös'itive** statement, admitting of no contradiction; **wilful** conduct, governed by self-assertion; **refractory** metal, ore, person, not responsive to treatment; **tenä'cious** hold, which keeps what it has.

**stü'pified**, rendered stupid and senseless, as by drink; **astonished** at an unexpected occurrence; **amazed**, entirely at a loss to find his way about; **dazed** by excess of light, by sudden success, grief, fear, etc.; **bewildered** by a variety of things from which to choose; **stunned**, rendered senseless by a sudden blow; **petrified**, turned to stone; **intoxicated** with liquor; **drugged** with a narcotic; **döped** (colloq.), drugged.

**stüpid** person or action, showing slowness of understanding; **foolish**, doing things unreasonably; **unintelligent**, lacking in understanding; **heavy**, lacking in spirituality; **dull**, unresponsive; **dense**, very slow in his mental processes; **thick-headed** (figuratively); **silly** person, action, remarks, showing lack of maturity; **äsinine** remark, showing lack of reason; **idiotic** action, showing lack of judgment.

- a style**, a particular manner or method: "literary style," "clothing styles"; **fäshion**, the changing manner; **möde**, way of doing things; **vögue**, popular acceptance; **character**, the peculiar arrangement of smaller features which make one thing or person distinct from another; **ton** (French), the "tone" or quality: "bon ton," high tone; **taste**, the quality of pleasing those who have finer sensitiveness: "good color taste."

In Writing **style** is the art of expressing one's thoughts in an acceptable way. It is dependent upon: (1) the writer's personality, including the clearness (logic, grammar), beauty and novelty of his conceptions; (2) the reader's individuality, including his acquired knowledge and his habits of mind; (3) compliance with laws of speech music, including the choice of euphonious words and the harmonious grouping of phrases; (4) compliance with psychological laws, including attention, suggestion, association; (5) compliance with dramatic laws, including suspense, climax, motivation and characterization. It has been said that "the style is the man," and that "writing maketh an exact man."

In Printing, the **style** of a publication is the particular selection of type faces, use of capital letters, spelling, punctuation, paragraphing, etc., which may vary from one printing establishment to another, or from one publication to an-

other, but which have to be consistent within the same publication.

**stylish**, adjective; in accord with latest tastes; **chic** (French: *shik*), smart, distinctive; **fashionable**, as done or worn by leaders; **élegant**, indicating refinement; **mōdish**, in accord with prevailing fashions.

**sū**. Sound heard in suit (clothes), to sue in court, pseudo (false).

to **subdue** (sūb-dū') a rēbel trībe, an unruly desire; **overcome** an obstacle; **overpower** one who resists; **subjūgate** one's passions, one's enemies, bring them under the yoke; **vanquish** an enemy in battle; **conquer** an enemy's stronghold or territory; **enslave** a population; **tone down**, **soften** a color, a tone, a voice; **tame** a wild animal; **master** one that thought himself equal; **extirpate** weeds; **keep down** a noxious growth; **abate** a nuisance.

a **sub'ject** (accent on first syllable), literally "one who lies under," one who submits to another; a subject of a monarchy; a **citizen** of a republic; a **pātient** under treatment; a **case**, as regarded abstractly by the doctor; a Spiritualist **mēdium**; the **thēme** or fundamental idea of a composition; **text** or quotation on which a sermon is based; **matter** or **contents** of a book.

In Grammar, the **subject** is the thing spoken about; the thing said about the subject is called the **prēdicate**. "I (subject) am reading (predicate)." "The dog (subject) has bitten the little girl (predicate)." The subject must agree with its verb in **person** and in **number**: "I (first person, singular) am (first person, singular)"; "He (third person, singular) is (third person, singular)"; "They (third person, plural) are (all persons, plural)." If there are **several subjects**, the verb is plural: "He and I (two subjects) are (plural)." With **alternative subjects**, the verb is singular and agrees generally with the nearest subject: "He or I (alternative subjects, one third person, one first person) am (singular, first person to agree with last mentioned subject) going."

In practice this rule is often broken, the plural form (He or I **are** going) being used to avoid the pedantic forms "He or I am," "Neither he nor I am." In that case, as in the use of the pronouns **we**, **you**, **they** with a singular meaning, the plural form is merely a substitute for a non-existent mixed form in the singular. See **They**.

The subject of a sentence may be a noun (dog, man, business, work), or a pronoun (he, I, you, she), or a phrase used as a noun: "To work is to progress" ("to work" is a part of a verb, used as a noun); "Endeavoring to arrive in time will not get us out of trouble" (the verbal phrase "endeavoring to arrive in time" is the subject).

See also **Who**, **Whom**.

to **sub'ject**, verb (accent on second syllable).

**sub'ject** to, adjective; under unavoidable influences: "She is subject to fits of hysteria"; **liable** to punishment; **apt** to do something, naturally; **likely** to happen.



**submissive**, adjective; who follows the will of others; **obédient**, willingly; **passive**, negatively; **módest**, not self-seeking; **meek** by disposition; **self-sacrificing** through nobleness of character; **humble** through lack of conceit; **self-effacing**, through modesty; **deferential** to somebody in a particular instance; **resigned** to one's fate; **shy** in the presence of strangers; **tame** animal.

Opposites: **defiant** in a particular case; **arrogant**, claiming undue rights; **rebellious** against authority; **despotic**, seeking to rule arbitrarily; **domineering**, who imposes his personality.

- a **subor'dinate**, one placed under another, in an organization (this term implies no contempt); an **inférior**, implying mild contempt; a **sub'altern** or **subalt'ern**, military; an **underling**, implying great contempt; an **understrapper** (colloq.).

**subor'diná'tion**, assigning to a lower place; in art, logic, and literature, the keeping down of details that would distract the attention from the principal part of the theme.

Opposites: **display**, **featuring**.

**sub'sequent**, which follows at a later time: "After a writer has antagonized his readers, subsequent attempts to win their favor are doomed to failure"; **following**, which happens immediately after; **postérior**, which did not happen before another: "The invention of the automobile is posterior to that of the revolver"; **future**, later than now.

- a **sub'sidy**, help for something that does not pay well enough, or secret help to a loyal supporter; **subvention** to a philanthropic or noble purpose. "Many commercial shipping lines can only exist on government subsidies." "The British government decided to subsidize the coal industry." "France subventions her great national theaters and opera houses."

See Allowance.

- to **subsist** (**subsistence**), barely live, continue to exist: "He subsists on an insufficient diet"; **inhere in**, be part of the nature of.

- a **substance**, literally that which "stands under" appearances; the important part, a large amount; **wealth**, **position**; "A man of substance, a substantial citizen." **Material**, **stuff**, **texture**. In philosophy, contrasted to the **essence** and the **accidents**.

- a **sub'stitúte**, which "stands for another thing," and not quite so good; a **makeshift**, not satisfactory; an **apology** for a thing, very poor; a **duplicate**, just like it; a **vīcar** (adjective **vīcār-ious**), person who takes another's less important duties; a **lōcum tēnens**, who takes a clergyman's or doctor's place during his vacation; an **understudy**, especially theatrical; a **representative**, who has the right to act; a **surrogate**, magistrate; a **lieutenant**, next in charge; a **right-hand man**.

See also Subordinate.

- to **substitute** one thing for another, supply another thing not quite so good or not desired in the place of the first; to **substitute** for a person, take his place in a game, for a duty, etc.; **sup-plant** somebody, succeed in securing the position that he held, as in a person's affections.

**subtle**, adjective (pronounced sūt'l, without a b sound; the b

sound is also dropped in **subtlety**, but generally pronounced in **subtle**, **subtly**: "a subtle suggestion, a subtle argument, a subtle perfume"; not easily perceived, not obtrusive; **elusive**, difficult to catch; **delicate**, very fine; **attenuated**, which has been "made less"; **penetrative** smell, which goes deeply through.

**a subvention**, added help for a noble or philanthropic purpose; a **subsidy**, additional payments to help out something that does not pay well enough, or to pay a loyal supporter.—"European countries subsidize their merchant marines and subvention their leading theaters."

**to succeed** (sūk-sēd', spelled like **proceed**, with two e's, unlike **recede**, **concede**, **intercede**).—To attain the desired object, achieve **success**; to **prosper**, enjoy good fortune; **thrive**, grow in vigor; **triumph** over one's enemies; **overcome** obstacles; **surmount** difficulties; **gain** an object; **attain** one's desires.

In another sense: to **succeed** somebody, come after him, as: "The king succeeded his father on the throne" (**succession**, a **successor**).

**success** (sūk-sēd'), the attainment of one's object; **victory** after a battle; **conquest** of something by force. A man may achieve great success in one field without accumulating a fortune and without even enjoying moderate prosperity.

**such**, adjective of degree. Used without a second term of comparison, it may mean **very**: "He is such a nice man!" (a very nice man), or it may mean **like that**, **so** (in which case the use of **so** is preferable: "Such a desirable object is worthy of our efforts" (a desirable object like that, better: "So desirable an object is worthy . . ."). Followed by **as** (which is a pronoun in this case) it means **of the same kind or quality**, **to the same extent**: "Such a nice man as he is will be glad to help you" (a man who is nice to the same extent as he is nice); or it may mean simply **those**, an antiquated usage: "Such people as wish to enter are welcome" (those persons who wish to enter). Followed by **that**, it means **to so great an extent**: "He is so nice that he will be glad to help you" (he is nice to so great an extent that he will be glad).

Notice that **such** is followed, not preceded, by **a** (not: a such man, but: such a man). Note also that **such** is preceded by the indefinite adjectives, not followed by them: all such people, no such name, every such story, any such event, many such incidents, few such opportunities, some such word.

**sudden**, adjective; happening without warning; **instantaneous** action, happening after a time lapse too small to be measured: "He touched the wire, and his death was instantaneous"; an **abrupt** demand, refusal, for which one was not mentally prepared; an **unexpected** turn of events.

**to suffer**. Latin *patior*, *passus*; hence **passion**, intense emotion which sweeps over one; **passive**, unable to resist; **impatient**, who will not suffer delays. Greek *pathein*; hence **pathēt'ic**, which inspires pity; *páthos* in drama, pity-inspiring action; **sympathy**, "feeling with" somebody. To **bear** a burden with-

out complaint; **tolerate** somebody's unpleasant actions; **allow** somebody to act freely, allow something to be done; **brook** contradiction, adversity; **permit** somebody to do a thing which one may forbid; **experience** a sensation; **endure** an unpleasant experience; **sustain** a shock; **pay** a penalty; **undergo** an operation; **be in pain**; **groan** audibly.

One who suffers from a disease.....a patient.  
Opposite of pāthos.....bāthos.

**sufficient**, adjective; which is such in quantity or volume as to provide for all needs: a sufficient supply, a sufficient answer, a sufficient reserve: "Every large city should have a sufficient reserve of water." This word is not used in the same way as **enough**, which is an adverb; use **enough** with the name of the commodity: "New York has enough water for all emergencies," "We have enough bread." The phrase "I have had sufficient" is incorrect and should be expressed: "I have had enough."

a **suffix**, a former word or part of a word, or a grammatical form, added to a root which it may or may not cause to be modified, and forming a new word with a modified meaning. Generally speaking, suffixes of Latin origin (L) are not used with roots of Anglo-Saxon (AS) origin and vice-versa, but there are numerous exceptions to this rule. Many suffixes are now incorporated in the words from which they cannot be distinguished. The principal suffixes are given below.

Suffix	Origin	Principal Meaning	Example
-able	L.	that can be	admirable
-ade	L.	pertaining to	masquerade
-age	L.	action	shrinkage
-al	L.	pertaining to	national
-an	L.	member of	Armenian
-ance	L.	state of	abundance
-ancy	L.	state of	conservancy
-ant	L.	that does	defendant
-ar	L.	person, agent	familiar, registrar
-ate	L.	action	circulate
-ate	L.	in the shape of	foliate
-ative	L.	that does	deliberative
-dom	AS.	state of	kingdom
-ed	AS.	done	finished
-eer	L.	that does	profiteer
-en	AS.	like	oaken (adjective)
-en	AS.	action	harden (verb), harden
-ence	L.	state of	presidence

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels *ā ē ī ō ū* as in mate, meet, mite, mote, my; *ă ê ĩ ȳ ŏ ŭ* as in met, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; *ā* as in father; *ēr* as in merry; *ēr* as in mercer; *ou* as in loud; *au* as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ā* in senate). Consonants: *g* always as in go; *th* as in thief; *dh* as in mother; *ng* as in sing or in singer; *ng-g* as in finger. See Syllables.

Suffix	Origin	Principal Meaning	Example
-ency	L.	state of	complacency
-ent	L.	that does	component
-er	AS.	that does	baker
-er	AS.	more than	greater
-ery	AS.	place	bakery
-escence	L.	growth	adolescence (adult)
-esque	Italian	similar to	picturesque
-est	AS.	most	greatest
-ful	AS.	fulness	hopeful
-fy	L.	cause to be	liquefy
-head	AS.	state of	Godhead
-hood	AS.	state of	childhood
-ia	L.	country	India
-ian	L.	member of	Indian
-ible	L.	that can be	irresistible
-ic	L.	pertaining to	heraldic
-ical	L.	pertaining to	electrical
-ific	L.	causing to be	terrific
-ify	L.	cause to be	modify
-ile	L.	that can be	prehensile
-ine	L.	pertaining to	feline, asinine
-ine	L.	feminine	heroine
-ing	AS.	act of	doing
-ion	L.	act of	decision
-ious	L.	full of	avaricious
-ish	AS.	pertaining to, like	greenish
-ism	L.	system of	socialism
-ist	L.	believer in	socialist
-ite	L.	descendant of	Israelite
-itis	Greek	acute affection	bronchitis
-ity	L.	state of	familiarity
-ive	L.	that can	inventive
-ize	L.	cause to be	civilize
-less	AS.	without	priceless
-ly	AS.	like	princely
-ment	L.	act of	development
-ness	AS.	abstract state	greatness
-oid	Greek	in the shape of	ovoid
-or	L.	person who	actor
-ory	L.	place where	repository
-ory	L.	pertaining to	supervisory
-ose	L.	full of	grandiose
-osis	Greek	chronic affection	tuberculosis
-ous	L.	full of	porous
-scape	AS.	state of	landscape
-ship	AS.	state of	lordship
-some	AS.	characterized by	handsome
-ty	L.	state of	gravity
-ure	L.	result of	moisture
-y	AS.	pertaining to	rainy

Suffix	Origin	Principal Meaning	Example
-ward, -wards	AS.	in the direction of	toward
-ways	AS.	in the manner of	sideways
-wise	AS.	in the manner of	lengthwise

Note. In dividing words at the end of a line, in printing or typewriting, Anglo-Saxon suffixes which begin with a vowel, like -ing, -er, -ed, -est, -ish, -y, -iness, as well as the Latin suffixes -able and -ible, are separated by themselves, and are not preceded by a consonant: morn-ing (not morn-ning), bless-ed (not bles-sed), stuff-iness (not stuff-iness), except when following an added consonant: compel-ling, deter-ring. Latin suffixes (except -able and -ible when these are added to a word that is English by itself: accept-able) take the second of double consonants: clas-sify (not class-ify), actor (not act-or), nar-rative (not narr-ative). See Syllables.

to **suggest** (properly pronounced sŭ-jest', but often in America under the influence of the spelling, sŭg-jest'. It comes from sub-gero, to carry under, and the double g was originally so written for the sole purpose of producing a single sound).

a **suggestion** (sŭ-jest'ion), an idea implanted into the mind of another, generally by indirect means; **auto-suggestion**, ideas implanted into one's own mind for a definite purpose.—Dr. Coué's auto-suggestion formula: "Every day in every way I am getting better and better," to be repeated over and over again just before going to sleep and on awakening.

**sŭicide**, self-killing or one who kills himself; **hŏmicide**, killing of a man; **manslaughter**, killing without premeditation; **fēlŏ-dē-sē**, "a fēlon of himself," verdict given by the jury if the suicide was premēd'itated in cold blood, the verdict otherwise generally being "suicide during temporary insanity"; Japanese **hara-kiri** (hā'rā-kē'rē), dutiful suicide, by opening the abdo'men.

to **suit** somebody, conform to the taste or appearance of: "This hat suits me"; **fit**, conform to the shape of; **agree** with a person; **serve** a purpose; **become**, look well on: "She wore a becoming dress."

a **suit** of clothes; a **suite** (swēt) of rooms.

**suitable**, proper for the occasion or the person; **agreeable** (note the spelling of this word with two e's); **fitting**, similar to the model; **prŏper**, recognized as right; **becoming** clothes; **correct**, which is right according to the pattern; **adequate** provision; **sufficient** in quantity; **ap'plicable** to a case; **worthy** of one's good name, one's endeavors; **appropriate** to the occasion, in good taste.

**sullen**, adjective (derived indirectly from solemn, and influenced by Latin solus, alone, both ideas of lonesomeness and gloom being present), proud and ill-humored: "a sullen refusal to explain"; **sulky** person, resentful and silent, as a child who has been punished; **mŏrŏse**, habitually inclined to regard the

world with bitterness; **surly**, habitually abrupt and rude; **glum**, silent and frowning as the result of a temporary setback; a gloomy outlook.

See **Stubborn**.

**a sum**, a quantity representing the whole of several factors considered as one; the **sum total** of several individual sums; an **aggregate**, a collection of things; "a nation may be considered as an aggregate of individuals, or as an aggregate of families"; **accumulation** of things one on top of another.

**to sum up**, state again in briefer form; **recapitulate** under various heads; **epitomize** a long narrative by condensing it, a philosophy or a creed by stating it in one sentence; **summarize** various statements previously made; **give a résumé** of what has gone before; **give an epitómē** of a long statement; **state the gist** (jĭst) or principal points of an argument.

**a summary** of various statements previously made; **abridgment**, shorter form, as of a dictionary, of the text of a law; a **compendium**, brief statement, especially used as a book title: "A compendium of the law of libel"; **résumé** of a case; **digest**, an arranged and edited summary; **synopsis** (sĭnop'sis) of a book or story plot; **brief at law**; **recapitulation** under headings; the **gist** (jĭst) or **substance** of an argument; an **abstract**, selected typical facts.

**summer**, the hot season. Latin *æstas*; hence **es'tival**, pertaining to the summer.

**to summon** (from a Latin word meaning "warn quietly"); call on somebody to appear to one's help or as a witness, juror, etc.; bid somebody come, order him to come; **muster** a crowd; **subpœna** a witness; **convoke** an assembly; **invoke** help; **rouse** a dormant force.

**the sun**. Latin *sol*; hence **sōlar**, pertaining to the sun; the **solstīce**, "sun stand," the summer or winter turning points of the seasons. Greek *helios*; hence **hēliōg'raphy**, sun printing or signaling by the sun's rays; **hēliotrope**, flower that turns toward the sun; **hēliothēr'apy**, sun-cure.

God of the Sun.....Phœbus.

**su'per-**, Latin prefix: over, above; hence **supērior**, which is above the rest; **superfluous**, above the necessary quantity; **superlative**, the highest degree; **superb'**, adjective, proud, arrogant, impressively beautiful. Greek *hyper*; hence **hyper-sensitive**, super-sensitive.

Note:—The use of the prefix **super** for advertising purposes, "Superfilm, super-car, super-quality" is already hackneyed.

A **super**, abbreviation of **supernumerary**, one over the principal number, an extra person playing a small part on the stage or in the movies.

**superficial** (sū'per-fĭsh'al), adjective; which is on the surface, shallow.

**Superficial study** of a document.....a cursory examination.

**super'fuous** (su-per'flood-us), adjective; "flowing over." "As we have enough chairs for all our needs, one more would be superfluous."

**supērior**, adjective; literally "more above." **Higher**, upward in sequence; **better** in quality; **fine** in details; **pār'amount**, recognized as being above all others; **advantāgeous**, good without comparison with others; **suprême**, the most superior; **prēmīnent** among equals; **prōminent**, well-known, which stands out; **prior**, which has taken place before; **sēnior**, who has been longer in office.

**supernatural**, adjective; which is above the known laws of matter; **mirac'ulous**, beneficent and unexplained; **mar'velous**, causing surprise; **unearthly**, unexplained and terrifying; **superhuman** power; **metaphysical**, pertaining to the science of the unseen; (special sense) **spiritualistic**, **mediumistic** powers, as displayed by mediums.

to **supersede** somebody in a position, take the higher place that he occupied; **replace** somebody who is no longer there; **substitute** for somebody, temporarily.

to **support**, stand under and bear the weight: "Three pillars support the ceiling"; **support** somebody, provide his means of livelihood; **sustain** with great effort, barely escaping the consequences: "sustain a shock"; **bear** the brunt of an attack; **bear** a burden; **uphold** an opinion; **prop up** something which would fall; **brace** something not firm, making it stronger; **sēcond** a resolution; **champion** a cause; **defend** something attacked; **confirm** a statement already made; **advocate** a new course of action; **father** a plan; **pātronize** a store; **maintain** an organization; (theater) **play** opposite the lead: "The star was well supported."

to **suppose** that something is such and such, temporarily; **take something for granted** without proof in order to deduce a conclusion; **assume** a fact to be true, because it is probably so; **imāgine** something without objective evidence, from one's own desires or fears; **conjecture** that something is such, when one is forced to explain a provisionally mysterious circumstance; **guess** without much attempt at judgment; **believe** something after weighing and dismissing a doubt; **think** that something is so, admitting lack of knowledge.

to **suppress** something undesirable; **do away with** something established; **eliminate** something unnecessary; **subdue** an emotion; **quell** a revolt; **quench** a thirst; **repress** a legitimate feeling; **smother** something under something: "smother a scandal"; **allay** a fear; **kill** a rumor, put an end to; **silence** a persistent opponent; **swallow** one's objections, one's dignity; **hide** one's fears.

**suprem'acy** of one ruler or country over another; **primacy** of a church dignitary over another; **sovereignty** (sov'renti) of a person or power, possession or supreme authority.

**suprême**, adjective; "most superior": "the Supreme Court" or highest court of justice within a State or a Federation; the "Supreme Ruler of the Universe," God: a **paramount** duty,

authority; **uppermost** thought in one's mind; **utmost** importance.

The supreme bishop of a province.....the **primate**.

**sure** (shōōr), adjective; which will take place without fail: "as sure as death and taxes"; who has no doubt that he knows: "He is sure of his facts"; **certain**, not to be doubted (the more familiar word, **sure**, is less absolute than the longer word **certain**); **confident**, who places his trust in something: "He is confident of victory"; a **positive** assertion, made without if's or but's; **reliable** information; **dependable** person; **decided** improvement; **decisive** victory; **evident** sincerity; **obvious** intention; **solid** foundation; **authentic** origin; **authoritative** pronouncement; **genuine** goods, not substituted for better ones; **trustworthy** report; **official** statement, coming from those in charge.

**surety** (pronounced in two syllables: shōōr'tī, and NOT in three. The **e** is not pronounced), the feeling of one who is sure, **confidence**, **certainty**, **security**; (in law) one who becomes liable for the default of an obligation undertaken by another, the other being known as the principal; a **guarantor**, who may be called upon to make good if the principal is unable to; a **guarantee** or **warranty** of performance of an obligation; a **pledge**, transfer of possession in return for a loan; **mortgage**, promise to transfer possession in the event of failure to repay a loan; **pawn**, thing or person used to guarantee performance: "pawns in the hands of Destiny"; **collateral**, article of value deposited as guarantee of repayment of a loan, as stocks and bonds for a bank loan; **bail**, money deposited to guarantee a person's appearance in a law court: "To go bail for a friend"; "He forfeited his bail."

**a surface**, the outer area of a body that has length, width and depth; in geometry, a two-dimensional form; the **top** of a piece of furniture; **face** or forward side; **exterior** or outer side; **flat** of a blade, of the hand; the **appearance**, outside look; **ā'rēā** measured; **rim** of a curve; **edge** of a precipice; **rind** of an orange, its skin.

On the surface, not deeply..superficially (adverb).

A surface finish.....a veneer.

Surface emotions.....sham(ming), feigning (fā'ning).

**a surfeit** (sur'fit) (literally, "over-done"; the sense of too much); good things in excess: "a surfeit of sweet foods"; **excess** in food or drink; **disgust** through excess; **satiety**, sense of more than enough; **fulness**; **nausea**, revulsion; **gorging**, eating to excess; **gormandizing**, eating like a glutton. "The very rich have such a surfeit of amusements that nothing can any longer please them." "Surfeited with praise, she sought somebody who would tell her the truth."

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels: **ā** **i** **ē** **ū** **y** as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; **ä** **ä** **i** **ē** **ū** **y** as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; **ā** as in father; **ēr** as in merry; **ēr** as in mercer; **ou** as in loud; **au** as in land. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (**ä** in senate). Consonants: **g** always as in go; **th** as in thief; **dh** as in mother; **ng** as in sing or in singer; **ng-g** as in finger. See Syllables.



- a **surgeon** (ser'jun), (**surgery, surgical, chirurgical**), one who operates on disorders, etc. (from a Greek word meaning "hand-worker"); **doctor** in general; an **M.D.**, doctor of medicine, general practitioner; an **operator**, who actually performs the operation; an **anesthetist**, who administers the anesthetic.

See Doctor.

- to **surpass**, be better than: "The beauty of the Grand Canyon surpasses all expectations"; **outdo** by means of greater effort: "He outdid his previous performances; **outstrip, outrun, outmatch, outrival, outclass**, make others appear insignificant; **outnumber** in quantity; **exceed**, be in greater quantity; **beat** at a game; **transcend** human understanding; **top** a list; **cap** an achievement with a greater one.
- to **surprise**, take unaware; **astonish** through greatness; **amaze**, puzzle as to origin; **astound**, stun to inaction.
- to **surrender** something to somebody, under pressure; **yield**, give up; **deliver**, hand over; **betray** wrongfully; **abandon** by going away; **sacrifice** in order to save something else; **restore** to rightful owner.
- to **surround**.—This word originally meant "to overflow" (super-unda") and was written with one r; being mistaken for a form of the word "round," it is now written with two r's.—To encircle as with a ring: "Telegraph cables encircle the globe"; **encompass** an enemy citadel, threateningly; **enclose** an object in a container; **girdle** one's waist; **beset**, leaving no peace: "a besetting sin"; **hedge in** by pressing closely against the sides; **invest, beleaguer** a city in war time; **besiege** a fortress.

The surrounding country.....the environs of a city.

- a **sur'vey** (noun, accent on first syllable); to **survey** (verb, accent on second syllable); to **view**, examine; **reconnoiter** rapidly, in advance of a force; **sweep** a field of vision with the eyes, with field glasses.
- susceptible**, adjective; literally "able to take up." "The text of this law is susceptible of many interpretations"; "Her dark eyes were ever haunting a certain susceptible young man"; **impressible**, easily impressed; **sensitive**, who resents small slights; **touchy**, who takes offense easily; **passionate**, who loves ardently; **credulous**, who believes on scant evidence; **gullible**, easily cheated.
- to **suspect** somebody of something, have an idea something is wrong: "He was suspected of burglary"; **distrust** somebody, as easily capable of wrongdoing; **suppose** that a thing is such or such, without idea of wrong; **imagine** without cause. (There is no verb "to suspicion.")
- suspense**. In the Drama or in Story-writing, keeping the spectator or reader waiting for an expected event, through the interposition of obstacles that imperil the plans of the characters. "Make 'em laugh, make 'em weep, make 'em wait."
- a **suspicion**, belief in a hidden danger without sufficient evidence: "Suspicions were cast upon him by the neighbors"; **doubt**,

inhibition of an impulse; **mistrust** of a person; **jéalousy** of one who is loved and who appears to love another more.—The verb corresponding to **suspicion** is to **suspect**; there is no verb “to suspicion.”

See Doubt.

to **swallow**, allow to enter the throat; **gulp down** rapidly; **bolt** without masticating; **gobble** many pieces rapidly.

a **swarm** of bees on their way to a new home; **hive**, home of the bees; a **cóloný** away from the parent home; **crowd** of people; an unruly **mob**.

The word “swarm” comes from a root meaning “sound,” “noise,” and therefore applies to the noise made by the insects more than to the numbers.

**swē**. Sound heard in: suite of rooms (**swēt**); sweet (**sugary**); Swede (from Sweden).

to **swear**, literally “make a sound”; same original root as “swarm.” (Past tense: **swore**; past participle: **sworn**: “I have sworn”; “a sworn enemy.”) Latin **juro**; hence a **juror**, one who is sworn to render a true judgment; **jury**, the jurors together; to **abjure** or “swear off” an error; **perjury**, swearing to a falsehood.

a **swear-word**; a **curse**, energetic; **malediction**, evil-wishing; **imprecation**, prayer for evil upon somebody.

to **sweat**. Past tenses, **sweat** or **sweated**. Latin **sudor**; hence **sudation**, excessive perspiration; **exude**, ooze out as resin from a tree; **sudārium**, a sweat-cloth; **sudatorium**, a sweat-room in a bath.—“A miner sweats, a gentleman perspires, a lady feels warm or melts.”

Relative to or causing sweating.....sudorific.

“By sweat of the brow”.....through hard work.

to **sweep**. Past tenses, **swept**; to brush clean.

a **sweep** of the hand, **răpíd**; a **flourish**, graceful; **gesture** (**jes'tūr**), accompanying conversation; **movement** of any part of the body.

**sweet**, adjective; a very old word connected with the ideas of both **pleasure** and **săvoriness**. **Mellif'luous**, pleasant as honey to the taste; **sugary**; **honeyed** words; (ironically) **saccharine** words; **dulcet** voice, artificially pleasant. Greek **glukus**; hence **glucose**, a vegetable and animal sugar.

to **swell**. Past tense, **swelled**; past participle, **swollen** or **swelled**; adjective form, **swollen**.—Latin **inflare**, hence to **inflate** or “swell up”; Latin also **tumere**; hence a **tūmor** or bodily swelling.—To **expand** in all directions: **bloat** or **puff up** (used principally as an adjective: **bloated** conceit); **distend** one's nostrils.

a **swelling**; **inflation**, act of swelling; **tūmor**, a growth; **protūberance** which stands out.

**swift**, adjective. Latin **velox**; hence **velocity**, speed; a **velocipede**, “swift foot” device. Greek **tachus**; hence **tachygraphy** (**tă-kîg'ră-fî**), shorthand.—Moving rapidly, with a sweeping

or cutting movement (notice the sounds SW and F): "a swift blow," "as swift as an arrow"; **r**apid motion; **f**ast action, i.e., steady and therefore rapid; **q**uick, full of life; **f**leet horse (poetic); **r**eady to do; **p**rompt response; **b**rief duration.

to **swim**. Past tense, **swam**; past participle, **swum**: I have swum. Latin *natare*; hence **nā'tatory**, pertaining to swimming; **nātāto'rium**, a swimming pool.

Bird with swimming feet.....web-footed bird.

to **swing**. Past tenses, **swung**; to **oscillate** regularly; **sway** to one side; **dangle** perilously from something; **fluctuate**, **vary**.—The word **swing** implies an idea of resistance (sound NG); we swing from something. **Sway** indicates more openness, freedom (sound AY).

**syllable** (sīl'a-bl), a unit of pronunciation.

One-syllable words (mōnosyllables): my, at, far, gone, ought.

Two-syllable words (disyllables): ac-tion, prof-it.

Three-syllable words (trisyllables): in-fi-del, ex-cep-tion.

Many-syllable words (pōlysyllables): ac-cep-tance, con-sti-tu-tion.

A syllable consists of one vowel sound (see Vowels), around which some consonants (see Consonants) may be gathered.

Syllables with one vowel only: Oh, I.

Syllables with one consonant: of, my, me.

Syllables with two consonants: for, lot, mine.

Syllables with three consonants: spit, fold, groan.

Syllables with four consonants: split, print.

Syllable with five consonants: splint.

Syllable with six consonants: scrunch (S,K,R,N,T,SH).

A syllable is called "open" when it ends with a vowel sound: may (vowel sound ā), Plā-tō (vowel sounds ā, ō).

A syllable is called "closed" when it ends with a consonant sound: din, not, con-vict.

### IMPORTANT WARNING

(1) Do not confuse the **spoken** syllable, which is the only true syllable, with the **printed** division of words used in writing, which is arbitrary and often disagrees with the spoken syllable, because English is not written as it is pronounced.

Example (a). The words "alley," "differ," are written with a double consonant (ll, ff), although pronounced with a single consonant sound (āl'ī, dīf'er). The syllable proper is al-i, dif-er, while the printed division of the words will be (according to rules given below) al-ley, dif-fer.

Example (b). The word "bending" is divided in speech "ben-ding," according to Speech Principle Two below; but in printing it is divided "bend-ing," according to Writing Rule Three, Exception.

(2) In this book, recognized syllable divisions and word-divisions are occasionally disregarded when they tend to conceal a difficulty in the spelling or the pronunciation, or when

it is important to disclose the true origin of the elements of a word; e.g., we may give pale-onto-logy, to explain that it means "former-being-lore." Correct syllable division for printing purposes is explained below, and is found in all dictionaries.

### WORD DIVISION IN SPEECH

**Definition.**—A syllable is a vowel sound, with or without consonants, and each vowel sound is a separate syllable.

**Application.**—Since syllables are vowel sounds, a knowledge of syllables postulates a knowledge of the spoken word. This may be acquired either through hearing the word spoken correctly, or by reference to the dictionary.

Since syllables are sounds, no number of printed letters can make a syllable, unless there is a vowel among them to give them "body." The following, despite their many letters, are one-syllable words:

freight (frāt), ought, cruise, through.

There are as many syllables as vowel sounds:—

po-em, low-er, du-el, beau-ty (two syllables).

di-a-mond, vi-o-let, vi-o-lin (three syllables).

A vowel sound is not always written by means of a vowel letter, although there is generally an "e mute" to accompany a vowel which is written without a vowel letter.

Examples: eaten, able, Bible. These are two-syllable words, the second syllable being the "voiced" part of the n or l: ē-tūn, ā-būl, Bi-būl. These are divided ea-ten, a-ble, Bi-ble. They would be pronounced just the same, without the "e mute." "Chasm," pronounced kaz-ūm, is also two syllables, but it is not divided in writing.

Since a syllable is a vowel sound, and not a complete movement of the voice, we do not count as a separate syllable a separate movement of the voice without a vowel sound. Thus the word **split** is only one syllable, although it contains two separate voice movements: s-plit.

**Speech Principle One.** (a) If a vowel sound is long, the voice is held on that sound, and the syllable tends to remain open:

Pla-to, me, no, go.

(b) If a vowel sound is short and bears any kind of stress, the voice tends to supplement the rhythm by adding a consonant sound:

snoB-biSH-neSS.

**Application of Principle One.**—As root words in every language tend to begin with consonants, we might call "complete" a principal syllable which begins, if possible, with a consonant, and then continues with either (1) a long vowel and a pause; or (2) a short vowel followed by another consonant.

pa-per (first syllable: consonant, long vowel, pause; second syllable: consonant, short vowel, consonant).

In a number of words, however, a final vowel found in the original language has been dropped in English, and the con-

sonant that preceded that final sound has remained attached to the end of a long vowel: re-maiN, pro-duCe. To indicate this exception, we use (in writing only) one of two devices:

either we write a double vowel: re-maIn;

or we add an "e mute" to the word: pro-ducE.

When we add an "e mute" the "e mute" is no part of the sound, and when we drop the "e mute" to add an affix (like -ing), the syllable remains, INCLUDING the consonant:

pro-duC-ing, sub-scriB-ing, a-maZ-ing.

This applies both to speech and to writing.

To comply with the law of speech rhythm, complete syllables seldom come one after another. There has to be an interval between them. Therefore, in a word of three or more syllables, it is easy to know which syllable is to be "complete."

The first syllable to be "complete" will be the principal or accented syllable, if at all possible:

ir-REG-u-lar, POS-tu-late.

The next "complete" syllable will be some distance removed from the principal syllable:

ir-REG-u-LAR, POS-tu-LATE, in-COM-pre-HEN-si-ble, CLAS-si-FY, PA-le-on-TOL-o-gy, PRES-ti-DIG-i-TA-tor.

The syllables in between will be incomplete or slurred over. This principle gives us the correct division of words like: origin, original. In "origin," the accent is on the OR; therefore the most complete syllable, not being the next, will be the last: OR-i-GIN (not or-IG-in), two complete syllables with an insignificant one in between. In "original" with the accent on the RIG (pronounced rij) we have:

o-RIG-i-NAL (and not: o-rig-IN-al, which would lose an opportunity to have one complete syllable).

In speech, when an accented syllable begins with a vowel, "awful," we either borrow a consonant from the previous word: "a-nawful-calamity," or we introduce a hardly perceptible hiatus, called a "smooth breathing," found in Hebrew (the letter aleph), and in all Oriental languages, equivalent to the French (wrongly so-called) aspirate h, heard in German "nur/ein," and which, exaggerated, gives the Cockney h, "hawful!" Thus we "complete" the important syllable to form the standard group.

**Speech Principle Two.**—When two consonants of equal value follow each other, one goes to the syllable before, and one to the syllable after:

den-tal, en-ter-prise, de-pen-dent, ac-cep-table (Note that these are explicitly given here as SPEECH, not as writing). Some consonants, as s, m, n, l, r, often form unbreakable groups: chil-DRen, ten-DRil, especially after prefixes: de-CRease, de-STRuction, be-SMear, de-SCent.

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels: æ ī ō ū ŷ as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ă ē ī ō ū ŷ as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; ă as in father; ēr as in merry; er as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in laud. Tonic accent (ˈ) after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ă in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.

## WORD DIVISION IN WRITING

**Rule One (a).** (Application of speech principle 1a to writing.) If a vowel sound is **long and accented** (as dUbious, dIlute, repUdiate, eAter, mIner, mAUsolum, matERial, fAther), a single following consonant (or an unbreakable group such as br, str) belongs to the **FOLLOWING** syllable: du-Bious, di-Lute, repu-Diate, ca-Ter, mi-Ner, mau-Solum, mate-Rial, fa-THer.

**Rule One (b).** (Application of speech principle 1b to writing.) If a vowel sound is **short and accented** (as orIginAl, Origin, arIsen, hEAvenly), a single following consonant (or an inseparable group) belongs to the **PRECEDING** syllable (i.e., to the syllable of the short accented vowel):

o-riG-inAl, oR-igin, a-riS-en, heaV-enly.

**Rule One (c).** If a vowel sound is **unaccented**, the single consonant that follows it belongs to the **FOLLOWING** syllable: orIgin (the middle i is unaccented; therefore the g belongs to the following syllable: or-i-Gin); sepArate (first a is unaccented; therefore the r belongs to the following syllable: sep-a-Rate); hos-pi-Tal; com-bi-Nation; fla-Min-go.

**Exceptions.** (1) A prefix is not divided from the root: in-ept, un-arm, circum-ambient.

(2) At the end of a root-word, an obscure, unaccented vowel may take the consonant: custoM-ary, systeM-atic.

(3) Letter-groups corresponding to pronunciation groups (-sion, -cian, -cious, -tion, -sure, etc.) are kept together, even after an accented vowel: divi-sion, conci-sion, vi-cious, pre-cious, mea-sure (NOT: divIS-ion, etc.).

**Rule Two.** (Application to writing of speech principle 2.) When there are two or more different consonants between vowels, and those consonants do not form a unit of pronunciation, the word-division occurs between them:

den-tal, en-ter-prise, chil-dren, skil-ful; but (according to pronunciation) de-CRease, de-STRuction, be-SMear, de-SCent.

**Rule Three.** (This rule applies to writing only.) When there is a **double** consonant representing a **single** sound, one consonant goes to each syllable, except as noted below:

fal-lacy, dif-fer, ad-dict, ef-fect, ad-dress, muf-fle, muf-fin, progres-sive, clas-sical, sug-gest (sü-jest).

**Exception.** A few suffixes, described as "purely English," namely, -ed, -ing, -er, -est, -y, -iness, -ish, to which are added the Latin suffixes -able and -ible, when placed after a word which, in its simple form, ends in a double consonant, remain separated from the rest of the word, leaving the consonants in the first part:

bless-ed, pass-ing, dress-er, stuff-iness, ebb-ing; accept-able, detect-able, contempt-ible.

(This rule does not apply to words which have only one consonant in their simple form: compeL, deteR, beT. Such words, on doubling the consonant, leave a consonant with the suffix: compel-Ling, deter-Ring, a bet-Ter.

Nor does the rule apply to those words in *-able*, *-ible* which have no existence without the suffix: *permiss-ible*; because there is no word "*permiss-*")

**Note.** The suffixes *-ive*, *-al*, *-ific*, *-ify* are treated as Latin and follow the usual rule, taking the consonant: *detect-ive*, *decept-ive*, *his-cal*, *jus-tify*, *clas-sify*, *ter-rific*.

The suffix *-or* is treated as Latin and takes the consonant: *ac-tor*, *doc-tor*, *vic-tor*. (Compare this with English suffix *-er*, which does not take the consonant: *tell-er*, *sell-er*.) But Webster erroneously gives: *vend-or* and *vend-er*, which Standard correctly gives, according to rules: *ven-dor*, *vend-er*.

The suffixes *-ent*, *-ant*, *-ence*, *-ance*, which are unmistakably Latin, are treated as such by the Oxford authorities and Standard, who divide: *depen-dent*, *defen-dant*. Webster, however, treats them as English, and divides: *depend-ent*, *defend-ant*.

**Rule Four.** (Applies to writing only.) When the sound has two consonants, and writing has only one, the written consonant goes to the second syllable.

Examples: *En-land* (pronounced *Ing-gland*), *fin-ger*, *lin-ger*. Except with the suffixes *-er* and *-est*: *long-er*, *long-est*.

**Rule Five.** Greek words are divided in America as pronounced: *biol-ogy*, *theos-ophy*; in England according to origin: *bio-graphy*, *theo-logy*.

## CONCLUSION

The written division of English words into syllables is little less than chaotic, as the result of our unphonetic spelling. The speech syllables are so often different from the written syllables that the system, as a whole, can hardly claim to represent speech. Would it not be more statesmanlike to face the facts, and adopt for the whole language the principle already recognized in at least one-third of all cases, namely, that written word division shall be such as to indicate most clearly the origin of the component parts of a word?

As we already write: *system-atic*, *sell-er*, *de-struction*, *amaz-ing*, *detect-able*, *in-ept*, thus separating some suffixes and nearly all prefixes, would it not be infinitely easier to SEPARATE ALL PREFIXES AND SUFFIXES whenever they are clearly to be recognized, and write: *act-or*, *depend-ent*, *postul-ate*, *detect-ive*, *abs-tain*, *pro-claim-ation*, *possess-ive*, *music-al*, *class-ify*, *bio-logy*, *in-fin-ite*, etc.?

Being precluded from using this system in a work of this nature, we nevertheless express the hope that intelligent readers will take the initiative of making this change effective in their own sphere, thereby simplifying the study of written English for countless millions of children.

- a **symbol** (*sim'bol*), an object or device taken to represent an idea: "In dreams, teeth are often the symbol of children." "The science of algebra conveys its formulas by means of letters, which are its symbols." A sign, warning; a representation, picture; an emblem, visible substitute; a type, like others; a token, guarantee; a shadow; a sacrament, holy thing.

In Literature, symbolism is the short-cut to suggestion. To use a common object and describe its properties, while really referring to a person who has been likened to that object, is to symbolize the person by means of the object. It creates a more subtle atmosphere than the direct reference. Symbolism is the life and soul of poetry.

to **symbolize**, **týpify**, **represent**, **express**, **figure**.

**symmetry** (sím'etri), (note the spelling with two m's), the even balance of a form between its opposite sides; **regularity**.

**sympathetic** (sím'pā-thě'tik), literally "feeling with." In English, this word is used only when sympathy is given; a person or thing that inspires sympathy is not said to be sympathetic (as in other languages), but to be **pleasant**, **congenial**, **lovely**, **lovable**; "You are sympathetic to her" means "you are fond of her"; it does not mean "she is fond of you." In the latter sense some writers use the French word **sympathique** (seng-pā-těk'): "The first requirement of a successful actor is to be **sympathique**" (i.e., to have a pleasing personality).

"A human being, deprived of the capacity for laughter . . . would suffer very frequently from sympathetic pain and depression. For the pain of every little embarrassment, disappointment, failure, and mishap of all those about him would be sympathetically shared by him. We are saved from this multitude of small sympathetic pains and depressions by laughter. . . . Laughter is the antidote to sympathy."—(McDougall, Outline of Psychology, 1923.)

a **synopsis** (sinop'sis); plural **synopses**; a "together view," a presentation in small compass of a longer document: "A dramatic situation may be written either in synopsis or in continuity"; **abstract** of a technical document; **résumé** of a conversation; **summary** of a sequel of events, of an inventory, etc.; **epit'ome** of a long narrative.

a **synonym** (sín'ō-nīm), literally "word of the same name"; a word of almost the same meaning. "Chewing is a **synonym** of mastication. Those words are **synon'y-mous**." There is no such thing as a word which is an exact synonym of another, any more than a person who is exactly like another in every way; unless a word had acquired some individuality, it would never have survived. "Chewing is a popular word and refers principally to the action of the jaws; its synonym, mastication, is the scientific term and refers principally to the effect of the saliva and the grinding on the food."

Word of opposite meaning . . . . . an **an'tonym**.

Word of the same sound . . . . . **hom'onym**.

Word of same spelling but different in sound

and meaning, as **bow & bow** (bō, bou) . . . . a **het'eronym**.

**syntax**, the branch of Grammar that deals with the relations of words to one another in the formation of sentences, and of sentences toward one another as regards clearness.

Syntax includes (1) concord or agreement, as for example the rule that a verb must agree with its subject in person and



number, or the rule that a relative must agree with its antecedent; (2) government, as for example the rule that a preposition governs the accusative or objective case: "give it to me" (not "give it to I").

- a system** (sĭs'tem), fully worked out, orderly way of doing things; also things so ordered, as "a railway system"; **meth'od**, covering every successive step: "a teaching method"; **plan**, clear conception of the required means to an end, often in the form of a drawing or of a written statement; **mode** of conduct; **program** or **programme**, announcement of forthcoming events; **régime**, direction by somebody: "Belgium under the German régime"; **order**, formal arrangement; **pro-cēdure**, from beginning to end, as in a court of law.

According to a system.....systematic.

To arrange according to system.....to systematize.

# T

**tă.** Sound heard approximately in tête-à-tête, tail (of animal), tale (story).

**a** **tableau** (French plural **tableaux**: Anglicized plural, **tableaus**). A scene posed by living characters (generally silent).

**tact**, literally "touch," the art of saying or doing the pleasing thing at the right time, to avoid giving offense; **intuition**, native ability to see into the hearts of others; **diplo'macy**, a method of approach intended to minimize possible friction; (French) **savoir faire** (săv-war-fēr), "the knowing how to do."—Latin **tact-**, **tang-**; hence **tactile**, **tactical**, **tangible**, **contact**. See **Touch**.

**to taint**, corrupt, cause to become offensive in quality: "tainted meat"; **contaminate**, carry infection to somebody or something by contact: "The entire herd was contaminated by the infected cattle that had strayed into the pasture"; **infect**, carry disease germs to another: "The well was infected with typhoid"; **pollute** a water supply; **corrupt** somebody's morals.

**to take**. Past tense **took**; past participle, **taken**: "I have always taken."—Latin **capio**, **captum**; in compound forms **-cipi-**, **-cept-**; hence **capacity**, "ability to take in or receive"; **incipient**, which "takes on" or begins; **deception**, "taking down" or fraud; a **concept** or idea "taken together"; **perceptible**, which can be "taken through" the intellect, or understood. To **seize** (sēz) by force; **catch** something that comes; **grasp**, seize and hold tightly; **grab** quickly; **capture** after pursuit; **arrest** legally; **impound** a stray animal; **dis-train** against property by legal resort; **confiscate** as a punishment; **infringe** upon somebody's right; **appropriate** a thing to one's own use, not always with concealment; **convert** wrongfully to one's own use an article held in trust; **embezzle** trust funds, as by false entries in the books; **arrogate** a right to oneself; **alienate** a person's affections; **carry** from a place; **convey** personally something bulky; **transport** across obstacles; **transmit**, receive and pass on through somebody; **communicate**, make known.—See **Steal**, **Thief**.

To **take place** as arranged; **occur** without arrangement; **happen** casually. "While the opening ceremony was **taking place**, a curious accident **happened** on the platform. Such a misfortune will not **occur** again."

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels **ă** **ĕ** **ĭ** **ō** **ŭ** **ŷ** as in *mate*, *meet*, *mite*, *mote*, *mute*, *my*; **ā** **ē** **ī** **ō** **ū** as in *mat*, *met*, *mit*, *not*, *nūt*, *pity*; **ā** as in *father*; **ēr** as in *merry*; **ēr** as in *mercer*; **ou** as in *loud*; **au** as in *laud*. Tonic accent (ˈ) after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ă in *senate*). Consonants: **g** always as in *go*; **th** as in *thief*; **dh** as *th* in *mother*; **ng** as in *sing* or in *singer*; **ng-g** as *ng* in *finger*. See **Syllables**.

**to talk**, speak freely. Latin loquor; hence **loquacious**, fond of talking; **locution**, way of speaking. (See **Speak**.) To **discourse** formally and at length; **chat** amicably; **converse** seriously; **confer** with somebody; **gossip** idly; **prate** foolishly; **prattle** like a baby; **palá-ver** endlessly with somebody; **parley** with the enemy; **argue** on a point; **debate** publicly against opposition; **lecture** before an audience on a learned subject; **preach** a sermon; **recite** a composition; **declaim** rhetorically; **impro- vise** an unexpected public speech; **rant** against an alleged evil, denounce it at random; **speak**, utter a sound; **pronounce** a word; **articulate** a syllable giving full value to the consonants; **enunciate** one's syllables clearly and formally; **jabber** meaninglessly; **stutter**, fall over certain words; **stammer**, habitually; **mutter** threats in a low voice; **mumble** confusedly; **murmur** against a superior; **shout** loudly; **whisper** in a very low voice.

Careful pronunciation and choice of

words ..... good diction.

Phrase used in ordinary talk ..... a locution.

Art of talking in public ..... rhetoric.

Art of speaking sentences beautifully ..... elocution.

Excessive facility for talking ..... the gift of gab (col-  
loq.).

To talk to oneself ..... to soliloquize.

A roundabout phrase ..... a circumlocution.

To talk against somebody's character... to throw some asper-  
sions against some-  
body.

To talk against (a course of action)... to disparage.

To talk in favor of..... to support (some-  
thing).

Talk which sounds too good to be true... a specious argument.

Quiet talk between two..... a tête-à-tête.

Very fluent way of speaking..... voluble speech.

Talk away from the point..... discursive (rambling,  
irrelevant) re-  
marks.

**a talk** (public); an **allocution**, short; **address**, informal; **speech** with feeling; **lecture** on a subject; **sermon** in church; **discourse**, formal; an **oration**, exceedingly formal.

**tall**, adjective.—In American usage, a building is tall if it has many stories, but any building may be high by being placed at a superior altitude above the level of the earth.—In English usage, **tall** is used principally of persons, and of things which are narrow for their height.

**tangible**, adjective; which can be touched or felt; **sensible**, which falls under the senses; **visible**, which can be seen; **evident**, easily seen; **clear**, easily understood; **palpable**, easily "felt": "a palpable error."

"His progress is so slow as to be hardly tangible." "An old tin trunk contained all his tangible assets."

- a taste**, perception of a sensation peculiar to the mouth; figuratively, ability to judge of values in art: "good taste"; **sāvor**, general goodness to the taste; **flāvor**, particular element that appeals to both smell and taste, especially an added element. **Piquancy** (pē'kan-sī); pungency; an **ēp'icure**, one who likes good-tasting foods, a **con'diment**, as salt, pepper, pickles, etc.; a **stimulant**, as coffee, tea, alcohol.

Adjectives: **cūlinary**, pertaining to cookery; **gustatory**, pertaining to the taste; **ēpicūrē'an**, pertaining to food lovers; **pungent**; **piquant** (pē'kant), sauce; **succulent**, pleasing; **sāvory** dish; **insipid**, flat, tasteless.

Opposite of good taste, see **Vulgar**.

- a tax**, a money charge assessed for public use; an **īmpōst** (literary word); **charge**, something payable; **burden**, something heavy; **assessment** on a unit; **toll** per head; **lēvy** in an emergency; **duty**, especially Customs; **excise** duty, for revenue only.

**tē**. Sound heard in tea (drink), tee (golf), tears (crying), tier (row of seats).

- to teach**. Past tense **taught**. Latin doceo, doctum; hence a **docu-ment**, originally a "lesson"; **dōcile**, easily led; **doctor**, one who knows. Greek didasko; hence **didac'tic**, pertaining to teaching: "the didactic method." To teach somebody something (do not use to learn somebody); **instruct** somebody in a subject; **educate** somebody, all round; **school** somebody in something; **ground** somebody in something elementary; **cate-chize** (kā'te-kīz) somebody upon a moral issue.

Easily taught.....dōcile, tractable.

Difficult to teach.....refractory.

- a teacher**; an instructor in a particular subject; **mentor**, guide to the mind; **trainer**, physical; **coach** for particular achievement; **pēd'agōgue**, "child guide"; **schoolmaster**; **schoolmistress**; **preceptor**; **tutor** to one pupil.

**teaching**; education all round; **instruction** on particular subjects; casual information; deep **knowledge**; **discipline**, good habits.

- to tear** (tēr'). Past tense, **tore**; past participle, **torn**: "I have torn."—To pull apart; **rend** (poetic); **lacerate** in strings; **rip** a seam or a definite line; **mangle**, crush to shreds; **split** along the grain; **cleave**, make a great separation.

- a tear** (tēr). Latin lachryma; hence **lachrȳmose** (lak'-), adjective, tearful.—To shed tears; weep moistly; cry noisily.

See **Sad**.

- to tease**, in friendly enmity; **annoy**, cause unpleasant feeling; **bōther** repeatedly; **pester**, **plāgue**; **torment**, seriously.

**technical** (tek'nikal), adjective; pertaining to a certain art.

**technique** or **technic** (tēk-nēk'), the art of doing a thing in the most effective way. "The technique of writing short stories includes suspense and climax." "French people can almost be said to have a technique that covers all social emergencies."

**tele-**, prefix meaning "far," as in **telegraph**, "far writing"; **telephone**, "far voice"; **telescope**, "far-seeing device."

**to tell**. Past tense **told**. From Anglo-Saxon word meaning **to count**; hence bank **teller**, one who counts out the money; also compare the phrase "to recount an event." To **tell** somebody something, **tell** a story, **tell** the gist (jĭst) of a conversation; to **say** something to somebody: "He told me to come (his exact words are not quoted; therefore **tell**); "He said to me, 'Come here'" (exact words are quoted; therefore **say**); **narrate** a long story; **relate** an incident; **report** an occurrence to one interested; **communicate** news; **express** an opinion; **order** something to be done; **command** somebody to do something; **bid** somebody do something.

Event as related by somebody. . . . his version of the incident.  
Something that tells the future. . . . an augury, an ōmen.

**temper**, casual way of feeling toward a problem or person; **disposition**, the sum total of all habitual tendencies; **temperament**, one's particular way of looking at things; **mood**, temporary, created by the subsidence of an emotion; a **vein** of inspiration; **humor** due to physical causes: "in bad humor"; **frame** of mind; **spirits**; **tone** of a letter, of the voice; **calmness**, even temper; **cheer**, good temper; **joy**, good humor, gladness; **annoyance**, bad temper; **irritation**; **exasperation**, extreme annoyance; **ill-humor**.

**temperament**, one's particular way of looking at things; **disposition**, one's habitual emotional tendencies taken as a whole; **character**, one's acquired habits as a whole; **constitution**, one's physical ability to resist disease.

"Psychologists used to speak of human temperaments as sanguine or changeable, bilious or choleric, phlegmatic or calm, and melancholy or sad. A more modern classification uses the terms **mental** (intellectual), **emotional** (social) and **muscular** (executive), using them merely as the indication of recognized predominant tendencies in the individual."

See Temper.

**temperamental**, adjective; **excitable**, **impressionable**.

**temperance**, moderation; **abstinence**, doing entirely without.

**temperature**, "how hot or cold it is." The temperature is expressed in degrees, often indicated by a small raised ° after the figures. The world-standard thermometer is the **Centigrade** in which 0° (Zero) is the thawing point of ice, and 100° the boiling point of water. In U. S. and Britain, the **Fahrenheit** Thermometer is still used for popular purposes. Boiling point of water is 212° F. and thawing point is 32° F.

**temporal**, pertaining to Time as compared with Eternity. "The Popes used to have temporal power over the city of Rome" (i.e., used to be kings or worldly rulers, in addition to their spiritual claims as heads of the Roman Catholic Church). Do not confuse **temporal** (worldly) with **temporary** (not permanent). They are related in origin, but are not used in the same sense.

**tem'porary**, intended to last a short time only, not permanent; **provisional**, while other arrangements are being made; **momentary**, of very short duration; **short-lived**. Latin adverb **interim**, meaning "meanwhile," sometimes used in English as an adjective: "an interim government," or as an adverb: "a government ad interim."

**ten** (10). Latin **decem**; hence a **dec'ade**, ten-year period; **dec'uple**, ten-fold; **décimal system**, system of counting by tens; to **décimate** a population, kill off one in ten; Greek **deka**; hence the **Dec'alogue**, the Ten Commandments; a **dec'agon**, a **déca-hédron**, a 10-sided figure; **décapod**, a ten-footed animal; the **decath'lon**, the 10-event Marathon contest.

To give one-tenth of one's income.....to tithe.

to **tend** to, have a bent in the direction of: "the cost of living always tends to go higher" (tend implies no choice or consciousness); **incline** to, consciously prefer: "He was inclined to refuse"; **lean** toward, unknowingly or without effort in the opposite direction: "He leans toward radicalism"; **gravitate** slowly toward an object, a purpose, to which one was at first not favorable.

a **tendency** toward a thing, tendency to do a thing without conscious choice; an **inclination** due to conscious preference; a **bent**, natural gift, often unknown to its possessor: "He has a mechanical bent"; **propensity**, natural preference or liking for good or evil, more often evil: "thieving propensities"; the **tenor** of a law, etc., its real contents and meaning as seen impartially; the **drift** of an argument, the real object toward which it tends; **meaning** or **purport**, intentional but not well carried out.

**tender** (adjective), easily crushed, therefore, in the material sense, delicate, frail, weak; and, figuratively, loving, affectionate, kind.

a **ténnet**, "thing held," a belief held by a Church or other body, especially when spoken of by an outsider; a **dogma**, officially proclaimed; an **article of faith** (the tenets, plural), the **creed**, the **faith**, the **belief**, the **professions**.

**tense**, adjective; "a tense situation"; **taut**, cord, nerves; **stretched**, made longer than normal; **tight**, hard to shake; **high-strung** temperament; **excited** temporarily.

a **tense**. In Grammar, a tense is the form of a verb which indicates at what time the action is performed.

Present tense: I speak, I am speaking, I do speak.

Past tense: I spoke, I have spoken, I did speak, I had spoken.

Future tense: I shall speak, you will speak, they will have spoken. The past and future are divided into numerous tenses according to the exact moment of time to be indicated. Their names vary according to the individual preferences of grammarians.

The **absolute past**, or **past tense** proper, or **préterit**, or **past définite** refers to an action which is definitely and entirely

past, and which no longer is active in the present consciousness: "I bought some bread yesterday" (either it has now been eaten, or I have forgotten it, but I no longer have it). The definite past should always be accompanied by a definite time word or phrase, such as "yesterday," "once," "last night." The word "just" refers to an event which still lives in the consciousness and is therefore not followed by the past tense proper.

The **living past**, or **present perfect**, or **past indefinite** (unfinished or uncompleted past) refers to an action which began some time before the present, but which is still living in the consciousness: "I have bought some bread" (meaning literally, and according to its origin, "I bought some bread, and have it still," "I have some bread which I bought"). The present perfect is used whenever the time named still continues. If this is morning, I should say: "I have seen him this morning"; but if it is now evening, I should say: "I saw him this morning." This tense is always used after the word **just**: "I have just seen him"; and by good writers (and in England particularly by all careful speakers) it is always used after the unqualified words "ever," "never": "I have never seen it," "Have you ever been there?" because the meaning is: "You are now living; have you in your life been there?" If, however, there is a clearly expressed idea of completed past, the past tense is used: "While you lived in Italy, did you ever go to Milan?" In America, the word **ever** is often loosely construed to mean "at some definite time," and is therefore followed by the past tense: "Did you ever see a whale?" meaning: "Was there some particular occasion on which you saw a whale?"

The **past perfect** or **pluperfect** refers to an action which was already completed when another action began: "I had finished my work when you entered" (i.e., you entered, and that is past; but before that, my work was finished).

**FORMATION.** Past tenses in English are formed in one of the following ways: (1) by the addition of a *d* or *t* sound, generally spelled **-ed**: finish, finish-ed (pronounced "finisht"); walk, walk-ed; pull, pull-ed; (2) by the addition of an *n* sound, generally spelled **-en**: shape, shap-en; (3) by the change of a vowel in the root: sing, sang, sung; break, broke; (4) by the combined addition of an *n* sound and the change of a vowel: break, broken; speak, spoken; (5) by the prefixing of an auxiliary: I come, I did come, I have come, I had come.

The future tense is formed by the use of the auxiliaries **shall** and **will**: I see, I shall see, you will see. See **Shall**.

- a term**, literally a "limit" or end; anything that limits: a term of speech, which limits and specifies, like the rhetorical term "premise" which means one particular thing and no other;

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels *ā ē ī ō ū* as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; *ă ɛ ɪ ɔ ʊ* as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; *ā* as in father; *ēr* as in merry; *er* as in mercer; *ou* as in loud; *au* as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ā* in senate). Consonants: *g* always as in go; *th* as in thief; *dh* as *th* in mother; *ng* as in sing or in singer; *ng-g* as *ng* in finger. See Syllables.

an **expression**, not strictly logical; a **locution**, way of speaking; a **name**; the **articles** of a contract; a **condition** imposed upon one in exchange for something granted; a **périód** of time; the **duration** of an action; **ten'üre** of office; a **quarter**, three months; **semes'ter**, half-year.

One holding office.....an **incum'bent**.

to **terminate**, put an end or limit to: "terminate an agreement"; close something that was open; **finish**.

Which can be terminated.....**terminable**.  
Never coming to an end.....**infin'ite**.

**terrible**, very bad: "A terrible cold"; "The roads are in a terrible condition in the rainy season."

**terrif'ic**, which suddenly produces terror: "a terrific explosion"; **alarming**.

**ter'ritory**, a definite area set apart for a person or purpose; a **province**, part of a larger unit; **domain**, limited sphere wherein one is master; an **empire**, vast territory wherein one rules over other rulers; **country**, political division; **rêgion**, natural division: "a mountainous rêgion"; **locality**, restricted area; **quarter**, part of a city or of a group: "in diplomatic quarters" (i.e., among the people who frequent embassies); **section**, **district**.

**terror**. See **Fear**.

to **testify** before a court that the facts are such and such; **give testimony**; **state** the facts as being so and so; **swear** to the facts being so and so; **witness** something being done; **give evidence** to the effect that.

**testimony**, what the witnesses say: "After the witnesses had finished giving their **testimony** the lawyer brought in as further **evidence** the envelope of the letter, with an affidavit by the postmaster that such a postmark had never existed. The jury decided that no further **proof** of the case was necessary."

**th**. This combination of letters represents two different letters found in old English; we reproduce them in our transcript as follows: **th** heard in thief, thin, thaw, through; **dh** heard in this, there, though, that. To pronounce the thin **th**, open the mouth just enough to put the tip of the tongue between the teeth, and force air through the mouth. To produce the heavy **dh** (this, that, there) place the tongue behind the upper teeth, and force air through the mouth.

To pronounce **s** like **th**.....to lisp.

**than**.—This word is usually a conjunction, linking two clauses; therefore it is followed by the same case (subject or object) as if the clause were complete:

He is taller **than I** (than **I am** tall; not "than me").

He chose you rather **than me** (rather than he **chose me**; not "than I").



**Than**, however, has had to be recognized as "sometimes a preposition" to account for a persistent and very ancient form:

My mother, **than** whom there is no better woman . . .

If the word **like** were equally recognized as both a preposition and a conjunction, it would make legitimate the form at present unrecognized: "Do like I do" (which is much clearer than "Do as I do" because it unmistakably conveys similarity, while the word **as** has several other meanings).

to **thank** somebody for a favor; **express** grātitude for a generous act; **acknowledge** a courtesy; **requite** somebody for a kind action by doing him a good turn.

**thankful**, adjective; **grateful**; **beholden** to somebody; **thankless** person, who does not give thanks; **thankless** task, for doing which one receives no thanks; **ungrateful** person; an **ingrate** (noun); **insensible** of favors received.

**that** (pronounced dhāt, i.e., emphasized), adjective: "I like that house"; adverb: "I do not care that much about it." **That** (pronounced dhūt, i.e., unemphasized), conjunction: "I believe that you are right"; pronoun: "The door that flew open." The plural of **that** is **those**.

As an adjective, **that** is the opposite of **this** (this is near, that is far). In a sequence, refer to previously mentioned object as **that**; to object about to be mentioned, as **this**.

As a pronoun, **that** is used, either for persons (who) or for things (which): "The house **that** I built. I am the man **that** built this house." **That** is always used after a superlative: "The best man **that** I know."

That which you see..... what you see.

That is.....i.e., (Latin id est, better not italicized).

**the** is habitually pronounced dhū: the day, the week, the month (dhū-da', dhū-wēk', dhū-mūnth); but before a vowel sound it is pronounced dhē: the hour (dhē-our), the author (dhē-au'ther).

**The**, repeated before parallel adjectives, means "to that extent": the more, the merrier (to the extent there are more, to that extent they are merrier).

**The** is used before a word of comparison: the better of the two (not "the best of the two").

a **theater** (thē'ā-ter) or **theatre**; **playhouse**, **opera house**, **concert hall**, **music hall**, **auditorium**, **cinema**, **movie show**; an **amphitheater**, consisting of seats in tiers (tēr'z) built around an arēna.

### Some words used on this subject

Stage, curtain, safety curtain, proscēnium (in front of curtain), footlights, wings (at side), flies (above), scenery, a set (the pieces of scēnery that go on together at one time); the house (the audience or the place for it), auditorium (seating space), stalls, loges, boxes, pit, parterre, gallery, the audience (at a play, a concert), spectators (at a dumb show,

a movie show); the company (actors), stock company (actors who often play together), cast (actors in a particular performance), players, actors, actresses, the star (actor whose name appears on the advertising before that of the play); principals, leads, support (actors who play opposite the lead), extras. A part (played by an actor), a character (impersonation), a bit (small part). The play, a repertory or repertoire play (one which is not new), tragedy (fight against fate), drama (conflict of wills), comedy (fight against circumstances producing laughter), musical comedy, farce, pantomime (dumb show), vaudeville, variety; the performance, dialogue (exchange of conversation), action; an aside; the prompter, interval (time lapse), intermission (between acts), an act, a scene, a turn, ballet. The orchestra, the leader, conductor, the accompanist, the percussion man (drums, etc.); a bass, a tenor, baritone, contralto, soprano; a success, hit, knock out, walk over, applause, encore (call for an artist to appear again), triumph, sold out, full house, standing room only (S.R.O.); a frost, a failure, to peter out (fail after a trial), dark house (no play on).

- a theft**, conversion to one's own use; **robbery** with violence; **burglary** at night and with house-breaking; **embezzlement** of trust funds; **pilfering** small quantities; **defalcation**, embezzlement. "The bank clerk who was found guilty of embezzlement has never made good his defalcations."

**their**, meaning "belonging to them." Do not confuse with **there** (not here).—As to the use of **their** to mean "his or her" ("everybody is entitled to **their** opinion"), see **They**.

**themselves**, written in one word; note the form **themselves**, not "theirselves"; see **Self**. **Themselves** is used as either subject or object: "They themselves did it"; "I saw them themselves."

**theory**, a system for explaining the workings of something; often opposed to practice. A **guess**, haphazard; **supposition**, based on incomplete data; **hypóthesis**, for temporary use: "A **hypóthesis** is a guess which has been tried and found to work so far"; **system**, orderly arrangement of rules; **doctrine**, authoritatively taught, as by a Church; **plan**, detailed lay-out. "Both theory and practice are necessary if one is to achieve mastery of an art."

**there**, adverb; in that place, further away than here.—Note the spelling, different from that of the word **their** which means "of them": "**their** car is **there**."—The phrases "**there is**, **there are**, etc., are used when it is desired, for dramatic reasons, to reserve the true subject of the sentence until later: "There are twenty houses in this block," i.e., "twenty is the number of the houses in this block," featuring the idea of quantity, whereas the sentence expressed in its usual order: "Twenty houses are in this block" emphasizes the idea of location: "in **this** block." Therefore, in speech, the word or phrase immediately following **there is**, **there are**, is emphasized: "There are SEVERAL people who . . ."

**therefore**, "that is the reason." "Therefore I will do it." Therefor (without final e), "for that purpose." "Therefor was it invented, that it might save labor to mankind."

**thereon** (one word).

**thereupon** (one word).

**thermom'eter** (thoroughly Anglicized words ending in **-meter** have the accent on the preceding syllable: ther-mōm'ēter, barōm'ēter, speedōm'eter. New scientific words ending in **-meter** have the accent on **-mē'ter**: kil'o-mē'ter).

There are two principal types of thermometer used: the instrument called Centigrade, used in all science everywhere and used also in every country outside the English-speaking world; and the Fahrenheit, used popularly in America and Great Britain.

In the Centigrade thermometer (abbreviated C.), zero (0°) is the thawing point of ice, 100° is the boiling point of water. In the Fahrenheit, thawing point is 32°, boiling point 212°. (The little figure ° after a figure indicating temperature is read "degrees.")

High temperature thermometer.....a pyrom'eter.

**they**, a plural pronoun of the third person, either sex or both sexes. **They** is always followed by a plural verb (the same as we and you), but it is often used colloquially to mean "he or she"—just as the "plural" you is addressed to a single person to mean "thou," and as the "plural" "we" is used by kings and editors to mean "I." "I am going out. If somebody phones, tell **them** I shall be back in an hour" (i.e., tell him or her, I cannot or will not specify whose call it will be). The use of "him" in such cases, while endorsed by old-fashioned writers, is far-fetched and contrary to common sense. "You can hate a person and want **them**." (Margaret Kennedy, *The Constant Nymph*, 1925.) "It is when a person has stories within **them** crying to be born that the need of writing becomes imperative" (Edna Ferber, author of "So Big," in *The Story World*, 1925). "Everyone has **their** own secret importance for themselves." "No one ever honestly thinks that about **themselves**—that **they** are just shadows of somebody else." (Hugh Walpole, *Portrait of a Man with Red Hair*, 1925.)

The word **thou** (contraction of "that one") has been proposed for that use, but it is unnecessary to invent what already exists. As to using a novel form, however, the simplest and most acceptable would be **un**, already used with an apostrophe in colloquial speech: "the big 'un." It sounds like **one**, **him**, and **them** combined. It would be given a regular pedigree as a variant of the word **one** through French parentage **un**, on: "If anybody calls, tell **un** I am out."

**thick**, larger from front to back surface than usually expected; **deep**, large from ground level down; **tall**, large from ground level up; **wide**, large from right to left; **heavy**, possessed of

great gravity; **dense**, having many units close together; **crowded**, having insufficient space between units; **opaque**, which cannot be seen through (opposite of transparent or translucent); **coarse**, of rough texture; **foggy** weather; **hazy**, **misty**, **cloudy**; **gruff** voice, deep-toned and arrogant; **guttural** sound, coming from the throat.

See Thin.

- a thief**, plural **thieves**; one who steals; **sneak thief**, who watches for people to leave the premises before entering by means of false keys; **pickpocket**, one who steals from people's pockets or hand bags; **robber**, with violence; **housebreaker**, who enters a house by force; **burglar** at night, with house-breaking; **bandit**, member of a gang; **desperado**, one who takes big chances to carry away some loot; **brigand**, highwayman; **yeggman**, safe-cracker; **pirate**, on the high seas; **embezzler**, who misappropriates trust funds.

See Steal.

**thin**, smaller from front to back surface than usually expected; shallow, small from ground level down: "a shallow pool"; low, small from ground level up: "a low building"; narrow, small from right to left; **light**, possessed of little gravity; **gossamer**, as fine in texture as a cobweb; **slender**, lacking in bulk; **slim**, small in width or thickness as compared with its height; **slight**, neither weighty nor tall; **pūny** child or animal, not sturdily grown; **stunted**, checked in growth; **emaciated**, lacking in fat; **lean**, **spare**; **lanky**, lean and raw-boned; **shrunken**; **scraggy** limbs, jutting out through lack of fat; **spindly** limbs, long and thin; **pinched** face, as from privations; **gaunt** figure, tall and lean; **scant** clothing, barely sufficient; **scrawny** chicken, etc., lacking fat; **meager** details, information.

See Small.

- a thing**; an article, individual; **item** in a list; **object**, which falls under the senses; **commodity**, having value: "a marketable commodity"; **matērial**, from which something is made; **stuff**, cloth material; **goods** (plural); **chattels**, small things; **belongings**, one person's possessions, valued belongings.

The things necessary for a trick...all the pārāphernālia.

Things needed on a long journey...the impēdimenta.

All the things used on the stage...the "props" (properties).

- to think**. Past tenses, **thought**. Latin **puto**; hence **impute** wrong motives to somebody, "think against" him; **dispute** a statement, "think otherwise"; **repute**, what the public thinks of one. Latin also **cogito**, literally "shake together"; hence to **cōgitate** a plan, turn it over in one's mind.—To **contemplate** something calmly; **reflect** deeply upon something by means of rational processes; **observe** something, watch it attentively; **meditate** profoundly upon a problem; **feel** an emo-

Pronunciation key. Vowels **ā ē ī ō ū y** as in *mate*, *meet*, *mite*, *mote*, *mute*, *my*; **ă ă ı ă ū ŷ** as in *mat*, *met*, *mitt*, *not*, *nut*, *pit*; **ā** as in *father*; **ēr** as in *merry*; **er** as in *merc*; **ou** as in *loud*; **au** as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ă in *senate*). Consonants: **g** always as in *go*; **th** as in *thief*; **dh** as *th* in *mother*; **ng** as in *sing* or in *singer*; **ng-g** as *ng* in *finger*. See Syllables.

tion; **believe** a thing to be true; **consider** a thing true; **suppose**, without sound evidence; **guess** haphazard; **infer** the existence of an unknown thing from one that is known.

"I think; therefore I am" (Latin: "cogito; ergo sum"), the Cartesian formula to prove existence (propounded by Descartes, the father of modern philosophy, in the 17th century).

- a third; one-third;  $\frac{1}{3}$ .**—In Grammar, the third person is the one spoken of (he, she, it, they). Every noun or name of a thing or person is in the third person (except when used in apposition, as in "You, John [2nd person], will go first"). The third person pronouns are: he, she, it, they; him, her, it, them; his, hers, its, theirs (the forms his, her, its, their, used before nouns, are properly called possessive adjectives).—When the subject is singular, the verb is usually the ordinary (infinitive) form, to which an **-s** or **-es** has been added: he comes, he does, he doesn't; some irregular verbs have exceptional forms: he is, he has, he was; others do not take the **-s**: he will, he must, he dare (or dares), he can, he should, he ought, he did.

**thorough** or **thoro** (thŭr'ō), adjective; done in a manner that leaves nothing to be desired: "a thorough examination"; **complete**, which includes all details to the last: "a complete outfit"; **absolute**, so thorough and complete that nothing further is possible; **reg'ular**, done according to rule; **entire**, referring to the whole: "an entire change"; **abundant**, in plenty: "an abundant water supply"; a **sweeping** investigation, which leaves nothing untouched; **exhaustive** tests, which leave nothing untried; an **unmitigated** blessing, unmixed; **unqualified** approval, not restricted as to some point; **sheer** nonsense, sheer good luck.

**thought**, the act of thinking, or what comes of it; an **idea**, vision that will produce a result; a **belief**, judgment which follows a doubt, without actual proof; an **opinion**, thought as to cause; **fancy**, without much foundation; **supposition**, judgment based on incomplete data; **guess**, haphazard; **intention**, general trend of action; **purpose**, particular direction of one's effort; **object**, individual thing which receives attention; **aim**, direction toward which one tends; **intelligence**, ability to "see through" things; **understanding**; **attention**, concentration upon something; **meditation**, deep thinking; **cōgitation**, turning things over in one's mind; **contemplation** of profound truths; an **emotion**, the consciousness of a desire: anger, fear, disgust, curiosity, are emotions; a **feeling**, the reaction to an emotion: a feeling of pity, horror, etc.; **sentiment**, "the tendency to experience certain emotions and desires" (McDougall): devotion, contempt, respect, friendship, are sentiments; **perception** of a reality by the mind or by the senses; **apperception**, consciousness of a perception; **sensation**, perception by the senses; **impression**, belief based on sensation.

Hopefulness or hopelessness of a  
person's thoughts.....his morale (mo-râl').

The science of organized thought...lōgic.  
 The science of thought processes  
 (in general) .....psychology (sī-kol'ojī).  
 Relative to thought operation.....psychic (sī'kik).  
 Thought of the past.....mēmory.  
 A particular thought of the past...a reminiscence.  
 What is thought of somebody.....his reputation.  
 Strong for his own ideas.....opinionated (adjective).  
 Thoughts leading to conduct in  
 life .....attitude (toward).  
 Expression of random thoughts...lucubration.  
 Thought-image of a real object....a phantasm.  
 Thoughts having free play.....a phantasy, fancy.  
 Uncontrolled thoughts.....vagaries of the imagination.

**thoughtful person; considerate of the rights of others; respectful; careful; prudent; kind.**

**thousand.** Latin mille; hence a millen'ium or millenary, a thousand-year period. Greek chilioi; hence **kilogram**, a thousand grams (weight); a **kilowatt-hour**, a thousand watts per hour (electric current). In Arabic figures 1,000; Roman M or (I).

- o **thrash**, formerly spelled **thresh**, as still occasionally of wheat-threshing.
- o **thread** (thrēd). Latin filum; hence **filament**, a thread-like structure. See Spin.—A **string**, coarse; **yarn**, spun material for clothing; a **string**, slender hempen line; a **cord**, heavier than string; a **rope**, very heavy; **twine**, twisted or double thread.
- o **threaten** (thrēt'n) somebody with punishment; **mēn'āce** somebody with evil.

To threaten with exposure, for  
 profit .....to blackmail somebody.  
 A threatening sword over your  
 head .....the sword of Dām'ōclēs.  
 The threats of eternal punishment  
 (in church service) .....the commination.

**threatening**, adjective; **mēn'acing** attitude; **sin'ister** motive; **mān'atory** remarks; **significant**, understood to be dangerous; **ōm'inous**, a bad sign; **ill-bōding**; **thundery** weather; **dark**; **heavy**; **oppressive** atmosphere; **sultry**, hot and damp.

**three** (In Arabic figures, 3; Roman, III). (Latin ter, Greek treis.)

Three-fold .....trīple, trēble.  
 Three singers .....a trīo (trē'ō).  
 Three children born together.....trīplets.  
 Three lines of poetry.....a tercet, trīplet.  
 The third power of a number.....the cube.  
 To do a thing three times over....to trīplicate (the operation).  
 The third of three copies.....a trīplicate.  
 To cut in three.....to trīsect.

A 300th anniversary.....a tercentenary.  
 With three angles.....triangular; a triangle.  
 With three sides.....trig'onal, tri-lat'eral.  
 The science of triangles.....trigonömetry.  
 Consisting of three letters.....trilit'eral.  
 In or of three languages.....trilingual.  
 In three syllables.....trisyllabic.  
 In or of three colors.....trichromatic.  
 Government by three.....triarchy, a trífumvírate.  
 A three-legged support.....a tripod.  
 Three in one.....a trinity.  
 Three persons in one God.....the Trinity.

**threshold**; sill of a door; border of a country; beginning of an action; **eve**, the day before.

**thrift**. See **Save**.

**thrilling**, which causes intense personal emotion usually mixed with pride: "a thrilling experience"; **sensational**, which affects many people suddenly: "sensational news."

to **thrive**. Past tense: **throve** or **thrived**; past participle, **thriven** or **thrived**. To do well: "Children thrive at the seaside. Eskimos thrive on a fish diet. Oysters thrive in polluted waters." To prosper financially all round: "After a few years in the West, he had prospered exceedingly"; **succeed** in a particular field; **flourish**, blossom: "Original beliefs flourish in new countries"; **boom** temporarily; **take**: "Roses take well in this soil"; **bloom** in health.

a **throat**. Latin guttur; hence a güttüral sound, coming from the throat; **goiter**, swelling of the throat.

**through** or **thru**; Latin per, as in pervade, "go through"; **permit**, "send through"; **perceive**, "catch through." **Through** is used after a verb to indicate the indirect agent: "The train was derailed through a faulty flange in a wheel of the locomotive."

Person through whom a thing is

done .....an agent, substitute, representative, lieutenant.

**throughout**, written in one word: also **thruout**.

to **throw**. Past tense **threw**; past participle **thrown**. Latin jacio, jactum; hence to **pröject**, "throw forth"; **inject**, throw in; **reject**, throw back; **deject**, throw down. Greek ballo; hence a ball.—To **thrust** something violently through an obstacle; **hurl** something heavy with great force and intent to hurt; **fling** angrily something light; **dart** something sharp; **cast** (poetic): "cast a shadow"; **toss** nonchalantly; **flip** a coin; **dash** and **smash**; **chuck** with a short movement; **pitch** in a straight line; **sling** with a circular movement; **heave**, lift something heavy; **launch** on water; **project** deliberately or by means of a device.

Thing thrown.....a missile, pröjec'tile.

Device for throwing.....a pröjec'tor.

Man who throws people out of public

places ..... a **bouncer** (U. S.),  
**chucker-out** (British).

to **thrust**. Past tenses, **thrust**. "He thrust his head through the window." See **Throw**.

to **tickle, tickling, tickled**. (Note the spelling -ckle.)—To **tīt'illate**.

to **tie** (tying, tied); bind together; **fasten** securely; **knot**; **confine** somebody in a place; **restrict** somebody's movements.

a **tile**, piece of baked clay, etc., for walks, roofs, floors and walls.

Covered with tiles.....**tēgulated**.

Tile industry.....**ce-ram'ics**.

**till**, preposition and conjunction. Originally spelled **till**, meaning **to, as far as**. The form **until** means "on-till"; therefore it is wrong to spell **till** with an apostrophe: "'till or 'til" as if **till** were an abbreviation. It is a pedantism to use **until** in place of **till**, when the latter runs as smoothly in the general balance of the sentence.

**time**. Latin *tempus, temporis*; hence **tem'poral**, pertaining to time as against eternity: "The temporal power of the Popes," their claim to dominion over actual territory; **tem'porary**, lasting only for a short time, not permanent; **tem'pest**, a sudden storm, lasting a short time; **contem'porary**, living in the same period. Greek *chronos*; hence a **chronicle** (*krōn'ikl*), time narrative; **chronom'eter**, very exact time keeper or clock; **anachronism** (*anakroniz-m*), a mistaken statement of date; **syn'chronism**, working of two pieces of mechanism to keep the same time.

**Divisions of time**: second, minute, hour (hr.), day, week (wk.), month (mo.), quarter (qr.), *semes'ter*, year (yr.), leap year, century, millennium, *æon*. For year periods, see **Year**.

**Principal time words**: before (preposition and adverb), once, erstwhile, formerly, hitherto, heretofore; early; premature (before it is ripe), precocious (child); preceding, *prēcēdēnt*, anterior (opposite to posterior), prior (of two), *sēnior* (in age or tenure); to precede, to antedate.—During (preposition); current, running; simultaneous (occurring at the same time), contemporary (person; of the same period); contemporaneous (event; of the same period); temporary (not lasting); provisional (makeshift); passing; fleeting; transient; ephēm'eral; evanes'cent (fading away); brief (of short duration); short, long, endless, eternal; a period, duration, interval (space between); intermission (time between); an interim.—After (preposition and adverb), afterward(s) (adverb), anon (poetic); hence (after this), hereafter, thence, thereafter; late (adjective and adverb); later; future, postērior; to postpone (an event), postdate (a document); ever, never; *ad infinitum*.—Again; a cycle (recurring), the periodicity (at definite intervals), recurrence, repetition.



- To gain time.....to temporize with somebody.  
 In time sequence.....chronological.  
 Happening in good time....opportune, timely.  
 To put off to another time...postpone an event, adjourn a meeting.  
 To make late.....to retard, delay, hinder, impede.  
 To put off till tomorrow.....to procrastinate.

**timid**, adjective; naturally shrinking from aggressive action; **shy**, temporarily disliking to appear in public for a particular purpose; **bashful**, habitually disinclined to appear in company; **fearful** of particular happenings; **timorous**, habitually; **half-hearted** endeavor; **spiritless** attempt.

**tiny**, adjective, small and lovable: "a tiny tot"; **minute**, exceedingly small: "a minute particle"; **infinitesimal**, too small to be measured.

**tired**, adjective; **weary**, after repetition of the same difficulty; **exhausted**, entirely; **fatigued** (fă-tĕg'd), slightly tired; **blasé** (blă-ză'), tired of pleasures.

A tired feeling.....fatigue (fă-tĕg), lassitude, weariness.

**tō-**. Sound heard in toe (of the foot), tow (rope), to tow, towed, toad (amphibian).

**to**, preposition. Latin ad, often found in prefixes in the form ac-, as in: **ac-cessory**, something added to (an automobile or anything); **ac-cident**, what happens to you; **ac-company**, company that comes along, that attaches itself to you; **ad-dict**, one who is given to (certain habits); **ad-dition**, one thing put on another; **ad-dress**, a direction to somebody.

Like all prepositions, **to** is habitually without emphasis, and is therefore easily distinguished from the adverb **too** (also), which is nearly always emphasized: I want t' go t' the show. I want TO go TO the show (unemphasized). He wants t' go t——. He wants TO go TOO (too emphasized).

**together** (tōō-gĕdh'er). Latin cum, and in derivatives col, com, con, etc.; Greek syn. **Jointly**, **mutually**; **reciprocally** (toward another).

To put together: **bind**, **unite** (make one), **unify** (make like one), **join** (connect), **marry** (man and woman); **aggregate** (state as a whole for calculation); **add** individual amounts; **collect** specimens; **collate** facts; **concatenate** (as in a chain); **marshal** for orderly presentation.

What ties together.....a bond.

To live together.....cohabit (with).

To join forces.....coalesce (with).

Bond of common feeling....sympathy.

Powers joined together....an alliance, the allies, a confederation, a coalition.

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels **ā ē ī ō ū ŷ** as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; **ă ă ĩ ă ŷ** as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; **ē** as in father; **ēr** as in merry; **ēr** as in mercer; **ou** as in loud; **au** as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ă in senate). Consonants: **g** always as in go; **th** as in thief; **dh** as th in mother; **ng** as in sing or in singer; **ng-g** as ng in finger. See Syllables.

See in a dictionary the entries beginning with prefixes co-, cog-, col-, com-, con-, cor-; syl-, sym-, syn-.

**tol'er-able**, adjective; which can be borne; **bearable**, **endurable**; **fair**, in quality; **average**, not superior.

**tôlerance**, the habitual attitude of allowing others to behave in their own way; **toleration**, putting up with a particular action: "Tolerance is a virtue, but it often leads to the toleration of objectionable happenings."

to **tolerate** something rather than make a fuss; **put up** with an inconvenience rather than complain; **endure** something that will not last forever; **permit** formally something which one might forbid; **allow**, offer no opposition; **bear** pätiently; **suffer** magnanimously; **let**.

a **tomato**, plural **tomatoes** (two pronunciations: tomā'to, American; tomā'to, English).

**tomorrow** (in one word without a hyphen; in England, with a hyphen: to-morrow).

To put off till tomorrow.....to postpone.

Habit of putting off.....procrastination.

**tone**, a musical sound, or the modulation of the voice: "a commanding tone," "a pleading tone"; **pitch**, high or low; **timbre** (tim'ber), the quality of a tone; **intensity**, the degree of energy; **emphasis** on a word or syllable; **stress** or **accent** on a syllable; the **tōnic** accent or stress, the emphasis placed upon a certain part of a word: EM'phasis, TON'ic, AC'cent. See Tonic Accent.

a **tongue** (tūng). Latin lingua; hence **lingual**, pertaining to the tongue; **linguist**, one versed in "tongues" or languages; **linguiform**, tongue-shaped. "The word language means tongue, and should constantly remind us that the spoken language is the true tongue of the people." Greek glossa, glotta; hence **polyglot** (pol'i-glōt), a person who speaks many languages, or (as an adjective) written in several languages: "a polyglot Bible."

The popular tongue.....the vernac'ular.  
A sharp tongue (person).....a gossip.

**tōnic accent**, the emphasis placed upon a certain part of a word: EM'phasis, TON'ic, AC'cent. It is indicated by a ['] sign placed in this transcript AFTER the accented syllable, but in the International Phonetic Alphabet placed BEFORE the accented syllable to warn the reader that it is coming.

Many words of similar spelling have different accents, according to their grammatical value: an AC'cent, to ac-CENT'. See list under Accent.

The general rule of the accent in English is that it falls on a syllable as far from the end of the word as practicable: COM'fortable, FOR'midable, IN'teresting, VIS'ible. There are, however, countless exceptions. After the prefixes in-, ex-, for example, the accent usually falls one syllable further:

in-TEND', in-VEST', in-CITE', ex-CITE', ex-PEL' (except in'come, an in'crease, and many others).

For the particular rule applying to each derived word, see the suffix in this book; e.g., to find the rule that applies to the word "gregarious," see -ous.

The exact placing of the tonic accent is a greater difficulty for foreigners learning English than even the vagaries of English spelling, as it is also for adults who encounter for the first time scientific or classical names, like podophyllin (pōd'ō-fil'in) or Miltiades (mīl-tī'ā-dēz). Unfortunately it is not possible to indicate the accent simply in our unphonetic spelling ("pre'vision," for example, would be taken to possess a long ī; yet it cannot be divided "pre-vis'ion"); but the more common use of tonic accent marks in textbooks and reference books would greatly facil'itate correct pronunciation.

See Syllables.

**tonight** (written in America without a hyphen; in England with a hyphen: to-night).

**too**, adverb. When it means **also**, **too** is always emphasized and thus easily distinguished from the preposition **to**:

I wish t' go (unemphasized) t— (emphasized).

I wish to go **too** (i.e., also).

**Too** has also the meaning of very, extremely: too much, too little, too long, too short.

a **tool**, implement of a trade, generally small: "carpenter's tools." For synonyms, see Instrument.

**too little**, insufficient (adjective), inadequate; **too much**, excessive (adjective), redundant.

To have had too much of...to be satiated with (sā-shē-ā'ted).

a **tooth**. Latin *dens*, *dentis*; hence **dent**, a tooth-mark or cut; **dentist**, tooth doctor; **dentition**, set of teeth; **indent**, to cut as with teeth; **dental**, pertaining to teeth. Greek *odontos*; hence **odontalgia**, tooth-ache; **odontology**, tooth-science.—**Milk teeth**, first dentition; **permanent teeth**: molar (heavy masticating tooth), wisdom tooth, bicuspid or premolar (two-pronged tooth), canine (eye tooth, dog tooth, tearing tooth), **incisor** (front tooth or cutting tooth); **ivory**, outside covering of tooth; **dentin**, inner substance of the tooth; a **filling**; an **amal'gam**, a bridge between teeth; a **plate**.

Tooth-straightening specialist.....an orthodontist.

Toothless .....eden'tate.

Tooth-shaped opening.....indentation.

Toothsome (food).....pālatable.

the **top**; **upper part**; **head**; **summit** of a mountain; **crown**; **āpex** of a pyramid.

to **touch**. Latin *tango*, *tactum*, to feel or reach; hence **tāngible**, which can be touched; a **tāngent**, line touching a circle; **tact**, art of meeting people; **contact**, being "in touch with"; **tactile**, pertaining to the sense of touch.—To **stroke** along the length; **caress** fondly; **pat**, by alternately raising and lower-

ing the hand; **bump against, hit, strike**; **graze** lightly; **grobe** along a surface in the dark; **glance off** (bullet).

to **tow** (tō) a boat or vehicle with a rope or chain.—To **pull**; **drag** on the ground.

A tow boat.....a tug or tug boat.

a **tower**, tall building or part of a building for observation purposes; a **turret**, small tower; **belfry**, for church bells; **spire**, pointed; a **min'aret** to a mosque (mōsk); **dōme**, spherical; **cūp'ola**, inside of a dome; **pillar**, solid; **cōlumn**, which may be hollow; an **ob'elisk**, Egyptian.

a **town**. The American and English meanings of this word differ widely and are a frequent source of confusion. The American **town** or township is a political unit which varies from a mere **village** to the equivalent of a **county**. In England, a **town** is a large aggregation of houses, more than a village. London is "a **town** of seven million inhabitants." In England the word **city** is used only as a legal or administrative term: The **City** of London (i.e., the "Downtown" business section, which is self-governing).

to **trace**, succeed in finding after following; to **track**, **trail**, **find**.

a **trace**, faint indication that something is or has been there; a **vestige**, very faint trace; **sign**, intentional; **mark**, cut or written; **impression** received; **smell**; **trifle**; **taste**.

**traceable** (with an e after c, to keep the s sound).

**tract-**. Latin root meaning "to draw, pull." Derived forms: **traction**, **tractable**, **contract**, **abstract**, **distract**. See **Draw**.

a **trade**, occupation of a manual or commercial nature; **profession**, requiring specialized education, particularly the liberal arts: law, music, medicine, architecture, etc.; an **occupation** done without first thought of profit; a **vocation**, one's natural gift; a **craft**, skilled trade.

### Names of some common occupations

Miller, baker, pastrycook, confectioner, grocer, butcher, fruiterer, stone-cutter, bricklayer, plasterer, mason, carpenter, joiner, plumber, locksmith, tailor, shoemaker, glover, hair-dresser, cleaner, hatter, goldsmith, watchmaker, weaver, upholsterer, tobacconist, brewer, dyer, cabinet-maker, turner, cooper, gardener, gas-fitter, blacksmith, gunsmith, furrier, cutler, bookbinder, tanner, wheelwright, coach-builder, saddler, millwright, tinsmith.

One who knows something of many lines

of work.....a **Jack-of-all-trades**.

a **trāgedy** (trāj'ēdī), a fight against insurmountable odds, or a play depicting such a fight. In a drama the fight is against the wills of others; in a comedy against one's own self-imposed restrictions.

to **train** a person to do something properly, by repeated practice; **educate**, bring out of ignorant ways; **bring up** a family; **raise**

vegetables; rear children; breed cattle; teach pupils; drill soldiers; discipline somebody, train somebody to practice self-control; rehearse somebody for a part; exercise the mind.

to **transfer** (accent on second syllable), **transferring**, **transferred**.—To take elsewhere; remove from one place; convey to another place or person; cede or give up a right to somebody; devise by will; bequeath in one's testament; assign one's rights in something to somebody; sell for a price; give without return; lease property for a term of years; charter a ship for a voyage.

a **trans'fer**, accent on first syllable.

a **transgression**. See Sin.

**transient** (tran'shent), adjective; "which passes across and does not remain": "a transient hope; a transient guest" in a hotel; **temporary**, not intended to last forever: "a temporary detour"; **provisional**, intended to last until something better is available; **passing**, on the way, not of permanent consequence: "a passing mood"; **fleeting**, passing by very fast; **brief**; **short**.

**transition**, the passage from one condition to another. In Rhetoric, a word, phrase or sentence which carries on the idea previously started and expands it so as to open up the next idea. "A clock struck eight, a lone yet distant clock. The strokes seemed . . ." (The Little French Girl).

### Examples of Transitional Expressions

After all,  
another cause of,  
as long as,  
as regards,  
as I have said,  
as I mentioned before,  
at any rate,  
at least,  
at all events,  
consequently,  
equally important,  
even,  
far from,  
finally,  
for example,  
for instance,  
for this purpose,  
for want of,  
furthermore,  
having this in view,  
however,  
however that may be,  
in any case,  
in consequence,  
indeed,  
in fact,

in order to,  
in other words,  
in regard to,  
in short,  
in spite of,  
instead of,  
in the meantime,  
in the first place,  
in the second place,  
in the same way,  
in this manner,  
it is true,  
it may be admitted,  
it cannot be denied,  
it is well to recognize,  
it remains to,  
lastly,  
likewise,  
moreover,  
nevertheless,  
next to,  
notwithstanding,  
now,  
of course,  
on account of,  
on the contrary,

on the one hand,  
on the other hand,  
otherwise,  
perhaps,  
similarly,  
since,  
so much for,  
so that,  
still,  
that is to say,  
then,  
then again,

therefore,  
though,  
this is not the case,  
thus,  
to be sure,  
to give an illustration,  
to this end,  
unless,  
well,  
whether,  
with respect to,  
yet.

to **translate** something from one language into another; **turn into**, **render into**; **paraphrase**, express the same meaning in more easily understood words, in the same language.—Italian proverb: “traduttore, traditore,” a translator is a traitor. As languages are living realities, and words are unlimited in their connotations, a “perfect translation” is necessarily impossible.

**transparent**, which can be seen through; **translucent**, which allows the light to pass through, but through which one cannot discern an object; “water is transparent; milk is translucent”; **diaphanous**, transparent or translucent.

to **transpire**, to become known, to leak out. A thing can only **transpire** after it has **happened**. “Although there were a hundred people present, nothing has **TRANSPIRED** of what took place.” Do not use **transpire** to mean **occur** or **take place**.

to **transport**, carry across, **convey**, **transfer**, **move**, **remove**.

to **travel**, **traveling**, **traveled**, **traveler** (all spelled with one l because the syllable is unaccented); derived from French travail, meaning labor.—A **journey**, literally a day's travel; **voyage** by sea; **trip**, temporary visit to and from; **tour** (tōōr), circular trip; **expedition** into unexplored territory; **outing** for those who are habitually indoors: “The children from the orphanage had a day's outing”; **excursion**, trip for a short distance, into new territory; **jaunt**, leisurely outing; **junket**, with a merry party; a **picnic**, **picnicking**, with open-air meal.

Carrying his trade with him..itīn'erant (adjective).

Nation or tribe that moves

in a mass.....nōmăd'ic.

One who never settles down..a nōmăd.

One who repeatedly goes

from country to country..globe-trotter.

To travel to a foreign home...to migrate (emigrate from the old country, immigrate into the new country).

---

Pronunciation key. Vowels ä ä ī ō ū ŷ as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ä ä ī ō ū ŷ as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; ä as in father; ēr as in merry; er as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ä in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.

- treacherous** (tréch'erūs), adjective; not to be relied upon: "treacherous currents"; **traitorous** person, who betrays his friends; **perfidious**, who breaks his pledge.
- to **tread** (trěd). Past tense **trod**; past participle **trod** or **trodden**. "The grass has been trodden down." "I want to follow where he has trod."  
See Walk.
- a **treasure** (trězh'er). Latin thesaurus, "things placed in safety," an accumulation of valuables; **wealth**, accumulation of desirable things, especially those that make for personal well-being; a **hoard** or carefully concealed accumulation: "a miser's hoard."
- to **treat** somebody or something well or badly, deal in a certain way with; **handle** a thing, a person carefully or roughly; **entertain** pleasantly; **negotiate** a deal with somebody; **discuss** a proposition; **parley** over a proposal.
- a **tree**. Latin arbor; hence arbo'real animals, which live in trees; **arboriculture**, forestry or care of trees. Greek dendron; hence **rhododendron**, literally the "rose-tree."
- A tree nymph.....a dryad (drī'ad).  
Family tree.....geneāl'ogy, ped'igree, līn'ēage.

### Some words used on this subject

Forest, wood, bush, shrub, chāpparral, thicket, glade; trunk, branch, bark, fōliage, timber; oak, acorn, beech, ash, bass-wood, linden, lime, sycamore, locust, elm, birch, maple, live-oak, ironwood, hornbeam, jūniper, magnolia, rhododendron, walnut, witch-hazel, evergreen, cedar, spruce, fir, pine, cypress, larch, poplar, lime-tree, willow, acācia, eucalyptus tree, papaw. Deforestation, reforestation.

See Fruit.

- to **tremble**, move unsteadily in fear; **shake** suddenly and violently; **quiver** along the length of a cord or muscle; **quake**, move in a mass; **shudder**, have a cold feeling along the surface of the skin, more often used with the fear idea; **shiver**, as from a cold surface of the skin, more often associated with physical cold; **vibrate**, return an imparted motion; **pulsate**, breathe more quickly.
- the **trend** of a discussion, the direction in which it turns; **drift** of an argument, its real significance, whether realized or not; **course** of action.
- a **trial**, formal procēdure to determine an issue; **test**, particular application of a plan to determine the truth or falsehood of a belief; **experiment**, test in search of a new principle; **hearing** of a case; painful or unpleasant ordēal; **evidence**, statement or object which tends to prove; **tes'timony**, evidence by witnesses.
- a **trick**, a clever but petty device or means of achieving a quick result, especially by undesirable means; a **ruse** (rōōz), implying greater cunning and usually legitimate means, often used on

a large scale: "a ruse of war"; an **artifice**, an elaborate contrivance; a **stratagem**, an elaborate ruse showing great skill in outwitting an enemy; a **maneuver**, movement to rearrange one's position to greater advantage; a **deception**, wrongful; a **dodge** (colloq.); a **stunt**, spectacular trick; a **hoax**, trick played upon somebody; a **makeshift**, substitute for the real thing; an **expedient**, device used for lack of a better one; the **knack** of doing a certain thing, a quick and sure way.

**trifling**, adjective; of little value: "trifling mistake"; **trivial**, unworthy, of no consequence: "trivial pursuits," "trivial interruptions"; **insignificant**; **tiny**, very small; **idle**, purposeless; **frivolous**, not taking things seriously.

a **trip**. See Travel.

**trivial** (triviality), of no consequence, unworthy. See Trifling.

a **triumph**, great and spectacular success; **victory** over one's enemies; **accomplishment** after much effort; **celebration**, public rejoicing; **ovation**, clamorous public reception of the victor.

to **trouble**, annoy temporarily; **bother**, give petty trouble; **worry**, distress seriously; **vex** by causing disappointment; **perturb**, disturb one's mind.

a **trouble**, temporary annoyance; **sorrow**, great regret over a disappointment; **grief** over a loss; **bother**, trifling; **misfortune**, accident which dashes happy expectations; **anxiety** for lack of news.

a **truce**, an **armistice**.—"Truce" is less formal than "armistice" and may apply to individuals at war with one another.

**true** (trōō), adjective; noun, **truth**. Latin *verum*; hence **veracity**, truthfulness; to **verify**, ascertain that a thing is true; **verdict**: "a true judgment."—**Correct**, according to rule; **ac'cūrate** in details; **actual**, according to facts; **authen'tic** as to origin; **gēnūine**, of true origin; **prōper**, true to its environment; **veritable**, used before the noun: "a veritable torrent": truly a torrent; **intrinsic**, "in itself": "The intrinsic value of a souvenir is often very small"; **literal** interpretation, without regard to the spirit.

A true story.....a history.

An untrue story of the past...a legend.

Almost too large to be true...fabulous (adjective).

So true it needs no proof....axiomatic.

Which sounds true (probable) .....verisimilar.

True in all details.....literally true.

It is true.....O. K. (okeh, an Indian word).

I say it is true, as you have already been told.....I confirm the statement.

I find it is true, as we have been told.....I have verified the statement.

(New motives have been found) which tend to

make the accusation true..which corroborate the accusation.



(Evidence has been found)

which shows the accusation is true.....

which substantiates the accusation.

(A witness to the will) has

declared it true.....has authenticated the signature.

To imply an untruth.....to insinuate something (against somebody).

Implications against some-

body .....innuendoes.

**truly**, adverb; spelled without an e, the e being dropped on adding the suffix -ly.

**trunk** of a tree, the **stem**, the **bole**; (traveling trunk) **box**, **chest**; **baggage**, **luggage**, **impedimenta**.

to **trust** somebody, have confident belief in his ability or his integrity; **have confidence in**; **confide in** somebody, let him into one's secrets; **rely upon**, **depend upon**.

One who is entrusted (for-

mally) .....a trustee.

Formal entrusting.....a trust.

In a trustee's relation.....fiduciary (capacity, estate).

**truthful**, adjective; "a truthful person; a truthful statement"; **frank**, not concealing; **guileless**, not aware of the dangers of being frank; **candid**, impartial and frank; **artless**, who does not disguise; **unsophisticated**; **naïve** (nă-ēv'), expecting no evil.

to **try**, **trying**, **tried**, a **trial**. Latin *tento*; hence **tentative**, done as a trial; to **tempt**, put on trial.—To **test**, subject something or somebody to certain results in order to ascertain ability or quality; **examine**, **feel**, **taste**, **sample** an article of trade; **experiment** with something; **hear** a law case in court.

**Tuesday**, the day of the god *Tiw* or *Mars*.

**turgid** (ter'jid), adjective; excessively swollen: "the turgid waters of the torrent"; **inflated style**; **bombastic talk**.

to **turn**. Latin *verto*, *versum*; hence to **avert** one's eyes, **turn** them away; **invert**, **turn** inwards; **revert**, **turn** backward; **divert**, **turn** away; **convert**, **turn** toward the "center," **bring** somebody over to one's way of thinking. Latin also *volvo*, *volutum*; hence **revolve**, **turn** around, **involve**, **turn** into.—To **turn** something by causing it to face in a different direction; **change** it around; **bend** from the straight line; **sway** in one direction; **roll** the eyes.

To **turn back**.....recede, retreat, retire, withdraw.

To **cause to turn away**.....to divert (somebody's attention).

To **turn around on tiptoe**...to pirouette.

To **turn completely around**

in jumping.....turn a somersault.

To **turn around while hold-**

ing a fixed object.....to pivot around the object.

**a tūtor**, one who teaches or guides another individually in preparation for an examination; **teacher**, whether to an individual or to a group; **coach**, one who rehearses the student intensively; **mentor**, a moral or intellectual guide and friend; **guardian**, person who stands in the legal relationship of a father.

**twelve**. In Arabic figures, 12; Roman, XII. Latin duodecim, i.e., two-ten; French douze, hence **dozen**.

Twelve of a common article. . . . a dozen.

Counted in twelves, working

by twelves. . . . . duodēcimal.

One of twelve parts. . . . . a twelfth (plural, twelfths).

Twelve dozen. . . . . a gross.

**twenty**. In Arabic figures, 20; Roman, XX; a score of years.

**twice**, two times.

**to twist**. Latin torqueo, tortum; hence **distort**, twist out of shape; **tortuous**, crooked.—To **twist** is to turn at the same time in opposite directions; **twirl** between TWO fingers: "twirl one's mustache"; **spin** rapidly; **rotate** around a pivot; **coil** in a spiral; **wreath** flowers, branches, etc., into a band.

**two**. Written in Arabic figures, 2; in Roman, II. Latin and Greek duo; hence **dūal**, adjective: which has two aspects; a **dūal**, regular battle between two; a **dūet** by two singers; the **deuce**, two at cards or dominoes.—In the sense of **twice**, Latin bi, bis; hence **bi-annual**, occurring twice a year (same as semi-annual); **biennial**, occurring once in two years; to **bisect**, cut in two; a **biped**, a two-footed creature; **bilingual**, speaking two languages; **binocular** vision, ability to see with two eyes; a **bifurcation**, the forking of a road; **bicēph'alous**, two-headed; **bicycle**, a two-wheel device. Greek di; hence: **disyllabic**, having two syllables; **dichromatic**, in two colors; **didymous**, one of twins, adjective.—In the sense of **both**, Latin ambi-; hence: **ambiguous**, having two meanings ("an ambiguous statement"); **ambidextrous**, able to use equally the right or the left hand. Greek amphi; hence: **amphib'ious**, adjective, able to live in either air or water, as a frog; an **amphib'ian**.—English root TW- found in many connected words, as **twin**, born at the same time as another of the same mother; **twine**, cord rolled double; **twain**, two; to **twirl**, roll between two fingers; to **twist**, **twinkle**, **twinge**, **twill**; **twilight**, the light which partakes of the two (dark and light); **between**, "by twins," divided in two or more; **betwixt**.

In Numerology, two is the symbol of conflict, or rivalry, of the struggle between the upper and the lower nature.

**Double**, two-fold, **twain** (poetic); to make an exact double, to **duplicate**; the exact copy, the **duplicate**. A **dūplex**, two-family house on one floor; a **double**, two-family house on two floors.

Two persons of opposite sex, to-

gether. . . . . a couple.

Two articles forming right and left. . a pair.

Two horses or mules.....a team, a span.  
 Two oxen trained to work together...a yoke.  
 Two wild birds.....a brace.  
 Two riming lines of poetry.....a couplet.  
 The second power of a number  
 (product of the number by itself)..the square.  
 Two or more lines running along-  
 side without ever meeting.....parallel (adjective).  
 Two persons face to face (not neces-  
 sarily pleasantly).....a tête-à-tête (tāt-ă-tăt').

When speaking of two in a comparison, do not use the superlative (the form in -est), even after "the"; use the comparative (the form in -er, or the word more): "My brother is the taller (not tallest) of the two."

- a type** (tip), a person or object, one representative of something else, or of many others: "a dark type of beauty"; **symbol** or physical appearance which is used to represent a greater reality: "The turtle-dove is a symbol of love"; **pattern** to be followed exactly in the making of subsequent units; **model** to be followed as far as possible; **example**, which makes things clear.—Note the pronunciation of the adjective **typical**: tīp'ī-kal, with two short i's.

For printer's type, see Print.

- to typify** (tīp'ī-fi; note the pronunciation of the first syllable: tīp'-), to symbolize; represent.

**typographic** (tīpō-grāf'ik), relating to type-setting for printing uses. See Print.

**tyrannical** (tīran'ikal), adjective (spelled with two n's, as also in tyranny).—**Oppressive, arbitrary, domineering.**

- a tyrant** (tī'rant), an arbitrary and despotic ruler; an oppressor; an autocrat; a dictator.

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels ä ē ī ō ū ŷ as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; ä ē ī ō ū ŷ as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; ä as in father; ēr as in merry; er as in mercer; ou as in loud; au as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ă in senate). Consonants: g always as in go; th as in thief; dh as th in mother; ng as in sing or in singer; ng-g as ng in finger. See Syllables.

# U

**ü.** Sound heard in you, ewe (sheep), few, usual, view, review.

**-ude.** Words of three syllables ending in **-ude** have the accent on the first: grat'itude, mult'itude, mag'nitude, lon'gitude, lat'itude, alt'itude.

**ugly**, adjective; repulsive to the eye. By extension, "an ugly temper," "an ugly disposition." But it is never right to extend this usage to the point of destroying its first meaning, and to speak of a person without explanation, as "ugly" in the sense of ill-tempered. "He is ugly" already means "He is not good-looking."

**'un** = one. A good 'un: a good one. (From French *un*, Latin *unus*.) This word, written **un** without an apostrophe, is proposed to take the place of the third person pronoun when it means "him or her," "he or she": "If anybody calls when I am out, tell **un** I shan't be long."—See *They*.

**un-**, a prefix used with fully Anglicized words, and indicating mere negation, or reverse action, as **unbutton**, **unarm**, **undress**, or indicating actually contrary condition, but not so strongly as the prefixes **dis-** or **mal-**: **unbelief** (compare: **disbelief**), **unsatisfied** (compare: **dissatisfied**), **uncertain**; **ungraceful** (compare: **disgraceful**), **uninterested** (compare: **disinterested**).

**unceremonious**, adjective; who or which does not take the trouble to be very polite: "an unceremonious eviction"; **abrupt**, lacking preparation: "an abrupt refusal"; **offhand** way of doing things, habitually; **informal** introduction; **brusque** (brōōsk) manner, lacking smoothness; **curt** reply, in a few sharp words; **gruff** tone of voice; **familiar**, friendly.

**under**. Latin *sub*; hence **submarine**, found under the water; **subterranean**, found under the earth; **substance**, that which "stands under" reality; to **subdue**, place under. Greek **hypo**; hence **hypothesis**, an explanation which "stands under" the facts.

One under a ruler.....a subject.

To place oneself under.....to submit to (somebody).

Placed under.....subordinated to.

Underwater boat.....a submarine.

Underground passage.....catacombs.

For use under the skin (needle)...hypodermic (adjective).

Which is under the skin (disease,

injection).....subcutaneous (adjective).

To place under water.....to submerge something.

To go under.....to sink, to fail.

**underground** (adjective); subterrā'nean.

An underground passage.....a tunnel.

Underground passages.....catacombs.

Underground railway.....a subway; tube (London or Hudson River).

to **understand**.—Past tense, **understood**. Latin *intelligo*, *intellectum*; hence **intelligence**, the ability to understand; **intellect**, the understanding faculty.—To **comprehend**, take in the full meaning of a vast plan: "Finite minds cannot comprehend the infinite"; **know** something learned; **experience** through the senses; **perceive** through the consciousness; **realize** as true; **catch** something transitory; **follow** a person in an argument; **grasp** an incompletely told fact; **seize** rapidly; **conceive** a new idea; **apprehend**, "take to oneself" something external; **interpret** something in a foreign tongue.

Who understands quickly.....intelligent.

Who sees into the future.....perspicacious.

Understanding of the future.....perspicuity.

**uneasy**, adjective; **troubled** by something that has happened; **excited** by a sudden stimulant; **anxious** about the future; **worried** over difficulties; **impatient** with delays; **fidgety** through nervousness; **nervous**.

**unequaled** (with one l; also with two); **unparalleled**; **unprecedented**; **matchless**; **peerless**; **superlative**; **inimitable**.

**unfit** for, not worthy of; **incapable** of performing an action successfully.

To render unfit.....to incapacitate.

**unhappy**, adjective; **miserable**; **sad**; **sorrowful**; **wretched**; **friendless**; **disconsolate**; **lonesome** for want of loved ones; **homesick**, **nostalgic**, longing for home.

to **unite**, make one; **unify**, make as one; **join** in one piece; **connect** by a third element; **incorporate** one into another; **combine** several things on equal terms for a common purpose; **marry**.

**unity**. In Art and Rhetoric, the art of focusing all the attention in one direction by coordinating all the factors that enhance the desired effect, and subordinating all those which are necessary to provide contrast. The **three unities** of dramatic art used to require that all the action of a play should (1) have one purpose, (2) take place within a few hours, and (3) be in one place. Unity of purpose is alone recognized by modern writers and playwrights.

**uninterested**, "who will not take an interest"; **disinterested**, who has no financial share.

**unmistakable** (the e of **mistake** is dropped before adding the suffix -able).

**unmarried**, adjective; **single**; **lone**; a **celibate**, often through sense of higher duty; a **bachelor**, man; **spinster**, woman; an **old maid**, woman of middle age (term of derision).

**unnecessary**, adjective; **needless**; **superfluous**, of which there is already enough; **inessential**, that could be done without.  
**unpleasant**, adjective; **disagreeable**; **displeasing**; **offensive**; **distasteful**.

**unproductive**, adjective; not used to yield what it could; **barren**, not capable of bearing fruit; **fruitless**; **futile** efforts; **nugatory**, coming to naught.

**unqualified**, adjective: "an unqualified denial"; **absolute**; **outright**; **complete**; **thorough**.

**unreal**, adjective; **illusory**; **imaginary**; **fictional**.

**unsettled**, adjective: "The weather is generally unsettled about the equinox"; "he is unsettled in his plans"; **troubled**; **nervous**; **anxious**; **uneasy**; **undetermined**; **shifting**.

**until**, **till** (one l in until; two in till; in the same way as when we add -ful to a word, we drop one l of the word full: beautiful).

There is no difference in origin or in sense between **till** and **until** (which means "on-till"). **Until** being longer is used when the harmony of the sentence requires it; there is no grammatical reason for avoiding the use of **till**. The spelling 'til or 'till with an apostrophe is wrong because **till** is already a complete word and not an abbreviation.

**untimely**, adjective; taking place at an inconvenient time, usually too soon: "his untimely death"; **inopportune**, not taking place at a well-selected moment: "That inopportune offer of help wounded his vanity"; **ill-timed**; **premature** (prē- or prēm), taking place too soon; **precocious**, mature before his years: "a precocious child."

**an untruth**, euphemistic or pleasant way of referring to a statement which is not true; a **lie** (lying, a liar), offensive way of saying that a statement is not true and is known not to be true; a **falsehood**, deliberately intended to mislead; a **tale**; a **fabrication**, story invented in most of its details; **prevarication**, the telling of lies: "He is often guilty of prevarication."

**unusual**, adjective; **uncommon**; **exceptional**; **abnormal**; **strange**; **peculiar**; **curious**; **queer**; **quaint**.

**up** (with or without motion): "He is up"; **upward**, with motion; **aloft** on board ship: "to climb aloft," i.e., in the rigging.—To **move** a thing **up**, to raise it, make higher; **lift** it off its support; **hoist** by machine; **elevate**, make it higher and set it up; **erect** a monument; **exalt** somebody to a dignity; **elate** somebody's feelings. To **go up**; **rise**; **advance** (forward); **increase**.—See Above, Go, Get.

**upon**; same word as **on**, and never grammatically more correct than **on**, but used in preference to **on** in formal sentences or where a longer and more emphatic word is required. **Upon** simply means **up-on**.

**upright** (written in one word), adjective; **honest** person; **just**; **conscientious**; **honorable**; **vertical** object; **straight**.

**an uproar**, great and sudden clamor in opposition: "The proposal to increase taxation created an uproar in Congress"; a popular outcry against something; a **hubbub** of voices, talking caused

by excitement; a riot, with violence; a disturbance of the peace; confusion due to many conflicting opinions.

**upstairs** (written in one word).

**urb.** Latin root meaning "town, city." Derived forms: **urban**, **suburb**. See **City**.

to **urge** somebody to do something which should not be delayed; **press** somebody against his indecision; **drive** somebody against his will; **exhort** by counsel; **solicit** for one's own benefit; **importune** at all times.

**urgent**, adjective; **pressing**; **important**; **immediate**.

to **use** (ūz) ; **using**, **usage**, **usual**, **usually** (without an e), **useful**, **used**; to **make use** (ūs) of; **employ** particular means of doing something; **utilize** something available; **apply** a rule; **spend** money, time; **expend** judiciously; **exploit** somebody or something for its fullest possible yield of profit.

**used** (ūz'd) **to**, **accustomed to**.—**Used to** is a kind of auxiliary in English, making a habitual past tense corresponding largely to the imperfect tense of other languages: "When we lived in Chicago, we used to spend our summers in Canada."

Used to a new climate.....acclimated.

**useless** (ūs'lēs), adjective; **worthless**, of no value; **fruitless**, giving no results; **feckless**, lacking vigor; **futile**, not well directed; **ineffectual**.

**usual**, adjective; **ordinary**; **customary**; **wonted** (wūn'ted); **habitual**; **general**; **regular**; **recognized**; **conventional**; **formal**.

Very unusual in his habits.....eccentric (person).

a (or an) **ūten'sil**, a useful and plain device, as "kitchen utensils." For synonyms, see **Instrument**.

to **utter** a cry, a sound; to **emit**, "send out" a sound, rays of light, etc.; **give forth**; **express** an opinion; **articulate** clearly; **cry out**; **scream** piercingly; **blurt out** a statement which one was trying to keep back.

# V

**v.** This sound is spelled **-ve** at the end of a word: have, receive, sieve, as the result of a misunderstanding some centuries ago. The letter **v** derives its form from the letter **u**, just as **z** is derived from **s**, and **j** from **i**. The sound **v** was formerly written with a **u**, as we still persist in writing with one letter, **s**, in many cases, the sounds **s**, **z** and **zh** (so, hose, measure). To distinguish the sound **v** from the sound **u** at the end of words, the **v** sound was spelled **ue** and the **u** sound was spelled **uu** (or **w**): thus "have" was **haue** and "haw" was **hauu** (or **haw**). When the letters **u** and **v** became separate in form as well as in sound, the origin of those spellings was forgotten, and people wrote **have** (for **haue**, which should have been transcribed **hav**) and **haw** (for **hauu**, which should have been transcribed **hau**). A similar mistake was made in French at the same period, the final **-x** (which was a way of spelling **-us**; Old French: **chevax**) becoming spelled **-ux**; hence the French plural **chevaux** (which would correctly be **chevaus**). See Spelling Reform.

- a** **vācancy**, "empty place"; **vācātion**, a long rest period, holidays; **a vāc'ūūm**, emptiness, void; **a vāc'ūūm cleaner**, suction sweeper.
- vācant**, adjective; not occupied: "a vācant position, a vācant room"; **vāc'ūous**, thoughtless: "a vacuous smile," "He gave her a vacuous look, as if he did not recognize her."
- to vācāte**, give up a room or position one has occupied.
- to vacillate** (vās'īlāt), **hesitate**, **fluctuate**.
- a vāgabond**, a worthless, homeless person; **a vāgrant**, legal term: one who has no apparent means of support; **a tramp**, who goes from place to place; **a wanderer** (no idea of disreputable character), one who travels from one place to another.
- vagāry** (note the position of the accent): "the vagāries of the New England weather," its unaccountable changes; "It costs money to follow the vagaries of fashion"; **caprice** (kaprēs'), personal change of mood or desires.
- a valley**, level country between hills; **hollow**, small depression in the landscape; **bāsin** of a river and its trībūtaries; **dale**, poetic; **glen**, secluded narrow valley; **dell**, narrow valley between low hills.
- vāl'ūable**, adjective (the word **value** drops its **e** before adding the suffix **-able**).

---

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels **ā ē ī ō ū** as in **mate**, **meat**, **mite**, **mote**, **mute**, **my**; **ē ā ī ō ū** as in **mat**, **met**, **mitt**, **not**, **nut**, **pity**; **ā** as in **father**; **ēr** as in **merry**; **ēr** as in **mercer**; **ou** as in **loud**; **au** as in **laud**. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (ā in senate). Consonants: **g** always as in **go**; **th** as in **thief**; **dh** as **th** in **mother**; **ng** as in **sing** or in **singer**; **ng-g** as **ng** in **finger**. See Syllables.



the **value** of a thing; the **worth** of a person, of one's character; **importance** of an event; **significance** of an announcement.

Beyond **value**.....inestimable, priceless, invaluable.

One who estimates values...an appraiser.

One who tests metals, etc...an assayer.

to **value** something, consider it highly desirable; **appraise** something, gauge its true worth impartially; **estimate** the cost of an undertaking; **rate** something according to a comparative scale of values.

To lose **value**.....to depreciate.

**variation** (vā'rīā'shun), between two successive performances: "Variations are the changes which result in creating variety"; **difference** between two similar objects or persons; **change** from one state or position to another; **mūtātion** (in heredity), sudden appearance of a new characteristic in the embryo: "The origin of species is now largely attributed to embryonic mutations."

**variety**: "Variety is the result of change; the change itself is called variation"; **diversity**, the fact of being unlike one another.

**vēgetables**, plural (vēj'ētabl-z); things which vegetate or grow; in popular usage, a growing plant used as food, generally cooked and unsweetened; sometimes truly a fruit like the tomato; sometimes called a dessert, like rhubarb when sweetened.

### Some words used on this subject

Potāto (potatoes), cabbage, cauliflower, Brussels sprouts, carrot, peas, beans, lentils, string beans, haricot (hār'ikō), turnip, parsnip, celery, asparagus, artichoke, tomato, onion, endive, spinach, rādish, lettūce, cūcumber, horse-rādish, water cress, parsley, tārragon (mace), gherkin, rhubarb, mint, sage, thyme, leek, kale, garlic, sorrel, okra. See Spice.

**Velasquez** (vā-lās'kāth), Spanish painter. Note that the qu is pronounced K and the Z is pronounced th.

a **vendor**. The other spelling, **vender**, is not so good, as the root **vend** is purely Latin and should therefore take the Latin suffix -or, instead of the pure English suffix -er, used with purely English words like seller, hawker. See Syllables.

**vengeance** (vēn'jāns). Note that the e is kept before the suffix -ance in order to preserve the soft sound of the g.—**Vengeance** conveys an idea of justice especially when carried out by a third party; **revenge** an idea of personal feeling.

**ver-**. Latin root meaning "true." Derived forms: **vērācity**, **vēr'itable**, **very** ("truly"). See True.

a **verb**, literally "the word," the most important word of a sentence, which indicates the action or what is done. In Grammar, a verb may be **transitive**, if it "passes on" the action to an object: "I open the door" (open is transitive because the

action is not complete after I have said: I open); or **intransitive**, if the action is complete without an object: "I sneeze."—A verb may be in the **active voice**, when the speaker does the action: "he speaks, he looks at it, she answers his remark"; or in the **passive voice**, when the subject receives the action: "it has been done, we shall be sorry" (the passive is formed with "to be").—The varying forms assumed by a verb are called its **conjugation**. (See Conjugation.) A verb has **moods** or **modes**, or forms which indicate the mood of the speaker. The usually recognized modes in English are the indicative, or mode of certainty: "I am writing"; the imperative or mode of command: "Go!"; the subjunctive or mode of dependence: "Lest he might hurt his foot," "If he be a man," "If I were king"; and the infinitive or undefined mode: "to go, to be."

Modes have various **tenses** or time forms: the present, past and future, with various combinations of the three.—Verbs have certain forms called **participles** which may be used as adjectives: burning, burned (participles); "the gardener is burning the leaves" (verb); "the burning cinders fell on the roof" (adjective); "he has burned a hole in his coat" (verb); "the burned cakes were thrown away" (adjective). Verbs have also a form (similar to the present participle) which may be either a verb or a noun, called a gerund: "There was much rejoicing" (noun); "there was much rejoicing that the war was over" (gerund).—Verbs may have different **number forms**: "he is" (singular), "they are" (plural); different **person forms**: "I was (first person); "they were" (third person); but the regular forms of English verbs are subject to little change for either number or person, except that the third person singular generally ends in -s or -es: go, goes; open, opens.—Most verbs are **regular**, i.e., vary little in form (open, opens; opening, opened); the older verbs are **irregular** (am, art, is, are, be, was, were, wert, being, been; sing, sang, sung; eat, ate, eaten). Some verbs can only be used in one form and are therefore called **defective**: must, ought. Some are used to help form others, and are called **auxiliary**, meaning "helpful": have, be, can, will, shall, may, dare, must, ought, etc. "I have been" (I really "have" nothing; have "helps" the verb "be" to indicate a past tense); "we shall be there" (no idea of compulsion; "shall" indicates a simple future). See Auxiliary.

### IRREGULAR VERBS

1. Forty-five verbs like **know, knew, known** have different forms in the present indicative, past tense, and past participle.

Root	Past Tense	Past Participle
Arise	arose	arisen
Am (be, is)	was	been
Begin	began	begun

Root	Past Tense	Past Participle
Bid	bāde (or bid)	bidden (or bid)
Bite	bit	bitten
Blow	blew	blown
Break	broke	broken
Choose	chose	chosen
Do	did	done
Draw	drew	drawn
Drink	drank	drunk
Drive	drove	driven
Eat	ate	eaten
Fall	fell	fallen
Fly	flew	flown
Forget	forgot	forgotten
Forsake	forsook	forsaken
Freeze	froze	frozen
Give	gave	given
Go	went	gone
Grow	grew	grown
Hide	hid	hidden
Know	knew	known
Lie	lay	lain
Ride	rode	ridden
Ring	rang	rung
Rise	rose	risen
See	saw	seen
Shake	shook	shaken
Shrink	shrank	shrunk
Sing	sang	sung
Sink	sank	sunk
Speak	spoke	spoken
Spit	spat or spit	spat or spit
Spring	sprang	sprung
Steal	stole	stolen
Strew	strewed	strewn
Strike	struck	struck (or stricken)
Swear	swore	sworn
Swim	swam	swum
Take	took	taken
Throw	threw	thrown
Tear	tore	torn
Wear	wore	worn
Write	wrote	written

2. Fifty-three verbs like **buy, bought, bought**, have the same form for the past tense and past participle but a different form in the present indicative:—

Root	Past Tense	Past Participle
Beseech	besought	besought
Bind	bound	bound
Bleed	bled	bled
Breed	bred	bred

Root	Past Tense	Past Participle
Bring	brought	brought
Build	built	built
Buy	bought	bought
Catch	caught	caught
Cling	clung	clung
Creep	crept	crept
Deal	dealt	dealt
Die	died	died
Feed	fed	fed
Feel	felt	felt
Fight	fought	fought
Find	found	found
Flee	fled	fled
Fling	flung	flung
Get	got	got (U. S., gotten)
Grind	ground	ground
Have	had	had
Hear	heard	heard
Hold	held	held
Keep	kept	kept
Lead	led	led
Leave	left	left
Lend	lent	lent
Lose	lost	lost
Make	made	made
Mean	meant	meant
Meet	met	met
Read	read	read
Say	said	said
Seek	sought	sought
Sell	sold	sold
Send	sent	sent
Shine	shone	shone
Shoe	shod	shod
Shoot	shot	shot
Sit	sat	sat
Spend	spent	spent
Stand	stood	stood
Stick	stuck	stuck
Sting	stung	stung
Sweep	swept	swept
Swing	swung	swung
Teach	taught	taught
Tell	told	told
Think	thought	thought
Tread	trod	trod (or trodden)
Wind	wound	wound
Wring	wrung	wrung
Win	won	won

3. Two verbs have the same form in the indicative present and past participle, but a different form in the past tense.

Root	Past Tense	Past Participle
Come	came	come
Run	ran	run

4. Sixteen verbs, such as **cut, cut, cut; cost, cost, cost**, have the same form in the present indicative, past tense and past participle:—

Root	Past Tense	Past Participle
Beat	beat	beat or beaten
Cast	cast	cast
Cost	cost	cost
Cut	cut	cut
Hit	hit	hit
Hurt	hurt	hurt
Let	let	let
Put	put	put
Rid	rid	rid
Set	set	set
Shut	shut	shut
Shred	shred or shredded	shred or shredded
Split	split	split
Spread	spread	spread
Thrust	thrust	thrust
Wet	wet	wet

### REDUNDANT VERBS

Aside from the 116 irregular verbs, there are sixty-one verbs in English which have two forms, one regular and one irregular; **hang, hanged, hanged; hang, hung, hung**. These verbs are called redundant (Latin, *re*, back, again; *undare* from *unda*, a wave; hence to overflow), overflowing verbs. In many cases such as **hanged** and **hung**, a different meaning is conveyed by the two forms: **The man hanged or has hanged. The picture hung or has hung. The woman has borne a child; the child was born**. The more common form is given first.

Root	Past Tense	Past Participle
Abide	abode, abided	abode, abided
Awake	awaked, awoke	awaked, awoke
Bear	bore, bare	borne, born (passive)
Belay	belaid, belayed	belaid, belayed
Bend	bent, bended	bent, bended
Bereave	bereft, bereaved	bereft, bereaved
Bet	betted, bet	betted, bet
Blend	blended, blent	blended, blent
Bless	blessed, blest	blessed, blest

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels *ā ā ī ē ō ū* as in *mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my*; *ē ē ī ē ū ū* as in *mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity*; *ā* as in *father*; *ēr* as in *merry*; *ēr* as in *mercer*; *ou* as in *loud*; *au* as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ā* in *senate*). Consonants: *g* always as in *go*; *th* as in *thief*; *dh* as *th* in *mother*; *ng* as in *sing* or in *singer*; *ng-g* as *ng* in *finger*. See Syllables.

Root	Past Tense	Past Participle
Burn	burned, burnt	burned, burnt
Clothe	clothed, clad	clothed, clad
Crow	crew, crowed	crowed
Curse	cursed, curst	cursed, curst
Dare	dared, durst	dared
Dig	dug, digged	dug, digged
Dream	dreamt, dreamed	dreamt, dreamed
Dwell	dwelt, dwelled	dwelt, dwelled
Geld	gelded, gelt	gelded, gelt
Gild	gilded, gilt	gilded, gilt
Grave	graved	graved, graven
Hang	hung, hanged	hung, hanged
Heave	heaved, hove	heaved, hove
Hew	hewed	hewn, hewed
Kneel	knelt, kneeled	knelt, kneeled
Knit	knitted, knit	knitted, knit
Lade	laded	laden, laded
Lean	leaned, leant	leaned, leant
Leap	leapt, leaped	leapt, leaped
Learn	learnt, learned	learnt, learned
Light	lighted, lit	lighted, lit
Mow	mowed	mown, mowed
Pen	penned, pent	penned, pent
Prove	proved	proved, proven
Quit	quit, quitted	quit, quitted
Rap	rapped, rapt	rapped, rapt
Reave	reft, reaved	reft, reaved
Rive	rived	riven, rived
Saw	sawed	sawn, sawed
Seethe	seethed	seethed, sodden
Shape	shaped	shaped, shapen
Shave	shaved	shaved, shaven
Shear	sheared, shore	shorn, sheared
Show	showed	shown, showed
Slit	slit, slitted	slit, slitted
Smell	smelt, smelled	smelt, smelled
Sow	sowed	sown, sowed
Speed	sped, speeded	sped, speeded
Spell	spelled, spelt	spelled, spelt
Spill	spilled, spilt	spilled, spilt
Spoil	spoiled, spoilt	spoiled, spoilt
Stave	staved, stove	staved, stove
Stay	stayed, staid	stayed, staid
String	strung, stringed	strung, stringed
Strive	strove	striven, strove
Sweat	sweated, sweat	sweated, sweat
Swell	swelled	swollen, swelled
Thrive	throve, thrived	thrived, thriven
Wake	waked, woke	waked, woke
Weave	wove, weaved	woven, weaved
Wed	wedded	wedded, wed
Work	worked, wrought	worked, wrought

**verge**, extreme limit: "on the verge of the abyss," "on the verge of poverty"; **edge**, sharp terminal line; **rim** of something round; **brim**, top edge of a hollow vessel: "full to the brim"; "the brim of a straw-hat"; **margin**, clearly marked space alongside.

**vers-, vert-**. Latin root meaning "turn." Derived forms: **version**, **versatile**, **convert**, **divert**. See Turn.

**verse**, a line of poetry.

See Poetry.

**version** (ver'shun), the way a statement is "turned" or presented: "His version of the accident was quite different"; **account** of an event; **translation** of a foreign text; **story**.

**very**, adverb. This word originally meant truly.—**Verily**, indeed, in truth; **much**, quite, entirely, **vastly**, exceedingly.

a **vessel**. See Ship.

a **vestige**, faint sign or evidence that something has been there; **trace**, small particle or mark left behind; **evidence** on which proof may be built; **remains** of something destroyed or consumed: "the remains of a chicken dinner"; **track** left by a wild animal; **trail** worn in the grass, etc.; **relic**, thing left after death and treasured by survivors and by posterity.

**veto**. Latin word meaning "I forbid," now used as a noun or as a verb: "The governor vetoed the bill; he used his right of veto."

to **vibrate**, return an imparted motion; **pulsate**, breathe more rapidly; **shake** suddenly and violently; **tremble** all over with fear; **shiver** as with physical cold; **shudder** at the thought of a peril; **quake** in a mass; **quiver** along the length of a cord or muscle; **chatter**, as teeth.

a **vice**, a serious habitual fault. See Faults.

**vice versa** (vī'sē ver'sā), the opposite way around.

a **vicious circle**, an action dependent upon another which is itself dependent upon the first; a conclusion dependent upon premises which are themselves dependent upon that conclusion: "Neither will apologize to the other until the other has apologized to him."

a **view**, thing seen deliberately or the fact of seeing something; a **sight**, thing which deserves to be seen; a **prospect**, downward from the observer; a **survey**, extensive; the **outlook** from a shut-in place; a **spectacle** with many happenings; a **perspective** in which all lines appear to converge; the **landscape**, form of the land; the **scenery**, natural aspect of the land; a **panorama**, a broad and extensive view; **kaleidoscope** (kā-lī'dō-skōp), instrument showing many beautiful glass patterns.

to **view** deliberately; **see** casually; **behold** something worth while; **examine** in detail; **observe** attentively; **gaze** in wonderment at; **notice**, pay attention to; **perceive**, begin to see something unexpected; **stare at**, look hard at; **distinguish** between several; **descrie** with emotion; **discern** with effort and judgment; **espy** suddenly something hidden; **note** something already seen; **watch**, keep looking at.

**viewpoint.** This is a popular American form, analogous to "stand-point" and more logical than the English "point of view," which is a Gallicism (French form): "The viewpoint of" is simpler than "the point of view of . . ."

**vigor,** naturally available muscular energy ("vigor" is not used with names of inanimate things); **strength** of a person or thing; **activity,** fondness for purposeful movements; **intensity** of an emotion; **virility,** manhood; **stămină,** native endurance; **muscle; brawn; energy,** inherent strength.

**vigorous,** adjective; **strong; active; robust; virile** (man); **muscular; brawny; energetic.**

**a villain** (note the spelling: a-i-n. This is one of the most commonly misspelled words in English); **villainous,** adjective.—A person of low character; in drama, usually the antagonist.

**to vindicate** (originally the same meaning as "to avenge"), to succeed in justifying or explaining one's attitude or claims: "The publication of the amount of his income tax vindicated his claim to be one of the largest taxpayers in the country. He was therefore justified in objecting to a reduction on grounds of public policy."

**violent** (temper, person); **uncontrolled; fierce; brutal.**

**virtual,** adjective; **practical:** "The statement amounted to a virtual ultimatum"; **virtually,** adverb; almost entirely: "The white rhinoceros is virtually extinct. Only a dozen surviving specimens are known to exist."

**virtue** (ver'tū), literally "power or efficacy"; now generally used to mean "moral goodness," as the opposite of vice: "The seven cardinal (i.e., principal) virtues are: Faith, Hope, Charity, Justice, Prudence, Temperance and Fortitude." **Rectitude; worth.**

See Qualities.

**virulent** (vīr'ölent), adjective; exceedingly powerful; "Cholera is a virulent disease"; **poisonous** plant; **vēn'omous** snake; **deadly** poison; **malignant** sickness; **răv'aging** storm, war.

**vis-, vid-.** Latin root meaning "to see." Derived forms: **visible, vision, revise, supervise, provide.** See entry under See.

**a vī'tamīne** (from Latin vita, life), a substance found in certain foods which has particular value in disease prevention. The varieties are known as Vitamine A, Vitamine B, etc. "Green vegetables, milk and whole wheats are rich in vitamins."

**viz.** (pronounced "namely"); a written abbreviation of the Latin word **vidēlicet**, which is never used in speech.

**a vōcātion,** one's life work or profession; an **avocation,** one's serious hobby or pastime.

**a voice.** Latin vox, vocis; hence **vocal,** pertaining to the voice; **equivocal,** "equal voiced," doubtful; to **vōciferate,** shout angrily.—In Grammar, the **voice** is the form taken by a verb according to the subject of the action. "I kill" is in the **active voice** because I, the speaker, am performing the action; "I am killed" is in the **passive voice** because I "suffer" the action.



**voiced**, adjective. A consonant is called voiced when it is pronounced with a slight vocal sound. The voiced consonants in English are: **b, g, d, m, r, zh** (as in measure), **j, v, dh** (as in this).—When a consonant is pronounced with a “thin” sound, it is called **voiceless**. The voiceless consonants in English are: **p, k, t, n, l, sh, ch, f, th** (as in thief).

**vol-**. Latin root meaning “will.” Derived forms: **völlition**, **bönëv’ölent**. See **Will**.

- a volcāno**; plural **volcanoes** or **volcanos**, a mountain which emits fire, ashes, lava, etc.; the **crāter**, mouth of the volcano; a **fūmarole**, smoke hole; an **eruption**, the actual emission of ashes, etc.; an **earth tremor**, an **earthquake**; **lava** (lá’va), the molten rocks, etc., which flow from the volcāno during an eruption; **pūmice** (pūm’is), **sīlicates**; **sūlphūr**.—An **active volcano**, which occasionally erupts; an **extinct volcāno**, which no longer erupts.

**vol’untary**, offered without compulsion: “voluntary contributions”; **spontā’neous**, occurring quickly and without inducement; “a spontaneous outburst of public indignation”; **free-will**: “a free-will offering.”

**volunteer**. Note the spelling -eer.

**vorācious**, adjective: “a voracious appetite,” which devours much; **rāvenous** hunger, which grasps everything in sight (this word **rāvenous** has no connection with the bird **rāven**; it is of the same origin as “**rāvine**,” the place where the waters “**rāvage**” the country).

**vōrācity**, excessive tendency to eat, particularly of a temporary nature; **hunger**; **rāvenousness**. See **Voracious**.

- a vowel**. A sound made by the voice without friction.

**IMPORTANT WARNING**.—Do not confuse vowels proper, which are **SOUNDS**, with written vowels, which are mere symbols inadequately representing some of those sounds.

**Written vowels**.—The letters used in writing to represent vowel sounds are **a, e, i, o, u, y** and sometimes **w** (although **w** is never used by itself, as the others are, to represent a pure vowel sound). Because these are given the name of vowels, it does not follow that they are vowels only, or that there are no other vowels.

**E, i, u, y**, are used sometimes as consonants: **e** in **righteous**, **i** in **onion**, **u** in **quality**, **y** in **yet**.

Some so-called consonants also sometimes carry an unwritten accompanying vowel sound: **l** in **able**, **n** in **eaten**, **m** in **chasm**.

**W**, generally listed as “sometimes a vowel” is one only when it follows another vowel, forming a diphthong and losing its identity, as in the diphthongs **ew**, **ow** (few, how). In all other cases it is a pure consonant: **water**, **wed**.

**Y** is principally used as a vowel (long vowel in **my**; short vowel in **pity**, **syzygy**). It is used as a consonant only at the beginning of old Anglo-Saxon words: **yet**, **yes**, **you**, and in Anglicized foreign words: **canyon**.

We have just seen that **e, i, u**, are also occasionally con-

sonants; therefore it is not necessary to class y as "sometimes a vowel."

**True vowels (Vowel sounds).—**A true vowel is a sound produced with a single movement of the vocal organs. The true vowel sounds heard in English are as follows, using the same transcript system as we use in this book:

â	as	heard	in	father	au	as	heard	in	law
ă	"	"	"	cat	ö	"	"	"	foot
ē	"	"	"	set	er	"	"	"	her
ī	"	"	"	sit	e	"	"	"	spoken
ō	"	"	"	dot					
ū	"	"	"	cut					

Some of the other sounds are almost pure, but have a little hang-over of sound which causes them to be considered diphthongs (double sounds) by many phoneticians:

ōö	as	heard	in	boot	ō	as	heard	in	boat.
ēē	"	"	"	feet					

Others again are recognized as pure diphthongs (double sounds), although they may be written in English with a single letter:

ā	as	heard	in	say	(sound ē-ē)
ī	"	"	"	my	(sound ā-ē)
ou	(ow)	"	"	loud, cow	(sound ā-ö)
ū	"	"	"	you	(sound y-ö)

Those are the recognized vowel sounds of English: 10 pure vowels, 3 long vowels of doubtful purity, 4 diphthongs. It is evident, therefore, that we need at least 13 written vowels to write as we speak. (We omit entirely here unstandardized sounds, like the Lancashire *a* of *have*, which are more in the nature of dialect variations than of standard pronunciations.)

**Doubtful vowels.**—The pure vowels and diphthongs which we have just mentioned are not always used in speech. Often, in an unaccented syllable, the vowel sound will be slurred and barely recognizable: *a* in *senate*, which could be just as well written *senit* or *senet*, but which is pronounced almost as spelled in very careful speech. It is sufficient to know that any written vowel may be so treated. When we give the pronunciation of the word "animal" as *ăn'ī-māl*, it does not mean that the last *a* is pronounced habitually like the first. It means that it may, on very formal occasions, be heard as an *ā* sound. Habitually it sounds like *an'im-l*. This is a consequence of the laws of speech rhythm and the tonic accent, and must always be understood. An unaccented syllable is never such a clear vowel sound as an accented syllable.

See also Syllables; "E mute."

**a voyage**, long journey by sea; the cruise of a ship to certain points

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels *ā ā ī ō ū ŷ* as in *mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my*; *ă ā ē ī ō ū ŷ* as in *mat, met, mit, not, nut, pity*; *â* as in *father*; *ēr* as in *merry*; *er* as in *mercer*; *ou* as in *loud*; *au* as in *laud*. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ā* in *senate*). Consonants: *g* always as in *go*; *th* as in *thief*; *dh* as *th* in *mother*; *ng* as in *sing* or in *singer*; *ng-g* as *ng* in *finger*. See Syllables.

and back; to take **passage** on a ship; a journey, literally "one-day trip"; a **trip**, there and back; an **excursion**, of short duration.

See Travel.

**vulgar**, adjective; pertaining to the common or uncultured people: "vulgar manners," "vulgar expressions"; low, common, uncouth (un-kōōth); profane language; cheap goods; showy clothes; flashy jewelry; gaudy attire.—"The vulgar tongue is the name formerly given to the vernacular or spoken language of a country."

**vulgarity**, the manners of uncultured people; lack of refinement, of polish.

**vulnerable**, adjective; "easily wounded" from Latin *vulnus*, a wound: "His sentiment is good, but his logic is decidedly vulnerable"; weak; liable to injury.

# W

- wā.** Sound heard in waiting, **wade** in water, **weigh** on scales, **wail** (cry).
- to wade** through water, across a stream, walk slowly against the resistance of a body of water; **ford** a river, cross it on horseback or in a vehicle at a shallow point; **paddle** for fun in the water.
- a wage.** See Wages.
- to wager** something on an event; **stake** something on the outcome of an event; **bet** something that the outcome will be such and such; **gamble** at the races, at the gaming table; **risk** what one has in a venture.
- wages**, plural; a worker's daily or weekly pay; **pay**, money handed out for anything; **salary** for a "white-collar" job; **hire**, hourly wage, or rental paid for a commodity; **fee**, lawyer's, doctor's; **honorarium**, formal fee; **allowance**, discretionary amount to cover certain anticipated expenditures: "a traveling allowance"; **compensation**, any kind of pay; **remuneration** for great deeds; **stipend**, magistrate's; **recompense**, reward.
- to wait** at table; wait for somebody who is to come; **wait on** a guest, a prominent personage.  
 (Matter) waiting for a decision.....in abeyance.  
 (Resolution) waiting for action.....tabled (adjective).  
 Fact of "waiting till tomorrow" to act...procrastination.
- to wake.** Past tenses, **woke** or **waked**. "The noise woke (or waked) me, but I found it had not woke (or waked) anyone else." To avoid these awkward forms, most people prefer to use the verb **awaken**: "The noise awakened me."
- to walk** (normally). Latin *ambulare*; hence **perambulator**, a hand carriage for taking people out for an airing; **ambulance**, a conveying device; **preamble**, the part of a speech or report that "goes before." To **march** in step; **tramp**, to cover a long distance; **hike** for pleasure; **stroll** contentedly; **saunter** purposelessly; **promenade** sociably; **stride** with long swinging steps; **strut** arrogantly; **plod** dejectedly; **trudge** tiredly; **mēānder** in indirect course; **ramble**, looking for novelty; **wander** aimlessly.
- A person walking.....a pedestrian.
- a wall.** Latin *murus*; hence **mūral**, pertaining to walls: "mūral decorations"; to **immure**, shut within walls.—An enclosure in general; **rampart**, heavy earth mound and masonry; **pārapet**, protective wall of any kind; **partition**, thin wall between rooms.
- to wander** aimlessly; **ramble**, looking for novelty; **mēānder** in indirect course, as a river; **tramp** in order to cover a long dis-

tance; **hike** for pleasure; **stroll** contentedly; **saunter** purposelessly; **promenade** sociably; **plod** dejectedly; **trudge** tiredly; **migrate** from one's country to a new one.

**a wanderer**; a **nōmad**, who travels with his tribe; **vāgabond**, often viciously; **vāgrant** in the eyes of the law; **traveler**, going to a definite place; **roamer**, **rover**, **globe-trotter**.

**to want** something considered essential; **desire** ardently; **wish** for something, without much hope of getting it; **lack** something, be short of it.

The often-heard "rule" that **want** cannot be used correctly before a verb: "I want to go," and that we should say "I wish to go," disregards both the modern use of the word **want**, which implies much less lack than desire, and the weakness of the word **wish**, now associated chiefly with fecklessness and failure. "I want to go" is much more forceful than "I wish to go."

**a war**. Latin *bellum*; hence **bellicose**, adjective, war-like: "a bellicose attitude; a **belligerent**, one engaged in war: "Belligerent Powers must respect the rights of neutrals." Greek *polemos*; hence **polemics**, controversial arguments.

Pertaining to war.....martial.

One who is at war.....a belligerent, a combatant.

One not involved in a war.....a neutral (nū'tral).

Quick war-time discipline.....martial law.

War-time tribunal.....court martial.

### Some words and phrases used on this subject

Diplomacy, a diplomat, ambassador, minister; diplomatic exchange of notes; "unable to view with indifference," "view with grave concern," "view with alarm," "may have grave consequences"; *ultimatum*; declaration of war; suspension of civil rights; army, navy, services, reserves, recruits, conscription, draft, enlisted men; infantry, cavalry, artillery, engineers; army corps (U. S., about 185,000 men), division (U. S., 3 brigades), brigade (U. S., 3 regiments), regiment (U. S. infantry, 3 battalions; U. S. cavalry, 3 squadrons), battalion (U. S., 4 companies), company (U. S., 6 officers and 250 men, war strength, or 4 platoons), platoon; strategy (movement of troops or ships to the field), tactics (movements in the field); general staff, field-marshal, general, major-general, brigadier-general, colonel (ker'nel), major, captain, lieutenant (U. S., lū'ten'ant; British lef'ten'ant), sergeant (sar'jent), corporal, private, soldier; navy, fleet, warships, man-of-war, battleship, cruiser, destroyer, torpedo-boat, submarine, collier, tanker, convoy, aeroplane carrier; admiral, vice-admiral, rear-admiral, commodore (retired), captain (commander), lieutenant, ensign, "gob," sailor; marine.

See Diplomacy, Fight, Army, Navy.

**warm**, adjective. Latin *caleo*, to be hot; hence **caldron**, a hot pot; to **scald** or burn the skin severely, as by water dropped from a caldron. French *chaud*; hence a **chauffeur** (shō'fer'), originally (and still in France) the "stoker" of a steam engine,

who "keeps it hot."—Air temperatures (approximate): it is **hot** when the thermometer registers over 70 degrees; **warm** by comparison with previous temperatures or seasonal readings; **temperate** or **moderate** about 60 to 65° Fahrenheit; **cool** below 50° F.; **cold** from 40 to 32° F.; **freezing** at or below 32° F.

**Approximate names of various water temperatures:—**

212° Fahrenheit (100° Centigrade).....	<b>boiling</b> (water).
200°-212° Fahrenheit (92°-100° Centigrade) .....	<b>pipng hot</b> (water).
90°-200° Fahrenheit (33°-92° Centigrade) .....	<b>hot</b> (water).
98°-99° Fahrenheit (37° Centigrade) ..	<b>blood-heat</b> .
85°-125° Fahrenheit (30°-52° Centigrade) .....	<b>warm</b> (water).
75°-90° Fahrenheit (24°-32° Centigrade) .....	<b>lukewarm, tepid</b> (water).
50°-75° Fahrenheit (10°-24° Centigrade) .....	<b>cool</b> (water).
40°-60° Fahrenheit (5°-15° Centigrade) .....	<b>cold</b> (water).
40°-50° Fahrenheit (5°-10° Centigrade) .....	<b>stone cold</b> (water).
32° Fahrenheit (0° Centigrade).....	<b>freezing</b> (water).

to **warn** somebody of a peril. Latin *moneo*; hence to **admonish**, talk warningly to somebody; a **monitor**, one who has charge of something.—To **caution** somebody against somebody else, against a peril; **admonish** at length; **notify** formally; **inform** casually of; **advise** concerning something.

A warning sign.....an **omen**, an **augury**.  
An inner warning (as in a dream)....a **premonition**.

to **wash**. Latin *lavare*; hence to **lave** a wound; **lavatory**, washing place; **ablutions**, formal or ceremonial washing. To **cleanse**, not limited to washing; **rinse**, dip up and down lightly; **scour**, rub energetically in water; **scrub** a surface with a harder one; **bathe** a person; **flush** by causing water to pass through; **sterilize** surgical instruments.

to **waste**, allow to go unused; **spoil** for future use; **lose** time, opportunities; **dissipate** an accumulation; **lavish** one's gifts, give freely; **squander**, give away thoughtlessly; **fritter** away in dribbles.

One who wastes.....a **prodigal**, a **wastrel**, a **spendthrift**.

to **watch**. Latin *vigilare*, "to be awake"; hence **vigilance**, wakefulness.—To watch in expectation or for prevention; **observe** attentively and in detail; **look** after somebody or something; **attend** to the details; **see** to a thing; **guard** something valuable.

**a watch**, small timepiece for the pocket or wrist; a **clock**, not to be carried about the person.—In the sense of **observation** or **observer**, a **vigil**, **lookout**, **guard**, **sentry**, **sentinel**, **picket**, **observer**.

**water**. Latin *aqua*; hence **aquatic**, pertaining to the water: “aquatic sports”; **aquous**, watery, wet; **aqueduct**, over-ground water conduit; **aquarium**, glass-sided place where live fish are kept; **aquarelle**, water-color painting. Greek **hydro**; hence a **hydrant**, water outlet in the streets for fire purposes; **hydraulic**, operated by water-pressure; **hydrotherapy**, the water-treatment of disease; **hydroplane**, an aeroplane that rises from the water surface; **hydrophobia**, “water-hatred” or **rabies** of a mad dog.

Water in solid form.....ice.

Water in vapor form.....steam.

Water falling from the sky.....rain.

Water falling from the sky in tremen-

dous quantities .....a **déluge**, a **down-pour**, a **cloudburst**.

Water falling frozen hard.....**hail**.

Water falling frozen soft.....**snow**.

Water falling very cold.....**sleet**.

Water coming from the ground at

ground level.....a **spring**.

Water coming from below ground

level .....a **well**.

Water coming above the ground by

ornamental means.....a **fountain**.

Water running down a narrow, natu-

ral channel, encountering obstacles..a **brook**.

Water running down smoothly.....a **stream**.

Water within artificial banks.....a **canal**.

Water running rapidly down a slope...a **rapid**.

Water coming abundantly down a

mountain slope .....a **torrent**.

Water running over an abrupt edge....a **waterfall**.

Water running over a tremendous

height .....a **cătaract**.

Water running over a series of edges..a **cascade**.

Water running along a broad, natural

channel .....a **river**.

Water surrounded by land, small area..slough, **slew**, **pond**.

Water surrounded by land, large area..lake.

Water surrounded by land, very large

area .....a **sea**.

Deep place in water surrounded by

shallows.....a **pool**.

Water in a very large body, salt.....an **ocean**.

Water of ocean or sea in motion.....a **wave**.

**Pronunciation key.** Vowels *ā ē ī ō ā ŷ* as in *mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my*; *ā ē ī ō ā ŷ* as in *mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity*; *ā* as in *father*; *ēr* as in *merry*; *ēr* as in *mercer*; *ou* as in *loud*; *au* as in *laud*. Tonic accent (‘) after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ā* in *senate*). Consonants: *g* always as in *go*; *th* as in *thief*; *dh* as *th* in *mother*; *ng* as in *sing* or in *singer*; *ng-g* as *ng* in *finger*. See **Syllables**.

Repeating motion of ocean water.....the tide.  
 Water of a river overflowing its natural boundaries.....a flood.  
 Water cutting into land, small.....an inlet.  
 Water cutting into land, large.....a bay.  
 Water cutting into land, very large....a gulf.  
 Water of great width at a river's mouth .....an estuary, a sound.  
 Water between high mountain sides....a fjord.  
 Water outlet in a house.....a faucet, spigot (U. S.), tap (England).  
 Watery land.....a marsh, a bog, a quagmire, swamp.  
 Watering place in the dēsert.....an oāsis.  
 Poetic name for water, as symbol of purity.....crystal.  
 Man who drinks only water.....teetotaler (British).  
 (Wood) decayed by staying in water...water-logged.  
 Water-carried rubbish.....flotsam and jetsam.  
 Flowing like water.....fluid, liquid (adjectives).  
 Water in the human system.....lymph.  
 Having water accumulated in the bodily tissues.....dropsical.  
 Having water on the brain.....hydrocephalous.

- a wave.** Latin *unda*; hence to **undulate**, move like a wave; **undate**, flood; **surround**, originally "cover with water," therefore isolate or encircle an enemy fortress.—A **billow** (poetic); **whitecap**, feathery top of wave; the **swell** of the ocean; the **surf**, breaking on the beach; the **crest**, high part of wave; the **trough** (*tróf*), low part between waves; a **ripple**, very small series of waves in still water.

A wave of the hand.....a gesture.

To wave an object.....to flourish, brandish.

- a way.** Latin *via*; hence to **obviate**, take an unpleasantness out of the way, make it unnecessary. A **road**, made up; **path**, narrow; **lane**, leafy; **avenue**, broad; **boulevard**, grand, and planted with trees; **street**, between buildings; **alley**, at back of buildings; **passage**, narrow, between obstacles; **sidewalk**, side of street (called in England **pavement**); **track** of a railroad; **trail**, recognizable irregularly; (figuratively) a **method**, **system**, **trick**, **knack**.

To go out of the way.....to deviate from, digress, detour.  
 Made in the same way.....similar to.

Avoid the form "A little ways," which is incorrect. Use "a short distance" or "part of the way."

- wē.** Sound heard in weather, or (incorrectly) in whether (the first h should be pronounced: h-wether).  
**we.** Pronoun, first person, plural in form but occasionally singular in meaning, as when used by kings and editors to mean



"I." The King of England, however, says "I, my army, my navy."

**weak**, adjective; not vigorous. Greek *asthenes*: hence *neurasthēnia*, weakness.—**Frail**, easily broken (same word, originally, as *frāgile*); **tender**, easily bruised; **brittle**, which breaks easily into its component parts: "Glass is brittle"; **frāgile**, easily destroyed as a whole: "A parcel is frāgile when it can easily be damaged in transit"; "A drinking glass is a frāgile object, because glass is a brittle substance"; **feeble** person, health, defense; **feckless**, powerless of accomplishing its purpose: "I was disgusted with his feckless attempts to get a job"; "Such a feckless population will never accumulate wealth"; **impotent**, feeling its powerlessness; **pūerile**, childless; **unsubstantial**.

to **weaken**, enfeeble a person, **undermine** the health, the purpose; **debilitate**, cause weakening of health; **demoralize**, cause loss of confidence; **emasculate**, cause loss of virility.

a **weakness**; **failing**; **foible**, habitual failing: "The writer of comedies should be familiar with all the foibles of human nature, as it is in such foibles that comedy has its mainspring."

**wealth**, any accumulation which is of value; **riches**, **fortune**, **money**, **substance**.

to **wear**. Past tense, **wore**; past participle **worn**: "He has worn it all winter"; adjective, **worn**: "It is worn out."—A **suit** of two, three or four pieces of clothes of the same material; an **outfit**, things that go together; **furnishings**, assorted supplies; a **trousseau**, bride's outfit; a **lāyette**, baby clothes; a **uniform**, soldier's.

the **weather** (wēdh'ér).

#### Some words used on this subject

**Baröm'eter**, windy, calm, clear, overcast, rainy, stormy, foggy, misty, variable, steady, unsteady, fine, fair, wet, damp, storm, tornado, hurricane, fresh, snowy, bright, dark, **thermom'eter**, mild, cool, hot, warm, cold, chilly, frosty, temperate, seasonable.

to **weave**. Past tense, **wove**, **weaved**; past participle **woven** or **weaved**; **weaving**; a **web**.—The **warp**, threads along the length of the piece; the **woof** or **filling**, threads across the warp; a **weaver's mesh**, knot in the cloth. See **Thread**.

Weaving device.....a **loom**.

to **wed**. Past tense, **wedded**; past participle **wed** or **wedded**. "The minister has wed (or wedded) the couple."—To **marry**, **unite** (become united), in marriage.

Old enough to wed.....**nūble** (age).

a **wedding**, **marriage**; the **nūptials**.

**Wednesday**, the day of Woden, the Northern Mercury. See **Gods** and **goddesses**.

to **weigh** (wā), a **weight** (wāt); **scales**, device used for weighing; a **bālançe**, poetic or emphatic.

**welcome**, adverb or adjective. (Note the spelling. One *l* is dropped from **well** before adding **come**. Compare the English spellings **skilful**, **enrolment**.)

**well**, adverb. Latin *bene*; hence **bēn'efactor**, well-doer; **bēn'evolent**, well-wishing. Greek *eu*; hence **euphemism**, a pleasant expression: "the word 'fib' is a euphemism for 'lie'"; **eulogy**, a "pleasant speech," speech in praise of somebody or something.

**well-known**, adjective. In newspaper practice, this adjective is applied to people whose concrete qualifications are not known or not stated.—**Nōted**, **renowned**, **celebrated**, **fāmous**, favorably known; **nōtōrious**, unfavorably known.

**a Welsh rabbit**. This is the correct name of the toasted cheese delicacy, often mistakenly "improved" to "Welsh rarebit." See **Rabbit**.

**west**, adjective, written with a small *w*; the **West** (with a capital *W*), the part of the United States which lies toward the Pacific Ocean; the **Occident**, as opposed to the Orient, i.e., white civilization as opposed to yellow, etc.

**to wet**. Past tense, **wet**.

**a wharf**; plural, in America, **wharfs**; in England, **wharves**.—For synonyms, see **Pier**.

**what**, relative pronoun, applied to things only; "that which." The word **what** is used as both antecedent and relative:

{ I heard		what		you said.
{ I heard		that which		you said.

As an interrogative pronoun, **what** applies also to things only: "What did you see?"; with persons, use **who?** or **whom?**

**whatever** (in one word).

**whatsoever** (in one word).

**a wheel**. Greek *cyclos*; hence a **cycle**, **bicycle**; a **cyclone**, whirling storm.

**whenever** (in one word).

**whereas** (in one word). At the beginning of a formal resolution only, the word **whereas** is written in capital letters, followed by a comma; the word that follows it begins with a capital letter: "WHEREAS, It has been the custom . . ." This does not apply in any other case than that of a formal resolution: "He has good reasons, whereas we have not."

**which**, in modern English applies only to things or animals: "The book which I bought." "It is the dog which you say." For persons use **who** or **that**. In Old English (and in the Bible) **which** was used for persons or things: "Our Father which art in Heaven."

**whichever** (one word).

**to whip**, hit on the flesh with a stinging device like a thin rope, a leather thong or a small switch; to **punish**, in general; **chastise**, formal; **castigate** (poetic); **scourge** (poetic); **lash**

with a flat surface; **spank** with a board, etc.; **switch** with a thin rod.

to **whirl**. See **Turn**.

**whisky** (Scotch, spelled without an e), plural **whiskies**; **whiskey** (Irish or Canadian, spelled with an e); plural **whiskeys**.

**white**, adjective; Latin **albus**; hence **albino**, a white-haired and red-irised person; **Albion**, the name given to England because its white chalk cliffs are clearly seen by the approaching traveler from the Continent. Greek **leukos**; hence **leucocyte**, a white corpuscle of the blood. **Snowy**, **milky**, **ivory**; (heraldry) **argent** (i.e., silver-colored).

**who** applies only to persons or personified animals, not to things. "The man who is here." For things use **which**. For either things or persons, one may also use **that**: "The man that came, the book that you gave me."

**Who** is used as subject, for the person doing the action, as we use **I**, **we**, **he**, **she**, **they**.

He goes. She goes. I go. Who goes?

**Whom** is used as the object, the one receiving the action, as we use **me**, **us**, **him**, **her**, **them**.

You spoke to me, to him, to her, to them.

To **whom** did you speak (You spoke to whom?).

**Whom** did you speak to?

If in doubt whether to use **who** or **whom**, split the sentence in two. If it needs **they** use **who**; if **them** use **whom**:

{ Those are here: **they** love you.

{ Those **who** are here love you.

{ Those are here: you love **them**.

{ Those **whom** you love are here.

{ There are many: we forget **them**.

{ There are many **whom** we forget.

The verb which follows **who** is in the same person as if the subject itself were used: "I **who** am here (I am); **he who** is here (he is), **they who** are here (they are); **he and she who** are here (they are)." "I have your interest at heart, my son, I **who**, despite the shameful way in which you have treated me all these years, **am** still your father (I **am** your father)."

**whoever** (one word), **whomever**.

Use **whoever** (not **whomever**) between sentences if it is the subject of the second clause, even if it appears to be the object of the first clause: "I say to **whoever** will listen (not 'to whomever')." The true object of "I say to" is not the word "whoever" but the whole clause "whoever will listen": "I say to | whoever will listen."

**whole** (pronounced hōl); adjective and noun; **the whole**, **the totality**; **the entirety**; **the ensemble** (āng-sāng-bl), the whole considered as one effect: "an ensemble suit"; **integral**, adjective: not divided: "an integral portion of the estate," a part which cannot be separated.—**The whole** refers to a thing that can be divided, but has not been divided: "The whole

class was waiting. The whole cake weighed seven pounds. She spent a whole month making a dress. They ate the whole cake between them (at one time; see *Between*).” If the object is considered as several pieces, use all: “They have eaten all the cake (or all the cakes)” (in several times or pieces).—Note the spelling *wholly*, and its pronunciation: *hōl’li*, with two distinct *l* sounds, as if it were spelled “holely.”

**wholly** (*hōl’li*), entirely, quite, utterly, absolutely, fully, altogether.

**wicked** person, designs; morally bad; corrupt; evil; sinister motives; perverse habits; wrong, sinful, ungodly conduct; iniquitous actions, contrary to justice; unrighteous, heinous (*hā’nūs*), fiendish.

**wickedness**; depravity, habitually bad moral condition; perversity of a particular act or of a person; turpitude of an action, its shamefulness; iniquity, contrariness to justice.

**wide**, adjective; covering a large expanse from right to left; broad, wide and long; extensive; roomy; spacious; vast; capacious; comprehensive.

**width** (note the pronunciation *wid’th*; also the spelling with *dth*).

to **wield** (*wēld*), note the spelling.—To wield power, wield a weapon, have the free use of it; to handle, manage, use, manipulate, ply.

a **wife**. Plural *wives*.—A spouse, consort, better half, mate, helpmeet.

**wild**, adjective; not tamed: “a wild beast”; savage, dangerous: “A savage attack”; reckless conduct; dissipated person.

to **will**, willing, wilful or willful. Latin *volo*; hence benevolent, well-wishing; malevolent, ill-wishing; voluntary, done by one’s own free will, without compulsion; volition, an act of will. To wish without much hope for something; desire something ardently; want something seriously; to deign do something, proudly consent; condescend to do something, step down from one’s dignity to do it; grant a favor; vouchsafe a gift, a prayer; bequeath something as an inheritance.—Will is used as an auxiliary to form the simple future tense in the second and third persons: “He will come”; also in the first person to form an emphatic affirmation of intention: “I will go.” For the use of *shall* and *will* as auxiliaries, see *Shall*.

At will ..... ad libitum.

Referring to a will or testament..... testamentary (dispositions).

to **win**. Past tenses, *won* (*wūn*, pronounced like the word *one*): “He has won the race.”—To win against obstacles; gain a worth-

---

Pronunciation key. Vowels *ā ē ī ō ū y* as in *mate*, *meet*, *mite*, *mote*, *mute*, *my*; *ă â ĩ ɔ ŭ ʏ* as in *mat*, *met*, *mitt*, *not*, *nut*, *pity*; *ā* as in *father*; *ēr* as in *merry*; *er* as in *mercier*; *ou* as in *loud*; *au* as in *laud*. Tonic accent (‘) after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (*ā* in *senate*). Consonants: *g* always as in *go*; *th* as in *thief*; *dh* as *th* in *mother*; *ng* as in *sing* or in *singer*; *ng-g* as *ng* in *finger*. See *Syllables*.

while end; **earn** a living, etc., by labor; **obtain** something desired; **acquire** something, become possessed of it; **secure** for oneself something uncertain; **procure** for somebody something which necessitates various steps; **carry** a point in debate; **score** a victory.

- a wind.** Latin *ventus*; hence a ventilator, wind-making device. Greek *anemos*; hence *anemone* (ănēm'ônē), wind flower. A breeze, gentle wind; a gale, very strong wind; a storm, exceedingly strong wind; a squall, sudden gust; a blizzard, with cold and snow; a cyclone, in circles; a tornādo, funnel-shaped wind cloud; a typhoon (tī-foon'), a hurricane in the China Sea.—Exact meanings are given to various names of wind in weather reports: a gentle breeze is from 15 to 20 miles per hour; a fresh breeze from 20 to 25 miles per hour; a strong breeze, from 25 to 35; a gale (moderate gale, fresh gale, strong gale) from 30 to 70; a storm, 60 to 80; a hurricane, over 80.

- to wind.** Past tense wound, pronounced to rime with sound, and unlike the word "a wound" (a hurt), which is pronounced wōōnd.—To turn the key or handle of; to wreath a garland around something; coil in a spiral, like a snake; crank an auto; wrap something around somebody.

winding, adjective; spiral stairway; mēandering river; crookēd, not straight; sinuous, snaky; circūitous, roundabout; dēvious, off the main road; tortuous, concealed.

- a window** (literally "wind-eye"); a casement, hinged; sash, guillotine-shaped window; lāttice, square or diamond-shaped panes; dormer, jutting out of sloping roof; a bay window or bow window.

Window in top of a door.....a transom.

Round window in a wall.....a bull's-eye.

Window in the side of a boat.....a porthole.

**winter.** Latin *hibernus*, adjective, wintry; hence *hibernal* (adjective), pertaining to winter; to *hibernate* (in or at a place), retire for the winter. "The bear is a hibernating animal."

**wise**, adjective; who uses good judgment, Latin *sapiens*, "who knows"; hence a sage, a wise man. A prudent person; judicious advice; learned person, who has studied; skillful or skilful, who knows how to do; philosophic, resigned; sagacious, intelligent.

- to wish.** See Want.

**wit.** An old word meaning "knowledge." A person's intelligence, wisdom, smartness; the humor, fun of a remark.

- a witch**, feminine of wizard; a sorcerer, magician, sīb-yl, prophetess.

**with** (widh), preposition and adverb; together. Latin *cum*, which takes the form co-, col-, con-, com-, etc., according to consonant that follows: collect, contain, command, coeducation. Greek *syn*; hence *synthesis*, "putting things together"; *syllogism*, "putting together" the terms of an argument.

- to withdraw**, go away; retire deliberately; recede, step away; retreat before a superior force; shrink away from something

distasteful; **depart** formally; **remove** something, take it away; **confiscate** something for the public good; **cancel** an arrangement; **recall** an ambassador.

**within** (widh-in'). Latin *intro*, *intra*; **inside**, **internally**. "The Kingdom of God is within you."

To lead within.....to introduce.

Within the city walls.....intramural (adj.).

**without** (written in one word). Latin *sine*. French *sans*.

To adjourn without naming a date for

reconvēning .....to adjourn *sine diē*.

A position without worries.....a *sinecure* (sī- or sī-).

Carelessness of the rights of others....(French) *sans-gêne* (sâng-zhên).

This idea is often expressed by the suffix *-less*: childless, motherless, joyless. **Without** is also expressed by the Greek prefix *a-* or *an-*: **achromatic**, colorless; **abysmal**, bottomless; **anhydrous**, free from water; **amnesty**, "non-remembrance," forgiveness of a misdeed, general pardon; **amnesia** (same root as *amnesty*), loss of memory; **ambrosia**, the "deathless" beverage or food of the gods; **anarchy**, absence of government; **anonymous**, nameless; **apathy**, absence of feeling; **asphyxia**, pulselessness; **atheism**, godlessness.

**a witness**, one who has seen; an **observer**, one who sets out to see; a **passer-by**, one who happens to be passing when something happens; a **bystander**, one who happens to be about when a thing happens: "A witness's testimony (i.e., what he says) may or may not be used as evidence" (i.e., may or may not be presented in court to prove or disprove something).

**a woman** (singular, pronounced wŏm'an), plural, **women** (pronounced wim'en). (Note the two spellings.) Latin *femina*; hence **female**, used when referring only to sex; **fēminine**, adjective: womanly, also used in grammar: "the fēminine gender"; **effeminate**, womanlike (when speaking of a man).

An unmarried woman (young).....a girl, a damsel (poetic).

An unmarried woman (middle-aged).. spinster, an old maid (derisive).

A beautiful young mother.....a *madonna*.

An elderly married woman.....a *dame* (derisive), a *mātron*.

A woman of good class.....a *lady*.

A tyrannical woman.....a *hag*, a *duenna*.

Wife of a deceased nobleman.....a *dowager*.

A man who hates women.....a *misogynist*.

Women of doubtful repute.....the *demi-monde*.

A woman who scolds and nags.....a *shrew*, a *termagant*.

**wood**, the substance. Latin *lignum*; hence **lignēous**, woody. A **wood**, an aggregation of trees. Latin *sylva*; hence **sylvan**, pertaining to woods; **Pennsylvania**, Penn's woodlands.

**Thicket**, dense growth; **gröve**, pleasant shade; **cöpsæ**, isolated group of trees; **forest**, extensive wild lands, though not necessarily with trees; **woodland**; a **warren**, small area used as a game preserve for rabbits, pheasants, etc.

A wood nymph or fairy.....a dryad (drí'ad).

Wood-worker .....carpenter, joiner, cabinet-maker, wood-carver.

**wööl**, sheep's hair; **fleece**, sheep's coat of wool; **down**, soft, short hair as on birds.

Made of wool.....woolen (England woollen).

Which feels like wool.....woolly (two l's).

- a **word**. Latin verbum; hence **verbal**, pertaining to words; **verbally**, in speaking by word of mouth; **verbose**, wordy; a **verb**, the essential word of a sentence; **verblage**, superabundance of words. Greek logos; hence **logic**, the science of reasoning.

Art of using words to form sentences....Grammar.

Words between two people.....conversation; **diä-lögue**.

Correct sound of words.....pronunciation.

Use of effective emphasis.....diction.

Use of reasoning words.....logic.

Use of convincing words before a crowd...**rhétoric**.

Words not easily understood.....a jargon.

Words peculiar to one district.....a **diälect**.

Wording of a document.....**phrāseology**.

The science of word-meanings.....**lexicography**.

The science of word-origins.....**ëtymölogy**.

Word-book in alphabetical order.....**dictionary**.

A brief list of special terms.....a **glossary**.

An index of the words found in a book...a **concordance**.

A collection of words in a certain order..a **vocabulary**.

A short dictionary or word-list.....a **lexicon**.

A new word or phrase.....a **nööl'ogism**.

An old word or phrase.....an **arch'aism**.

A word used familiarly in speech.....a **colloquialism**.

Word ignorantly formed.....a **barbarism**.

Word division in speech and in writing...**syllables**.

A word used within definite limits.....a **term**.

See **Syllables**.

- a **work**. Latin opus, operis; hence an **opera**, or important musical work; **operator**, the man who works a machine; **cooperate**, work together; **operative**, which can work. Latin also labor; hence **laborer**, **laboratory**, etc. **Toil**, hard work; **task**, a specific job; **business**, one's line of work; **chores** on a farm; **service**, done with regard to the welfare of the recipient; **exercise** for one's own benefit; **vocation**, one's life work; **practice**, professional man's business.

**Working** .....occupied, busy, engaged, employed.

the **worth** of a thing in itself; its **value** as judged by people; its **price**, what the owner wants for it; its **cost**, what the owner gave for it; **merit**, worth not measured in terms of money; **excellence**, superior goodness.



Recognized as having worth.....valuable.  
 Recognized as worth much.....precious.

**worthy**, adjective. Latin dignus; hence a **dignity**, a high rank or reward bestowed upon the worthy; **indignant**, who resents something unworthy; a **condign** honor, worthy of its recipient; **infra dig.**, beneath one's dignity.

**a wound** (wöönd). Latin vulnus; hence **vulnerable**, easily wounded. Greek trauma; hence the surgical words a **trauma**, **traumatic**; **traumatism**, the wounded state. A **laceration**, tearing of the tissues; a **hurt** as felt by the recipient; a **cut** with sharp object; a **bite** with teeth; a **scratch**, abrasion of the skin; a **stab** with dagger.

The scar left after a wound.....the cicatrix.

**to wreck**. From an Anglo-Saxon word meaning "misery, exile"; hence a **wretch**, literally "the victim of a wreck."—**To destroy** totally; **demolish** a mass or structure; **annihilate** to nothingness; **raise** a city to the ground, level it.

**to wrestle** (pronounced rēs'l, not rās'l); **wrestling**, a wrestler.

**to wring** (rīng). Past tenses, **wrung**. To strain or twist forcibly so as to expel something: "to wring a wet towel," "wring a confession out of a criminal."

**to wrinkle**, make or become corrugated. Latin rugare; hence **corrugated**, bent back and forth in even wrinkles, as a sheet of zinc used in roofing.—**To crumple**, crush together; **crease**, make fold-lines in a material; **ruck**, furrow; to **corrugate** a metal.

**to write**. Past tense, **wrote**; past participle, **written**; present participle, **writing** (note the spelling without an e). Latin scribo, scriptum, hence **prescribe**, write something for a disease; **manuscript**, a "hand-writing"; **escritoire**, a writing desk; **postscript**, a writing that "comes after." Greek grapho, grammar; hence **telegraph**, a far-writing device; **grammar**, the art of writing; a **monogram**, several letters written as one.—Writing is a simplified form of pictures which have lost their original meaning and which now represent sounds.

To write an orderly expression of  
 thought .....

To write (a letter, a document).....to indite (an epistle)  
 (literary).

To write something in a book.....to inscribe (one's  
 name, etc.).

To write an explanation on (book,  
 page) .....

To write from various sources.....to compile (a dic-  
 tionary).

Relating to writing and printing.....graphic.

A professional writer (copyist).....a scribe.

Pronunciation key. Vowels **ā ē ī ō ū** as in mate, meet, mite, mote, mute, my; **ä ē ī ö ū** as in mat, met, mitt, not, nut, pity; **ā** as in father; **ēr** as in merry; **er** as in mercur; **ou** as in loud; **au** as in laud. Tonic accent (') after stressed syllable. Long vowel in unstressed syllable pronounced as doubtful (**ā** in senate). Consonants: **g** always as in go; **th** as in thief; **dh** as in mother; **ng** as in sing or in singer; **ng-g** as in finger. See Syllables.

One who writes under dictation.....an amăn'ũensis, a secretary.

Abbreviated method of writing.....shorthand, stenography.

One who writes in rapid symbols.....a stenographer.

One who writes on a typewriter.....a typist (tĩ'pist).

Art of reading character from handwriting .....grăphology.

A collection of literary examples.....an anthology.

A brief, witty writing.....an epigram.

An often-repeated bit of writing.....a plat'itude, a truism.

An old-fashioned writing desk.....an escritoire (es'-krĩ-twâr').

Something written by a person himself .....an autograph.

Individual way of expressing one's thoughts in writing.....one's style.

Writing in cipher.....cryptography.

A secret writing in cipher.....a cryptogram.

- a wrong**, a deviation from justice; an error, by mistake; a tort (law), intentional wrong done to somebody; an injury, assessable in damages; an injustice, moral wrong; a crime, serious offense against the public conscience; a misdeed, moral; **malfeasance** (mal-fē'zans), wrongdoing.

**wrong** (adjective), untrue, false, erroneous, mistaken, wicked, unjust; **nefarious**, contrary to law: "the nefarious activities of a gang of suspects."

See Blame, Sorrow.

**wrongly**, badly. Latin prefix **mis-**; hence to misbehave, mistake, misfortune.

## X

**x**. A letter pronounced **ks** in exercise, vex, lax; pronounced **gz** in Alexander, exact, exaggerate.

- a xylophone** (zi'lō-fōn), literally "wood-sound"; a musical instrument consisting of parallel wooden bars of graduated lengths which are struck with mallets.

# Y

**-y** (wī), a vowel (as in pity, my) or semi-vowel (as in canyon, boy) which has also taken on the value of a former Anglo-Saxon consonant (as in year, yes, yet).

Because of its final flourish which made it possible to fill the end of a line in a manuscript, **y** was adopted by scribes in place of final **i**: pity (for piti). In such cases **y** is a pure vowel, and it is changed back to **i** before adding suffix: pitiful, beauti-ful.

**-y.** Accent rules for words ending in **-y**:—Words of three syllables ending in **-y** (sounded i) have the accent on the first syllable: vic'tory, har'mony, vā'l'iancy, sin'ewy, court'esy, sal'ary, cent'ury, shad'owy, trea'sury.

**EXCEPTIONS:** 1. inq'iry (American tendency, however, is to pronounce it in'quiry), vagā'ry, canā'ry.

2. Adverbs ending in **-ly**. These take the same accent as the parent word: sure'ly, finan'cially, indū'bitably.

3. Words ending in **-lety** have the accent on the **i**: pī'ety; the word moiety is pronounced moy'etī; gaiety or gayety is pronounced gā'itī.

4. Words ending in **-nomy**, **-pathy**, **-cracy**, **-sophy**, **-phony**, **-macy**, **-logy**, **-loquy**, **-graphy**, **-ity**, have the accent on the preceding syllable: anat'omy, antip'athy, ho-me-op'athy, democ'racy, philos'ophy, teleph'ony, theom'achy (thē-ōm-ākī), theol'ogy, geol'ogy, ventril'oquy, geog'raphy, biōg'raphy, principal'ity, teleg'raphy, dūplīc'ity, probabīl'ity. (The longer words have a secondary accent: prob'a-bil'ity, an'thro-pol'ogy.)

5. Words ending in **-ory**, **-ary** generally have the accent on the same syllable as the simpler word from which they are derived: sup'plemen'tary, com'plimen'tary, sat'isfac'tory, oblig'atory, repos'itory, expos'itory, am'atory, lab'oratory.

Except: propri'etary.

**a year** (abbreviated yr.). Latin annus; hence annual, yearly; annūity, a yearly payment.—A twelvemonth.

Year of 366 days.....leap year.

In the year of our Lord.....A.D.

In the year before Christ.....B.C.

In the year of Rome.....A.U.C.

Half yearly.....semi-annual, biannual.

Occurring once in two years.....biennial (adjective).

Occurring once in three years.....triennial.

Occurring once in four years.....quadrennial.

Five-year period.....quinquennium; a luster, lustrum.

Occurring every five years.....quinquennial.

Occurring every seven years.....septennial.  
 Occurring every ten years.....decennial.  
 Ten-year period.....a decade.  
 Twenty-year period.....a score of years.  
 Occurring every hundred years.....centennial.  
 One hundred years.....a century.  
 One hundredth anniversary.....a centenary.  
 One thousand years.....a millennium.  
 Countless years.....æons.

**yellow**, adjective; **golden**, yellow with a touch of red; **buff**, brownish-yellow; **saffron**, very brilliant; **citron**, lemon-colored; **cream**, almost white; **orange**, yellow and red; **flaxen** (hair).—**The yolk** (yök) of an egg.

Disease with yellowness of the skin.....jaundice.

**yes**. Poetic and parliamentary, **aye** (i).—To ask for an affirmative answer: to **plead** for somebody, something; **advocate** a measure; **recommend**, **urge**, **endorse**; **advance** arguments for. To give answer "yes": **acquiesce** in a proposition; **agree** to a plan; **assent** to; **avow** one's intentions; **admit** a fact; **confess** one's guilt; **concur** in an opinion; **corroborate** somebody's opinion; **ratify** somebody's action; **approve**; **accede** to a request; **consent** to an action; **yield** to pressure; **confirm** a statement; **aver** that a thing is such; **acknowledge** receipt of something.

**to yield** (note the spelling); to **give in** to a superior force; **căpî'tulate** on certain conditions; **cave in** under a great weight; **submit** to the inevitable; **resign** oneself; **give up** something which one held; **produce** a crop; **return** a profit; **bear** interest; **furnish** a return on an investment.

Who yields to reason.....amenable.

**you**. Plural pronoun of the second person, used with a plural verb, often to mean the singular when addressing a single person: "You, Henry, are coming with me."—(See also **We** and **They** for similar uses of plural pronouns in a singular sense.)

To determine whether it is right to say **you** and **I** or **you** and **me**, reconstruct the sentence:

- { Jim went to the theater.
- { I went to the theater.
- { Jim and I went to the theater.
- { She wanted to go with Jim.
- { She wanted to go with me.
- { She wanted to go with Jim and me.
- { He told you so.
- { I told you so.
- { He and I both told you so.
- { You told him so.
- { You told me so.
- { You told him and me so.

- { You are tired.  
 { They are tired.  
 { You and they are tired.  
 { I want you to come.  
 { I want them to come.  
 { I want you and them to come.

**young**, adjective. Latin *juvenis*; hence *jūvenile*, pertaining to youth.—**Youthful** in figure, appearance, conduct; **immature** in years; **childish**, not worthy of serious consideration; **boyish**, **girlish**, **babyish**.

Too young to be responsible.....an infant (legal term),  
a minor.

A young lady.....Miss (to be used only  
before the name).

A younger person, in school or busi-  
ness .....a junior.

“The younger” (after a name, in  
England) .....minor (“Jones  
minor”).

**yourself** (one word); plural **yourselves**.

See Self.

**a youth, youngster, boy, lad; an ādoles’cent** (12 to 16).

## Z

**z**, a letter named *zē* in America, and *zēd* in England. It represents a sound mostly written in English with an *s*, as in the plural: boxes (*bok’sēz*), flies (*flīz*); or in the third person singular: goes (*gōz*), does (*dūz*), is (*īz*).

**zeal, enthusiasm, passion for, devotion to.**

**zēro**, 0. Plural **zeros** or **zeroes**. A cīpher; naught; nothing; **zero weather**, with temperature around zero Fahrenheit (—17° Centigrade).

**zī**. Sound heard in xylophone.

**zō-**. Greek root meaning “life, animal.” Derived forms: **zōōl’ogy**, **Zōdiac**. See **Animal**.









UNIVERSAL  
LIBRARY



135 393

UNIVERSAL  
LIBRARY

